Objective General English

MBA, Hotel Management, MCA,
Bank (PO & Clerk), NDA, CDS
SSC (Graduate & Matric)
UPSC, BEd, PGT & TGT Exams.

SP Bakshi
MA (English) J D
Director, Minerva Institute

Esha Sharma
MA, BEd (English)

ARIHANT PUBLICATIONS (INDIA) LIMITED

Reference Books

Modern English Usage	HW Fowler
A Practical English Grammar (Vol I, II, III)	A J Thomson & A V Martinet
A Guide to Correct English	L A Hill
Practical English Usage	Michael Swan
Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary	A S Hornby
Errors in English Composition	J C Nesfield
Modern English Grammar	J C Nesfield
Webster's New International Dictionary	
The Pronunciation of English	Daniel Jones
Longman Essential Activator	Longman Corpus Network
Word Power	Norman Lewis
A University Grammar of English	Ramdelph Ouirk + Sidney Greenbaum
Language Dictionary of Contemporary English	Longman Press
Oxford Practice Grammar	John Eastword

Contents

Part 'A'

Foundation Module (Unit-I and Unit-II)

Unit-I

1. The Function of Tenses 1
- Revision Exercises 13
2. Voice 18
3. Modals 28
- Revision Exercises 36
- Answers 38

Unit-II

4. Kinds of Sentences & Clauses 46
- Revision Exercises 55
5. Clause Analysis 59
6. Non-finite Verbs 67
7. Verbs 81
- Revision Exercises 93
- Review Exercise 97
- Answers 107

Unit-III

8. Articles 118
9. Nouns 129
10. Pronouns 137
- Review Exercise 145
- Answers 151

Unit-IV

11. Adjectives 156
12. Adverbs 165
13. Prepositions 172
- Review Exercise 200
- Answers 208

Unit-V

14. Phrasal Verbs 214
15. Idioms and Phrases 228
- Review Exercise 271
- Answers 274

Unit-VI

16. Spotting Errors Exercises 276
17. Sentences Improvement Exercises 298
18. Selecting the Correct Sentences Exercises 334
❖ Answers 346

Part 'B'
(Verbal Ability)

1. Paronyms and Homonyms 354
2. One Word Substitutions 373
3. Words with Meanings 393
❖ Additional Words for Practice 432
4. Synonyms and Antonyms 456
(a) Revision Exercises (Based on Synonyms) 497
(b) Revision Exercises (Based on Antonyms) 513
5. Foreign Words and Expressions 529
6. The Sentence Completion 534
7. Cloze Test 551
❖ Answers 564

Part 'C'

1. Sequence of Sentences 569
2. Objective Comprehension 590
❖ Answers 618

Part 'D'
(Practical Grammar)

1. Narration 621
2. Synthesis 635
3. Transformation 659
4. Punctuation 686
5. Spelling Rules 695
6. Contractions 706
❖ Answers 709

PART-A

UNIT-I : FOUNDATION MODULE

Chapter

The Function of Tenses

A **tense** may be defined as that form of a verb which indicates the time and the **state of an action or event**.

In this manner a verb may refer to—

(A) Time of an action (Tense)

For example—

(i) He goes to school. (Present time of an action)

(ii) He went to school. (Past time of an action)

(iii) He will go to school. (Future time of an action)

From the above sentences, it will be clear to the students that there are three main tenses.

(1) The Present tense, (2) The Past tense, (3) The Future tense

(B) State of an action (Function of tenses)

For example—

(i) I write letters regularly. (Present tense, Habitual function)

(ii) I am writing a letter. (Present continuous, Progressive function)

(iii) I have just written a letter. (Present perfect, Preceding function)

(iv) I have been writing a letter for some time. (Present perfect continuous, Time expression)

The Tenses and their Functions

The Present Indefinite Tense —*Habitual Action*

(A) This tense is generally used to denote **'habit, custom, practice, repeated action, permanent activity, general truth'** etc.

These ideas are expressed by the adverbs of frequency such as **'often, seldom, usually, never, occassionally, sometimes, normally, generally, always, frequently, rarely, daily'**.

For example—

(i) The old lady goes for a walk in the morning.

(ii) Pearl usually believes everybody.

(iii) Arnav often gets late for lunch.

(iv) Suhani always comes in time.

(v) Shaurya Seldom gets up late.

(B) This tense is also used to make a statement in the present **showing permanent nature and activity of the subject and eternal** principles. *For example—*

(i) I know him well.

(ii) He teaches in St. Xavier College.

(iii) The cow gives milk.

(iv) Rivers freeze at high altitude.

Additional Uses of Present Indefinite Tense

Historical Present

(i) Now Netaji enters and addresses the Indian soldiers.

(ii) Now Arjun shoots arrows at Bhishma.

Future Arrangement

(i) The Prime Minister arrives from New York tomorrow.

(ii) He leaves his job next week.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Make the sentences using* ***Present Indefinite*** *tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

1. Buses ..... on this road every hour. (run)
2. His son ..... to school regularly? (go)
3. He ..... egg curry? (like)
4. He ..... in the gymnasium daily. (not practise)
5. He ..... dinner at 8 p.m. (not have)
6. He usually ..... me at dusk. (visit)
7. Neena ..... on the stage. (dance)
8. She ..... at cards every afternoon. (play)
9. Apples ..... ripe in autumn. (get)
10. The last bus normally ..... at mid night. (leave)

The Present Continuous Tense —*Progressive Action*

(A) This tense is normally used **for an action in progress** that is temporary in nature (not for a permanent activity) in the present at the time of speaking. *For example—*

(i) She is not working. She is swimming in the river.

(ii) It is raining outside.

(B) It also expresses **future action or a definite arrangement in the near future.** *For example—*

(i) I am going to the cinema tomorrow.

(ii) She is coming next week.

Additional Uses of Present Continuous Tense

(C) Continuous tense with 'always' may express an idea which is not to the liking of the speaker. *For example—*

(i) She is always teaching her children.

(ii) He is always praising his friends.

(D) There are some of the verbs which sometime don't admit of progressive action. Such verbs are called Non-progressive (Stative verbs). *For example—*

(i) **Verbs of Perception**—See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please.

(ii) **Verbs of Thinking Process**—Think, know, mean, mind.

(iii) **Verbs Showing Possession**—Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain.

(iv) **Verbs Expressing feelings or State of Mind**—Believe, like, love, want, wish, desire, hate.

(v) **Verbs in General**—Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, stand, face, become.

(a) Study these sentences carefully—

Incorrect	Correct
1. He is owning a car.	He owns a car.
2. We are hearing the bell.	We hear the bell.
3. This house is belonging to me.	This house belongs to me.
4. I am not hating him.	I don't hate him.
5. Are you forgetting my name?	Have you forgetten my name?
6. I am not meaning this.	I don't mean this.
7. I am having no house to live in.	I have no house to live in.
8. She stands in the shade of a tree.	She is standing in the shade of a tree.
9. The temple is standing in the heart of the city.	The temple stands in the heart of the city.
10. The book is containing good subject-matter.	The book contains good subject-matter.

(b) ***Mark the difference in the use of stative activity and progressive verbs. (temporary activity)***

1. The rose smells sweet.	Stative verb
2. She is smelling a black rose.	Progressive verb
3. He lives in Chennai.	Stative verb
4. She is living in India at present.	Temporary activity
5. She has a large house to live in.	Stative verb
6. She is having lunch now.	Progressive verb
7. It looks it may rain soon.	Stative verb
8. She is looking at the sky.	Temporary activity
9. I am seeing him next morning.	Progressive verb

10. The nurse is feeling her forehead.	Progressive verb
11. I think she is a miser.	Stative verb
12. I am thinking of leaving Chandigarh.	Progressive verb
13. I love my sister.	Stative verb
14. She is loving her daughter.	Progressive activity

(E) 'While, still, at the moment, presently (at present) and **now'** may help students to express progressive present.

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Make the sentences using* ***Present Continuous*** *tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

1. She ..... she ..... chess with her friends. (not work, play)
2. She ..... for America next year. (leave)
3. What you ..... at present? I ..... a poem. (read, read)
4. We ..... lunch at 2.00 tomorrow as Ram ..... a noon train. (have, catch)
5. Meena usually does the cooking but I ..... it today as she isn't here. (do)
6. Mother ..... bath now as she always takes bath at noon. (take)
7. I can't hear what you .....: the neighbours ..... too much noise. (say, make)
8. She still ..... ? (sing)
9. She ..... to Delhi tomorrow. (go)
10. She can't open the door because she ..... clothes. (put on)

The Present Perfect Tense (Imperfect Past) —*Preceding Action*

(A) This tense is a mixture of present and past. At the time of speaking the action is already complete in the past. It always implies a strong connection with the present though action took place in the past.

Generally, the following adverbs and conjunctions are used to express the **preceding action**.

'Ever, just, recently, already, yet, till (time), so far, of late, lately, before, (by) by the time, after' etc.

Note : 'Just' is used in the sense of 'already'. Other meanings of 'just' are 'now' and 'exactly'.

(i) I have **just** seen that film.
(ii) I have **already** had my breakfast.
(iii) **'Ever'** means 'any time in the past' and, 'always'.
(iv) **'So far, yet, till'** means 'upto now', upto this. (negative implication)
(v) Of late, lately (recently, used only in Present Perfect Tense)

(B) Present Perfect + Point of time = Simple Past
It should be noted that point of time in the past indicates that action took place at a point in the past. The point of time in the past is expressed by **'Since, ever since,**

last, yesterday, the other day, ago, before, back' formerly, (any time in the past) etc. *For example—*

(i) She has returned two days ago/before. (omit 'has')

(ii) She returned two days ago. (Correct)

(C) Present Indefinite + Time expression = Present Perfect

This tense can also be used with **'since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all along'** etc. to express time expression. *For example—*

(i) He has known me for two years.

(ii) She has owned this parlour since 2002.

(**Note** : Look up **Perfect Continuous** tense for details about time expression.)

Work Book Exercise (C)

***Directions** : Make the sentences using **Present Perfect** tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

1. In the movie we just ..... the most extraordinary scene. (see)
2. This is the best book I ever ..... . (read)
3. How long you ..... him? (know)
4. There are no taxies available because the drivers ..... on strike lately. (go)
5. Vinay ..... the punctured tyre of his car yet. (mend)
6. The police ..... the thief so far and the residents are displeased. (arrest)
7. I shall not go to the movie as I already ..... it. (see)
8. You can go. Rain ..... just now. (stop)
9. I ..... him since yesterday. (meet)
10. This house ..... to me since my birth. (belong)

Work Book Exercise (D)

Directions** : Complete the sentences by using the **Present Perfect** or the **Simple Past** as the case may be. **Remember that—

(a) Present Perfect = Preceding action, (Action in the past used in present)

(b) Present Perfect + Point of time = Simple Past

(c) Present Indefinite + Time Expression = Present Perfect

1. Have you taken lunch?
   (a) Yes, I ..... .
   (b) Yes, I ..... at 1 p.m.
2. Have you prepared your lesson?
   (a) Yes, I ..... .
   (b) Yes, I ..... in the morning.
3. Have you seen such a nice movie?
   (a) No, I ..... .
   (b) Yes, I ..... .
   (c) Yes, I ..... last year.

4. Have you opened bank account?
   Yes, I ..... only yesterday.
5. How long have you known this man?
   (a) I ..... him since I arrived here.
   (b) I ..... him when I was at school.
6. When have you learnt driving?
   I ..... when I was at Mumbai.
7. Have you ever met him since he left Delhi?
   (a) No, I ..... him since.
   (b) Yes, I ..... him when he was in the town last week.
8. Have you written a letter to him?
   Yes, I ..... in the morning.
9. Has your scooter stopped?
   No, it ..... but the brakes are loose.
10. Has Mr. Kapoor ever worked with you?
    Yes, he ..... for five years. He has recently retired.

The Past Indefinite Tense —*Habitual Action*

(A) This tense is used for a past habit, indicated generally by—
'Often, seldom, usually, normally, generally, occasionally, sometimes, never, always, frequently, rarely, daily, used to, would' etc. *For example—*

(i) They never drank wine.
(ii) He always carried an umbrella.
(iii) I used to go to Delhi by train.
(iv) She would go there daily.

(B) This tense is also used for a single act completed in the past. **Definite point of time is denoted by—**

'Since, ever since, earlier, ago, back, before, last, yesterday, the other day, (any point of time in the past') etc. *For example—*

(i) I met your brother yesterday.
(ii) She bought a car two years ago.

It is wrong to say—

(i) I have met your brother yesterday. (remove 'have')
(ii) She has bought a car two years ago. (remove 'has')

Note : Present Perfect + Point of time = Simple Past

'Point of time' denotes the time when the action takes place. (Present, Past, Future Tense). *For example—*

(i) I come here every Sunday. (Point of time)
(ii) I went to Delhi yesterday. (Point of time)
(iii) I shall go there tomorrow. (Point of time)

Time Expression—For time expression look up Perfect Continuous Tense.

Work Book Exercise (E)

Directions : Make the sentences using ***Past Indefinite*** tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

1. We ..... a terrifying dream last night. (hear)
2. They ..... their success two days ago. (celebrate)
3. The police ..... the dacoits at 8.30 p.m. (catch)
4. Seema ..... her lost book an hour before. (not find)
5. The train ..... at 8.30 at the station yesterday. (not arrive)
6. My teacher ..... a book last year. (write)
7. As a boy I often ..... to school on foot. (go)
8. My friend Benjamin ..... his home town in the past. (visit)
9. He ..... to his home every weekend. (come)
10. I seldom ..... a cheque even when there was balance in my account. (write)

The Past Continuous Tense —*Progressive Action*

(A) This tense is chiefly used for past action in progress. *For example*—

(i) It was still raining when I reached there. (Past action in progress)
(ii) He was busy in packing last evening. (Past action in progress)

(B) It is also used for a definite arrangement for future in the past. *For example*—

(i) He was leaving that night. (Definite arrangement for future in the past)
(ii) I asked her what she was doing next Sunday.
(Definite arrangement for future in the past)

(C) As mentioned in the case of the present continuous tense, certain verbs don't admit of progressive action. Please study such verbs carefully. **Refer to such verbs under Present Continuous tense section.**

(D) 'While, still, at that moment, then' may help the students to express progressive action in the past.

Work Book Exercise (F)

Directions : *Make the sentences using* ***Past Continuous*** *tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

1. My cousin wears sandals but when I last saw him he ..... boots. (wear)
2. On the beach many children ..... and many girls ..... in the sea. (play, swim)
3. Seema was alone in the house at that time because her father ..... in the garage then. (work)
4. As she ..... the stairs, she slipped and fell. (climb)
5. The teacher went to see what the students ..... in the garden. (do)
6. He did not come because he ..... a meeting next day. (attend)
7. She left study because she ..... that year. (marry)
8. When I went to see my mother, she ..... that moment. (sleep)
9. When I went to bed my sister still ..... (work)
10. She ..... the floor when I called on her. (sweep)

The Past Perfect Tense —*Past Preceding*

(A) This tense is used when out of two actions it is necessary to emphasize that the preceding action was completely finished before the succeeding action started. *For example*—

(i) I had gone to Delhi last week before my father came. **(Correct)**

(ii) I had gone to Delhi last week.

(**Incorrect,** *because preceding action is not implied here*)

(B) Sometimes preceding action is implied and is indicated by the use of—
'Ever, just, recently, already, yet, so far, till (time), by the time, (by), before, after' etc. *For example*—

(i) I had already taken breakfast.

(ii) I had finished the book before he came.

(iii) I had returned from college just then.

(iv) I finished the book after I had returned from college.

(C) This tense is also used as time expression with—
'Since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all along' etc. *For example*—

(i) She had known him for two years.

(ii) He had owned this plaza for five years.

Note : Look up Perfect Continuous tense for details about time expression.

(D) Past Perfect tense used with verbs such as—
'Want, hope, expect, think, suppose, mean, intend' indicate that the action mentioned did not take place. *For example*—

(i) I had wanted to help my brother. (but could not help)

(ii) I had expected to pass. (but did not pass)

(iii) My sister had hoped that I would send her money. (unfulfilled hope)

(iv) Vishal had intended to set up his own business. (but could not)

Work Book Exercise (G)

Directions : *Make the sentences using* ***Past Perfect tense*** *with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

1. After the guests ..... we did the washing. (leave)
2. She ..... all the material by last evening. (type)
3. We ..... shopping before it started raining. (finish)
4. The house ..... to him since his birth. (belong)
5. She was not present because she ..... office when her boss called her. (leave)
6. She ..... this apartment in Mumbai for ten years but never told anyone. (own)
7. He ..... her for two years before he married her. (know)
8. People did not believe him because he ..... credibility. (lose)
9. He could not become a government servant because he ..... part in political activities in his college days. (take)
10. Many students ..... by the time match began. (arrive)

The Future Indefinite Tense —*Future Action*

(A) This tense expresses an action that is to take place in future. *For example*—
'Soon, shortly, in a few moments, tomorrow, presently (soon), next year/ month/ week' etc'. indicate future action. *For example*—

(i) They will come here shortly.
(ii) Ritu will take examination next month.

Note : **Presently** means (i) soon (ii) at present.

(B) It should be noted that there are several ways to express future action in English as given below.

(a) Future action is expressed in the **present continuous tense**. But it is more definite action than the action expressed in the future indefinite. *For example*—
(i) They are coming tomorrow. (certain to come)
(ii) She is marrying soon. (certain to marry)

(b) Future action is also expressed in **the future continuous**. *For example*—
(i) Sushant will be arriving soon. (He will arrive)
(ii) I shall be going tomorrow. (I shall go)

(c) Future action is also expressed in **the present indefinite tense**. *For example*—
(i) She arrives from the U.S.A. next month. (will arrive)
(ii) The Prime Minister leaves for Lucknow tomorrow. (will leave)

Note : Ordinarily, **'shall'** is used with first person of pronoun 'I' and 'we'. **'Will'** is used with second and third persons.

Besides, there are following uses of 'shall' and 'will' :

1. You shall not move.	Order
2. They shall be rewarded.	Assurance/promise
3. I will help my brother.	Determination
4. You shall look after elders.	Duty
5. I will go to Delhi tomorrow.	Intention
6. I shall go to Delhi.	(may or may not go)
7. I shall be drowned	(may be drowned)
8. I will be drowned	(determined to be drowned)

Work Book Exercise (H)

Directions : *Put the verbs in the brackets using either the* ***Simple Future*** *or* ***the Present Continuous/Future Continuous.***

1. I ..... my friend tomorrow. (meet)
2. You ..... college next year. (join)
3. He ..... shortly. (come)
4. I am sure he ..... in time for the class. (come)
5. You ..... English after another two months of hard work. (speak)
6. Our college ..... up for Diwali next week. (break)
7. He ..... next month. (arrive)
8. My tailor ..... my dress tomorrow. (stitch)
9. He ..... dinner with us tonight. (take)
10. He ..... money from the bank for his daughter's marriage. (borrow)

The Future Continuous Tense —*Future Progressive*

(A) This tense is used to express an action that will be in progress with a point of time in future. *For example—*

(i) She will be waiting for me when I reach her home.
(ii) What will he be doing when you visit him?
(iii) Get home at once. Your mother will be wondering where you are.
(iv) Probably, it will be raining when you reach Bhopal.
(v) Rahul will be watching movie on television now.

(B) This tense is also used to express the future indefinite tense or definite future arrangement. *For example—*

(i) He will be going to Pune by car today.
(ii) She will be arriving tomorrow to meet her husband.

(C) As mentioned in the case of the Present Continuous tense certain verbs donot admit of progressive action. Refer to such verbs under Present Continuous tense section.

Work Book Exercise (I)

Directions : *Make the sentences using* ***Future Continuous*** *tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

1. He ..... for Mr. Kapoor next week as his own assistant is expected to be on leave. (work)
2. In a few years time we all ..... in multi-storeyed houses. (live)
3. We ..... ourselves in school today as our principal's mood is very upset now-a-days. (behave)
4. My brother ..... at the party tonight as mother is likely to be present there. (not drink)
5. He surely ..... if you visit his room now. (smoke)
6. You should finish your tea immediately because your father ..... where you are. (think)
7. Richa ..... food when her friend arrives. (cook)
8. We ..... by train this time tomorrow. (travel)
9. We ..... Physics during next term. (study)
10. What the servant ..... when we reach home? (do)

The Future Perfect Tense —*Future Preceding*

(A) This tense is used when out of two actions it is necessary to emphasize that the preceding action will be completely finished before the succeeding action starts in future. Sometimes preceding action is implied and indicated by the use of— **'Ever, just, already, recently, yet, so far, till (time), before, (by), by the time after.'** *For example—*

(i) She will have already prepared food when I reach home.
(ii) He will have rung up his wife before he arrives.
(iii) I think the news will not have been published so far.
(iv) My assistant will have typed five letters by lunch today.

(B) This tense is also used to express time expression.

'Since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all long' denote that action started sometime in the past and is continuing into the present. *For example—*

(i) He will have known her for two years next month.

(ii) He will have suffered a lot by now since his birth.

Work Book Exercise (J)

Directions : *Make the sentences using* ***Future Perfect*** *tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

1. I ..... this essay by tomorrow morning. (complete)
2. At the rate he is studying he ..... by next year. (qualify)
3. The ship ..... before we reach the harbour. (leave)
4. If he continues with his exercises he ..... 10 kg. by the end of this month. (lose)
5. She ..... me for five years next month. (know)
6. The teacher ..... all the syllabus by the end of the year. (finish)
7. If we don't hurry, the train ..... before we reach the station. (leave)
8. By the time the chief guest arrives they ..... the cultural programme. (finish)
9. When you reach there, he ..... bath yet. (take)
10. This house ..... to me for five years on my next birthday. (belong)

Perfect Continuous : Present, Past, Future —*Time Expression*

(A) Perfect continuous tense (Present, Past, Future) denotes an action continuing from the past into the present. It implies the duration of an action. (past to present)

The time expression is normally indicated by—

'Since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all along.'

Note : 'For' is used for a period of time from the past to present. **'Since'** is used for a particular point of time or some event in the past to present.

(B) Time expression can be used with both continuous and indefinite tenses as follows:

(a) Continuous + Time expression = Perfect continuous (Present, Past, Future)

(Action is not yet complete)

(b) Indefinite + Time expression = Perfect (Present, Past, Future)

(Action is complete)

Note : Students should note the difference between point of time and time expression.

(i) She goes to temple every Monday. (Point of time)

(ii) She visited her uncle yesterday. (Point of time)

(iii) She has completed two letters since last night. (Time expression)

(iv) She has been suffering from fever for two days. (Time expression)

(v) She had been playing Chess the whole day yesterday. (Time expression)

Work Book Exercise (K)

Directions : *Make the sentences using* ***Perfect Continuous*** *or* ***Perfect tense*** *(Present, Past, Future) with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.*

Present

1. She ..... me since 2004. (know)
2. For the last ten years he ..... this factory. (own)
3. He ..... in the same class for the last three years. (study)
4. Neena ..... nutritious food since morning. (not eat)
5. It ..... for two days now. (rain)
6. How long you ..... for the train? (wait)
7. I ..... it throughout my life. (believe)
8. I ..... my pocket money since I left school. (earn)
9. Many of our friends ..... us since we bought the new house. (visit)
10. The man and wife in our neighbourhood ..... since they got married. (quarrel)

Past

11. The whole day long he ..... at home and ..... a book yesterday. (sit, read)
12. His radio ..... since 8 a.m. yesterday. The neighbours were getting disturbed. (play)
13. He ..... this building for the last ten years when he sold it. (own)
14. Yesterday she ..... for her lost dog since morning. (search)
15. Last night the dog ..... for a long time. (bark)

Future

16. How long Richa ..... in this house when the new guests arrive tomorrow? (stay)
17. My aunt ..... in England for five years when I go there. (live)
18. She still ..... for two hours when they reach there. (sleep)
19. She ..... as the Principal of that school for five years next month. (work)
20. She ..... me for ten years by next month. (know)

❑

Revision Exercises

(*Based on Function of Tenses*)

Directions *: Each set of the following sentences comprises three alternatives (a), (b) and (c). Choose the most suitable alternative in accordance with the correct use of tense.*

Exercise (A)

1. (a) He seldom has fatty food.
   (b) He is seldom having fatty food.
   (c) He has seldom had fatty food.
2. (a) Why are you cooking food today?
   (b) Why do you cook today?
   (c) Why have you been cooking food today?
3. (a) She had brushed her teeth every night.
   (b) She brushes her teeth every night.
   (c) She is brushing her teeth every night.
4. (a) It is looking that it may rain.
   (b) It is looked that it may rain.
   (c) It looks that it may rain.
5. (a) At present she does not study because she plays in the garden.
   (b) At present she will not study because she plays in the garden.
   (c) At present she is not studying because she is playing in the garden.
6. (a) She just had her lunch.
   (b) She just has had her lunch.
   (c) She has just had her lunch.
7. (a) While they were having dinner, lights went out.
   (b) While they had dinner, lights went out.
   (c) While they were having dinner, lights have gone out.
8. (a) In a week's time I will complete my work.
   (b) In a week's time I will have completed my work.
   (c) In a week's time I will be completed my work.
9. (a) Since my father has joined this post, he did not take bribe.
   (b) Since my father joined this post, he did not take bribe.
   (c) Since my father joined this post, he has not taken bribe.
10. (a) She did not cook her breakfast yet.
    (b) She has cooked her breakfast yet.
    (c) She has not cooked her breakfast yet.
11. (a) She did not open the door because she had washed her hair.
    (b) She did not open the door because she washed her hair.
    (c) She did not open the door because she was washing her hair.

12. (a) I found that my pocket was picked.
    (b) I found that my pocket has been picked.
    (c) I found that my pocket had been picked.

13. (a) By tomorrow afternoon the plane will take off for Moscow.
    (b) By tomorrow afternoon the plane will be taking off for Moscow.
    (c) By tomorrow afternoon the plane will have taken off for Moscow.

14. (a) We did not go out as it still rained.
    (b) We have not gone out as it was still raining.
    (c) We did not go out as it was still raining.

15. (a) Since she started journey, she has felt sick.
    (b) Since she started journey, she is feeling sick.
    (c) Since she started journey, she has been feeling sick.

16. (a) He has scored a century a week ago.
    (b) He has scored a century before a week.
    (c) He scored a century a week ago.

17. (a) My sister has gone to England for higher study only a month ago.
    (b) My sister went to England for higher study only a month ago.
    (c) My sister had gone to England for higher study only a month ago.

18. (a) She left the hospital in 1980 and I did not see her since.
    (b) She has left the hospital in 1980 and I have not seen her since.
    (c) She left the hospital in 1980 and I have not seen her since.

19. (a) I found that he recently went out.
    (b) I found that he had recently gone out.
    (c) I found that he recently gone out.

20. (a) I know her since 1985.
    (b) I knew her since 1985.
    (c) I have known her since 1985.

Exercise (B)

1. (a) By five o'clock yesterday I caught only one fish.
   (b) By five o'clock yesterday I will have caught only one fish.
   (c) By five o'clock yesterday I had caught only one fish.

2. (a) After she had rested for a while she started on her journey.
   (b) After she rested for a while she started on her journey.
   (c) After she rested for a while she had started on her journey.

3. (a) For the last six months I am working on the thesis.
   (b) For the last six months I have been working on the thesis.
   (c) For the last six months I have worked on the thesis.

4. (a) I have been writing six letters since morning.
   (b) I have written six letters since morning.
   (c) I am writing six letters since morning.

5. (a) He lived in London for two years when I went there.
   (b) He was living in London for two years when I went there.
   (c) He had been living in London for two years when I went there.

6. (a) I don't think we met before.
   (b) I don't think we have met before.
   (c) I don't think we had met before.

7. (a) The banks don't open on Sunday.
   (b) The banks had not opened on Sunday.
   (c) The banks are not opening on Sunday.

8. (a) I saw two robbers who prowled near the well.
   (b) I saw two robbers who are prowling near the well.
   (c) I saw two robbers who were prowling near the well.

9. (a) To this day I have not forgotten her good deeds.
   (b) To this day I don't forget her good deeds.
   (c) To this day I had not forgotten her good deeds.

10. (a) How long are you reading this biography?
    (b) How long have you read this biography?
    (c) How long have you been reading this biography?

11. (a) Before she comes the train will depart.
    (b) Before she comes the train will have departed.
    (c) Before she comes the train will be departing.

12. (a) The news of his death was not declared so far.
    (b) The news of his death has not been declared so far.
    (c) The news of his death has been declared so far.

13. (a) Deepak was married to her for five years by then.
    (b) Deepak had been married to her for five years by then.
    (c) Deepak has been married to her for five years by then.

14. (a) I have received your letter this morning.
    (b) I had received your letter this morning.
    (c) I received your letter this morning.

15. (a) They have been owning this property for the last twenty years.
    (b) They have owned this property for the last twenty years.
    (c) They own this property for the last twenty years.

16. (a) India has won freedom in 1947.
    (b) India had won freedom in 1947.
    (c) India won freedom in 1947.

17. (a) Which book have you read last year?
    (b) Which book had you read last year?
    (c) Which book did you read last year?

18. (a) Buses are running on this road every hour.
    (b) Buses run on this road every hour.
    (c) Buses have run on this road every hour.

19. (a) Last week I had gone to the cinema twice.
    (b) Last week I went to the cinema twice.
    (c) Last week I have gone to the cinema twice.

20. (a) When I called on her she did her home work.
    (b) When I had called on her she was doing her home work.
    (c) When I called on her she was doing her home work.

Review Exercise

Directions : *Correct the following sentences by using the correct function of the verb*

1. She is often coming to me on Sundays.
2. She just completed the letter then.
3. It came to my notice lately.
4. My brother has returned from training two months back.
5. I know him for the last twenty years.
6. I never met him this morning.
7. She did not write the letter till now.
8. He was having a number of books.
9. The news of his death has been declared so far.
10. The dog was barking the whole night.
11. For the last six months he is working on this problem.
12. Last week I had met him twice.
13. I found that someone picked my pocket.
14. By the time she returned he typed all letters.
15. She rang me up after she decided to go.
16. How long is she working in the office?
17. The house is belonging to me for the last twenty years.
18. My house is facing the East.
19. Manav has broker a cup last evening.
20. My mother is rarely sleeping at noons.
21. They still write letters today.
22. I own this plot of land since my youth.
23. They found that the tap ran.
24. I cannot believe that he is wasting time all along his life.
25. They brought him home when he died.
26. We have written the letter last evening.
27. He worked for three hours when I met him.
28. Mahmood Gazanavi has invaded India many times.
29. When I met her last year, she was married for three years.
30. How long will you know Ritu on her next birthday?
31. What did you do since I saw you last night?
32. Where have you been an hour ago?
33. He has written this novel in 1985.
34. I didn't ask her what she is doing since.
35. In the morning I found it was raining the whole night.
36. The doctor found that he was bitten by a snake.

37. I try to contact you all these days.
38. I saw that Tom stood in a corner at the banquet.
39. She will leave before he comes.
40. She did not complete the composition yet when I arrived there.
41. How can I come as it still drizzles?
42. By two o'clock yesterday I called on her twice but she was not at home.
43. It is looking that he may not come tonight.
44. I found that he was recently discharged from the hospital.
45. A little later I realized that my luggage was stolen.
46. Where are you keeping your money when you go out?
47. I admired him since the day I met him.
48. When at last we reached school the bell was already rung.
49. I am sorry that you left your book in the library when you came here last time.
50. I am leaving for my office early every morning.
51. What do you look at the road? Does something happen there?
52. My wife paints furniture whenever she had time.
53. Of late she did not go to any movie.
54. This is the best book that he ever read.
55. I didn't know what she is writing for the last two years.
56. By the time she comes he will complete the work.
57. The book will be written by next year.
58. I saw that the book lay on the table.
59. She will already return home when he arrives.
60. Don't worry since she just had her breakfast.

❑

Chapter

2 Voice

A verb may tell us about what a person or a thing does. Therefore, a verb is said to be an action on the part of a doer/subject. *For example*—

(i) They will **do** the work.

(ii) The teacher **has punished** the boy.

The verbs 'do, punish' are transitive. The actions of the subjects 'They, The teacher' passes over to the objects 'work, the boy'. Therefore, these verbs are called transitive.

The Verb may **also tell us what** is done to a person or a thing.

Now read the following sentences :

(iii) The work **will be done** by them. (Passive Voice)

(iv) The boy **has been punished** by the teacher. (Passive Voice)

How to Define a Voice?

(a) In active voice a sentence begins with a subject (They, The teacher) sentence (i) & (ii).

(b) In passive voice a sentence begins with an object (The work, The boy) sentences (iii) & (iv).

However, sentences only with **transitive verbs** admit of Passive Expressions.

Now study the following sentences :

(v) Jaya **came** here.

(vi) Father **is going** out.

The verbs 'come, go' are **intransitive** because these verbs do not have objects. The effect of the action does not pass over to any object. Therefore, these verbs are called intransitive. Since they are not used with object, they do not admit of Passive Expression.

Therefore, before making a sentence, a student must note carefully whether the sentence is beginning with subject or object.

How to Make a Passive Voice?

(a) The passive voice of an active voice is formed by using the verb **'to be'**. However, the original active verb must be converted **into Past Participle**.

(b) Object may be placed before the verb in passive expression.

Now study the examples.

Note : The forms of 'Be' as used in passive voice are explained in the table below—

In conclusion, the construction of these sentences may be represented as follows—

(a) (i) Subject + Transitive verb + Object (Active)

(ii) Subject + Intransitive verb. (Active)

(b) Object + To be + PP of Transitive verb + Subject (Passive voice)

[Passive voice — Sentences (iii) and (iv)]

The Verb 'To be' (Study the following table)

The verb **'To be'** has following two uses—

1. As an **auxilliary verb** it is used with other verbs both in active and passive voice.
2. As an **ordinary/regular verb** it is used in 'No verb' sentences.

The forms of 'to be'	Tenses	The forms of verb in passive voice	No verb
Be	Infinitive, Modals, Future Indefinite,		Noun Pronoun
is, am, are was, were	Present Indefinite Past Indefinite	PP (Past Participle)	Adjective Adverb
been	Perfect (Present, Past, Future)	of Transitive Verb	
being	Continuous (Present, Past), Participle/Gerund		

The use of **'To be'** in the passive sentences—
Object + be (be + P.P of Transitive Verb) + by Subject

(A) Infinitive, (B) Modals, (C) Future Indefinite

(i) He doesn't like to be punished.
(ii) The young persons should be taught good manners.
(iii) He will be punished for his misbehaviour.

(D) Present Indefinite —is, am, are

(i) She is taught English daily by her class teacher.
(ii) I am often invited to attend party by my friends.
(iii) Elections are held every five years.

(E) Past Indefinite—was, were

(i) She was punished for her negligence.
(ii) Both the friends were selected for senior Hockey team.

(F) Perfect (Present, Past, Future)—been

(i) He has just been elected as a member of the Committee.
(ii) She had already been admitted to hospital.
(iii) My friend will have been married by now.

(G) Continuous (Present, Past)—being

(i) The match is being telecast now.
(ii) The match was being telecast yesterday.

(H) Participle/Gerund—being

(i) Nobody likes being cheated.
(ii) The murderer escaped being hanged.
(iii) I saw her being taken to hospital.

Note : Future continuous and perfect continuous tenses do not admit of passive voice expressions.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Use the verbs given in brackets either in active or passive as the case may be.*

1. The teacher ..... with the students yesterday for their misbehaviour. (annoy)
2. The criminals should ..... at the earliest. (punish)
3. I ..... then that he ..... working hard. (convince, be)
4. Prohibition in many states ..... lately by the State Governments. (enforce)
5. His parents ..... when he did not arrive at the function. (disappoint)
6. Our leaders ought to ..... honestly in the interest of common people. (behave)
7. Children should ..... with responsibility to make them feel responsible. (entrust)
8. I ..... to see my Aunt when I reached home. (amaze)
9. My father ..... when he sees my brother's report card. (please)
10. The eldest son ..... the burden of the whole family these days. (bear)
11. The residents ..... to see five cold blooded murders in her house last night. (alarm)
12. The parents ..... to hear that their son was involved in the theft. (ashame)
13. I ..... to receive a nice birthday present from my cousin a month ago. (delight)
14. We ..... to see her behaving in a confident manner last night. (satisfy)
15. Yesterday the police..... to find the door closed from outside. (perplex)
16. I ..... by the sound of a cracker in the midnight yesterday. (startle)
17. The train ..... when you reach station as you are late. (leave)
18. The venue of marriage ..... still when the guests arrived. (decorate)
19. The principal ..... to see the results of the students tomorrow. (surprise)
20. Yesterday every student ..... to find the question-paper out of syllabus.(confuse)

Some Hints on Making Passive Voice

(I) The objects used in the following sentences are used with verbs which do not agree with the common rules of verbs. Such nouns are given in chapter on Nouns under Rule (iv) & (v).

Study the following sentences—

(i) He gave me spectacles.
Spectacles were given to me by him.

(ii) They play Billiards.
Billiards is played by them.

In these sentences the noun 'spectacles' is followed by plural verb and 'Billiards' by singular verb. Students should take note of such misleading nouns.

(II) Study carefully the use of interrogative pronoun while changing active sentences into passive.

'Which, what' etc. are placed as they are

However, when 'What/Which' is used as a subject, it is changed into 'By what'.

But 'Who' is changed into 'By whom' and 'Whom' is changed into 'Who'.

(i) What are you writing?
What is being written by you?

(ii) What makes you angry?
By what are you made angry?
(iii) Who teaches you English?
By whom are you taught English?
Or Who are you taught English by?
(iv) Whom are you teaching?
Who is being taught by you?
(v) Which girl helped you?
By which girl were you helped?

(III) (a) When the subjects are indefinite/vague pronouns or understood nouns, it is not necessary to use them in passive voice as 'by somebody'.

(i) Somebody has picked my pocket.
My pocket has beed picked.
(ii) They will declare the result soon.
The result will be declared soon.

(b) Sentences beginning with negative indefinite pronouns are converted into negative. *For example—*

(i) Nobody can change destiny.
Destiny cannot be changed.
(ii) None saw her in the parlour.
She was not seen in the parlour.

(IV) When principle clause is followed by Noun clause as object the passive voice is made as follows—

(i) People consider that he is honest.
It is considered that he is honest.
(ii) We hope that he will pass.
It is hoped that he will pass.

Study these verbs carefully which are followed by Noun clause as object 'consider, believe, understand, suspect, report, say, claim, know, expect, allege, find', learn, require, suppose (appear, seem)

(V) Verbs with two objects—Sometimes verbs are used with two objects in active voice sentences. Passive Voice can be made with either of the objects.

(i) He gave me a book.
(a) I was given a book by him.
(b) A book was given to me by him.
(ii) They made him King. (Complement; King is complement of the verb 'make')
He was made King.

(VI) 'By' is not used with certain verbs when making a passive voice, Instead we use at, with, in, to, etc.

(i) I know him.
He is known to me.
(ii) Her sudden arrival surprised everyone
Everybody was surprised at her sudden arrival.

(VII) Infinitives

(i) She is to write a letter.
A letter is to be written by her.

(ii) They were to complete the work.
The work was to be completed by them.

(iii) My sister has to buy a new car.
A new car has to be bought by my sister.

(iv) There is nothing to lose.
There is nothing to be lost.

(v) I would like someone to help me.
I would like to be helped.

(vi) I am not to blame for the loss. [Passive sense (responsible for)]

(VIII) Participles/Gerund

(i) I remember my mother taking me to doctor.
I remember being taken to doctor by my mother.

(ii) I found his friends laughing at him.
I found him being laughed at by his friends.

(IX) If a preposition or an adverb is used with a verb to convey specific meaning, it should not be removed while making a passive voice. For example—

(i) Mothers **look after** their children.
Children are looked after by their mothers.

(ii) You should not **look down upon** the poor.
The poor should not be looked down upon.

(X) The Verbs, 'Let, bid, make, help, feel, see, watch, hear', are used with direct infinitive (without to) in active voice.

In passive voice these verbs are used with Infinitive (to + verb)
'Let' is an exception. 'Let' is followed by direct infinitive both in active & passive voice sentences. *For example*—

(i) I bade him go.
He was bidden to go.

(ii) I have made her sing a song.
She has been made to sing a song.

(iii) She let me go.
I was let go by her.

(XI) Imperative Sentences

(i) Command and order
(ii) Permission, Request, Advice

1. Command and Order

(a) Passive–When object is given, use Let + object + be + Past Participle.
Bring a book
Let a book be brought.
Turn Payal out
Let Payal be turned out.

(b) Passive–When no object is given, begin in the sentence with–
You are ordered/commanded to.....
(i) Go out at once
You are ordered to go out at once.
(ii) Don't stay here.
You are ordered not to stay here.

2. Permission, Request, Advice.

(a) Passive–When object is given, make passive with object
Object + Should + Past Participle
(i) Obey Parents
Parents should be obeyed
(ii) Listen to me
I should be listened to
(iii) Prepare for war
You should be prepared for war
Or
Be prepared for war

Note : Use of let is avoided in this type of sentences.

(b) Passive voice—When no object is given, begin the sentence with
You are allowed, requested or advised.....
(i) Please come soon
You are requested to come soon
(ii) Please don't talk loudly
You are requested not to talk loudly.

(XII) Sentences Beginning with Let (Permission & Suggestion)

(a) Passive–When object is given make passive voice as follows–
(i) Let me play here (Permission)
I may be allowed to play here.
(ii) Let us help him. (Suggestion)
He should be helped.

(b) Passive–When no object is given, begin, the sentence, with.....
It is suggested.....
(i) Let us stay here (Suggestion)
It is suggested that we should stay here.
(ii) Let us sleep here.
It is suggested that we should sleep here.

(XIII) 'To be' is often allowed in the sense of 'have' in passive voice sentences of the following verbs—

'Fall, rise, come, arrive, go, lose.'
(i) Mighty Caeser is fallen. (has fallen)
(ii) Summer is come. (has come)

(iii) The book is lost. (has been)
(iv) The sun is risen. (has risen)
(v) Golden days are gone. (have gone)

(XIV) Miscellaneous Sentences

Study these sentences carefully :

1. The police arrested a militant and sent him to jail. (Active)
   A millitant was arrested by police and (was) sent to jail. (Passive)
2. It is necessary to help the poor. (Active)
   The poor are required to be helped. (Passive)
3. It is time to wind up business. (Active)
   It is time for the business to be wound up. (Passive)
4. The fruit tastes sweet. (Active)
   The fruit is sweet when (it is) tasted. (Passive)
5. I have to stay here. (Active)
   I am obliged to stay here. (Passive)
6. It is your duty to help your children. (Active)
   You are supposed (bound in duty) to help your children. (Passive)
7. It is impossible to do. (Active)
   It is impossible to be done. (Passive)

The Use of 'TO BE' (As An Ordinary/Regular Verb)

As an ordinary verb : It is used to denote a **state, condition, existence, quality, time, distance, weather etc.**

There is no action in this kind of sentences.

(i) She **is** a naughty child.

(ii) She **was** healthy.

In these sentences, **'To be'** verb has been used alone. It is itself an ordinary verb. For our convenience we may call them 'No verb sentences'.

Work Book Exercise (B)

***Directions** : The use of 'To be' as an ordinary verb.*

1. I wonder where Atul ..... lately. (be)
2. Where ..... you an hour ago? (be)
3. Of late there ..... great improvements in the city. (be)
4. Mr. Bhargava ..... our family doctor since long. (be)
5. My friend ..... in Mumbai for ten years when I ..... there last month. (be, transfer)
6. Everybody presumes that she may ..... present at the time of her brother's marriage next month. (be)

7. He ..... ill for the last ten days when his wife ..... him yesterday. (be, visit)
8. He ..... 20 now, next year he ..... an adult. (be, be)
9. The milkman ..... absent since last Sunday. (be)
10. He ..... in Delhi for ten years when I went there. (be)
11. I am convinced now that his political views ..... worth listening to. (be)
12. She ..... to Mumbai lately with her father for treatment. (be)
13. There ..... a lot of money for you in this job. (be)
14. He ..... a petty clerk only ten years ago. (be)
15. The dinner ..... ready before we arrived. (be)

Work Book Exercise (C)

Direction : *Change the voice according to the corresponding rules explained above.*

Rule I. 1. He bought new scissors.
2. They have brought news for you.
3. The minister has issued orders for his transfer.
4. I received summons yesterday.
5. He has repaired his quarters.

Rule II. 1. Which book do you like most?
2. Who did this work?
3. What are you teaching?
4. Whom do you like most?
5. Who has taught you English?
6. What is he teaching you?
7. What caused this loss?
8. Which student took you home?

Rule III. 1. Nobody can mend this wall.
2. Nobody saw him going out.
3. Somebody has stolen my books.
4. One should do one's duty.
5. Somebody told us to wait outside.
6. We worship God.
7. They say so.
8. Some people have seen the ghosts.
(The subject is not vague in this sentence.)
9. The Police arrested the thief.
10. The university will declare the result soon.

Rule IV. 1. They hope that he will pass.
2. People believe that he will return soon.
3. We decided that we would leave early.
4. Nobody knows how rich he is.
5. He expects that he will pass.

Rule V. 1. He has given me a book.
2. They will ask me a question.
3. They made him Captain.
4. She told me a story.
5. He bought me a scooter.
6. I shall read you this report.
7. They refused him admission to the college.
8. I have offered him a job.
9. I shall show him the library.
10. She did not lend me money.
11. Twenty members comprise the committee.

Rule VI. 1. I do not expect it from you.
2. The angry mob thronged the roads.
3. A blow of lathi killed the dog.
4. Do you know the lady?
5. The book contains much information.
6. The servant annoyed the master.
7. His behaviour surprised everyone.
8. His insolence has annoyed the teacher.
9. Their jokes disgusted me.
10. Material life always disgusts him.
11. They keep the details on the computers.
12. My sister bore a son last year.
13. Her looks impressed everybody.
14. Their idle talk will vex you.
15. The movie does not interest her.
16. Your explanation will not satisfy your boss.
17. His actions pleased his father.
18. Her behaviour shocked me.
19. His failure in life disappointed his wife.
20. The sound of the blast alarmed the villagers.

Rule VII & VIII. 1. Arnav is to help his sister.
2. Shaurya has to distribute sweets.
3. They saw the police chasing a terrorist.
4. She was to write a book on animals.
5. They found him helping the poor.

Rule IX. 1. What are you listening to?
2. They were searching for the lost book.
3. The Government cannot dispense with computers.
4. I have never heard of such an accident.
5. All his friends will laugh at him.
6. Do not discriminate against the poor.

Rule X. 1. I made him write a letter.
2. She let me stay in her home.
3. She bade me leave the room.
4. They heard her sing a song.
5. I saw him go.

Rule XI. 1. Obey your teacher.
2. Do it as early as possible.
3. Do not go out.
4. Prevent him from going out.
5. Please enter by this door.
6. Do not insult the weak.
7. Get out of the room.
8. Kindly give me some money.

Rule XII. 1. Let me sleep here.
2. Let them watch the match.
3. Let us watch T.V.
4. Let us not hurt anybody.
5. Let us go now.
6. Let us enter college. (request)

❑

Chapter

3 Modals

There are two classes of verbs.

(i) Ordinary/Regular verbs,

(ii) Auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary verbs are of two kinds :—

(a) Primary Auxilary

Be, Do, Have

(b) Modal Auxiliary

May, might, should, must, will etc.

What is Modal Auxilary?

A verb used to express the mood (mode) or attitude of a speaker is called Modal Auxiliary.

For example—

(i) You **should** regularly go for a morning walk.

(ii) They **must** attend tomorrow's meeting.

(iii) **May** I use your pen please?

(iv) You **can** park the car in front of our house.

(v) You **may** take these books home.

(vi) **Could** you open the door please?

Most Commonly Used Modals

Can	Could	May	Might
Should	Would	Must	Ought to
Am/Was to	Have/Had to	Used to	Need
Dare	Shall, will		

All these Modals suggest :

(A) Permission

(B) Ability

(C) Possibility

(D) Suggestion, Advice

(E) Promise

(F) Intention

(G) Request

(H) Necessity, Compulsion

(I) Prohibition

(J) Wish or Prayer

(K) Duty, Obligation

Different Uses of Modals

1. May & Might : These modal auxiliary verbs 'may & might' are used to express–

(A) Possibility

(i) It *may/might* rain.
(ii) He *may/might* go to Delhi tomorrow.
(iii) You *may* fall.
(iv) Teena said that she *might* go there.

(B) Permission

(i) *May* I come in?
(ii) Yes, you *may* come in.

(C) Wish or Prayer

(i) *May* you enjoy marital happiness!
(ii) *May* you live long!

(D) Purpose

(i) She works hard so that she *may* pass.
(ii) She came so that she *might* see me.

(E) Remote Possibility

'Might' is used in place of 'may' to express remote possibility.

(i) It might rain.
(ii) He might be sleeping now.

Normally both 'May & Might' can be used to express possibility present and future. However, 'might' is used when the reporting verb is in the past. See sentence no. (iv) in **(A)** and sentence no. (i) in **(D)**.

(F) May/Might+Have : They are used to express possibility/desirability relating to the past action. *For example—*

(i) He *may/might* have left yesterday. (It is possible he left)
(ii) He *might* have failed. (It is possible he failed)
(iii) Better, you *might* not *have* revealed the secret. (The secret was revealed)

Note : Sometimes 'May/Might have' give the opposite sense of the action.

2. Can & Could (Able to) : They are used to express—

(A) Ability (Present, Past & Future)

(i) She *can* write English well. (is able to)
(ii) Meetu *could* play at cards. (was able to)
(iii) She will be able to help me. (future of 'can')
(iv) I have been able to do it. (perfect of 'can')

(B) Polite request

(i) *Could* you please do it for me? ('would' is also used for polite request)
(ii) *Could* you please lend me some money?

(C) Permission/Order

(i) Yes, you *can* go now.

(ii) You *can* take my book. (Here 'can' is an alternative to 'may')

(D) Prohibition/Offer

(i) You *cannot* enter the room. (Prohibition)

(ii) *Can* I get you some fruits? (Offer)

(iii) *Can* I help you? (Offer)

(E) Possibility

(i) Who is she with him?

She *could* be his wife. (possibly she is)

(ii) How old is she?

She *could* be sixteen. (possibly, she is)

(F) Could + Have : This form is used for past ability while indicating that the action did not take place. *For example*—

(i) I *could have* revealed the secret. (but I did not)

(ii) You *could have* borrowed money. (but you did not)

(iii) The police *could have* arrested him. (but they did not)

Note : In all these sentences the action did not take place.

3. SHOULD : It is used to express—

(A) Duty/Obligation

(i) You *should* **stand by** your brother.

(ii) I *should* leave now.

(iii) Promises *should* be kept.

(iv) He *should* be present here.

(B) Future in the past

(i) I told him that I *should* go there.

(ii) Did I not tell you that I *should* qualify?

(C) Purpose

Walk carefully lest you should fall.

(D) Condition

Should you work hard, you will get success. ('should' is used in the sense of 'if')

(E) Should + Have : This form is used to express obligation in the past. It may imply the non-performance of the action. *For example*—

(i) You *should have* stood by your brother.

(ii) He *should have* left a massage.

(iii) He *should have* been present at the party.

(iv) My brother *should have* replied politely.

4. **MUST** : It expresses—

(A) Necessity or Obiligation (in place of 'should')

(i) You *must* follow instructions.

(ii) I *must* leave now.

(B) Order of the speaker

(i) You *must not* leave now.

(ii) They *must not* play here.

(C) Strong possibility (in place of 'may')

(i) It is ten. The teacher *must* be in the class.

(ii) She *must* be working in the office now.

(D) Determination

I *must* help him.

(E) Deduction, Inference

(i) He has a big house. He *must* be rich.

(ii) She reads a lot. She *must* be learned.

(F) Must + Have : This form is used for a past action or situation indicating non-performance of action. *For example*—

(i) You *must* have followed instructions.

(ii) You *must* have left them.

(iii) I *must* have helped him.

5. **OUGHT TO** : It expresses—

(A) Duty or Moral Obligation : It is normally used for 'should & must', when there is strong sense of moral duty, advice or indication of **correct action.** *For example*—

(i) You *ought to* serve your motherland.

(ii) You *ought not to* take fatty food.

(iii) You *ought to* take food before leaving.

(B) Ought to + Have : This construction is used in relation to past action of duty that was not fulfilled or an action that was neglected in the past.

(i) You *ought to have* taken care of your wife.

(ii) You *ought to have* served your parents.

(iii) He *ought to have* been present at the wedding of his friend.

(iv) He *ought* not *to have* smoked in the bus.

6. **To Be + Infinitive** : This expression is used to—

(A) Express plan

(i) I am to make a speech tomorrow.

(ii) She is to leave for the States after marriage.

(iii) I was to make a speech yesterday.

(iv) She was to leave for the States for higher study.

The last two sentences do not state expressly about the implementation of the plan.

(B) Express Order (In the sense of 'must')

(i) Students are to wait outside.

(ii) The servant is to remain in the house till we return.

(C) Obligation/Duty

(i) I am to help my ailing brother.

(ii) My friend was to send money to his sister.

(D) To be + have : This expression is used to express an action that could not take place according to plan.

(i) He was to have attended marriage but fell ill.

(ii) Deepu was to have appeared at the examination but she gave up the plan.

7. **TO HAVE + INFINITIVE** : This expression is used to express compulsion as is expressed with **'MUST'**. It also expresses obligation (In the Present, Past and Future).

(i) I have to leave for Delhi today.

(ii) I don't have to meet him now. (need not)

(iii) I have not to meet him now.

(iv) I will have to get up early in the morning.

(v) I had to leave for Delhi yesterday.

(vi) I did not have to meet him there. (need not have)

8. **USED TO : WOULD.** They are used—

(A) To Denote Habitual Action or the Past Routine of the Subject.

(i) He *used to* go to Delhi by car.

(ii) He *used not to* go to Delhi.

(iii) He did not *use to* go to Delhi.

(iv) Dina *would* study at noon.

(v) She *would* go out with me in the morning.

(B) To Denote discontinued Action

(i) He *used to* play hockey. (now he has stopped)

(ii) She *used to* work in office before marriage. (not now)

(C) 'Used to' is also used as an adjective (be used to) : It is equal to 'accustomed to' as—

(i) He is *used to* getting up early.

(ii) I was *used to* driving through crowded streets.

(iii) He will be *used to* taking dinner early.

(iv) We are *used to* hot noons in the plains.

9. **WOULD** : It is used in the following cases—

(i) *Would* you please help my son? (polite request)

(ii) She told me that she *would* give me money. (future in the past)

(iii) I *would*/should like to play now. (wish)

(iv) I *would*/should be glad to help you. (wish)

(v) I would rather stay. (wish)
(vi) Who is she? She *would* be his sister. (possibly she is)
(vii) She *would* be sixteen. (possibly she is)
(viii) If only you *would* stay with me. (wish)
(ix) He *would* go to Delhi by car. (habitual)

10. NEED & NEED NOT—'Need' can be treated as an **auxiliary or as an ordinary verb.** As an auxiliary verb it is used mainly in the negative and the interrogative forms with direct infinitive. It has no past tense.

(A) Need Not : It is used for an action which is not necessary. *For example*—

(i) He *needs* to work hard. (Ordinary Verb)
(ii) *Need* I write to him? (Auxiliary verb)
(iii) He *need* not go there again. (Auxiliary verb)
(iv) Rohit *need* not phone her now. (Auxiliary verb)
(v) You do not need to work now. (Ordinary verb)
(vi) Do you need to work now? (Ordinary verb)

(B) Need Not + Have—This form is used for an action which was not necessary but was performed. *For example*—

(i) You *need not have* gone there.
(ii) Rohit *need not have* phoned her yesterday.

11. DARE : 'Dare' can be treated as an auxiliary or as an ordinary verb. As an auxiliary verb it is used mainly in the negative and the interrogative forms with direct infinitive.

(i) She *dared* her sister to touch her. (Challenge, Ordinary verb)
(ii) He does not *dare* me to fight. (Challenge, Ordinary verb)
(iii) I *dare* to go outside now. (To have courage, Ordinary verb)
(iv) He *dares* to abuse his rivals. (To have courage, Ordinary verb)
(v) I *dare* not go outside now. (Auxiliary verb)
(vi) He *dare* not abuse his rivals. (Auxiliary verb)
(vii) *Dare* you go outside now? (Auxiliary verb)
(viii) *Dare* he say so? (Auxiliary verb)
(ix) He *dared* not go outside then. (Auxiliary verb)
(x) *Dared* he say so? (Auxiliary verb)
(xi) I *dare* say she will cheat you. (I suppose)
(xii) I *dare* say my friend will pass. (it is likely)

Note : 'S' is not used with dare & need as auxiliary verbs.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Complete the sentences with suitable alternatives.*

May & Might

1. She expects that her son ..... .
   (a) can return. (b) may return. (c) should return.
2. If we request her she ..... to college.
   (a) must give a lift (b) might give a lift (c) can give a lift
3. It is possible Marlowe ..... plays for Shakespeare.
   (a) may write (b) might have written (c) might write
4. All felt that he ..... a cheat.
   (a) may be (b) can be (c) might be
5. ..... I go out? asked her son.
   (a) Should (b) May (c) Must
6. "Yes, you .....", the mother answered.
   (a) should go (b) may go (c) must go
7. The son asked his mother if he ..... .
   (a) can go out. (b) may go out. (c) might go out.
8. ..... our king live long!
   (a) May (b) Must (c) Should
9. We eat so that we ..... live.
   (a) may (b) might (c) can
10. He went there so that he ..... borrow money.
    (a) may (b) can (c) might

Should

11. She advised that I ..... curtail expenditure.
    (a) should (b) shall (c) should have
12. You ..... him that gambling would ruin him.
    (a) should warn (b) should have warned (c) must warn
13. We enjoyed the movie, you ..... there.
    (a) should have been (b) can be (c) should be
14. ..... you work hard, you will pass.
    (a) Would (b) Will (c) Should
15. I told him that I ..... leave next day.
    (a) should (b) should have (c) could
16. Make haste lest you ..... late.
    (a) should get (b) should not get (c) may not got

Must

17. She ..... work hard if she wants to top the merit list.
    (a) must have (b) must (c) must not
18. She ..... alone as it was raining heavily.
    (a) must not leave (b) must not have left (c) should not leave

19. Principal to a student : You ..... with bad girls.
(a) must not mix (b) cannot mix (c) may not mix
20. She ..... alone as it is raining heavily.
(a) must not leave (b) must not have left (c) should not have left
21. There ..... something wrong with the cooker today.
(a) must be (b) should have been (c) must have been
22. Swati is gentle, her sister ..... it.
(a) should have done (b) must have done (c) should do
23. I am sure the Principal ..... in his room.
(a) should be (b) can be (c) must be

Ought to

24. You ..... obey your parents.
(a) should (b) ought to (c) must
25. You ..... stood by your sister, when she was in difficulties.
(a) ought to (b) ought to have (c) should have

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Complete the sentences with suitable alternatives.*

Can, Could

1. Since the keys are with my brother, I ..... you money.
(a) will not lend (b) cannot lend (c) may not lend
2. She told me that she ..... English fluently and was very happy.
(a) could speak (b) could have spoken (c) can speak
3. ..... you please help my son?
(a) Can (b) was able to (c) Could
4. After we had changed the punctured tyre we ..... continue our journey.
(a) can (b) was able (c) were able to
5. My friend did not help me though he ..... helped.
(a) could (b) could have (c) should

To Be + Infinitive

6. He ..... catch the first train tonight.
(a) is to (b) was to have (c) is to have
7. How are you here? You ..... her marriage.
(a) are to attend (b) were to attend (c) were to have attended
8. She ..... the first flight so she hurried to the airport in a taxi.
(a) was to catch (b) am to catch (c) was to have caught

Would, Used to, Be used to

9. She told me that she ..... go to Mumbai next month.
(a) will (b) should (c) would
10. He ..... go to college daily by bus in his college days.
(a) should (b) would (c) will

11. ..... you please help my son?
(a) Should (b) Can (c) Would

12. My friend ..... visit me every Sunday when I was ill.
(a) used to (b) is used to (c) was used to

13. Deepa ..... getting up early in the morning.
(a) used to (b) is used to (c) accustomed to

Need not

14. My sister ..... to Delhi in such circumstances.
(a) need not go (b) need not to have gone (c) need not to go

15. She ..... here last night as her friend was better then.
(a) need not have stayed (b) need not stay (c) should not have stayed

16. You ..... your note books from tomorrow.
(a) need not bring (b) need not to bring (c) need not have brought

17. ..... there while my father had forbidden me?
(a) Do I need go (b) Need I go (c) Need I have gone

Dare

18. Yesterday she ..... her sister to touch her.
(a) dares (b) does not (c) dared

19. He dares ..... his rivals.
(a) abuse (b) to abuse (c) abusing

20. I dare not ..... outside now.
(a) go (b) to go (c) going

Revision Exercise

(*Based on Functions, Voice and Modals*)

Directions : *Correct the following sentences (Wrong part of the sentence is given in bold italics) :*

1. ***Did you ever go*** to Appu Ghar in Delhi recently?
2. Mini ***has left*** for her husband's last weekend.
3. We observed that the policeman ***chased*** a thief at that moment.
4. Do it or you ***punish***.
5. The police think that Neena ***may be there*** yesterday at the time of murder.
6. After he ***murdered*** the child, his ***body threw*** into the river.
7. I ***just had*** my bath and I am ready.
8. It is a beautiful night. The stars ***twinkle*** in the sky.
9. Don't worry. You ***may leave*** your purse in staff room yesterday.
10. The dinner ***had prepared*** yet when our guests arrived.
11. I can't hear what you ***say*** now.
12. How much money ***did you waste*** since the death of your uncle?

13. I can't remember when I ***had seen*** her last.
14. My friend will ***select*** in the interview next month.
15. Smoking ***has to ban*** to avoid risk to children.
16. When I called on her she ***was mending*** socks for one hour.
17. I think the news ***might*** true.
18. I told her that I ***was understanding*** her very well.
19. While she ***strolled*** in the garden, she came across her old friend.
20. The labourers ***tired*** after a day's work and are enjoying sound sleep.
21. The boss ***satisfied*** to see the neat work of the secretary yesterday.
22. Please wait for a while, my wife ***prepares*** coffee.
23. I wonder what Atul ***had done*** lately.
24. "***He may succeed*** in his new venture", his friends prayed.
25. Before you started you ***must check*** your purse.
26. He ***has finished*** dinner yet.
27. Since she started journey, she ***had been*** feeling sick.
28. The book ***has just lost*** today.
29. I ***am*** to Mumbai recently with my family.
30. While you were young, you ***ought to learn*** good habits.
31. Then I realized that something ***burnt***.
32. When I visited my friend she ***had been sweeping*** the floor.
33. He returned the money to the police though he ***could keep it***.
34. She ***was never*** to such a nice movie before her marriage.
35. ***Can you*** please help my son in getting a job?
36. I could not open the lock because I ***lost*** the key.
37. If you get through the examination I ***shall*** very happy.
38. I ***have been writing*** six letters since morning.
39. I ***was to catch*** the first train, but had to cancel the programme.
40. When I met her last year she ***was married*** for three years.
41. You ***ought to*** honest in your dealings.
42. He is reading a biography which is the third he ***read*** this year.
43. On next Dussehra they ***will live together for ten years***.
44. We left for Delhi after the function ***was*** over.
45. It was very hot, you ***need not bring*** your woollen clothes.
46. I have been to Bhopal last year.
47. Where have you been yesterday?
48. Will you please send me some money?
49. Who is she with him? I think she will be his wife.
50. Is Shiva used to sleep late?

❑

ANSWERS

PART-A

UNIT-I : FOUNDATION MODULE

1. The Function of Tenses

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. run
2. Does his son go
3. does he like
4. does not practise
5. does not have
6. visits
7. dances
8. plays
9. get
10. leaves

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. is not working, is playing
2. is leaving
3. are you reading, am reading
4. we are having, is catching
5. am doing
6. is taking
7. are saying, are making
8. Is she still singing?
9. is going
10. is putting on

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. have just seen
2. have ever read
3. have you known
4. have gone
5. has not mended
6. have not arrested
7. have already seen
8. has just stopped
9. have not met
10. has belonged

Work Book Exercise (D)

1. (a) have taken (b) took
2. (a) have prepared (b) prepared
3. (a) haven't seen (b) have seen
   (c) saw
4. opened
5. (a) have known (b) knew
6. learnt
7. (a) have not met (b) met
8. wrote
9. has not stopped
10. has worked, has recently retired

Work Book Exercise (E)

1. heard
2. celebrated
3. caught
4. did not find
5. did not arrive
6. wrote
7. went
8. visited
9. came
10. wrote

Work Book Exercise (F)

1. was wearing
2. were playing, were swimming
3. was working
4. was climbing
5. were doing
6. was attending
7. was marrying
8. was sleeping
9. was still working
10. was sweeping

Work Book Exercise (G)

1. had left
2. had typed
3. had finished
4. had belonged
5. had left
6. had owned
7. had known
8. had lost
9. had taken
10. had arrived

Work Book Exercise (H)

1. will meet/am meeting
2. will join/are joining
3. will come/will be coming
4. will come/is coming
5. will speak/will be speaking
6. will break/is breaking
7. will arrive/is arriving
8. will stitch/is stitching
9. will take/is taking
10. will borrow/is borrowing/will be borrowing

Work Book Exercise (I)

1. will be working/will work
2. shall be living
3. will be behaving
4. will not be drinking/will not drink
5. will be smoking
6. will be thinking
7. will be cooking
8. will be travelling
9. will be studying
10. will the servant be doing

Work Book Exercise (J)

1. will have completed
2. will have qualified
3. will have left
4. will have lost
5. will have known
6. will have finished
7. will have left
8. will have finished
9. will not have taken
10. will have belonged

Work Book Exercise (K)

1. has known
2. has owned
3. has been studying
4. has not eaten
5. has been raining
6. have you been waiting
7. have believed
8. have been earning
9. have been visiting/have visited
10. have been quarrelling
11. had been sitting, had been reading
12. had been playing
13. had owned
14. had been searching
15. had been barking
16. will have they been staying
17. will have been living
18. will have been still sleeping
19. will have been working
20. will have known

Revision Exercises

(Based on Function of Tenses)

Exercise (A)

1. (a) **2.** (a) **3.** (b) **4.** (c) **5.** (c) **6.** (c) **7.** (a) **8.** (b) **9.** (c) **10.** (c)
11. (c) **12.** (c) **13.** (c) **14.** (c) **15.** (c) **16.** (c) **17.** (b) **18.** (c) **19.** (b) **20.** (c)

Exercise (B)

1. (c) **2.** (a) **3.** (b) **4.** (b) **5.** (c) **6.** (b) **7.** (a) **8.** (c) **9.** (a) **10.** (c)
11. (b) **12.** (b) **13.** (b) **14.** (c) **15.** (b) **16.** (c) **17.** (c) **18.** (b) **19.** (b) **20.** (c)

Review Exercise

1. 'often comes' in place of 'is often coming'.
2. 'had just completed' in place of 'just completed'.
3. 'has come' in place of 'came'.
4. Remove 'has'.
5. 'have known' in place of 'know'.
6. 'did not meet' in place of 'never met'.
7. 'has not written' in place of 'did not write'.
8. 'had' in place of 'was having'.
9. Insert 'not' after 'has'.
10. 'had been barking' in place of 'was barking'.
11. 'has been working' in place of 'is working.
12. Remove 'had'.
13. Insert 'had' after 'someone'.
14. Insert 'had' after 'he'.
15. 'had decided' in place of 'decided'.
16. 'has she been' in place of 'is she'.
17. 'has belonged' in place of 'is belonging'.
18. 'faces' in place of 'is facing'.

19. broke (remove'has')
20. 'sleeps' in place of 'is sleeping'.
21. 'are still writing' in place of 'write'.
22. 'have owned' in place of 'own'.
23. 'was running' in place of 'ran'.
24. 'has been wasting' in place of 'is wasting'.
25. Insert 'had' after 'he'.
26. 'wrote' in place of 'have written'.
27. 'had been working'/'had worked' in place of 'worked'.
28. Remove 'has'.
29. 'had been married' in place of 'was married'.
30. 'will you have known' in place of 'will you know'.
31. 'have done'/'have been doing' in place of 'did do'.
32. 'were you' in place of 'have you been'.
33. 'wrote' in place of 'has written'.
34. 'had been doing' in place of 'is doing'.
35. 'had been raining' in place of 'was raining'.
36. 'had been bitten' in place of 'was bitten'.
37. 'have been trying' in place of 'trying'.
38. 'was standing' in place of 'stood'.
39. 'will have left' in place of 'will leave'.
40. 'had not completed' in place of 'did not complete'.
41. 'is drizzling' in place of 'drizzles'.
42. 'had called' in place of 'called'.
43. 'looks' in place of 'is looking'.
44. 'had been' in place of 'was'.
45. 'had been stolen' in place of 'was stolen'.
46. 'do you keep' in place of 'are you keeping'.
47. 'have admired' in place of admired
48. 'had been' in place of 'was'.
49. 'had left' in place of 'left'.
50. 'leave' in place of 'am leaving'.
51. 'are you looking' in place of 'do you look', 'Is something happening' in place of 'Does something happen'.
52. 'has' in place of 'had'.
53. 'has not gone' in place of 'did not go'.
54. 'has read' in place of 'read'.
55. 'had been writing' in place of 'is writing'.
56. 'will have completed' in place of 'will complete'.
57. 'will have been written' for 'will be written'.
58. 'was lying' is place of 'lay'.
59. 'will have already returned' in place of 'will already return'.
60. 'has just had' in place of 'had'.

❑

2. Voice

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. was annoyed
2. be punished
3. was convinced, was
4. has been enforced
5. were disappointed
6. behave
7. be entrusted
8. was amazed
9. will be pleased
10. is bearing
11. were alarmed
12. were ashamed
13. was delighted
14. were satisfied
15. were perplexed
16. was startled
17. will have left
18. was still being decorated
19. will be surprised
20. was confused

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. has been
2. were
3. have been
4. has been
5. had been, was transferred
6. be
7. had been, visited
8. is, will be
9. has been
10. had been
11. are
12. has been
13. is
14. was
15. had been

Work Book Exercise (C)

I.
1. New scissors were bought by him.
2. News has been brought for you by them.
3. Orders for his transfer have been issued by the minister.
4. Summons was received by me yesterday.
5. His quarters have been repaired by him.

II.
1. Which book is liked most by you?
2. (a) By whom was this work done?
   (b) Who was this work done by?
3. What is being taught by you?
4. Who is liked most by you?
5. (a) By whom have you been taught English?
   (b) Who have you been taught English by?
6. What is being taught to you by him?
7. What was this loss caused by?
8. By which student were you taken home?

III.
1. This wall cannot be mended.
2. He was not seen going out.

3. My books have been stolen.
4. Duty should be done.
5. We were told to wait outside.
6. God is worshipped.
7. It is said so.
8. The ghosts have been seen by some people.
9. The thief was arrested.
10. The result will be declared soon.

IV. 1. (a) It is hoped that he will pass.
(b) He hopes to pass.
2. (a) It is believed that he will return soon.
(b) He is believed to return soon.
3. It was decided that we would leave early.
4. It is not known how rich he is.
5. (a) It is expected that he will pass.
(b) He is expected to pass.

V. 1. (a) I have been given a book by him.
(b) A book has been given to me by him.
2. (a) I will be asked a question by them.
(b) A question will be asked of me by them.
3. He was made captain.
4. (a) I was told a story by her.
(b) A story was told to me by her.
5. (a) I was bought a scooter by him.
(b) A scooter was bought for me by him.
6. You will be read this report.
7. (a) He was refused admission to the college.
(b) Admission to the college was refused to him.
8. (a) He has been offered a job by me.
(b) A job has been offered to him by me.
9. (a) He will be shown the library by me.
(b) The Library will be shown to him by me.
10. (a) I was not lent money by her.
(b) Money was not lent to me by her.
11. The committee is comprised of twenty members.

VI. 1. It is not expected of you by me.
2. The roads were thronged with the angry mob.
3. The dog was killed with a blow of lathi.
4. Is the lady known to you?
5. Much information is contained in the book.
6. The master was annoyed with the servant.
7. Everyone was surprised at his behaviour.
8. The teacher has been annoyed at his insolence.
9. I was disgusted at their jokes.
10. He is always disgusted with material life.

11. The details are kept on computers.
12. A son was born to my sister last year.
13. Everybody was impressed with her looks.
14. You will be vexed at their idle talk.
15. She is not interested in the movie.
16. Your boss will not be satisfied with your explanation.
17. His father was pleased with his actions.
18. I was shocked at her behaviour.
19. His wife was disappointed at his failure in life.
20. The villagers were alarmed at the sound of the blast.

(VII & VIII)
1. Arnav's sister is to be helped by him.
2. Sweets have to be distributed by Shaurya.
3. (a) A terrorist was seen being chased by the police.
   (b) The police were seen chasing the terrorist.
4. A book on Animals was to be written by her.
5. (a) The poor were found being helped by them.
   (b) He was found helping the poor.

IX.
1. What is being listened to by you?
2. The lost book was being searched for by them.
3. Computers cannot be dispensed with by the Government.
4. Such an accident has never been heard of.
5. He will be laughed at by all his friends.
6. The poor should not be discriminated against.

X.
1. He was made to write a letter by me.
2. I was let stay in her home.
3. I was bidden to leave the room by her.
4. She was heard to sing a song by them.
5. He was seen to go by me.

XI.
1. Your teacher should be obeyed.
2. It should be done as early as possible.
3. (a) You are ordered not to go out.
   (b) You are forbidden to go out.
4. He should be prevented from going out.
5. You are requested to enter by this door.
6. The weak should not be insulted.
7. You are ordered to get out of the room.
8. You are requested kindly to give me some money.

XII.
1. I may be allowed to sleep here.
2. They may be allowed to watch the match.
3. T.V. should be watched by us.
4. No body should be hurt by us.
5. It is suggested that we should go now.
6. We might be allowed to enter college.

3. Modals

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. (b) **2.** (b) **3.** (b) **4.** (c) **5.** (b) **6.** (b) **7.** (c) **8.** (a) **9.** (a) **10.** (c)
11. (a) **12.** (b) **13.** (a) **14.** (c) **15.** (a) **16.** (a) **17.** (b) **18.** (b) **19.** (a) **20.** (a)
21. (a) **22.** (b) **23.** (c) **24.** (b) **25.** (b)

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. (b) **2.** (a) **3.** (c) **4.** (c) **5.** (b) **6.** (a) **7.** (c) **8.** (a) **9.** (c) **10.** (b)
11. (c) **12.** (a) **13.** (b) **14.** (a) **15.** (a) **16.** (a) **17.** (c) **18.** (c) **19.** (b) **20.** (a)

Revision Exercise

(Based on Functions, Voice and Modals)

1. Have you ever gone
2. left
3. was chasing
4. you will be punished
5. might have been there
6. had murdered, body was thrown
7. have just had
8. are twinkling
9. may have left
10. had not been prepared
11. what you are saying now
12. have you wasted
13. saw
14. will be selected
15. has to be banned
16. had been mending
17. might be
18. understood
19. was strolling
20. are tired
21. was satisfied
22. is preparing
23. has done
24. May he succeed
25. must have checked
26. has not finished
27. has been
28. has just been lost.
29. have been
30. ought to have learnt
31. was burning
32. was sweeping
33. could have kept
34. had never been
35. Could you
36. had lost
37. shall be
38. have written
39. was to have caught
40. had been married
41. ought to be
42. is reading
43. will have been living for ten years
44. had been
45. need not have brought
46. 'went' for 'have been'
47. 'were' for 'have been'
48. 'would' for 'will'
49. 'would be' for 'will be'
50. 'used to sleeping' for 'used to sleep'

❑

UNIT-II : FOUNDATION MODULE

Chapter

4 Kinds of Sentences and Clauses

What is a Clause?

A group of words that forms a part of a sentence and has a subject and a finite verb of its own is called a **clause**. The number of finite verbs in a sentence joined by conjunctions determines the number of clauses.

Kinds of Sentences

There are three kinds of sentences as mentioned below.

I. **Simple sentence**
II. **Complex sentence**
III. **Compound sentence**

I. **Simple Sentence** : A sentence which has only one finite verb is a simple sentence. It may have non-finite verbs, if required. *For example*—
(i) She is walking.
(ii) He has written a letter to help his son.

II. **Complex Sentence** : A complex sentence consists of a principal/main clause with one or more subordinate clauses. It means that a complex sentence has more than one finite verb. Sub-ordinate caluses are joined by sub-ordinating conjunctions. *For example*—
(i) I know that he is a good man.
(ii) I know the man who was here last month.
(iii) When you do this work, I shall help you with money.

III. **Compound Sentence** : A compound sentence consists of two or more principal clauses. These clauses are joined by co-ordinating conjunctions such as—
'and, but, so, therefore, otherwise, or, else, nor, while, for, whereas, still, yet, nevertheless, however, as well as, all the same, indeed but'. (otherwise = or else)

The clauses of a compound sentence are called co-ordinate clauses. *For example*—
(i) My brother came **and** he handed over money to me.
(ii) She is rich **but** she is not vain.
(iii) Speak **or** you will die.

(iv) She is ill **so** she will not come.

(v) She is intelligent **while** her sister is dull.

(vi) It was dark, **however** we went out.

(vii) He was convicted **as well as** fined.

(viii) I was feeling tired **all the same** I went to office.

(ix) It is cold **indeed, but** I will go out.

More About a Complex Sentence

As stated earlier a complex sentence consists of more than one clause. A Principal clause with one or more sub-ordinate clauses forms a complex sentence. There are three kinds of sub-ordinate clauses joined by their respective sub-ordinating conjunction. *For example—*

(a) I know that he is a good boy.

(b) I know the man who was here yesterday.

(c) When you do this work, I shall give you money.

These sentences represent three kinds of sub-ordinate clauses—

1. **Noun Clause**—In the sentence (a) 'I know' is a principal clause.
   'that he is a good boy' is a noun clause.
   Noun clause explains the verb, noun and pronoun of the main or some other clause. (Explanation)

2. **Adjective Clause**—In the sentence (b) 'I know the man' is a principal clause.
   'who was here yesterday' is an adjective clause.
   Adjective clause qualifies an antecedent (noun or pronoun) as the case may be. (Qualification)

3. **Adverb Clause**—In the sentence (c) 'I shall give you money' is a principal clause.
   'When you do this work' is an adverb clause.
   Adverb clause is required to modify a verb, adverb or adjective in the main or some other clause. (Modification)

More about Sub-ordinate Clauses

(1) Noun Clause

Take care of the rules given below while writing a noun clause—

(a) Use the conjunctions **'that, if, whether, when, where, how, why, what (whatever), who, whose, whom, which.'**

(b) Tense of the noun clause should be in the past if the verb of the main clause is in the past. The tense of **universal truth** does not change.

(c) Noun clause should never be expressed in interrogative form.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *A student is required to complete the following sentences with Noun clause*

1. Object to a Transitive Verb

1. I say ..... .
2. I said ..... .
3. I cannot say ..... .
4. She refused ..... .
5. I don't know what ..... .
6. I know what ..... .
7. I wonder ..... .
8. I doubt ..... .
9. I am certain ..... .
10. The police suspected ..... .
11. She confessed/admitted ..... .
12. She denied ..... .

Note : When noun clause begins with interrogative pronouns (conjunctions of noun clause) and is followed by principal clause, 'that' is used before interrogative pronouns : 'what, when, where' etc.

For example—

(i) She says that when he will come is uncertain.
(ii) She said that whether she would pass was doubtful.

2. The Case in Apposition to a Noun or a Pronoun (Apposition means placing near)

1. She never believed in his statement ..... .
2. No one heard the news ..... .
3. It is true ..... .
4. It is not known ..... .

3. The Subject of a Verb

Noun clause as a subject is used in place of pronouns **'it, this, that'**? *For example—*

It is true **what he knows.**
What he knows is true.

1. What you are doing ..... .
2. Whether he will come ..... .
3. How she disappeared ..... .
4. That he is honest ..... .

Note :

5. Where she came from or where she lived is difficult to tell.
6. What he says and what he does are difficult to tell.

4. Object of Infinitive, Participle and Preposition

1. I was pleased by ..... .
2. Listen to ..... .
3. Everybody was pleased to note ..... .
4. Good students ought to realise ..... .
5. She kept on asking ..... .

5. *Complement of a Verb*

1. The hope is ..... . 2. The fact is ..... .

Note : Noun clause following the verbs—**'to be, become, seem, appear, grow, taste, smell, prove, look, make'** etc.—performs the function of a complement of these verbs (in place of predicate).

(2) Adjective Clause

While writing an adjective clause a student is required to observe the following rules :

(a) Adjective clause should be placed after the **antecedent** (noun/pronoun) qualified by the adjective clause. **'Those' is used for 'They' and 'Them' as an antecedent.**

(b) The verb of the adjective clause should be (singular/plural) in accordance with the antecedent.

(c) Use of **connectives** (relative pronouns)

Who, whose, whom	for living beings.
Which, of which, which	for non-living things and animals.
'That' may be used	for 'who & which'. **But** 'that' is usually used if the **antecedent** is preceded by **'the same, all, only, nothing, little, few, superlative degree, interrogative pronoun, some, any.'**
'As' is used	after **'the same or such' in place of who or which.** [Refer to Note (2) under the Box]
'Why' is used	after **reason** as an antecedent.
'When' is used	after **time** as an antecedent.
'Where' is used	after **place** as an antecedent.
'How' is used	after **manner** as an antecedent.

Note :

(1) Conjunctions **when, why, where, how** used in adjective clause are **relative adverbs.** They express their meanings as follows :

1. I remember the year **when** she was married. (in which year)
2. She explained the reason **why** she had to tell a lie. (for which reason)
3. Has he told you the place **where** the accident took place? (at which place)
4. She told me the **manner** how her sister completed the work. (in which manner)

(2) The use of 'As' and 'That' with the 'Same' (is what way/manner)

(I) **'That' is used when 'The same'** is used with a noun both in the case of qualification and resemblance.

(i) I shall buy the same perfume that my friend bought. (resemblance)

(ii) She is the same girl that asked me for books yesterday. (qualification)

(II) **'As' is used when 'The same'** is used either without a noun or when the verb is unexpressed in the case of resemblanence.

(i) Just do the same as I do. (resemblance)

(ii) I like the same perfume as she. (likes) (resemblance)

(iii) I shall buy the same perfume that my friend bought. (resemblance)

[Refer to Rule on Pronouns]

Work Book Exercise (B)

***Directions** : A student is required to complete the following sentences with Adjective clause.*

1. I know the man ..... .
2. This is my pen ..... .
3. I don't know any man ..... .
4. He is such a man ..... .
5. I have met all the boys ..... .
6. This is the best book ..... .
7. I have invited Mohan whose ..... .
8. I have invited Mohan whom ..... .
9. He is the man whose leg ..... .
10. It is the table the leg of which ..... .
11. I know the time ..... .
12. This is the reason ..... .
13. It is I ..... .
14. He is one of those boys ..... .
15. This is only one of her novels ..... .
16. This book is the same ..... .
17. She bought the same pearls ..... .
18. He settled in the town ..... .
19. Who am I ..... ?
20. Let us help only those ..... .

---

(3) Adverb Clause

Adverb clause is one of the three sub-ordinate clauses. It does the work of an adverb. It modifies some verb, adverb or adjective in the main clause. Adverb clause may be classified as follows—

(A) Adverb Clause of Time
(B) Adverb Clause of Condition
(C) Adverb Clause of Purpose
(D) Adverb Clause of Place
(E) Adverb Clause of Result
(F) Adverb Clause of Reason
(G) Adverb Clause of Concession or Contrast
(H) Adverb Clause of Manner
(I) Adverb Clause of Comparison

Note—Future tense in an adverb clause becomes Present.

(A) Adverb Clause of Time

(a) This clause is introduced by conjunctions of time such as—
'when, whenever, as soon as, as, while, before, after, by the time, until, till, since, ever since, as long as.'

(b) One should be careful in distinguishing between simultaneous and preceding/succeeding actions. Preceding action should be expressed in perfect tense as the case may be.

Study the following sentences carefully—

(i) When she will arrive, she will tell us about the expedition.
(Change 'will arrive' to 'arrives'.)

(ii) When he completed the letter, he posted it.
(Change 'completed' to 'had completed'.)

(iii) As the teacher arrived, the students stood up. (Correct)

(c) **Avoid the use of 'not' in the clause beginning with 'until'.**
Please do not go until I return. (Correct)

(d) Clause beginning with 'since, ever since' should be in Past Indefinite/Past Perfect and the main clause should be according to the rules of time expression. (Perfect tense or perfect continuous) *For example—*

(i) Since she came to Nagpur, she has not met me.
(ii) Since I returned from America, I have been working here.

Study the following sentences carefully—

(i) I can't say when he will go. (Noun clause)
(ii) I know the time when he will go. (Adjective clause)
(iii) I shall give you money when you return my book. (Adverb clause)
(iv) It is (or it has been) a long time since we met. (Correct)
(v) It was (or it had been) a long time since I had met her. (Correct)

(B) Adverb Clause of Condition

(a) There are three types of conditional clauses. **Each** kind contains a different pair of sequences as follows :

Condition	Conditional Clause	Principal Clause
(i) Present likely condition	Present Indefinite	Shall/will
(ii) Present unlikely condition/Regret, wish	Subjunctive mood	Should/would
(iii) Past condition	Past Perfect	(Would, should, could, might) + have

Present likely
(i) If he runs, he will get here soon.
(ii) You will pass if you work hard.

Present unlikely/Regret, wish
(i) If I had a stamp, I would give it to you.
(ii) If I were rich, I would help you.
(iii) I wish I were a queen.
(iv) If I knew her address, I would send her a message.

Past condition
(i) If she had written the letter, she would have got reply yesterday.
(ii) If she had brought money, she could have enjoyed the picnic.

(b) Conditional clauses are introduced with following connectives—
'If, unless, I wish, would that, I would, if only, suppose, on condition that, provided, in case. *For example—*

(i) If you come by car, we will take you to temple.

(ii) In case you don't waste time, you can live here.

(c) Sometimes sub-ordinate conjunction 'if' is omitted in adverb clause of condition. (**'Should, were, had'** are used instead.) *For example—*

(i) **Should** you work hard, you will pass. (Present condition)

(ii) **Were** she intelligent, she would not do it. (Present unlikely condition)

(iii) **Had** I done it, I would not have repented. (Past condition)

(d) **Avoid the use of 'not' in the clause beginning with 'unless'.**
You will not pass unless you work hard.

(e) **'Would that, I wish, I would & if only'** are used to express regret or dissatisfaction with the present. Such expressions are expressed **in subjunctive mood**. *For example—*

(i) Would that I were intelligent.

(ii) I wish I had money now.

(iii) If only I hadn't met her last year.

(iv) I wish I had had money then.

Note : 'Would', should be used when the subjects of the clauses differ, *eg.*
I wish you would help my brother.

(C) Adverb Clause of Purpose

Adverb clause of purpose is introduced by the conjunctions **'that, so that, in order that, lest'**. *For example—*

(i) He goes to Delhi every month so that he **may** see his ailing father.

(ii) She came in order that she **might** borrow money.

(iii) Work hard lest you **should** fail.

Note : 'not' is avoided in a clause beginning with **lest**

(D) Adverb Clause of Place

Adverb clause of place is introduced by the conjunctions **'where & wherever'** but Adverb clause of place does not qualify any place given in the main clause. *For example—*

(i) I shall go to Delhi where my father lives. (It is an adjective caluse because it qualifies the noun 'Delhi')

(ii) I shall follow you where you go. (Adverb clause)

(iii) I do not know where he lives. (Noun clause)

(E) Adverb Clause of Result

Adverb clause of result is expressed by **'that'** in the adverb clause preceded by **'so'**, **'such'** in the main clause. *For example—*

(i) He was **so** late **that** he had to miss the dinner.

(ii) He is **such** an intelligent boy **that** he can easily pass.

(F) Adverb Clause of Reason

Adverb clause of reason is introduced by **'because, since, as, now that, that.'**

(i) I did it because my father told me to do it.

(ii) As he was absent, he was punished.

(iii) Since she came late, so she was fined. (Remove 'so')

(iv) I am happy that you are successful. ('That' means because)

Note : 'so' and 'therefore' should be avoided in the main clause.

(G) Adverb Clause of Concession or Contrast

Adverb clause of contrast is introduced by **'Although, though, even if, however, whatever no matter what, no matter how, no matter where, no matter that etc., notwithstanding that admitting that, as, whether, even though, much as, come what may, say what you will'.**

For example—

(i) Though she is rich, she is unhappy.

(ii) Rich as she is, she is not happy.

(iii) Even if it is cold, I shall go.

(iv) Though he was intelligent but he failed. (remove 'but')

(v) No matter what I say, no body listens to me.

(vi) I shall do it whether you like it or not.

(vii) Much as I like to give you money, I can't do so.

(viii) However rich he may be, he is not kind.

Note : The main clause following the adverb clause of contrast should not begin with **'but, nevertheless & still'**. A student may write the main clause with **'yet'**.

(H) Adverb Clause of Manner

Adverb clause of manner is introduced by **'as, as if** and **as though'**.

Conjunctions **'as if'** and **'as though'** are used to express **a contrary to fact statement. Subjunctive mood** is used in this kind of statements. *For example—*

(i) She did it as she was advised.

(ii) She talks as if she were the landlady.

(iii) She talks as if she had belonged to a very rich family before her marriage.

(iv) He looks as if he is my brother. (Resemblance) (Correct)

In sentence (iv), manner clause is not a contrary to fact statement. It means that he looks **like** my brother. (Resemblance)

(I) Adverb Clause of Comparison

Adverb clause of comparison is introduced by **'than** and **as'**.

Comparison should be made **between the same cases of pronouns or between two persons or things being** compared. *For example—*

(i) She is as good as he is. (Affirmative)
(ii) She is **not so** active as they are. (Negative)
(iii) She is as intelligent like her brother. ('like' is a preposition, use 'as')
(iv) He is wiser than me. (Use 'I' in place of 'me')
(v) My house is larger than her. (Use 'hers'/'her house' in place of 'her')
(vi) The price of my book is less than your book. (Insert 'that of' after 'than')
(vii) I found her smarter than he. (Use 'him' in place of 'he')

Work Book Exercise (C)

***Directions** : Fill up the proper forms of verbs alternatives to make Adverb clause.*

1. When you ..... the book, I shall help you. (write)
2. I will do this work when you ..... me to do it. (ask)
3. As I ..... the bus stand, the bus arrived. (reach)
4. As soon as the teacher ..... the classroom, the boys will stand up. (enter)
5. When you ..... your exams, I shall take you to hill station. (take)
6. When she ..... the letter, she posted it. (write)
7. My brother ..... before we took our dinner. (come)
8. My brother ..... by the time we took our dinner. (come)
9. After we ..... our dinner, my brother came. (take)
10. My brother will come after we ..... our dinner. (take)
11. We already ..... our dinner when the guest arrived. (take)
12. Since my father ..... for Mumbai, he has not written to me. (leave)
13. Since she arrived, she ..... from cold. (suffer)
14. She ..... ill since she arrived. (be)
15. While it ..... , no one went out. (rain)
16. He will not come until you ..... this place. (leave)
17. As long as you ..... in the town, he will not return. (be)
18. Many students ..... by the time the match begins. (arrive)
19. Many students ..... by the time the match began. (arrive)
20. Please wait till I ..... . (go)
21. If you ..... hard, you will pass. (work)
22. If it ..... tomorrow, we shall not sail. (rain)
23. Unless you ..... hard, you will not pass. (work)
24. If I ..... his address, I would tell you now. (know)
25. If I ..... money, I would give you. (have)
26. If it ..... possible, I would help him. (be)
27. I wish I ..... present there tomorrow. (be)
28. Were I a doctor, I ..... him. (treat)
29. If I ..... his address, I would have told you then. (know)
30. If I ..... money , I would have given you. (have)

31. He works hard so that he ..... first. (stand)
32. He worked hard in order that he ..... first. (stand)
33. Walk carefully lest you ..... . (fall)
34. She ..... so hard that she could get first class. (work)
35. Although he worked hard, he ..... (pass)
36. As he is intelligent, he ..... (pass)
37. Since he came late, he ..... (punish)
38. She talks as if she ..... rich. (be)
39. She did this work as I ..... her. (tell)
40. He is wiser than ..... (her she)
41. He loves both of us but he loves her more than ..... . (I me)
42. Both of us love her but he loves her more than ..... . (me I)
43. His shirt is cheaper than ..... . (I me my mine)
44. The shirt of Mohan is cheaper than ..... . (that of Sohan Sohan's)
45. She is as good as ..... . (me I)

Revision Exercises

(*Based on Noun, Adjective and Adverb Clauses*)

Exercise (A)

(Based on Noun and Adjective Clauses)

Directions : *Correct the following sentences :*

1. He believed that he will turn out to be a cheat.
2. Why he came is difficult to understand.
3. I cannot say that he has passed.
4. It was difficult to pretend that I am penniless.
5. We did not see that man in the room who was standing in the corner.
6. Please go and ask him that he is going there.
7. I did not know that why is he not staying there.
8. No such boy who is living here will do this.
9. You should follow the same method which he does.
10. Let us help them who are in greater need than he.
11. What you did it cannot be pardoned.
12. All the books what you bought are not upto the mark.
13. There was every reason to believe that he has changed.
14. Tell me the reason that they could not marry.
15. It is better to write with a pen whose nib is smooth.
16. The boy who you know is not going there.
17. He gave me a book and which I like very much.
18. He told me that he saw his father last month.

19. I doubt that you can pass the examination.
20. I cannot say as to why he was annoyed.
21. Man is the only animal which can laugh.
22. The teacher who met us he teaches us Hindi.
23. Please find out that what he has done.
24. It was no use believing that he is honest.
25. She gave the reason that she was ill.
26. I asked him where he was going and he could give me a lift to college.
27. Those who have common sense should realise what is life.
28. He was talking of the women who, he told, he met in America.
29. He always tells me that If I work hard, I will pass.
30. My friend came to see me who was my classmate in school.
31. What you say and what you do is not tolerable.
32. I asked him that if he was still living in Delhi.
33. My problem is the same that yours.
34. They do not know anything what we know.
35. The teacher told the students that honesty is the best policy.

Exercise (B)

(Based on Adverb Clause)

1. I shall do this work when you will pay me.
2. I shall lend you my car if you will not misuse it.
3. I would have believed if I saw with my own eyes yesterday.
4. If I were you, I shall never help him.
5. If she had a book yesterday she would not have refused to give.
6. Nothing is so good like we think.
7. You have done it because I forbade you.
8. Carry it carefully lest it will break.
9. Let us not behave as though we are indifferent to others.
10. When you complete this work, I shall buy you sweets.
11. By the time the sun set he typed all letters.
12. I have not seen her since she has come back from Delhi.
13. Unless she does not mend her behaviour, I shall send her out.
14. After you go through the book, please return it to me.
15. As she is obstinate so she will not obey you.
16. The child is out since her mother went to market.
17. Though he ran fast still he could not escape from the police.
18. He is a good student but I have much pleasure in granting him scholarship.
19. He started early because he might not get late.
20. He had reached office before it started raining.

21. She rang me up after she decided to go out.
22. She is as tall like her mother.
23. Supposing if he refuses you money, what will you do?
24. When the boys were playing, the teachers were watching them.
25. Don't go out until you do not hear gun shot.
26. You will not get well until you take medicine regularly.
27. If I know him, I would invite him.
28. I shall show you my garden after you take rest.
29. She is too weak that she cannot run.
30. She is very kind to me since I fell ill.

Exercise (C)

(Based on Miscellaneous Clauses)

1. I know something what my mother told you.
2. I cannot say what is she doing these days.
3. Maruti is one of those motor car which are liked very much.
4. I doubt that my father will help you.
5. She was singing which I did not like.
6. Don't go out until you are not well.
7. Sanskrit is one of the oldest languages that was spoken by the Aryans.
8. Have you ever met such a boy who has not travelled by train?
9. She behaves with her neighbour as though she is the landlady.
10. He said that what he was doing was not correct.
11. I shall come back by the time you get up.
12. It is the tree whose fruit is not sweet.
13. Though he ran fast still he could not escape from the police.
14. When she will marry, she will invite you.
15. Who knows that when will the result be out?
16. When you complete your service, you will be retired on pension.
17. You must carry on so that you will succeed.
18. Twelve years passed since his uncle has died.
19. He cannot see clearly unless he will wear glasses.
20. Don't go out until you complete the work.
21. They are working hard so that they will pass.
22. If they had run faster, they could catch the thief last night.
23. Were she I, she will not allow you to go.
24. They stole the books before the lady returned.
25. As they were in trouble therefore they did not attend marriage.
26. Which you did cannot be pardoned.

27. When you take your food, see me in the office.
28. Her name is as glorious in our history as any other leader.
29. The location of your house is more suitable than my house.
30. If she had his intelligence, she would have made a mark in her early life.
31. Please explain the reason that you did not make the payment on time.
32. What India needs are honest leaders.
33. What your mother told me and why she told me is not clear to me.
34. I do not know that when will he like to go.
35. I told her when she went to Mumbai, I would give her money.

Chapter

5 Clause Analysis

As already stated in chapter on clauses a number of finite verbs in a sentence determine a number of clauses. Non- finite verbs are not considered for the purpose of clause analysis.

1. In a **simple sentence,** there is one finite verb and hence only one clause. *For example—*
   (i) She **is writing** a novel.
   (ii) Pearl **will examine** a patient.
2. In a **complex sentence,** there are more than one clause as follows—
   (a) Principal/Main clause
   (b) Sub-ordinate clauses—
      (i) Noun clause,
      (ii) Adjective clause and
      (iii) Adverb clause.

These sub-ordinate clauses are joined by sub-ordinating conjunctions (Look up chapter 4, based on clauses)

3. In a **compound sentence,** there are more than one principal clause/co-ordinate clause related to each other.
   (a) Principal clause
   (b) Co-ordinate clause

Co-ordinate clause is joined by co-ordinating conjunctions (Look up chapter 4, based on clauses)

Note : However when co-ordinating conjunction joins two sub-ordinate clauses, the sentence remains a complex sentence. *e.g.*
(i) I told her that she was polite and her sister was humble. (Complex)
(ii) I told her that she was not polite and advised her to improve her behaviour. (Compound)

How to find out Clauses?

Now let us study how to analyse a sentence by pointing out the clauses separately and defining their functions.

1. Principal/Main Clause

While analysing a sentence, student is required to find out a **Principal clause.** It is easy to do so because the principal clause is not introduced by any joining conjunction.

Having found out the **principal clause** a student is expected to break up the rest of the sentence into **sub-ordinate/co-ordinate clauses.**

2. Sub-ordinate Clauses

(i) Noun clause.
(ii) Adjective clause and
(iii) Adverb clause.

3. Co-ordinate Clause

Note : Refer to Chapter 4 (on Clauses) for the detailed study of the clauses before attempting the following questions.

The Manners of Conjunctions

Some of the conjunctions, denoting different meanings, have been used in the following sentences. As a result of this they form different clauses—

1. I asked him **when he would go there**. (Noun clause)
2. I know the time **when he will come**. (Adjective clause)
3. He will give me money **when I go to Mumbai**. (Adverb clause)
4. I shall not tell you **where he lives**. (Noun clause)
5. I shall go to the place **where my friend lives**. (Adjective clause)
6. I shall go **where my friend lives**. (Adverb clause)
7. I do not know **if he will come**. (Noun clause)
8. You will pass **if you work hard**. (Adverb clause)
9. I do not know **who came here last night**. (Noun clause)
10. I know the boy **who came here last night**. (Adjective clause)
11. I know the man **whom every body likes**. (Adjective clause)
12. I do not know **whom she is teaching**. (Noun clause)
13. I cannot say **whose book this is**. (Noun clause)
14. I have invited my friends **whose parents are in India**. (Adjective clause)
15. Do you know **which his house is**. (Noun clause)
16. I know the house **which he got built last year**. (Adjective clause)
17. He gave me the same book **that I wanted**. (Adjective clause)
18. I know **that he will come**. (Adjective clause)
19. I know the boy **that lives there**. (Noun clause)
20. I am happy that **she is successful**. (Adjective clause)
21. We come here **that we may study**. (Adverbs clause)
22. He is so weak **that he cannot run**. (Adverb clause)
23. He is such a weak boy **that he cannot run**. (Adverb clause)
24. He is such a boy **as does not help any body**. (Adverbs clause)
25. **Since my brother came**, he has been teaching. (Adjective clause)
26. **Since she is ill**, she cannot go out. (Adverb clause)
27. **As I arrived at the station**, the train left. (Adverb clause)
28. **As he was late**, he missed the bus. (Adverb clause)
29. She is as intelligent **as her brother is**. (Adverb clause)
30. **Rich as he is**, he is not happy. (Adverb clause)
31. She did it **as I advised her to do**. (Adverb clause)
32. My house is the same **as yours(is)**. (Adverb clause)
(Adjective clause)

33. I shall do **whatever he says**. (Noun clause)
34. I shall do it **whatever you may say**. (Adverb clause)
35. I cannot say **what he is talking about**. (Noun clause)
36. He told me **what his father had told him**. (Noun clause)
37. I do not know **whether he will come tomorrow**. (Noun clause)
38. I shall do it **whether you like it or not**. (Adverb clause)
39. **While it was raining**, nobody went out. (Adverb clause)
40. She is intelligent **while her brother is dull**. (Co-ordinate clause)
41. I do not know **why he will not come.** (Noun clause)
42. This is the reason **why he has not passed.** (Adjective clause)
43. It was dark, however we went out.
44. However honest he may be he is not respected.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Find out the* ***Noun clause*** *and mention the function as explained in the foregoing examples. Translate them in your mother language as well.*

1. I say that she is intelligent.
2. I cannot say if she will go.
3. I did not know whether she would go.
4. It is certain that she will marry him.
5. I do not know what she is doing these days.
6. I shall not do what you want me to do.
7. What he says is not correct.
8. I was pleased by what she did for us.
9. She never believed in his statement that he would get her a job.
10. Everybody was pleased to note that she looked cheerful at the party.
11. When she would return is not known.
12. The fact is that he is a cheat.
13. That she will succeed is certain.
14. I am certain that he will pass.
15. Listen to what I say.

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Below are given the sentences for the students to find out* ***Adjective clause*** *stating the Noun or Pronoun qualified by them. Translate them in your own mother tongue as well.*

1. I know the man who came here.
2. This is my pen which I gave you.
3. I don't know any man that is present here.
4. He is such a man as will never cheat you.
5. The boys that have been admitted to the hostel belong to Bhopal.
6. This is the best book that I have ever read.
7. I have invited Mohan whose father is a famous doctor.
8. I have invited Ashok all of us admire.
9. The table the leg of which is broken is very costly.
10. The news he gave is wrong.
11. I know the time when he arrived.

12. This is the reason why he will not stand by you.
13. It is I who am helping them.
14. He settled in the town where he was born.
15. Let us help only those that are really needy.

Work Book Exercise (C)

Directions : *Each of the following sentences contain an Adverb clause. Pick out the* ***Adverb clause*** *stating its kind and the word it modifies. Translate them in your own mother tongue as well.*

1. When you write the book, I shall help you.
2. My brother had come before we took our dinner.
3. After we had taken our dinner, my brother came.
4. Since she arrived, she has been suffering from cold.
5. He will not come until you leave this place.
6. Please wait till I go.
7. He works hard so that he may stand first.
8. Walk carefully lest you should fall.
9. She worked so hard that she could get first class.
10. If you work hard, you will pass.
11. Unless you work hard, you will not pass.
12. Were I a doctor, I would treat him.
13. Although he worked hard, he did not pass.
14. As he is intelligent, he will pass.
15. She talks as if she were rich.
16. She did this work as I told her.
17. He is wiser than she.
18. His shirt is cheaper than mine.
19. She is as good as he.
20. I like her more than him.

Miscellaneous Exercise I

Directions : *Analyse the following sentences pointing out the kind of clauses. A student is also required to state their functions—*

1. The boy stated that his brother would not come.
2. The boy who lives here said that his brother would not come.
3. The boy who lives here told us that his brother who was a doctor and whom they had called would not come.
4. We don't know how our ancestors led their lives in great difficulties when there were no comforts of life.
5. We, who live in the present age do not know how our ancestors led their lives in ancient India.
6. We do not know whether our ancestors led their lives in great difficulties but we are certain of their problems.

7. The house that was constructed by me has been rented to the student who came yesterday.
8. The persons who do wrong to others are always humiliated by those whom they wrong.
9. Once he said that he could not do the work his brother was doing as he was illiterate.
10. He told us that he had read the book which was written by Tagore.
11. He was ordered that he would not go out until the rain had stopped.
12. Those who do not respect others don't know that others will not respect them unless they respect others.
13. I doubt if he said that those who would not come in time would not get food.
14. We cannot say anything about any religion unless we agree that all the religions teach us to be compassionate.
15. Those who do not help others unless their motive is fulfilled are called selfish.
16. I did not tell him that I would not help those boys who did not work hard.
17. I don't know how this came to be so although I must confess that if I had inquired I could have found out why he acted so selfishly.
18. He tells everybody that nobody will help and give him money because nobody believes him.
19. She told me that if I gave her book she would be grateful to me.
20. Satya knows very well that when her husband returns from office she will be asked to leave the house.
21. Will you ever forget her who stood by you when you were in trouble and will not write to her?
22. She hoped that she would inherit the property of her sister who had no offspring.
23. The statement that she was absent when the police came was not believed by her friends who suspected her complicity in the crime.
24. Hardy believed that the forces that govern human destiny were still in the making.
25. The robbers warned him that if he informed the police of the happening he would be in trouble again.
26. History is a witness to the fact that there had never been a strong central authority to rule over our country that remained under foreign domination for ages.
27. I have no pity for a man who, you know very well, told me that he had lost courage when disaster befell him.
28. Mr. Patel asked his party men to find out if they could launch agitation when the British Government was torn with internal problems.
29. He told the little girl that throwing banana on to a pavement was a bad habit because any pedestrian could slip on it.
30. You should be content and pleased with what you have these days since to complain of high prices does not speak well of you.
31. He could not utter a single word to his son who, when he arrived, was in a dejected mood.
32. She knew that as it was dark she would not be allowed to go to meet her friend she had promised to visit and give money.
33. It is remarkable to meet with success when one is actually expecting failure because desirable chance happenings are the spice of life.

34. Those in trouble should realise that life is not as easy as they thought it to be, though no difficulty is beyond solution.
35. I know that my son, if he had been sent to J.N.U., would have made a mark in life since the environment for mental make up is no less important than the inborn qualities.
36. The fact is that he is not going to help you because he knows that, as you are unfaithful, you will not stand by him in difficulties.
37. That you are a hard working fellow is well-known to those who have promised to teach you what you want to learn.
38. It is certain that he will succeed and nobody can deny that he will secure good marks.
39. When asked they told us that they would progress in life if they worked sincerely and devoted time to study properly.
40. I said that when she returned was not certain because she came back when I was asleep.

Miscellaneous Exercise—Some Questions Worked Out

1. (a) The boy stated.....Principal clause.
   (b) that his brother would not come.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'stated'.
   (The sentence is complex.)

2. (a) The boy said.....Principal clause.
   (b) who lives here.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'the boy'.
   (c) that his brother would not come.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'said'.
   (The sentence is complex.)

3. (a) The boy told us.....Principal clause.
   (b) who lives here.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'the boy'.
   (c) that his brother would not come.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'told'.
   (d) who was a doctor.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'brother'.
   (e) and whom they had called.....Co-ordinate clause to 'd'.
   (The sentence is complex.)

8. (a) The persons are always humiliated by those.....Principal clause.
   (b) who do wrong to others.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'persons'.
   (c) whom they wrong.....Qualifying the pronoun 'those'.
   (The sentence is complex.)

12. (a) Those don't know.....Principal clause.
   (b) who do not respect others.....Adjective clause, qualifying the pronoun 'those'.
   (c) that others will not respect them—Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'know'.
   (d) unless they respect others.....Adverb clause of condition, modifying the verb 'respect'.
   (The sentence is complex.)

17. (a) I don't know.....Principal clause.
    (b) how this came to be so.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'know'.
    (c) although I must confess.....Adverb clause of contrast, modifying the verb 'don't know'.
    (d) that I could have found out.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'confess'.
    (e) If I had inquired.....Adverb clause of condition, modifying the verb 'found'.
    (f) why he acted so selfishly.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'found'.
    (The sentence is complex.)

19. (a) She told me.....Principal clause.
    (b) that she would be grateful to me.....Noun clause, object to the verb 'told'.
    (c) If I gave her a book.....Adverb clause, modifying 'would be grateful'.

23. (a) The statement was not believed by her friends.....Principal clause.
    (b) that she was absent.....Noun clause, Apposition to the noun 'the statement'.
    (c) when the police came.....Adverb clause of time, modifying the verb 'was'.
    (d) who suspected her complicity in the crime—Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'the friends'.
    (The sentence is complex.)

28. (a) Mr. Patel asked his party men to find out.....Principal clause.
    (b) if they could launch agitation.....Noun clause, object of the infinitive to 'find out'.
    (c) when the British Government was torn with internal problems ..... Adverb clause of time, modifying the verb 'launch'.
    (The sentence is complex.)

30. (a) You should be content.....Principal clause.
    (b) and pleased with.....Co-ordinate to principal clause.
    (c) what you have these days.....Noun clause, object to the preposition 'with'.
    (d) since to complain of high prices does not speak well of you..... Adverb clause of reason, modifying the verb 'should be'.
    (The sentence is compound.)

31. (a) He could not utter a single word to his son.....Principal clause.
    (b) who was in a dejected mood.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'son'.
    (c) when he arrived.....Adverb clause of time, modifying the verb 'utter'.
    (The sentence is complex.)

35. (a) I know.....Principal clause.
    (b) that my son would have made a mark in life.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'know'.
    (c) if he had been sent to J.N.U.....Adverb clause of condition, modifying the verb 'made' in (b).
    (d) since the environment for mental make up is no less important.....Adverb clause of reason, modifying the verb 'sent' in (c).
    (e) than the inborn qualities (are).....Adverb clause of comparison.
    (The sentence is complex.)

36. (a) The fact is.....Principal clause.
    (b) that he is not going to help you.....Noun clause, complement of verb 'is'.
    (c) because he knows.....Adverb clause of reason, modifying the verb 'to help'.
    (d) that you will not stand by him in difficulties.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'knows'.
    (e) as you are unfaithful.....Adverb clause of reason, modifying the verb 'stand by'. (The sentence is complex.)
37. (a) (It) is well-known to those.....Principal clause.
    (b) that you are hard working fellow.....Noun clause, subject of the verb 'is known'.
    (c) who have promised to teach you.....Adjective clause, qualifying the pronoun 'those'.
    (d) what you want to learn.....Noun clause, object to infinitive 'to teach'. (The sentence is complex.)
38. (a) It is certain.....Principal clause.
    (b) that he will succeed.....Noun clause, Apposition to pronoun 'it'.
    (c) and nobody can deny.....Co-ordinate clause 'a'.
    (d) that he will secure good marks.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'deny'.

Chapter

6 Non-finite Verbs (Infinitives, Gerunds, Participles)

Study the following sentences carefully—

(i) I have given him money.

(ii) I like to give him money today.

In the sentence (i) the verb 'have given' has 'I' as its subject. The verb 'have given' is limited by the number and person of its subject. It is, therefore, called **a finite verb.**

In sentence (ii) 'like' is a finite verb. But 'to give' has no separate subject and is not limited by number and person. It is, therefore, called a **Non-finite verb.**

Forms of Non-finite Verbs

The Non-finite verbs are divided into three forms—

I. Infinitives II. Gerunds III. Participles

I. Infinitive

Infinitive is a kind of noun with certain features of a verb. 'To' is used with infinitives. However, it is omitted sometimes.

Forms of Infinitive

As used in the following sentences :

(i) She comes here **to study.** (Purpose)

(ii) Everyone desires **to be admired.** (Passive voice)

(iii) He admitted **to have abused** him. (Perfect infinitive)

(iv) He admitted **to have been arrested** last year. (Perfect passive)

(v) He seems **to be running** out of money. (Continuous infinitive)

(vi) He admitted **to have been spying** for the enemy for sometime. (Perfect continuous, time expression)

(vii) Everyone desires **to be popular**. ('Be' as an ordinary verb)

(viii) **To err** is human. (Subject)

Rules of Infinitive

Rule I

(A) (Verb/Adjective/Noun) + Infinitive

(i) She comes here to study. (Active voice)

(ii) Nobody likes to be cheated. (Passive voice)

(iii) Everyone desires to be rich. (No verb)
(iv) To err is human. (It is human to err). (Subject)

(B) Some of the verbs and adjectives are followed by infinitives.

agree, happy, desire, need, dare, hope, expect, decede, want, wish, refuse, eager, fail, glad, happy, herd, easy.

(C) How + Infinitive

When Infinitive is used to express manner, the full forms of infinitive is 'how to'. The verbs implying manner/method are—

'know, learn, explain, teach, discover, wonder, show, ask, remember, forget' etc. *For example—*

(v) He knows how to write English.
(vi) We taught him how to cook food.

Rule II : Difference between 'To' and 'For'

Study the following sentences carefully—

I went to see him. [Correct (purpose)]
I went for seeing him. (Incorrect)
'for seeing' cannot be used for purpose implying future because—

(A) For + Gerund is used for actions showing cause. (Action in the past). *For example—*
(i) He will punish you for breaking the pen.
(ii) He punished you for coming late.

(B) For + Gerund is used for showing purpose for which the subject is used. *For example—*
(i) This book is to read. (Say for 'reading')
(ii) This machine is to measure height. (Say for measuring)
(iii) The house is to let. (Correct)

(C) For + Noun is used for purpose in place of **to + verb** when verb is made to serve as noun. *For example—*
(i) We come here for a drive.
(ii) Sameer requested for a rest.
(iii) Esha went for a walk.

(D) To + Gerund is also used with certain verbs and phrases. *For example—*
(i) She is used to swimming at dawn.
(ii) Esha came here with a view to studying. [Refer to Rule III (Gerunds)]

Rule III : Direct Infinitive

In certain cases the infinitive without 'to' is used. We may call it infinitive without 'to' or Direct Infinitive.

Direct Infinitive is used after :

(A) 'Need' and 'Dare' in the negative and interrogative sentences only when they are used as auxiliaries. *For example—*
(i) You need to work hard. (Affirmative)

(ii) You do not need to work hard. (Negative as ordinary)
(iii) He need not work hard. (Negative as auxiliary)
(iv) Do you need to work there now? (Interrogative as ordinary)
(v) Need he work there now? (Interrogative as auxiliary)
(vi) He dares to go outside in dark. (Affirmative)
(vii) He does not dare to go in dark. (Negative as ordinary)
(viii) He dare not go in dark. (Negative as auxiliary)
(ix) Does he dare to go in dark? (Interrogative as ordinary)
(x) Dare he go in dark? (Interrogative as auxiliary)

Note : 's' is not used with **dare/need** as auxiliary verbs.

(B) 'Direct Infinitive' is used after the verbs—**'let, bid, make, know, help, feel, hear, watch, see'.**

'Direct Infinitive' is used only when these verbs are **used in active voice** (not in passive voice except the verb 'let'.) The verb **'let'** is followed by direct infinitive both in active & passive voice. *For example—*

(i) I made the student write an essay.
(ii) The student was made to write an essay. (Passive voice)
(iii) The teacher let him go out.
(iv) He was let go out by the teacher. (Passive voice)

(C) The following phrases are also used with Direct Infinitive 'had better, had rather, would rather, would better, as soon, sooner than (prefer)'. *For example—*

(i) I would/had better leave your house at once.
(ii) She would/had rather stay than leave now.
(iii) They had sooner stay than leave.
(iv) I would as soon stay at home as go. (with equal willingness)

(D) Direct Infinitive is used with, **'but, than, and, except, as, or'**. *For example—*

(i) He did nothing but cry. (correct)
(ii) She did no more than sleep the whole day. (correct)
(iii) She had nothing to eat except to drink water. (remove 'to')
(iv) Do you wish to watch TV or to go to bed early. (remove to)

(E) Direct infinitive is used with phrases, 'Why not & Why'. *For example—*

(i) Why not rest now ? (Suggestion)
(ii) Why not stay here? (Suggestion)
(iii) Why stay here? (Question)

(F) 'Have + object' (used in the sense of 'wish') is followed by direct infinitive. *For example—*

(i) I will have him **believe** it. (I wish him to believe it)
(ii) She will have me **recite** this poem.

(G) 'Won't' + have + object + gerund (Used in the sense of won't allow). *For example—*

(i) I won't have you talking like that.
(ii) I won't have you staying at Meerut.

Rule IV : Perfective Infinitive

(A) Perfect infinitive should be used if the action expressed by the infinitive precedes the action of the finite verb. *For example—*

(i) Yesterday I intended to have gone to Delhi. (Incorrect, say 'to go')

(ii) He admitted to have uttered these words against me. (Correct)

In the above sentence (ii) the action 'uttered' is prior to the action of the finite verb. Hence, the use of perfect infinitive is justified.

(B) The verbs where perfect infinitive may be, if needed, used.

'Deny, confess, admit, recollect, remember, recall, claim, regret, seem, appear, report, believe, understand, say, allege, suspect' learn, require, suppose etc.

For example—

(i) She denied to have seen him yesterday.

(ii) He appears to have been rich earlier.

(iii) I still remember to have met you in Shimla last year.

(iv) He appears to be poor these days.

Note : (i) She denied seeing him yesterday. (Correct - as 'seeing' is an earlier action)

(ii) She denied having seen him yesterday. (Correct)

Rule V

Use of infinitive after **Adjective and Noun** in active voice should be taken care of—

(A) Adjective—'enough' is used after adjective or **'very'** before adjective when infinitive expresses affirmative meaning.

'too' is used before adjective when infinitive expresses negative meaning.

(i) She is too ill **to go out.** (cannot go out)

(ii) She is good enough **to help me.** (can help me)

(B) Noun—Preposition should be used, if required, after the infinitive when the infinitive qualifies the noun. *For example—*

(i) These days no airlines is safe to travel. (Use 'by' after 'travel')

(ii) I gave him a pen to write. (Use 'with' after 'write')

(iii) He gave me a paper to read. (No preposition)

(iv) I have no house to live. (Use 'in' after 'live')

(v) I have no book to read. (No preposition)

Rule VI : Split Infinitive

'To' should not be separated from its verb by inserting any adverb between the two. **The split infinitive** is grammatically wrong. *For example—*

(i) You are requested to kindly stay for sometime. (Use 'kindly' to stay)

(ii) You are required at least to obey your parents. (Correct)

(iii) I advised him to carefully carry the bag. (Say to 'carry carefully')

(iv) The students were required to seriously study for examination. (Say 'to study seriously')

Rule VII : Continuous Infinitive

Continuous Infinitive can be used with the following verbs and Modal auxliaries.

(a) appear, seem, believe, consider, think, report, happen, arrange, hope, pretend, say etc.

(b) may be, might be, should be, could be, must be etc.

Examples :

Malini appears to be running temperature.	It appears that.....
I happened to be sitting with my daughters.	When I was sitting.....
She is reported to be working at Chandigarh.	It is reported.....
She is said to be always cursing her fate.	It is said that.....
She pretended not to be overhearing our talk	She pretended as if.....
I hope to be living in a large house in a few years.	I hope that I shall.....
She may be coming tomorrow.	Perhaps will come
She may be sleeping now	Perhaps is sleeping
He thought she might be waiting for her.	Perhaps was waiting
She could be going by car.	(deduction)
She must be waiting for her husband.	(deduction)
You should be sleeping now instead of watching T.V.	(Advice)

II. Gerund (Verbal Noun)

Gerund is a verb form which functions as a noun. It is formed by adding 'ing' with a verb. It is used in place of Infinitive in certain cases. *For example—*

(i) I do not believe **in talking** rubbish.	(Preposition + gerund)
(ii) I do not like **riding**.	(Direct gerund)
(iii) She is used **to swimming**.	(To + gerund)
(iv) **Smoking** is not good for health.	(Subject)

Note : (1) Infinitives and gerunds are easily replaceable. However, certain rules have to be followed for replacing **infinitives** & **gerunds** by each other. *For example—*

(i) I like **to swim** today.	(At a particular time)
(ii) I like **swimming.**	(General/habitual statement)

(2) The difference between **participle and gerund—**
Gerund is a kind of noun like infinitive. Participle is a verb/adjective (an action in progress). *For example—*

(i) I saw him **smoking** in the cinema hall.	(Participle)
(ii) **Smoking** is injurious to health.	(Gerund)
(iii) I am tired **of working** in this place.	(Gerund)
(iv) We found him **working** even after the sun had set.	(Participle)
(v) He was punished **for playing** carelessly.	(Gerund, showing 'reason')
(vi) They were seen **playing.**	(Participle)
(vii) **Riding he** fell off the horse.	(Participle)

(viii) I prefer **swimming to riding.** (Gerund)
(ix) My plants need **trimming.** (To be trimmed)
(x) Barking dogs seldom bite. (Participle)

Note : The verbs, **'need, require, want'**, are followed by gerund in place of passive voice infinitive.

Rules of Gerund

Rule I : Preposition + Gerund

Gerund is used after certain verbs/phrases that are followed by appropriate prepositions instead of 'to'.

In case of for + gerund refer to rule II on Infinitives.

Let us study a few of them—

desirous of	intent on	justified in
disqualify from	bent on	hesitate in
refrain from	keen on	a hope of
prevent from	aim at	hope to (infinitive)
debar from	confident of	fortunate in
desist from	confidence in	harm in
restrain from	insist on	assist in
prohibit from	persist in	a chance of
dissuade from	succeed in	fond of
abstain from	successful in	take/feel pleasure in
point in	sense in	give pleasure to (infinitive)
deter from	interested in	

For example—

(i) I prohibited him to go there. (Use 'from going' in place of 'to go')
(ii) She is bent to harm her friend. (Use 'on harming' in place of 'to harm)
(iii) She is confident to get success. (Use 'of getting' in place of 'to get')
(iv) She insisted to pay money to her mother. (Use 'on paying' in place of 'to pay')

Rule II : Direct Gerund

(A) The following phrases and certain verbs are followed by **direct gerund.**

'Avoid, mind, detest, can't help, can't bear, resist, enjoy, resent, stop, start, postpone, defer, worth, prefer, consider, practise, finish, risk, pardon, excuse, forgive, it is no use/good, propose, miss, imagine, regret, means, anticipate, love, like, hate, dislike.'

(B) Phrasal verbs are also followed by direct gerunds such as—

'give up, put off, set about', etc. *For example—*

(i) We stopped to write. (Say 'writing' for 'to write')
(ii) He has given up to play hockey. (Say 'playing')

(iii) She enjoyed to ride on the hills. (Use 'riding' in place of 'to ride')
(iv) You should avoid to spend extra money. (Use 'spending' in place of 'to spend')
(v) She cannot help to tell a lie. (Use 'telling' in place of 'to tell')
(vi) Suhani does not mind helping me. (Correct)
(vii) It is no use/good waiting for her. (Correct)
(viii) There is no use/good of spending on luxuries. (Correct)

Note—Sentence (v) can also be written as 'She cannot help but tell a lie.' (but tell = telling)

Rule III : To + Gerund

Note the use of gerund correctly with—

'be used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, disposed to, prone to. *For example*—

(i) He is addicted to smoke heavily. (Use 'smoking' for 'smoke')
(ii) We go there with a view to study Science. (Use 'studying' for 'study')
(iii) He is used to getting up early in the morning. (Correct)
(iv) She used to dance before her marriage. (Correct habit in the past)

Rule IV

The noun or pronoun before a Gerund (verbal noun) should be in the possessive case.

For example—

(i) I don't like him wasting time. (Use 'his' for 'him')
(ii) Geeta insisted on Rohan going with her. (Say 'Rohan's' for 'Rohan')
(iii) I saw him wasting time. ('him' is correct 'wasting' is participle.)

III. Participle

Participle is the form of a verb that ends with **ing, ed, en, t.**

(A) It is used both as a verb (progressive) and an adjective.

Present	Past	Past Participle	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
Burn	burnt	burnt	burning	having burnt

For example—

(i) We found a candle **burning.** (Verb, Present Participle)
(ii) A **burning** candle was extinguished. (Adjective, Present Participle)
(iii) A **burnt** paper was discovered. (Adjective, Past Participle)
(iv) She returned **disappointed.** (Past Participle)
(v) **Having taken food** she left for office. (Perfect Participle)

(B) Past participle is used as passive voice of present participle. It is also used to make perfect participles.

A burning candle	—	That is burning.	(Adjective
A burnt paper	—	That is burnt.	(Adjective
Having burnt paper	—	After burning paper.	(Verb
Having been burnt	—	Passive voice.	(Verb

Rules of Participles

Rule I

Participle Clause/Absolute Phrase (Nominative Absolute)

A participle is used as participle clause. It is a kind of clause containing participle in place of a finite verb.

Absolute Phrase/Nominative Absolute is a kind of participle with a Noun/Pronoun going before it.

(i) **Walking in the garden** I came across an old friend. (Present Participle, Active voice)

(ii) **Surprised at the news** I rushed to the airport. (Past Participle, Passive voice)

(iii) **Having taken food** I left for office. (Perfect Participle, Active voice)

(iv) **Having been arrested the thief** was taken to prison. (Perfect Participle, Passive voice)

(v) **The Sun having risen,** we left the town. (Absolute Phrase)

Rule II

Participles can be changed into following clauses :

(a) Adverb Clause of Time
(b) Adverb Clause of Condition
(c) Adverb Clause of Reason
(d) Adverb Clause of Contrast
(e) Adjective Clause
(f) Co-ordinate Clause

(a) Adverb Clause of Time (while, having, on)

(i) As I was wandering in the street, I met my old friend.
(While) wandering in the street I met my old friend.

(ii) After I had passed High school, I got a job.
Having passed High school I got a job.

(iii) When she saw me, she called me.
(On) seeing me she called me.

(b) Adverb Clause of Condition (by, without, but for)

(i) If you go out, you will catch cold.
By going out you will catch cold.

(ii) If you don't work hard, you will not pass.
Without working hard you will not pass.

(iii) If you had not worked hard, you would have failed.
But for working hard you would have failed.

(c) Adverb Clause of Reason (owing to, because of, on account of)

(i) As she ran very fast, she was able to overtake me.
On account of running very fast she was able to overtake me.

(ii) Since she was late, she was punished.
Being late she was punished.

(d) Adverb Clause of Contrast (Inspite of, despite, notwithstanding, for all)

(i) Although she came late, she was not punished.
Inspite of coming late she was not punished.

(ii) Though she is rich, she is not happy.
Despite being rich she is not happy.

(iii) Though she was punished, she did not feel sorry.
Inspite of being punished she did not feel sorry.

(e) Adjective Clause

(i) I saw a girl who was singing a song.
I saw a girl singing a song.

(ii) The students who are studying English here will be successful.
The students studying English here will be successful.

(iii) The book which was presented to me by my mother is very interesting.
The book presented to me by my mother is very interesting.

(iv) A burning candle fell off the table.
A candle that was burning fell off the table.

(f) Co-ordinate Clause

A participle can replace a co-ordinate clause—

(i) He returned and he was smiling.
He returned smiling.

(ii) She went out and she was disappointed.
She went out disappointed.

Rule III

Present participle should be used only to express an action which coincides with the action of the finite verb.

He left for Mumbai on Monday, reaching there on Tuesday. (Incorrect, 'reaching' is not a simultaneous action)

He left for Mumbai on Monday and reached there on Tuesday. (Correct)

Rule IV : Misrelated/Unrelated Participles

When the participle clause/phrase is not followed by a subject of its own, the participle is called **misrelated, dangling or unattached.**

(i) Wandering in the street a dog bit him. (Wrong)

(ii) Wandering in the street he was bitten by a dog. (Correct)

Note : 'wandering' should have a proper subject 'he' and not 'a dog'.

How to Correct a Misrelated Participle?

Misrelated participle can be corrected in three ways.

1. Expand the participle into a clause. (Already explained in Rule II)
2. Bring the proper subject immediately after the participle. (by changing voice)
3. Place the proper subject before the participle. (only before 'being' and 'having')

Let us study the problem by working out some questions.

1. Walking along the road a scooter knocked him down. (Incorrect)
   (i) While he was walking along the road a scooter knocked him down. (Correct)
   (ii) Walking along the road he was knocked down by a scooter. (Correct)
2. Having taken food my father sent me to market. (Incorrect)
   (i) When I had taken food, my father sent me to market. (Correct)
   (ii) I having taken food my father sent me to market. (Absolute Phrase)
   (iii) Having taken food I was sent to market by my father. (Correct)
3. Being cloudy we enjoyed picnic. (Incorrect)
   (i) As it was cloudy, we enjoyed picnic. (Correct)
   (ii) It being cloudy we enjoyed picnic. (Absolute Phrase)
4. Being honest the teacher rewarded him. (Incorrect)
   (i) As he was honest, the teacher rewarded him. (Correct)
   (ii) He being honest, the teacher rewarded him. (Correct)
   (iii) Being honest he was rewarded by the teacher. (Correct)
5. Possessing huge wealth people do not like him. (Incorrect)
   (i) Although he possesses huge wealth, people donot like him. (Correct)
   (ii) Possessing huge wealth he is not liked by people. (Correct)

Rule V

However, participles such as—

'regarding, concerning, considering, speaking', do not refer to any particular subject. They can do without agreement with any noun or pronoun.

(i) Considering his problems he was advised to leave Jalgaon. (Correct)

(ii) Roughly speaking two hundred persons died in the earthquake. (Correct)

In these sentences the unexpressed subject is indefinite. Therefore, participle need not be in agreement with the Noun or Pronoun it refers to.

Some Important Uses of Non-finites

Study the following sentences carefully & note the difference in their sense.

1. I regret being late/to be late. (Present Infinitive)
2. I regret to have been late/having been late. (Perfect Infinitive)
3. She prided herself on being Indian. ('Pride' is verb here)
4. Take Pride in serving your motherland. ('Pride' is noun here)

5. I feel pleasure in inviting you to dinner tonight. (No difference in meaning)
6. It gives me pleasure to send you greetings. (No difference in meaning)
7. Leaving home is difficult. (Experience)
8. To leave home is difficult. (Opinion)
9. I would like to attend marriage tomorrow. (Enjoy)
10. I would like you to study. (Think it right)
11. I like to get myself examined. (Think it wise)
12. I like attending marriages. (Habit)
13. My mother loves telling us stories. (Habit)
14. I would love to do it for your sake. (Enjoy)
15. I propose to go there. (Intend)
16. I propose doing it hurriedly. (Suggest)
17. She began (started, commenced) laughing. (Progressive)
18. She began to understand me. (Infinitive after began)
19. The Government means curbing curruption. (Intend)
20. Your orders mean asking me to leave the job. (Result)
21. We must not risk driving in heavy rain. (Take chance)
22. There is no risk of getting late. (Possible)
23. It is no use/good confessing now. (Advantage)
24. There is no use/good of confessing now. (Advantage)
25. I would prefer to wait. (For an occasion)
26. I prefer riding to swimming. (habit)

Work Book Exercise (A)

(Infinitive & Gerund)

Directions : *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences :*

1. The teacher made the students to solve their problems.
2. His aim is no more than to use unfair means to attain success in life.
3. He goes every Sunday to Delhi with a view to buy raw material.
4. The teacher asked them to stop write as soon as the bell rang.
5. She can't help to visit her sister every Sunday.
6. He is rich today but he appears to be poor in the past.
7. The scientists claim to discover cure for AIDS and the medicine will be put on sale very soon.
8. She started to cry when she was left alone.
9. She did not dare enter the room without his permission.
10. I always resent my brother wandering about and doing nothing.
11. You should always aim to achieve higher goal to succeed in life.
12. She was confident to qualify the examination.
13. The civilians were prohibited to attend the shooting competition in the Military area.
14. You are requested to carefully carry the bag because it contains fragile material.
15. Last night she intended to have left.
16. She was let to do whatever she liked.
17. She was forbidden from moving out with her friends.
18. He can't tolerate/bear anybody talking nonsense.

19. He is understood to leave India for good last year.
20. How dare he to abuse my friend?
21. Those who have no house to live should be provided with accommodation.
22. She does not mind visit her uncle though he does not treat her well.
23. You must desist to take to unfair means for achieving your ends.
24. The whole night she did nothing but to read.
25. He is extremely desirous to be educated.
26. He knows swimming.
27. He hardly need to go there.
28. She is not to be blamed for this episode.

Work Book Exercise (B)

***Directions** : Use the most suitable form of Infinitive Gerund in the following sentences.*

1. Today everyone wishes.....money quickly.
   (a) earn (b) to earn (c) for earning
2. She is very keen.....modelling.
   (a) to take up (b) on taking up (c) taking up
3. The director made the officers.....longer than usual.
   (a) to wait (b) wait (c) waiting
4. My brother is interested.....in Army.
   (a) to serve (b) in serving (c) to serving
5. The boys in the hostel are averse.....part in the strike.
   (a) to take (b) to taking (c) for taking
6. He never minds.....the deserving persons.
   (a) to help (b) helping (c) in helping
7. She resented.....late at night.
   (a) my returning (b) me returning (c) against my returning
8. I feel pleasure.....you of my success.
   (a) to inform (b) to informing (c) in informing
9. I don't remember.....in Kashmir last year.
   (a) to meet you (b) to have met you (c) of meeting you
10. Throughout the day she did nothing but.....illness.
    (a) feigning (b) feign (c) to feign
11. The professor insisted.....the essay within allotted time.
    (a) on Deepak writing (b) on Deepak's writing (c) on Deepak to write
12. The maid servant was made.....food on time.
    (a) cook (b) to cook (c) to have cooked
13. You are ready, you appear.....food on time.
    (a) cook (b) to cook (c) to have cooked
14. I have known him.....anything for money.
    (a) to have done (b) do (c) to do

15. She intended.....in for teaching profession.
(a) to have gone (b) to go (c) for going

16. For modern man there are a number of diseases..... .
(a) to suffer from (b) for suffering (c) to suffer

17. You had better.....in her house overnight.
(a) not stayed (b) not stay (c) not to stay

18. You must know.....in society.
(a) to conduct yourself (b) how to conduct yourself (c) to conduct

19. It gives me immense pleasure.....you of her engagement.
(a) to inform (b) in informing (c) to informing

20. She comes.....me daily in the evening.
(a) for seeing (b) seeing (c) to see

21. His mother always forbids him.....with Nisha.
(a) from speaking (b) to speak (c) not to speak

22. The carpet needs.....before we use it.
(a) to clean (b) cleaning (c) to be cleaned

23. The police officer denied.....callous to the undertrial.
(a) to be (b) being (c) to have been

24. I have ever looked forward.....the President of the District Rotary Club.
(a) to be (b) to being (c) to have been

25. We expected.....to the celebration.
(a) to invite (b) to have been invited (c) to be invited

26. She has given up.....on her friend's advice.
(a) smoke (b) smoking (c) to have smoked

27. Remember, this is not a safe road..... .
(a) to travel (b) to travel by (c) travelling

28. Classical music is worth..... .
(a) to listen (b) to listen to (c) listening to

29. The officer always bade me.....fast.
(a) work (b) to work (c) to working

30. He is reported.....Mumbai for good last year.
(a) to leave (b) leaving (c) to have left

31. My mother always detests.....with shady children.
(a) in dealing (b) dealing (c) to deal

32. How dare you.....to your teachers like this?
(a) to talk (b) talk (c) talking

33. They need not.....for their turn.
(a) to wait (b) to have waited (c) wait

34. You don't need.....here any more in the sun.
(a) to stand (b) standing (c) stand

35. He is rich today but he seems.....in the past.
(a) to be poor (b) to have been poor (c) to being poor

36. He dared.....to his father very rudely.
(a) talk (b) to talk (c) talking

37. He objected to.....money on cosmetics.
(a) spend (b) me spending (c) my spending

38. The High Court restrained the Lower Court.....any action against him.
(a) to take (b) to taking (c) from taking

39. She has postponed.....abroad next year.
(a) to go (b) to have gone (c) going

40. This book is desgined to help you.....for competitive exams.
(a) to prepare (b) prepare (c) preparing

41. Netaji is believed.....in air crash.
(a) to be dead (b) to die (c) to have died

42. She is reported.....today.
(a) to be absent (b) to absent (c) to have been absent

43. A robber is alleged.....yesterday.
(a) to be arrested (b) to have been arrested (c) to arrest

44. My friend is expected.....to hospital.
(a) to admit (b) being admitted (c) to be admitted

45. His friend is suspected.....Deepak last night.
(a) to kill (b) to have killed (c) to be killed

Work Book Exercise (C)

Directions *: Use these Participle clauses/Absolute Phrase correctly.*

1. Writing a letter a beggar disturbed her.
2. Being fine we decided to go on picnic.
3. Being late the teacher punished her.
4. But for working hard she would have passed.
5. Inspite of being late the teacher did not punish her.
6. Climbing up the stairs her sandal broke and she fell.
7. Having passed B.A. examination he offered me a job.
8. Inspite of being a miser everybody likes to spend money on her.
9. While taking admission to a school, a birth certificate must be shown.
10. Cooking my dinner in the kitchen a strange sound attracted my attention.
11. By going out you will catch cold.
12. Wounded in an accident the people took him to hospital.
13. Not following the question the wrong answer was written in the Examination.
14. While standing under an apple tree a ripe apple fell on him.
15. Tired of work the teacher asked him to take rest.
16. Roughly speaking Delhi is 60 kilometres away from Meerut.
17. Being dissatisfied with the teacher the student made complaint to the Principal.
18. Having run for two miles there was no sight of the school yet.
19. He started factory two years ago achieving target only last month.
20. I saw a dead horse running along the road.

Chapter

7 Verb

What is a Verb?

A verb is a word that is used to tell something about a person or a thing as follows—

(a) What a person or a thing does (Active)
  (i) She teaches in our school.
  (ii) He often visited his village.

(b) What is done to a person or a thing. (Passive)
  (i) He was punished.
  (ii) Shikha was taught a lesson.

(c) What a person or a thing is ('Be' as a regular/ordinary verb)
  (i) She is a pretty village girl.
  (ii) My brother is a Chemist.

There are two classes of verbs—

(A) The auxiliary verbs
(B) The ordinary/regular verbs

(A) The auxiliary verbs are of two types—

I. Primary auxillaries
  (i) To be — is, are, am, was, were, been, being.
  (ii) To have — has, have, had.
  (iii) To do — do, does, did.

II. Modal auxiliaries—will, must, should, may etc.

(B) The ordinary verbs
to work, to play, to write.

The Use of 'To Be'

(1) As an auxiliary verb.
  (i) She is writing a letter. (Active)
  (ii) Arjun was called back. (Passive)

(2) As an ordinary/regular verb.
  (i) She is a doctor.
  (ii) She was present.

(For further details look up the chapter on Voice.)

SCHOOLTOOL

Kinds of Verbs

1. Finite verb
2. Non-finite verbs

1. **Finite verbs**—Finite verb has a subject of its own and is limited by the person and the number of the subject. *For example*—
   (i) She is **playing** Tennis.
   (ii) They were **watching** television.

   (a) **Transitive verbs**—Transit means 'to move'. The action of transitive verbs passes over to the object. *For example*—
   (i) She **writes** a letter.
   (ii) She **teaches** me.

   (b) **Intransitive verbs**—The action of the intransitive verbs does not pass over to the object. It goes back to the subject. *For example*—
   (i) She **cried** a lot.
   (ii) She **came** on time.

Note : Transitive verbs alone can be used in passive voice.

2. **Non-finite verbs**—Non-finite verbs are not limited by the person and the number of any subject. They are used without mentioning any subject.

   Non-finite verbs are of three kinds.
   (a) Infinitive
   (b) Gerund
   (c) Participle

   For example —
   (i) She comes here **to study.**
   (ii) We saw them **waiting for** the bus.
   (iii) She likes **reciting** poems.

Rules of Verbs

Rule I

When two or more subjects are joined by—**'as well as, like, unlike, besides, in addition to, with, together with, along with, and not, rather than, no less than, except, nothing but, more (men) than one'**, the verb is used according to the first subject. *For example*—

(i) The director as well as the dancers were honoured by the public.
(Use 'was' in place of 'were')

(ii) The mother, and not her children have been arrested for committing theft.
(Use 'has' in place of 'have')

(iii) More men than one were absent yesterday. (Correct)
(iv) Nothing but truth is immortal. (Correct)
(v) My mother no less than my father is strict. (Correct)

Rule II

When two or more subjects are connected by **'not only-but also, neither-nor, either-or, none-but'** the verb is according to the nearest subject. *For example—*

(i) Neither the students nor their guide were found present in the common room.
(Use 'was' in place of 'were').

(ii) None but the leaders of our country is responsible for this state of affairs.
(Use 'are' in place of 'is')

(iii) One or two books are needed. (Correct)

(iv) I or he is to be rewarded. (Correct)

(v) Am I or he to be rewarded? (Correct)

Rule III

(a) 'Neither, either, none, anyone, each, every' used as pronoun or adjective should be followed by third person singular verbs. *For example—*

(i) Neither of the two boys have done it. (Use 'has' in place of 'have')

(ii) Each of the students are obedient. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')

(iii) Either of us has done his work. (Correct)

(iv) Every boy and every girl has been invited. (Correct)

(b) When **None** is used with countable nouns both singular and plural verbs are correct. But with uncountable noun singular verb is correct.

(i) None of the boys has/have done home work. (Correct)

(ii) None of the work is completed. (Correct)

(c) When 'each' is used after subject the verb is plural. *For example—*

(i) We each have taken our bags.

(ii) They each are honest.

Rule IV

When plural nouns explain specific **'amount, sum, distance, quantity, time, period' as a whole** the verb should be singular. *For example—*

(i) Four miles are not a long distance. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')

(ii) Two hundred rupees were a large amount fifty years ago.
(Use 'was' in place of 'were').

(iii) Two hundred rupees were lost. (Correct)

Rule V

The expression 'many a/an, more than one' should be followed by a singular noun and singular verb. *For example—*

(i) Many accidents have recently taken place. (Correct)

(ii) Many an accidents have recently taken place.
(The correct usage is 'many an accident has')

(iii) More than one man was absent. (Correct)

(iv) More men than one were burnt. (Correct. Refer to Rule I)

Rule VI

In a **compound sentence** both auxiliary verbs and principal verbs should be mentioned separately if they differ in **number, form** or **voice**. In such cases one verb cannot act for both the clauses. *For example*—

(i) He has not and will not return in near future. (Place 'returned' after 'has not')

(ii) She is intelligent but her sister dull. (Place 'and' after 'but')

(iii) He surrendered before the court and was sent to jail. (Use 'was' before 'sent')

(iv) She disappeared last month and found dead near a well last night. (Place 'was' after 'and')

(v) She is intelligent but her sister dull. (Correct)

(vi) I did not and will not go there. (Correct)

Rule VII

The inverted form of the verb is used in the following cases—

(A) When the sentence is introduced by adverb.

(B) When the verb is meant to express a wish or prayer.

For example—

(i) So quickly did she finish her work that we were surprised. (Correct)

(ii) May you succeed in life. (Correct)

(iii) Hardly/scarcely had I reached the airport when the plane arrived. (Correct)

(iv) No sooner did she arrive than she started laughing. (Correct)

Rule VIII

The verb in the following cases is used in singular form.

(A) When two singular nouns refer to the same person denoted by one article.

(B) In certain phrases or idiomatic pair of words suggesting the same meaning, though not synonyms. *For example*—

(i) The Collector and District Magistrate are on a visit to the Tehsil today. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')

(ii) What is the aim and object of his costly plan? (Correct)

(iii) The sum and substance of the passage is given below. (Correct)

(iv) Bread and butter are sold here. (Correct)

(v) Bread and butter is difficult to earn. (Correct)

(vi) Two and Two is/are four. (makes four) (Correct)

(vii) No student and no teacher was present. (Correct)

(viii) Three fives are fifteen. (Correct)

(ix) Five times ten is fifty. (Correct)

(x) Slow and steady wins the race. (Correct)

(xi) Time and tide wait for none. (Correct)

Rule IX

(a) **When the sentence begins with 'It'** the verb is according to the subject 'It'.

(b) **In the case of a sentence beginning with 'there'** and **Interrogative pronoun,** the verb is according to the predicate/complement.

However verb should not be used according to complement in other than these cases. *For example*—

(i) It is the stars that guide our destiny. (Correct)
(ii) It is I who am helping you. (Correct)
(iii) There was a boy in the classroom. (Correct)
(iv) There were a boy and a teacher in the classroom. (Correct)
(v) There lives a boy who is my best friend. (Correct)
(vi) What evidence are these acts? (Correct)
(vii) What have the boys thought about this plan? (Correct)

Rule X

(A) A singular or a plural verb with the nouns in the following cases is used according to the sense which they convey.

(a) Number
(b) Means, wages
(c) Variety, plenty, rest, deal of, a lot of (lots of), a heap of, Two thirds of, most of, some of, a half of, per cent of.

(a) Number

1. A large number of boys were absent on account of bad weather. (Correct)
2. The number of admissions have gradually fallen off. (Use 'has')

(b) Means, Wages

3. She could not continue her study because her means were poor. (Correct)
4. A fair means is always preferable to the foul one. (Correct)
5. Means are more important than the ends. (Correct)
6. The wages in India are quite meagre. (Correct)
7. "Wages of sin is death", says the Bible. (Correct)

(c) Variety, Plenty etc.

8. A variety of books on the subject are available in the market. (Correct)
9. A variety of food is available in this hotel. (Correct)
10. Plenty of milk is available in this part of the country. (Correct)
11. Plenty of books were donated to the library by him. (Correct)
12. The rest of the lesson has been completed. (Correct)
13. The rest of the students have left for their homes. (Correct)
14. A lot of (lots of) guests were attended upon by the host. (Correct)
15. A lot of work is yet to be done. (Correct)
16. A great deal of labour is required to complete the job. (Correct)
17. A good deal of boys have joined our club. (Correct)
18. Two thirds of the actors are unsuccessful. (Correct)
19. Two thirds of the book is easy to read. (Correct)
20. The seventy per cent of the students are hard working. (Correct)
21. The seventy per cent of our population is poor. (Correct)

Note :

(a) But with 'percentage' in the subject the verb is singular. *For example—*

The percentage of successful candidates is very high.

(b) A singular verb is used with collective nouns when they denote unity/a group

"A set of books, A pair of spectacles, a bouquet of flowers, a kind of. **A series** of events, A gang of robbers" etc. *For example—*

(i) A pair of spectacles is broken. (Correct)
(ii) A series of matches is likely to be played next month. (Correct)

Rule XI : Unreal Past Subjunctive Mood

A wish, a regret, unlikely condition and contrary to fact statements are expressed in subjunctive mood.

(A) In subjunctive mood (present situation) we may use 'was/were', though 'were' is more correct form. (Simple past plural)

(a) **To express regret/wish for a present situation.** (at the time of speaking)
(i) I wish I had a house of my own now = I am sorry I don't have a house.
(ii) I wish I were rich now = I am sorry I am not rich.
I wish = would that, I would, If only.

(b) **To express unlikely condition.** *For example—*

(i) If I had a house, I would not hire yours.
(ii) If I were a teacher, I would help you.

(c) **'As if/as though'**
The subjunctive can be used in a clause beginning with 'as if/as though' to express a statement contrary to the fact. *For example—*
She behaves as if she were the landlady.

(B) After **'It is high time'** *For example—*

It is high time you did something now. (In the sense of 'should')

(C) After **'would rather/had rather' + Clause**
These phrases are followed by a clause in a subjunctive mood. Otherwise direct infinitive is used. *For example—*

(i) I would rather you helped my brother.
(ii) I had rather you stayed with me. (Say 'would stay')
(iii) I would rather go to Mumbai. (Direct Infinitive)

(D) In subjunctive mood referring to Past situation use Past Perfect Tense. *For example—*
(i) I wish I had had a gun then. (Past situation)
(ii) I wish I had a gun now. (Present situation)
(iii) I wish I had not met her last year. (Regret for a past situation)

Rule XII

The use of causative verbs. (Make, Get, Have Cause)—

(i) I made my friend write a letter.
(ii) My friend was made to write a letter.
(iii) He got his house painted by expert painters.
(iv) He had a house demolished.

Note : In sentence (i) the causative verb 'make' is followed by direct infinitive 'write'. In sentence (ii) 'make' is followed by 'to write' because it is in passive voice.

But we can say **'They caused him to leave India'.**
[Refer to Rule II (b) on Non-finite verbs.]

Rule XIII

When negative ideas are introduced in a noun clause with the following verbs in principal clause, it is advisable to make principal clause in negative.
'imagine, think, believe, suppose'.

Note—This rule doesn't apply to 'I hope'. *For example*—

(i) I don't think he will pass. (Correct)
I think he will not pass. (Incorrect)
(ii) I don't suppose she will pass. (Correct)
I suppose she will not pass. (Incorrect)

Rule XIV

The position of verb in the clause beginning with 'As' and 'Than', when the subject is hidden. *For example*—

(i) The guests came on time **as were hoped.** [say, (it) was hoped]
(ii) The guests came more in number **than was expected.** [say, (they) were expected]
(iii) There were more mangoes than were expected. [say, (it) was expected]
(iv) There were more servants than was required. [say, (they) were required]

Rule XV

Verbs Often Confused

The Base Form (Present)	Past	Past Participle (PP)
1. Swing	Swung	Swung
2. Wring	Wrung	Wrung
3. Sting	Stung	Stung
4. Find	Found	Found
5. Found	Founded	Founded
6. Fall	Fell	Fallen
7. Fell	Felled	Felled
8. Befall	Befell	Befallen

The Base Form (Present)	Past	Past Participle (pp)
9. Fly	Flew	Flown
10. Blow	Blew	Blown
11. Flow	Flowed	Flowed
12. Strike	Struck	Struck
13. Stick	Stuck	Stuck
14. See	Saw	Seen
15. Saw	Sawed	Sawed/Sawn
16. Flee	Fled	Fled
17. Affect	Affected	Affected
18. Effect	Effected	Effected
19. Rend	Rent	Rent
20. Rent	Rented	Rented
21. Awake	Awoke	Awoke/Awaken
22. Wake	Woke	Woken
23. Lie	Lied	Lied
24. Lie	Lay	Lain
25. Lay	Laid	Laid
26. Hang	Hanged	Hanged
27. Hang	Hung	Hung
28. Cast	Cast	Cast
29. Telecast	Telecast	Telecast
30. Forecast	Forecast	Forecast
31. Cost	Cost	Cost
32. Lose	Lost	Lost
33. Rise	Rose	Risen
34. Raise	Raised	Raised
35. Arise	Arose	Arisen
36. Rouse	Roused	Roused
37. Bind	Bound	Bound
38. Bound	Bounded	Bounded
39. Practise	Practised	Practised
40. Advise	Advised	Advised
41. Devise	Devised	Devised
42. Prophesy	Prophesied	Prophesied
43. Grind	Ground	Ground
44. Ground	Grounded	Grounded
45. Bear	Bore	Borne
46. Bear	Bore	Born
47. Wind	Wound	Wound
48. Wound	Wounded	Wounded
49. Forego	Forewent	Foregone
50. Forgo	Forwent	Forgone

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. None but cowards is afraid of fighting.
2. Many a bride have been burnt and killed for dowry.
3. Each of these players have been warned not to repeat the silly mistake.
4. Lime and soda is a digestive drink.
5. The mother as well as her children were brought to the police station for interrogation.
6. His benevolence and kindness are admired by his firends.
7. She never has and never will allow her only son to join Army.
8. Three parts of the lesson are yet to be completed.
9. She is intelligent but her sister dull.
10. Intelligence, as well as knowledge of the subject are required to grasp the meaning of the book.
11. Twenty officers have been dismissed and thirty left on their own.
12. Every word and every line in the poems of Wordsworth sings about the blessings of nature.
13. So honestly he worked that he was rewarded by the chairman of the company.
14. Riches, and not character bring you respect these days.
15. The sum and substance of the passage is beyond my understanding.
16. None but those with honest record needs to come to me for help.
17. Four miles are not a long distance for a young person like you.
18. No sooner he was brought here than he began to feel uneasy.
19. Not only will he go there but also he will stay.
20. He, like the other members of his family were left shelterless as a result of flood in the town.
21. The river was overflown and the villagers fled.
22. She lay the cup on the table in the morning.
23. Neither does he study nor works.
24. It is high time you start earning.
25. The match will be telecasted today.
26. She had written revised and spoke what I suggested to her.
27. My wages in this office is not adequte for me.
28. Where have you been an hour ago?
29. What the poor eat and how they survive is not considered by us.
30. A set of books have been presented on my birthday.

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. In old age neither of his two sons are prepared to come to his help.
2. I don't think ten thousand rupees are a large sum for the work you are going to undertake.
3. It were the students who wanted the teacher to declare holiday.
4. So fast did he drive motor car that even the best driver could not overtake him.

5. Everyone of the new Nursing Homes coming up in the Urban areas need a lot of improvement.
6. Never I have seen a man who is foolish to such an extent.
7. He will be likely to take part in the wedding ceremony of his brother provided he is granted leave.
8. Two thirds of the members are needed to pass the resolutions for the impeachment of the President.
9. During freedom struggle many a patriot were fired with patriotism and sacrificed everything for the sake of the motherland.
10. There are a dozen of history books lying in the shelf of my personal library and you can use them whenever you like.
11. The number of amendments to our constitution have been very large since independence.
12. Just outside the village is a Panchayat House with dedicated workers working here.
13. Just to the North of India is the Himalayas that were once impregnable.
14. Who does go there nowadays?
15. Our source of information was the spies captured during the raid.
16. I had been to Delhi last month to visit my ailing father.
17. Either she or you is to blame for the mismanagement of the domestic affairs.
18. It were the children that caused a lot of problems to their parents during long railway journey.
19. He will be likely to leave for the States last year to visit his wife.
20. The soldiers along with the commander was court-martialled for defying the orders of Army High-command.
21. The rest of the students is still working in the classroom.
22. No one in this world can be able to do work continuously for ten hours.
23. Not seldom he comes late to the school.
24. "You may live long", the mother said.
25. The period of twenty-five years have passed and still he is without a job.
26. Where have you been yesterday?
27. My father has been to America several times last year.

Work Book Exercise (C)

(Based on verbs often confused)

Directions : *Choose the most suitable alternative to make the sentence logical in sense. The alternatives are marked as (a), (b), (c) below the sentence.*

1. The police.....into action on receiving telephone call yesterday.
   (a) swang (b) swung (c) swing
2. Being a philanthropist he.....this institution.
   (a) founded (b) was founded (c) found
3. No one is allowed to.....the trees in the forest.
   (a) fall (b) fell (c) fallen
4. When calamity.....the family, he faced it boldly.
   (a) fell (b) fall (c) befell

5. I think she.....the clock this week.
(a) wounded (b) wind (c) wound

6. The bridge.....up by the terrorists only last week.
(a) blowed (b) was blowed (c) was blown

7. During rainy season this stream was..... .
(a) overflowed (b) overflow (c) overflown

8. When he was.....with stone he did not retaliate.
(a) strike (b) striked (c) struck

9. The wood cutter.....the log of the wood to make a cot.
(a) saw (b) sew (c) sawed

10. When the robbers had put all the money in the bag they.....
(a) fled (b) fleed (c) flee

11. When the village was attacked, loud cries.....the air.
(a) rended (b) rented (c) rent

12. She always.....illness, when she is asked to study.
(a) affects (b) effects (c) effected

13. Indian Government is planning to.....many changes in the constitution.
(a) affect (b) effect (c) effected

14. Hard work is bound to.....your health.
(a) effect (b) affect (c) effected

15. Corruption has tremendous.....on our political system.
(a) effect (b) affect (c) affected

16. Inflatinonary trends in the market have.....the prices adversely.
(a) effected (b) affected (c) infected

17. The poor woman.....the kettle on the fire and went outside.
(a) lain (b) lay (c) laid

18. These lawns.....with velvet grass.
(a) are laid (b) are lain (c) were lain

19. The mother asked me.....the table for the guests.
(a) to lie (b) to lay (c) laid

20. She has.....in the bed for two hours.
(a) laid (b) lain (c) lay

21. She.....the child on the bed to keep him warm.
(a) lain (b) lay (c) laid

22. My mother asked me to.....down and take rest for sometime.
(a) lie (b) laid (c) lay

23. Bhagat Singh.....his life for his motherland.
(a) lie down (b) lay down (c) laid down

24. The executioner.....him till he died.
(a) hanged (b) hung (c) hang

25. As soon as we arrived in the dormitory we.....our pullovers.
(a) hang (b) hanged (c) hung

26. Colour T.V.....me Rs. 10,000 last year.
(a) costed (b) cost (c) has costed

27. Nobody could have.....future correctly.
(a) forecast (b) forcast (c) forecasted

28. Remember.....your temper even when provoked.
(a) not to loose (b) not to lose (c) not to loss

29. The traders suddenly.....the prices of crude oil last year.
(a) rose (b) raised (c) rise

30. He.....suddenly and knocked him down.
(a) arose (b) raised (c) rose

31. Difficulty after difficulty.....in his way to success.
(a) arose (b) rose (c) roused

32. When the villagers were attacked, they were.....to violent acts.
(a) raised (b) roused (c) rose

33. When the villagers were attacked, they were.....to violence.
(a) raised (b) roused (c) rose

34. ....., our freedom is in danger.
(a) arise (b) rise (c) raise

35. The noise in the bedroom.....me up.
(a) awoke (b) awake (c) woke

36. When he.....to reality, all had been lost.
(a) woke (b) awake (c) awoke

37. One is.....in duty to help the ageing parents.
(a) bound (b) bounded (c) binding

38. India is.....in the North by the mountains.
(a) bound (b) bounded (c) binding

39. You may ask someone where the ship is.....for.
(a) bound (b) bounded (c) binding

40. After she had.....dancing, she went to bed.
(a) practiced (b) practised (c) practice

41. The astrologer made a.....about the success of her son.
(a) prophecy (b) prophesy (c) prophesied

42. The teacher.....us to attend to his lecture.
(a) adviced (b) advise (c) advised

43. The wheat cannot be.....fine.
(a) grind (b) ground (c) grounded

44. Our ship was.....in shallow water.
(a) grind (b) ground (c) grounded

45. All aircrafts at the Palam airport were.....because of fog yesterday.
(a) grind (b) ground (c) grounded

46. The dead body was.....on the shoulders of her friends.
(a) born (b) borne (c) bear

47. She ..... the clothes and hung them.
(a) wring (b) wrang (c) wrung

Revision Exercises

(*Based on Functions, Voice, Modals, Non-finites and Clauses*)

Directions : *Fill in the proper form of verbs given in the brackets.*

Exercise (A)

1. I don't think we ..... (meet) two years ago.
2. Well, I ..... (see) you once at a party, but we (introduce) then.
3. His health ..... (improve) since he ..... (go) to Switzerland.
4. A man ..... (knock) down here by bus yesterday.
5. I ..... (write) six letters since 8 a.m.
6. His father ..... (die) five years ago and he ..... (live) alone since.
7. You should ..... (behave) properly with your elders.
8. If you ..... (buy) a car last year, it ..... (cost) you much less.
9. I wish I ..... (be) at the party tomorrow.
10. After the soldiers ..... (slay) they were buried.
11. Why can't he ..... (hold) guilty, if all the evidence is against him.
12. I ..... (work) hard lately to achieve higher grade.
13. The news ..... (broadcast) in the 9 p.m. bulletin yesterday.
14. I ..... (know) him for a very long time.
15. He ..... (kneel) before the deity when I visited the temple.
16. I am sorry, I should ..... (buy) motor car last year.
17. I am not sure she may ..... (divorce) Pratap soon.
18. It is time you started ..... (earn) now.
19. When you meet him, you ..... (please), I am sure.
20. He ..... (walk) very quickly when I ..... (meet) him yesterday.
21. I ..... (have) a small house to live in these days.
22. He ..... (know) her for a long time before he finally (get) married to her.
23. Many more tourists ..... (arrive) by the time the week is over.
24. You must see me after you ..... (take) lunch.
25. He ..... (be) 20 now, next year he ..... (be) an adult.
26. The milkman ..... (be) here yesterday when we ..... (be) out.
27. The milkman ..... (give) milk to our neighbour at the moment.
28. The Red Fort ..... (stand) beside the Yamuna in Delhi.
29. Milton ..... (write) much of his great poetry after he ..... (become) blind.
30. His house ..... (face) the East and is spacious.

Exercise (B)

1. I have not heard from him, he may ..... (divorce) his wife last year.
2. Buses usually ..... (run) along this street, but today they ..... (not run) because the road is under repairs.
3. It still ..... (rain) but it ..... (stop) soon.
4. I already ..... (study) your proposals but regret I cannot accept them.
5. We ..... (play) Tennis yesterday, if it ..... (not rain).
6. If I ..... (have) a typewriter I would have typed this letter myself.
7. He ..... (arrive) after I ..... (finish) my last letter to you.
8. While he ..... (examine) the papers, he found that one paper ..... (disappear) from the room.
9. In 1954, after she ..... (work) in the hospital for two years, she ..... (compel) to give up the job.
10. I ..... (work) at my present job since the day a son ..... (bear) to my sister.
11. I can't say where Sheena..... (be) lately.
12. If I ..... (have) a typewriter now, I ..... (type) this letter in no time.
13. If you ..... (be) able to solve this problem you ..... (reward) generously by the Chief tomorrow.
14. If I ..... (be) God, I ..... (eliminate) all sufferings.
15. Ram's career ..... (ruin) if he ..... (not succeed) in the examination last year.
16. I wish, I ..... (know) the answer yesterday.
17. She ..... (treat) me so well when I was a boy that to this day I ..... (forgot) her kindness.
18. The light ..... (burn) the whole night, I must ..... (forget) to switch it off.
19. I am sure he hardly need ..... (spend) money.
20. Ancient India must ..... (enjoy) spiritual grace.
21. He started saving money lest he ..... (starve) in old age.
22. He came in looking as if he ..... (see) a ghost.
23. My friend often comes here with a view to ..... (meet) his parents.
24. The Taj ..... (stand) here for centuries.
25. Ashok began writing his autobiography but he ..... (die) before it ..... (complete).
26. Since Babu cannot swim, I am sure he would have been drowned if he ..... (fall) overboard.
27. He ..... (write) this book for eleven months by next July.
28. The milkman ..... (be) absent since last Sunday.
29. While I was writing the letter I ..... (hear) a knock on the door.
30. You must tell me where you ..... (be) since you ..... (leave) this place last month.

Exercise (C)

1. The police ..... (look) for the robber for a long time but they ..... (fail) to find him so far.
2. One day, while his mother ..... (stay) at her brother's house she ..... (turn) out of the house.
3. Last year my friend ..... (reject) by the committee, because he ..... (complete) education yet.
4. I believe he knows English well but he acts as if he ..... (not know).
5. If I ..... (meet) you earlier, I ..... (send) you invitation to the play yesterday.
6. My friend usually ..... (have) lunch at one, but today he already ..... (have) it.
7. By the end of this month she ..... (spend) the whole money she has.
8. He ..... (be) in Delhi for ten years when I ..... (transfer) there.
9. Promise that you ..... (help) him if he ..... (do) his job well.
10. She is rather young now, but if she ..... (be) older, she ..... (have) more sense.
11. She will be arriving quite late. So by the time she ..... (come) the play ..... (begin).
12. I ..... (convince) now that his political views ..... (be) worth listening to.
13. If I ..... (have) the courage, I would have answered him back.
14. I wish he ..... (speak) louder, I can't hear what he ..... (say) at present.
15. I wish he ..... (recite) louder, it was a touching poem.
16. He was honest and so he ..... (respect) by his colleagues.
17. Yesterday, Raman ..... (wait) for his guests for the last two hours but they ..... (arrive).
18. You committed a mistake, you could ..... (try) your luck.
19. He just ..... (go) out for a walk, he will return late.
20. Rita ..... (cry) the whole night when her dog ..... (lose).
21. No book ..... (lie) on the table when the principal entered the classroom.
22. She ..... (be) to Mumbai lately with her father for treatment.
23. If you get through the examination, I ..... (be) very happy.
24. She left Jaipur so that she ..... (join) her parents at Mumbai.
25. They had to agree to the request lest the boss ..... (annoy) with them.
26. He ..... (wait) for a long time until she arrived.
27. He married her long after her father ..... (die).
28. Before she arrived her children ..... (go) on picnic.
29. No sooner my friend ..... (phone) me than I left for his residence.
30. Hardly I ..... (step) out when it started raining.

Exercise (D)

1. Never I ..... (dream) that he would treat me shabbily.
2. Sometime I wonder if she ..... (live) peacefully with her husband these days.
3. How come, you ..... (not succeed) last year.
4. Never mind, it ..... (be) the stars that act on our destiny.
5. I ..... (complete) my work yet when he arrived.
6. There is a lot of money for you if you ..... (work) hard.
7. He ..... (be) in bed for the last ten days when his wife visited him.
8. It ..... (know) to all that she ..... (demote) soon.
9. How long you ..... (be) in this job?
10. The dinner ..... (be) ready before we arrived.
11. My brother made me ..... (promise) for providing shelter to his children.
12. I prefer ..... (swim) to ..... (fish).
13. Don't resent ..... (obey) the advice of your well meaning friends.
14. They advised me to give up ..... (try) to set up business of my own son.
15. You had better ..... (stop) there and ..... (see) what you can do to help her.
16. I don't remember ..... (post) the letter but I think I must ..... (do) it.
17. I agreed ..... (accompany) them to picture though they ..... (annoy) with me.
18. Don't avoid ..... (write) to your parents regularly.
19. I was let ..... (play) the match when I had completed my home work.
20. She denied ..... (do) anything with the affairs of her neighbours.
21. They were made ..... (write) an essay on the economic condition of the country.
22. They are used to ..... (interfere) in the affairs of their neighbours.
23. They enjoy ..... (play) video games and are not interested ..... (study) their books.
24. At last he succeeded ..... (get) a good job in his home town.
25. I look forward to ..... (visit) my village next month.
26. We left for Delhi after the function ..... (be) over.
27. Leave this place otherwise you ..... (turn) out soon.
28. They ..... (frighten) last night when they heard uproar in the street.
29. Please see that the patient ..... (not disturb).
30. When the book ..... (lose), she was disturbed.

Review Exercise

Directions : *Some of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect and some are correct. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and mark that part. If there is no error mark that part as your answer.*

1. If you had seen (a) yesterday's cricket (b) I am sure you would have enjoyed (c) seeing our team bat (d) No error (e)

2. I enquired of him (a) why (b) he is so negligent (c) in his studies (d). No error (e)

3. As the meeting (a) was about to end (b) he insisted to ask (c) several questions (d). No error (e)

4. The ship (a) was loaded (b) with (c) cotton (d). No error (e)

5. When he will come (a) I will (b) make sure (c) I meet him (d). No error (e)

6. Due to inflation (a) the prices of (b) essential items (c) are arising (d). No error (e)

7. I began relating (a) several details connecting with (b) the accident unmindful of (c) boring the audience (d). No error (e)

8. Weather permitted (a) there will be a garden (b) party at (c) Government House tomorrow (d). No error (e)

9. The traveller being weary (a) he (b) sat by (c) woodside to rest (d). No error (e)

10. It is high time (a) that (b) we leave (c) this place (d). No error (e)

11. He did not (a) and could not have (b) understood (c) the full facts of the case (d). No error (e)

12. Neither Rohit nor Kabir have done his lesson. No error
a b c d e

13. I am opposed to the plan of action not because it is ill conceived but that
a b c
it seems impracticable. No error
d e

14. He as well as you is tired of this long and troublesome affair. No error
a b c d e

15. There are many important details to attend to before this book gets printed.
a b c d
No error
e

16. Along the northern frontier of India is seen the Himalayas
a b c
mighty in their splendour. No error
d e

17. The recommendations of the committee that the age should be lowered down
a b
immediately was not accepted. No error
c d e

18. He is overworked and that seems to have seriously effected his health.
a b c d
No error
e

19. Each of the students whom I have chosen to take part in the discussion
a b
have indicated that he will be happy to do so. No error
c d e

20. Honestly speaking I like him not because he is handsome and charming but
a b
that he is exceedingly kind. No error
c d e

21. The father with the son were mysteriously missing from the house. No error
a b c d e

22. It is in 1929 when we first flew to the United States. No error
a b c d e

23. Our country need a number of self sacrificing and devoted political leaders.
a b c d
No error
e

24. The constant showing of slogans do not solve the problems
a b c
of the country. No error
d e

25. Crossing the road a car knocked him down. No error
a b c d e

26. We erect monuments in the memory of the great lest
a b
their achievements might be forgotten. No error
c d e

27. The alarmed report of an earthquake frightened everyone in that
a b c
disaster prone village. No error
d e

28. He used rather harsh words in denouncing her but he must have had
a b c
some very strong reasons to do so. No error
d e

29. Instead of his busy and hard life, he still retains freshness and robustness.
a b c d
No error
e

30. The issues are complex and has been obscured by other factors. No error
a b c d e

31. He is working hard with a view to compete with Mohan. No error
a b c d e

32. Since he has not yet attained the age of eighteen, he had no right to
a b c
vote in the present election. No error
d e

33. He was so tired that he fell asleep on the bed fully dressed. No error
a b c d e

34. Is there further reasons you can give me for your failure to do as you promised? No error
a b c d e

35. If anyone of the guests choose to leave before the ceremony is over lead him to exit quickly. No error
a b c d e

36. While proceeding on leave he had orally committed that he will resume after two days. No error
a b c d e

37. I am disappointed in not having saw any place while I was in Delhi on vacation. No error
a b c d e

38. Now-a-days he along with his friends go for a ride every evening. No error
a b c d e

39. They treated us not even to cocktails but also to dinner. No error
a b c d e

40. What India needs today are more scientists technicians and planners. No error
a b c d e

41. Him not agreeing to accept the proposals outlined by the committee is baffling. No error
a b c d e

42. If you had work hard you would have certainly got the scholarship. No error
a b c d e

43. No sooner did the thief saw the policeman than he ran away. No error
a b c d e

44. Until I do not inform my teacher I shall not go out of the school. No error
a b c d e

45. Neither the size nor the colour of the gloves were right. No error
a b c d e

46. Bangladesh has come (a) into (b) existence (c) thirty-six years ago (d). No error (e)

47. If it was possible (a) to get near (b) where one of these eruptions took place, (c) we could have a grand sight (d). No error (e)

48. By the time (a) the plane had arrived (b) I nearly had (c) despaired of being able (d) to board it. No error (e)

49. Neither your earnest pleadings (a) nor your (b) profuse tears (c) have made me to change (d) my decision. No error (e)

50. The gentleman (a) together with his wife (b) and children were (c) drowned (d). No error (e)

51. Sometimes (a) the ministers behave (b) as if they are (c) ministers for all time (d). No error (e)

52. Entering (a) the crowded store (b) I saw (c) two vaguely (d) familiar faces. No error (e)

53. The Director knowing of my (a) interest in (b) linguistics asked me that (c) I would like to attend (d) the national seminar. No error (e)

54. Hardly had (a) I left the house (b) than it began (c) to rain (d). No error (e)

55. Turning to the right (a) the town hall (b) at once (c) catches your eye (d). No error (e)

56. The request of (a) the student union president that fee be (b) lowered (c) were (d) immediately supported by vast majority. No error (e)

57. Most of us are not aware (a) that (b) eating some varieties (c) of mushrooms result (d) in death. No error (e)

58. After (a) Nepoleon had lost (b) the battle of Waterloo in 1815, he had been (c) exiled to (d) the Island of St. Helena. No error (e)

59. We always (a) complain that prices are too high (b) and that we were not (c) getting our money's worth (d). No error (e)

60. Please rest for a while (a) and when you rest I'll take you round (b) the garden (c) to show you our new roses (d). No error (e)

61. Imagine a town which (a) lacks not only (b) phased growth but is burdened (c) with unauthorised colonies (d). No error (e)

62. The manager asked Sunil (a) if he (b) was free to go (c) on tour immediately (d). No error (e)

63. Sixty years (a) have passed (b) since India became (c) free (d). No error (e)

64. It is easy (a) distinguishing (b) this pen (c) from that (d). No error (e)

65. When asked (a) a question he rose (b) his hand to catch (c) the teacher's attention (d). No error (e)

66. The reason (a) for the train (b) being late (c) was because the train was involved in an accident (d). No error (e)

67. He never has (a) and never (b) will play (c) at cards (d). No error (e)

68. Boys study in order (a) that they could (b) earn their (c) livelihood (d). No error (e)

69. Would you please request (a) him not to (b) tore open the envelope (c) without my consent? (d). No error (e)

70. Consider his young age the achievement of the player is really admirable
a b c
and appreciable. No error
d e

71. Your statement that you find this bag in the street will not be trusted. No error
a b c d e

72. To be elated in the moments of success or to be disconsolate in the moments
a b c
of failure are a sign of immaturity. No error
d e

73. The man who was killed he was my cousin. No error
a b c d e

74. I think everyone of these men are incompetent. No error
a b c d e

75. He was reading very hard for six months still he failed. No error
a b c d e

76. Please believe that money and peace of mind does not go hand in hand.
a b c d
No error
e

77. He who possess good qualities is bound to impress others. No error
a b c d e

78. Mother asked me where was I going in such a hurry. No error
a b c d e

79. Despite of his repeated requests the thieves beat him mercilessly.
a b c d
No error
e

80. People like Mahesh looks always cheerful not because of the peace of mind
a b c
but merely because of successful gestures. No error
d e

81. She had been a nurse for three years and then she wants to study medicine.
a b c d
No error
e

82. It is undeniably true (a) that many amongst us (b) felt that (c) the whole building is (d) vibrating. No error (e)

83. Everyone of those (a) who came here are (b) foolish and (c) cannot be relied upon (d). No error (e)

84. If I fail in (a) this examination (b) I shall give (c) the next examination (d). No error (e)

85. He hanged his (a) head in shame (b) when he came to know of his (c) son's mischief (d). No error (e)

86. The reason (a) why he was late was (b) because he had been (c) caught in rain (d). No error (e)

87. They are going to (a) start early (b) in order that (c) they will not be late (d). No error (e)

88. Each of the boys (a) whom I had invited to dinner (b) have indicated (c) that he would be happy to come (d). No error (e)

89. They have been (a) very close friends (b) until (c) they quarrelled (d). No error (e)

90. The number of students (a) appearing at (b) the written examination (c) increases every year (d). No error (e)

91. When he comes (a) to see us (b) he usually will bring (c) something with him (d). No error (e)

92. I did not (a) want her (b) to have spent (c) all her money at the fair yesterday (d). No error (e)

93. When at last (a) we got to (b) the theatre the much publicised play (c) was already begun (d). No error (e)

94. I am sorry I did not know (a) you have left (b) your coat here when you came to see (c) me last Thursday (d). No error (e)

95. Had he told me earlier (a) I may have lent him money (b) to save him (c) from disgrace (d). No error (e)

96. On a rainy day like this (a) I prefer to be at home (b) to going out (c) meeting friends (d). No error (e)

97. It is time (a) you decide (b) on your (c) next course of action (d). No error (e)

98. I was surprised at (a) not having seen her even though (b) she was (c) standing (d) in front of me. No error (e)

99. I did not practise (a) music since (b) I was (c) twenty-four (d). No error (e)

100. The Superintendent of police has announced that those who are found (a) guilty of breach of peace (b) or of taking the law into their hands (c) they will be taken to task (d). No error (e)

101. It is not difficult to believe that a man (a) who has lived in this city (b) for a long time (c) he will never feel at home anywhere else in the world (d). No error (e)

102. Being a destitute (a) I admitted him (b) to an old (c) people's home (d). No error (e)

103. Due to me (a) being a newcomer (b) I was unable to get a house (c) suitable for my wife and me (d). No error (e)

104. Inspite of the doctor's (a) stern warning (b) he continued taking (c) sugar in his tea (d). No error (e)

105. Never set a bad example; always remember that good and bad behaviour
a b c
is inculcated by example. No error
d e

106. Being a very hot day all of us sat at home and watched
a b c
television and enjoyed ourselves the whole day. No error
d e

107. Had the function not been postponed because of the strike
a b c
she may have been able to participate. No error
d e

108. He ultimately decided to willingly and cheerfully
a b
accept the responsibility entrusted to him. No error
c d e

109. Being the only people there their presence was most important. No error
a b c d e

110. There is no objection to him joining the feast if he is willing
a b c
to share the expenses. No error
d e

111. She saw that there was nothing else she could do because the room was as
a b c
clean as it had never been before. No error
d e

112. When the teachers are on strike and a notice to this effect
a b
is pasted on the college gate there is no sense to go there. No error
c d e

113. Not one of the hundreds of striking workers were allowed to go
a b c
near the factory. No error
d e

114. More widely popular than the hunting of deer or fox
a b c
were the pursuit of the hare. No error
d e

ANSWERS

UNIT-II

4. Kinds of Sentences and Clauses

Work Book Exercise (A)

Object to a Transitive Verb

1. I say that she is intelligent.
2. I said that he was intelligent.
3. I cannot say if/whether she will go.
4. She refused that she would not go.
5. I don't know what she is doing these days.
6. I know what you like.
7. I wonder what she is doing.
8. I doubt whether/if she will marry him.
9. I am certain that she will marry him.
10. The police suspected that he was a culprit.
11. She confessed/admitted that she had stolen my money.
12. She denied that she had met him.

The case in apposition to A noun or a Pronoun

1. She never believed in his statement that he would get her a job.
2. No one heard the news that the Prime Minister had resigned.
3. It is true that she will succeed.
4. It is not known how she arrived.

The Subject of a Verb

1. What are you doing is not desirable.
2. Whether he will come is not certain.
3. How she disappeared is a mystery.
4. That he is honest is known to us.

Object of Infinitive, Participle and Preposition

1. I was pleased by what she did for us.
2. Listen to what your parents advise.
3. Everybody was pleased to note that she looked cheerful at the party.
4. Good students ought to realise that hard work is key to success.
5. She kept on asking where I was going.

Complement of a Verb

1. The hope is that his son will return.
2. The fact is that he is honest.

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. I know the man who came here.
2. This is my pen which I gave you.
3. I don't know any man that is present here.
4. He is such a man as will never cheat you.
5. I have met all the boys that have been admitted to the hostel.
6. This is the best book that I have ever read.
7. I have invited Mohan whose father is a famous doctor.
8. I have invited Mohan whom all of us admire.
9. He is the man whose leg is defective.
10. It is the table the leg of which is broken.
11. I know the time when he arrived.
12. This is the reason why he will not stand by you.
13. It is I who am helping them.
14. He is one of those boys who are wasting their time.
15. This is only one of her novels that is popular.
16. This book is the same as I presented to her last year.
17. She bought the same pearls that I had recommended to her.
18. He settled in the town where he was born.
19. Who am I that should come to her help?
20. Let us help only those that are really needy.

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. write	2. ask	3. reached
4. enters	5. have taken	6. had written
7. had come	8. had come	9. had taken
10. have taken	11. had taken	12. left
13. has been suffering	14. has been	15. was raining
16. leave	17. are	18. will have arrived
19. had arrived	20. go	21. work
22. rains	23. work	24. knew
25. had	26. were	27. were
28. would treat	29. had known	30. had had
31. may stand	32. might stand	33. should fall
34. worked	35. did not pass	36. will pass
37. was punished	38. were	39. told
40. she	41. me	42. I
43. mine	44. that of Sohan	45. I.

Revision Exercises

(Based on Noun, Adjective and Adverb Clause)

Exercise (A)

1. 'would' in place of 'will'
2. No error.
3. 'if/whether' in place of 'that'
4. 'was' in place of 'am'
5. Place 'in the room' before 'we'
6. 'if' in place of 'that'
7. Say 'why he was not staying there'
8. 'as' in place of 'who'
9. 'that' in place of 'which'
10. 'those' in place of 'them'
11. Drop 'it'
12. 'that' in place of 'what'
13. 'had' in place of 'has'
14. 'why' in place of 'that'
15. 'the nib of which' in place of 'whose nib'
16. 'whom' in place of 'who'
17. Delete 'and'.
18. 'had seen' in place of 'saw'
19. 'if' in place of 'that'
20. Drop 'as to'
21. 'that' in place of 'which'
22. Drop 'he'
23. Drop 'that'
24. 'was' in place of 'is'
25. Correct
26. Say 'if he could give'
27. 'what life is' in place of 'what is life'
28. 'whom' in place of 'who'
29. 'that' before 'if' is correct.
30. Place 'adjective clause' after 'my friend'
31. 'are' for 'is'
32. Remove 'that'
33. 'as' in place of 'that'
34. Remove 'anything' or use 'that' in place of 'what'
35. Correct

Exercise (B)

1. Drop 'will'
2. 'do not' in place of 'will not'
3. 'had seen' in place of 'saw'
4. 'should' in place of 'shall'
5. 'if she had had' in place of 'if she had'
6. 'as' in place of 'like'
7. 'although' in place of 'because'
8. 'should' in place of 'will'
9. 'were' in place of 'are'
10. 'have completed' in place of 'complete'.
11. 'had typed' in place of 'typed'
12. 'came' in place of 'has come'
13. Drop 'does not'
14. 'have gone' in place of 'go'
15. Drop 'so'
16. 'has been' in place of 'is'
17. Drop 'still'
18. 'and' in place of 'but'
19. 'so that' in place of 'because'
20. No error
21. 'had decided' in place of 'decided'
22. 'as' in place of like
23. Drop 'supposing'
24. 'while' in place of 'when'
25. Drop 'do not' after 'you'
26. 'unless' in place of 'until'
27. 'knew' in place of 'know'
28. Say 'have taken rest'
29. 'so' in place of 'too'
30. 'has been' in place of 'is'.

Exercise (C)

1. 'that' in place of 'what' or remove 'something'
2. 'she is doing' in place of 'is she doing'
3. 'cars' in place of 'car'
4. 'if' in place of 'that'
5. 'and' in place of 'which'
6. Drop 'not'
7. 'were' in place of 'was'
8. 'as' in place of 'who'
9. 'were' in place of 'is'
10. Correct
11. 'shall have' in place of 'shall'
12. 'the fruit of which' in place of 'whose fruit'
13. Drop 'still'
14. 'marries' in place of 'will marry'
15. Drop 'that' and 'will' after 'result'.
16. 'have completed' in place of 'complete'
17. 'may' in place of 'will'
18. Insert 'have' after 'years' and remove 'has'
19. 'wears' in place of 'will wear'
20. 'have completed' in place of 'complete'
21. 'may' in place of 'will'
22. 'could have caught' in place of 'could catch'
23. 'would' in place of 'will'
24. 'had stolen' in place of 'stole'
25. Remove 'therefore'
26. 'what' in place of 'which'
27. 'have taken' in place of 'take'
28. 'leader's' in place of 'leader'
29. Insert 'that of' after 'than'
30. Insert 'had' after 'had'
31. 'why' in place of 'that'
32. 'is' in place of 'are'
33. Say 'are' for 'is'
34. Place 'will' after 'he' & remove 'that'
35. Place 'that' before 'when'

5. Clause Analysis

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. that she is intelligent..... Noun Clause object to the verb 'say'
2. if she will go..... Noun Clause object to the verb 'say'
3. whether she would go..... Noun Clause object to the verb 'know'
4. that she will marry him..... Noun Clause in apposition to 'it'
5. what she is doing..... Noun Clause object to the verb 'know'
6. what you want me to do..... Noun Clause object to the verb 'do'
7. what he says..... Noun Clause subject of the verb 'is'
8. what she did for us..... Noun Clause object to the preposition 'by'
9. that he would get her a job..... Noun Clause case in apposition to the 'statement'.
10. that she looked cheerful at the party..... Noun Clause object to infinitive 'to note'.
11. It is not known..... Noun Clause subject to verb
12. that he is a cheat..... Noun Clause complement of 'is'
13. that she will succeed..... Noun Clause subject of the verb 'is'
14. that he will pass..... Noun Clause object to certain
15. what I say..... Noun Clause object to the preposition 'to'

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. who came here.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'man'.
2. which I gave you.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'pen'.
3. that is present here.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'any man'.
4. is will never cheat you.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'such a man'.
5. that have been admitted to the hostel.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'all the boys'
6. that I have ever read.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'the best book'.
7. whose father is a famous doctor.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'Mohan'.
8. 'Whom all of us admire.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'Ashok'.
9. the leg of which is broken.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'the table'.
10. 'That he gave.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'the news'.
11. when he arrived.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'time'.
12. why he will not stand by you.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'reason'.
13. who am helping them.....Adjective Clause qualifying the pronoun 'I'.
14. where he was born.....Adjective Clause qualifying the noun 'town'.
15. that are really needy.....Adjective Clause qualifying the pronoun 'those'.

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. when you wrote the book.....Adverb Clause of time, modifying the verb 'help'.
2. before we took our dinner.....Adverb Clause of time, modifying the verb 'had come'.
3. after we had taken our dinner.....Adverb Clause of time, modifying the verb 'came'.
4. since she arrived.....Adverb Clause of time, modifying the verb 'suffering'.
5. until you leave this place.....Adverb Clause of time, modifying the verb 'come'.
6. till I go.....Adverb Clause of time, modifying the verb 'wait'.

7. so that he may stand first.....'Adverb Clause' of purpose, modifying the verb 'work hard'.
8. lest you should fall.....'Adverb Clause' of purpose, modifying the verb 'walk'.
9. that she could get first class.....'Adverb Clause' of result, modifying the verb 'worked'.
10. If you work hard.....'Adverb Clause' of condition, modifying the verb 'pass'.
11. Unless you work hard.....'Adverb Clause' of condition, modifying the verb 'not pass'.
12. Were I a doctor.....'Adverb Clause' of condition, modifying the verb 'treat'.
13. Although he worked hard.....'Adverb Clause' of contrast, modifying the verb 'pass'.
14. As he is intelligent.....'Adverb Clause' of reason, modifying the verb 'pass'.
15. as if she were rich.....'Adverb Clause' of manner, modifying the verb 'talks'.
16. as I told her.....'Adverb Clause' of manner, modifying the verb 'did'.
17. than she (is).....'Adverb Clause' of comparison, modifying the adjective 'wiser'.
18. than mine (is).....'Adverb Clause' of comparison, modifying the adjective 'cheaper'.
19. as he (is).....'Adverb Clause' of comparison, modifying the adjective 'good'.
20. than (I like) him.....'Adverb Clause' of comparison, modifying the verb 'like'.

❑

6. Non-finite Verbs

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. Drop 'to' before 'solve'
2. Drop 'to' before 'use'
3. 'buying' in place of 'buy'
4. 'writing' in place of 'write'
5. 'visiting' in place of 'visit'
6. 'to have been' in place of 'to be'
7. 'to have discovered' in place of 'to discover'
8. 'crying' in place of 'to cry'
9. 'to enter' in place of 'enter'
10. 'brother's' in place of 'brother'
11. 'at achieving' in place of 'to achieve'
12. 'of qualifying' in place of 'qualify'
13. 'from attending' in place of 'to attend'
14. Say 'to carry the bag carefully'
15. 'to leave' in place of 'to have left'
16. Drop 'to' before 'do'
17. 'to move' in place of 'from moving'
18. 'anybody's in place of 'anybody'
19. 'to have left' in place of 'to leave'
20. Drop 'to' before 'abuse'
21. Insert 'in' after 'live'
22. 'visiting' in place of 'visit'
23. 'from taking' in place of 'to take'
24. Delete 'to'
25. 'of being' in place of 'to be'
26. Say 'how to swim'
27. Drop 'to' before 'go'
28. Say 'to blame'

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. (b)	**2.** (b)	**3.** (b)	**4.** (b)	**5.** (b)	**6.** (b)	**7.** (a)	**8.** (c)	**9.** (b)	**10.** (b)
11. (b)	**12.** (b)	**13.** (c)	**14.** (b)	**15.** (b)	**16.** (a)	**17.** (b)	**18.** (b)	**19.** (a)	**20.** (c)
21. (b)	**22.** (b)	**23.** (c)	**24.** (b)	**25.** (c)	**26.** (b)	**27.** (b)	**28.** (c)	**29.** (a)	**30.** (c)
31. (b)	**32.** (b)	**33.** (c)	**34.** (a)	**35.** (b)	**36.** (b)	**37.** (c)	**38.** (c)	**39.** (c)	**40.** (b)
41. (c)	**42.** (a)	**43.** (b)	**44.** (c)	**45.** (b)					

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. While she was writing a letter.
2. Place 'it' before 'being'
3. Place 'she' before 'being' or she was punished by the teacher.
4. Place 'not' after 'would'
5. she was not punished by the teacher
6. While she was climbing
7. Place 'I' before 'having'
8. Although she is a miser.
9. 'When one takes' in place of 'While taking'
10. While I was cooking
11. Correct
12. Say 'he was taken to hospital'
13. As I did not follow
14. While he was standing
15. As he was tired.
16. Correct
17. Correct
18. Even after they had run.
19. 'and achieved target' for 'achieving'
20. Running along the road I saw a dead horse.

❑

7. Verb

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. Use 'are' in place of 'is'
2. 'has' in place of 'have'
3. 'has' in place of 'have'
4. No error
5. 'was' in place of 'were'
6. 'is' in place of 'are'
7. Insert 'allowed' after 'has'
8. No error
9. No error
10. 'is' in place of 'are'
11. Insert 'have' before 'left'
12. No error
13. 'did he work' in place of 'he worked'
14. No error
15. No error
16. 'need' in place of 'needs'
17. 'is' in place of 'are'
18. 'was he brought' in place of 'he was brought'
19. 'will he stay' in place of 'he will stay'
20. 'was' in place of 'were'
21. 'overflowed' for 'overflown'
22. 'laid' for 'lay'
23. 'nor does he work'
24. 'started' for 'start'
25. 'talecast' for 'telecasted'
26. Say 'spoken' for 'spoke'
27. 'are' in place of 'is'
28. Say 'were you' in place of 'have you been'
29. Say 'are' for 'is'
30. Say 'has been' for 'have been'

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. 'is' in place of 'are'
2. 'is a large sum' in place of 'are a large sum'
3. 'was' in place of 'were'
4. No error
5. 'needs' in place of 'need'
6. 'never have I' in place of 'never I have'
7. 'is' in place of 'will be'
8. No error
9. 'was' in place of 'were'
10. 'is' in place of 'are'
11. 'has' in place of 'have'
12. No error
13. 'are' in place of 'is'
14. 'goes' for 'does go'
15. No error
16. 'went' in place of 'had been'
17. 'are' in place of 'is'
18. 'was' in place of 'were'
19. 'was' in place of 'will be'
20. 'were' in place of 'was'
21. 'are' in place of 'is'
22. 'is able to' in place of 'can be'
23. 'does he come' in place of 'he comes'
24. 'May you' in place of 'You may'
25. 'has' in place of 'have'
26. Say 'were you for 'have you been'
27. Say 'went' for 'has been to'

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. (b)	**2.** (a)	**3.** (b)	**4.** (c)	**5.** (c)	**6.** (c)	**7.** (a)	**8.** (c)	**9.** (c)	**10.** (a)
11. (c)	**12.** (a)	**13.** (b)	**14.** (b)	**15.** (a)	**16.** (b)	**17.** (c)	**18.** (a)	**19.** (b)	**20.** (b)
21. (c)	**22.** (a)	**23.** (c)	**24.** (a)	**25.** (c)	**26.** (b)	**27.** (a)	**28.** (b)	**29.** (b)	**30.** (c)
31. (a)	**32.** (b)	**33.** (b)	**34.** (a)	**35.** (c)	**36.** (c)	**37.** (a)	**38.** (b)	**39.** (a)	**40.** (b)
41. (a)	**42.** (c)	**43.** (b)	**44.** (c)	**45.** (c)	**46.** (b)	**47.** (c)			

Revision Exercises

(Based on Functions, Voice, Modals, Non-finites and Clauses

Exercise (A)

1. met
2. saw, were not introduced
3. has improved, went
4. was knocked
5. have written
6. died, has been living
7. behave
8. had bought, would have cost
9. were
10. had been slain
11. be held
12. have worked
13. was broadcast
14. have known
15. was kneeling
16. have bought
17. divorce
18. earning
19. meet, will be pleased
20. was walking, met him
21. have
22. had known, got
23. will have arrived
24. have taken
25. is, will be
26. was, were
27. is giving
28. stands
29. wrote, had become
30. faces

Exercise (B)

1. may have divorced
2. run, are not running
3. is raining, will stop
4. have studied
5. would have played, had not rained
6. had had
7. arrived, had finished
8. was examining, had disappeared
9. had worked, was compelled
10. have been working , was born
11. has been
12. had, would type
13. are, will be rewarded
14. were, would eliminate
15. would have been ruined, had not succeeded
16. had known
17. treated, have not forgotton
18. had been burning, must have forgotton
19. spend
20. have enjoyed
21. should starve
22. had seen
23. meeting
24. has stood
25. had died, was completed
26. had fallen
27. will have written
28. has been
29. heard
30. have been, left

Exercise (C)

1. have been looking, have failed
2. was staying, was turned
3. was rejected, had not completed
4. did not know
5. had met, would have sent
6. has, has had
7. will have spent
8. had been, was transferred
9. will help, does
10. were, would have
11. comes, will have begun
12. am convinced, are
13. had had
14. spoke, is saying
15. had recited
16. was respected
17. did not
18. could have tried
19. has just gone
20. had been crying, was lost
21. was lying
22. has been
23. shall be
24. might join
25. should be annoyed
26. had been waiting/had waited
27. had died
28. had gone
29. did my friend phone
30. had I stepped

Exercise (D)

1. did I dream
2. is living
3. did not succeed
4. is
5. had not completed
6. work
7. had been
8. is known, will be demoted
9. have you been
10. had been
11. promise
12. swimming, fishing
13. obeying
14. trying
15. stop, see
16. to have posted, have done
17. to accompany, were annoyed
18. writing
19. play
20. to have done/having done

21. to write
22. interfering
23. playing, in studying
24. in getting
25. visiting
26. had been
27. will be turned
28. were frightened
29. is not disturbed
30. was lost

Review Exercise

1. (e) No error
2. (c) Use 'was very negligant'
3. (c) 'on asking' for 'to ask'
4. (b) 'laden with' for 'loaded with'
5. (a) Say 'comes' for 'will come'
6. (d) Say 'rising'
7. (b) Say 'connected with'
8. (a) Say 'Weather permitting'
9. (b) Drop 'he'
10. (c) Say 'left'
11. (a) Add 'understand' after 'did not'
12. (c) Use 'has'
13. (c) Say 'but because'
14. (e) No error
15. (c) to be attended
16. (c) Say 'are seen'
17. (d) Say 'were not'
18. (d) Use 'affected'
19. (c) Say 'has'
20. (c) Say 'because'
21. (b) Say 'was'
22. (a) Say 'it was'
23. (a) Say 'needs'
24. (b) Say 'does not'
25. (a) Say 'While he was crossing'
26. (d) Say 'should be'
27. (a) Say 'alarming'
28. (d) Say 'for doing so'
29. (a) Say 'inspite of'
30. (c) Say 'have been'
31. (c) Say 'a view to competing'
32. (c) Say 'he has'
33. (d) Place 'fully dressed' after 'asleep'
34. (a) Use 'Are' for 'Is'
35. (a) Use 'chooses'
36. (d) Use 'would' for 'will'
37. (b) Say 'in not having seen'
38. (b) Say 'goes'
39. (b) Say 'not only'
40. (b) Say 'is'
41. (a) Say 'his not agreeing'
42. (b) Say 'worked hard'
43. (b) Say 'see'
44. (a) Delete 'do not'
45. (d) Say 'was'
46. (a) Say 'came' for 'has come'
47. (a) Say 'if it were possible'
48. (b) Say 'arrived'
49. (d) Delete 'to'
50. (c) Use 'was'
51. (c) Say 'as if they were'
52. (e) No error
53. (c) Say 'if'
54. (c) Say 'when' for 'than'
55. (a) Say 'when you turn'
56. (d) Say 'was'
57. (d) Say 'results'
58. (c) Say 'was exiled'
59. (c) Say 'are' for 'were'
60. (b) Say 'when you have rested'
61. (c) Say 'but also'
62. (e) No error
63. (e) No error
64. (b) Say 'to distinguish'
65. (b) Say 'raised'
66. (d) Say 'was that the train was involved'
67. (a) Add 'played' after 'has'
68. (b) Use may
69. (c) Say 'to tear'
70. (a) Say 'Considering his age'
71. (b) Say 'found'
72. (d) Say 'is a sign of'
73. (c) Remove 'he'
74. (c) Say 'is' for 'are'

75. (a) Say 'had been reading'
76. (c) Say 'do not'
77. (a) Say 'possesses'
78. (c) Say 'I was going'
79. (a) Say 'Despite' remove 'of'
80. (b) Say 'look'
81. (d) Say 'wanted'
82. (d) Say 'was vibrating'
83. (b) Say 'is' for 'are'
84. (c) Say 'take' for 'give'
85. (a) Use 'hung' for 'hanged'
86. (c) Say 'that' for 'because'
87. (d) Say 'may' for 'will'
88. (c) Delete 'have'
89. (a) Say 'had been'
90. (e) No error
91. (c) Say 'brings' for 'will bring'
92. (c) Say 'to spend' —
93. (d) Say 'had already begun'
94. (b) Say 'had left'
95. (b) Say 'might have' would have
96. (b) Say 'being' for 'to be'
97. (b) Say 'you decided'
98. (e) No error
99. (a) Say 'have not practised'
100. (d) Delete 'they'
101. (d) Omit 'he'
102. (a) Add 'he' before being destitute
103. (a) Say 'my being'
104. (c) Say 'to take'
105. (c) Say 'good or bad'
106. (a) Say 'It being'
107. (d) Say 'might have'
108. (b) Say 'to accept willingly and cheerfully'
109. (a) Add 'They' before 'being'
110. (b) Say 'his joining'
111. (e) No error
112. (d) Say 'no sense in going'
113. (c) Say 'was' for 'were'
114. (d) Say 'was'

❑

Chapter 8 Articles

What is an Article?

Articles are very important words in English and so is their knowledge. Articles are used before only nouns to limit or define their (Nouns) uses in the context of the sentence. They impart effectiveness and accuracy to the nouns. In fact, articles are used as **demonstrative adjectives and determiners before nouns.**

There are two kinds of articles.

(I) Indefinite Articles —A, An (in the sense of 'one' and 'any')

(II) Definite Articles—The (in the sense of 'this' and 'that')

Rules of Articles

The Use of Indefinite Articles 'A', 'An'

Rule I

A student must note that the choice between 'A' and 'An' is determined primarily by **SOUND**.

(A) 'A' is used before a word beginning.

(i) With consonant. *e.g.*,

a boy — a child

a student — a book

(ii) With a vowel giving the sound of a consonant. *e.g.*,

a one eyed man — a university student

a European — a unique book

a uniform — a universal problem

(B) 'An' is used before a word beginning.

(i) With a vowel. *e.g.*,

an elephant — an apple

an ass — an umbrella

(ii) With a mute 'h'. *e.g.*,

an hour — an heir

an honourable person — an honest man

an honorary post — an hourly visit

(iii) With a consonant pronounced with the sound of a vowel. *e.g.*,

an LL.B student — an M.P.

Rule II

(I) Indefinite article 'A, An' is used when we talk of a thing or a person that is indefinite or that is mentioned for the first time. (in the sense of 'one')

(II) Indefinite article is also used to express a class (in the sense of 'any') [Rule III (B)]

(A) Before a singular countable common noun when it is mentioned for the first time representing no particular person or a thing. *e.g.*,

(i) I need a book. (one)
(ii) Twelve inches make a foot. (one)
(iii) A beggar came to my door. (one)
(iv) Please get me a scooter. (one)
(v) She gave her a note book. (one)

(B) Before a singular countable noun which is used to single out some person something as a representative **of a class of things, animals and persons.** [Rule III (C)] *e.g.*,

(i) A cow is a useful animal. (any in the sense of class)
(ii) A beggar cannot be a chooser. (any in the sense of class)
(iii) A rose is a beautiful flower. (any in the sense of class)
(iv) A son should be obedient. (any in the sense of class)

(C) To make a common noun of a proper noun to express quality.

(i) A Shylock is living in my neighbourhood. (a cruel miser)
(ii) He is a Vikramaditya known for his fairness. (a just man)

[Refer to Rule III (H)]

(D) In certain expressions of quantity with certain numbers and expressions of 'Price, rate, speed, ratio'. *e.g.*,

(i) Rupees ten a kilo.
(ii) A dozen mangoes.
(iii) Half a dozen. [Refer to Rule III (L)]

(E) When 'A, An' represents a weakened form of preposition 'in'. *e.g.*,

(i) He earns fifty thousand rupees a year.
(ii) We should brush our teeth two times a day.

(F) In exclamations with 'what' or 'how' before singular countable nouns. *e.g.*,

(i) What a hot day!
(ii) What a pretty girl!
(iii) What a naughty child!
(iv) How fine a day!
(v) What a fool he is.
(vi) What kind of a teacher.
(vii) What fool will believe it? [Correct (Interrogative)]

* But we don't say 'What a kind of'.

(G) **Note** the position of indefinite article in the following adverbs :
'Rather, very, much, quite, so, too, such, as' e.g.,

(i) It is rather a nuisance.
(ii) It is rather a good step (or a rather good step).

(iii) He is a very good person.
(iv) He is a much hated character.
(v) He is such a nice man that everybody likes him.
(vi) It is quite an interesting story.
(vii) She is as intelligent a student as her brother is.
(viii) She is too weak a student to pass.
(ix) She is so weak a student that she can't pass.

(H) Before a person not known to the speaker. *e.g.*,
(i) A Mr. Gupta = Some Mr. Gupta
(ii) A Mrs. Sharma = Some Mrs. Sharma

(I) Before the verbs used as nouns. *e.g.*,
(i) For a swim
(ii) For a talk
(iii) For a visit
(iv) For a walk
(v) For a drive
(vi) For a rest
(vii) Have a taste
(viii) Have a mind
(ix) Have a pain

(J) Before certain phrases. *e.g.*,
(i) In a hurry
(ii) A pity
(iii) Take a liking
(iv) Feel a shame
(v) Take a fancy
(vi) Make a noise
(vii) Tell a lie.

(K) Before the words denoting numbers. *e.g.*,
(i) A hundred
(ii) A dozen
(iii) A million

(L) Before the adjectives 'little' and 'few' to give the sense of 'some'
(Rule V on Adjectives)

A little— some (Quantity)
A few — some (Number)
(i) I have little money to buy a house. (hardly any)
(ii) Please give me a little sugar. (some)
(iii) He has spent the little money that he had. (some but all)
(iv) There are few boys in the class. (hardly anyone)
(v) I met a few students in the university. (some)
(vi) The few students that were in the class were sitting idle. (some but all)

(M) There is no plural of 'a', 'an'. 'Some' or 'Any' is the equivalent of the plural.

A horse	some horses/any horses
An orange	some oranges/any oranges

'he Use of Definite Article 'The'

ule III

(A) When we talk of a particular person or a thing as already mentioned, known or under discussion, *eg*,
(i) The book (which you mentioned) is not available in the market.
(ii) Let us study the lesson carefully. (lesson in hand)

(B) Before **proper nouns** (unique objects) when they refer to the names of historical buildings, mountain ranges, planets, rivers, oceans, gulfs, groups of islands, holy books, ordinals, descriptive names of countries, states, newspapers, magzines, deserts, superlative degree, names of trains, hotels, shops, trains, *eg.*

The Persian Gulf	The Taj Mahal	The Netherlands
The Indian Ocean	The best picture	The Sudan
The Ganges	The first man	The USA
The Himalayas	The Sahara	The Maurya Sheraton
The Ramayana	The Bay of Bengal	The Ranjit
The Vedas	The Rajdhani Express	
The Moon	The Times of India	
The Sun	The Frontline	
The Earth	The North Pole	

* 'The' is not used before Aravali and Everest because they are not mountain ranges.

(C) When a singular noun expresses a class of animal or things. But 'the' is avoided with their plural forms and persons to express a class. *e.g.*,

(i) The dog is a faithful animal.

(ii) The rose is a sweet flower.

(iii) The cow is economically useful.

(iv) Dogs are faithful.

(v) The cows are economically useful. (Delete 'the')

(vi) The son should be obedient. (Delete 'The', use 'A'. 'The' before a person does not express a class of persons)

Note : Indefinite article 'A' is used—

(1) In the sense of 'any' to single out a person, a thing or an animal as a representative of a class. [Refer to Rule II (B)]

(i) A son should be obedient.

(ii) A cow is a useful animal.

(iii) A mango is a sweet fruit.

(iv) Sons should be obedient.

(2) 'Man/Woman/Mankind' used in general sense to represent human race are used without article. *e.g.*,

(i) Man is mortal. — used in general sense.

(D) Before an adjective when it represents a class of persons. *e.g.*,

(i) The rich should help the poor.

(ii) The old are respected by the young.

(E) Before musical instruments. *e.g.*,

(i) He can play the flute.

(ii) She is fond of playing the harmonium.

(F) As an adverb with a comparative sense. (Double comparison) *e.g.*,
(i) The sooner, the better
(ii) The higher you go, the colder it is.

(G) Before comparative degree in case of a choice. *e.g.*,
(i) She is the weaker of the two sisters.
(ii) Which is the more beautiful of the two sisters?

(H) Before proper noun for the sake of comparison. *e.g.*,
(i) Surdas is the Milton of India.
(ii) Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India. [Refer to Rule II (C)]

(I) Before sports cups, and trophies. *e.g.*,
(i) India won the Singer Cup last year.
(ii) A number of teams are taking part in the World Cup.

(J) Before physical positions. *e.g.*,
(i) The top of the mountain.
(ii) The back of the house.
(iii) The centre of the market.
(iv) The front of the house.

(K) With the cardinal points. *e.g.*,
(i) The Sun rises in the East.
(ii) The Himalayas are to the north of India.

(L) Before a unit of measurement. *e.g.*,
(i) Cloth is sold by the metre.
(ii) Eggs are sold by the dozen. [Refer to Rule II (D)]

(M) Before caste and communities. *e.g.*,
(i) The Rajputs are brave people.
(ii) The Marathas are hard working.

(N) Before the adjectives 'same & whole' and after the adjective 'all & both' used with plural nouns. *e.g.*,
(i) This is the same book that you gave me.
(ii) The whole class was absent.
(iii) All the boys were present there.
(iv) Both the brothers were honest.
(v) All sugar is wasted.

(O) In certain idiomatic phrases. *e.g.*,
(i) In the wrong.
(ii) On the contrary.
(iii) In the town
(iv) The benefit of the doubt.
(v) In the air
(vi) Speak the truth.
(vii) Out of the question.
(viii) In the right.

(P) Before a common noun to give it the force of a superlative. *e.g.*,
(i) She is the woman.
(ii) Netaji was the leader.
(iii) He is the man for this job.

(Q) Before a common noun to give it the sense of an abstract noun (feelings, qualities etc.) *e.g.*,

(i) The judge in him. (sense of justice)
(ii) The mother in her. (feelings of a mother)
(iii) The beast in him. (cruelty of a beast)

(R) Before inventions. *e.g.*,

(i) The telephone.
(ii) The wireless.
(iii) The television. (as an invention)
(iv) He was watching television. ('television' is used just as a set.)
(v) He was listening to the Radio.

(S) Before the name of professions used collectively. *e.g.*,

(i) The Press.
(ii) The Bench.

(T) Before a noun, qualified by adjectives. *e.g.*,

(i) The former President Abdul Kalam
(ii) The immortal Shakespeare.
(iii) The late Shri S.C. Bose.

(U) Before the case in apposition. *e.g.*,

(i) Netaji, the hero of Modern India, ought to be remembered.
(ii) Who can underestimate Mr. Vajpayee, the former Prime Minister?

(V) Before the dates. *e.g.*,

(i) The 10th of May.
(ii) The 5th of September.

(W) Before the organs of government. *e.g.*,

(i) The Judiciary
(ii) The Legislature

(X) Before the parts of a body of a person in place of possessive adjectives. *e.g.*,

(i) He hit me on the back.
(ii) She caught me by the arm.

(Y) Before the political parties. *e.g.*,

(i) The BJP.
(ii) The Labour Party.
(iii) The Janta Party.

(Z) Before the Armed forces. *e.g.*,

(i) The Army.
(ii) The Police.
(iii) The Air force.

(Z) (a) Before the dynasties, empires, wars, revolutions, centuries. *e.g.*,

(i) The Gupta dynasty.
(ii) The British empire.
(iii) The Red revolution.
(iv) The Middle Ages.

(v) The Civil war.
(vi) The Vedic ages.
(vii) The Sixth century.

(b) Before language to signify nationality. *e.g.*,
(i) The Chinese are hard working.
(ii) The Japanese are patriots out and out.

(c) Before nationality (plural) *e.g.*,
(i) The Greeks.
(ii) The Indians.
(iii) The Asians.

Note : But we say.
An Indian, An Asian, A Greek.

(d) Before little and few. [Refer to Rule II (L)]
(i) The little – some but all
(ii) The few – some but all

Rule IV : The Omission of Articles

The article 'A/An, The' are omitted—

(A) Before proper noun. *e.g.*,
(i) Shakespeare was the greatest dramatist.
(ii) Delhi is the capital of India.

Note : (a) When indefinite article is used before proper nouns they become common nouns.
(b) 'The' before a proper noun is used for the sake of comparison.
e.g.,
(i) This man is a Shylock. (a miser)
(ii) Samudra Gupta was the Napolean of his age.
(The greatest general of his time.)

(B) Before names of materials. *e.g.*,
(i) Silver is a useful metal.
(ii) Tea grows in India.
* but we can say
(iii) The tea of Assam is very famous. (particular tea)
(iv) The water of the Ganga is sacred. (particular water)

(C) Before common noun used in its widest sense. *e.g.*,
(i) Man is Mortal.
(ii) God is omnipresent.
* But we say 'the devil'.
(iii) The gods and the goddesses are kind to him. (in the sense of deities)

(D) Before abstract nouns as qualities, feelings and states used in general sense. *e.g.*,
(i) Truth is a noble quality.
(ii) Love is a natural feeling.
(iii) Honesty is the best policy.

Note : But we can say. *e.g.*,
(i) The honesty of my brother is beyond any doubt.
(ii) He always tells a lie.
(iii) He always speaks the truth.

(E) Before noun complement (appoint, make, elect, select etc.) *e.g.*,
(i) The committee appointed him Captain.
(ii) They elected him President.

(F) Before collective nouns in general sense. *e.g.*,
(i) Life is complex.
(ii) Society does not allow this.

(G) Before uncountable nouns. (Refer to Rule I in the chapter on Nouns). *e.g.*,
(i) He gave me advice.
(ii) He passed on information to me.

(H) Before languages. *e.g.*,
(i) Chinese is a difficult language.
(ii) He knows Russian very well. [Rule III Z(b)]
He knows the Sanskrit language.

(I) Before '**school, college, home, church, temple, sea, work, bed, table, hospital, market, prison, court**' when their purpose is thought of rather than the actual building place. *e.g.*,
(i) We go to temple on Mondays. (for prayer)
(ii) The thief went to the bed. (upto the bed)
(iii) I go to bed early. (to sleep)
(iv) He was sent to prison after conviction. (as a prisoner)
(v) He went to Sea is his early youth. (as a sailor)
(vi) He went to the Sea alone. (travel & other purposes)

Note : 'The' is used before—
'Office, cinema, movie, theatre, picutre, circus, station, bus stop' etc.

(J) Before 'hobbies, professions and sports'. *e.g.*,
(i) Dancing is her profession.
(ii) Gardening is his hobby.

(K) Before names of diseases. *e.g.*,
(i) Cancer is a dreaded disease.
(ii) AIDS is spreading like wild fire.

Note : But we can say the Measles, the Mumps, the Rickets, the Plague, the Flu.

(L) Before regular meals except when preceded by an adjective. *e.g.*,
(i) I take breakfast at 8 a.m.
(ii) You should take dinner early.
(iii) They gave us a good breakfast.
(iv) A good breakfast is necessary.
(v) A dinner in honour of the President will be held. (in the sense of Party)

(M) Before parts of the body. *e.g.*,
Liver is the largest organ of human body.

(N) Before modes of travel. *e.g.*,
(i) He will go by air.
(ii) A journey by road is very comfortable.

(O) Before names of relations like
'Uncle, mother, father' etc. in place of possessive adjectives. *e.g.*,
(i) Father will go to Delhi tomorrow.
(ii) Aunt is expected any moment.

Note : 'Father' and 'Aunt' implies 'our father' and 'our aunt'.

(P) In certain phrases. *e.g.*,

(i) To lose heart.	Last but not least.
(ii) To set foot.	To catch fire.
(iii) To give ear.	To send word.
(iv) By day.	In hand.
(v) At sunrise.	By name.
(vi) At home.	At last.

(Q) Study the following phrases carefully :

(i) In summer, winter	+	in the summer season
(ii) From beginning to end	+	from the beginning of the day to the end of the day.
(iii) From right to left	+	keep to the left.
(iv) At dawn, at midday, at noon, at night, at dusk	+	during the day, in the afternoon, in the evening, in the night
(v) Next week (time)	–	the next question (number)
Last week (time)	–	the last question (number)

(R) Before such nouns as
'Cattle, gentry, people' etc. When they are used in general sense.
(Refer to Rule II on Nouns)

(S) Before little, few. (in negative sense).

(i) Little sugar	(hardly any)	
(ii) Few students	(hardly any one)	[Refer to Rule II (L)]

Rule V

(A) When two or more connected nouns refer to the same person or thing, the article should be used before the first noun. However, the article is used before each noun if they refer to two different persons or objects. *e.g.*,

(i) The Prime Minister and the President are visiting the town today.
(Two different persons holding two different posts.)

(ii) The Prime Minister and President of the party is on a visit to the town today.
(one person holding two posts.)

(B) Similarly, one article before the first adjective is used when two or more adjectives qualify the same noun. *e.g.*,
She is wearing a black and a white saree. (Omit 'a' before 'white')

(C) If there are two articles before ordinals, use singular noun. In the case of article before one ordinal, noun should be used in plural form. *e.g.*,
(i) The first and the second **chapter** are very difficult.
(ii) The first and second **chapters** are very difficult.

Note : The article is not repeated with plural nouns. Verb is plural form in the sentences given in 'C'.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. My friend always likes to travel by the air since he is a very busy man.
2. Dr. Radha Krishnan was a more famous philosopher than a politician.
3. The Manager and the Executive Director of our hotel is a very energetic person.
4. Whenever I meet him he always makes a mention of his father.
5. Although he has undergone a very costly treatment, he has not been cured of a headache.
6. Those in hurry should realise that speed is no key to success in life.
7. God made country and man made town.
8. It is pity that he does not behave humbly with his parents and friends.
9. Being M.A. only he could not be appointed to the post of a lecturer.
10. He always takes a heavy breakfast because he generally skips lunch.
11. Please go and find out dog so that you may not lose it forever.
12. Snake we saw was very deadly though it left the kitchen quietly.
13. Tonight I shall go to the bed early because I have to leave for Mumbai at dawn tomorrow.
14. Child needs love and affection if he is to be brought up as a healthy young man.
15. It is said that elephant is vindictive by nature and never forgets his enemy.
16. It is very difficult to get a taxi at such a hour as it is already 11 p.m.
17. Do you take a sugar and if so, how much?
18. She lives in first storey of the house and she has to come down quite often.
19. He knows how to play flute. He learnt it while he was a student.
20. It is said that he is a wise man. He cannot err, Vedas may err.
21. These days only rich can afford the hospitality of the costly nursing homes and hospitals coming up all over the country.
22. Rajputs belong to a martial race since they were organised into the force to fight against the oppression of the rulers.
23. What nice mother she is, becasue she takes care of every small need of her children.
24. What a kind of fellow he is, if his enemies are to be believed.
25. Kapil Dev brought glory to India by winning World Cup in 1983.

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. He is as a weak boy as my brother.
2. It is futile to give an advice to a person who would not listen to you.
3. The pride hath a fall, 'Says the Bible.'
4. She is both a virtuous, and a beautiful daughter of a successful working mother.
5. He has been sent to the prison several times but has not shown any sign of improvement in his conduct.
6. He was watching the television when I called on him last night.
7. Prince William is a heir to the throne of the Great Britain.
8. Tea we used to get in the Scouting Camp was never to our taste.
9. It was a so hot day that it was impossible to go out shopping.
10. I shall never forget a good deed you did to me, when I was in crisis.
11. The singing is both my vocation and avocation because it is a source of joy and bread to me.
12. Surdas is often called Milton of India although unlike Milton, Surdas had no political ambitions.
13. Higher you go, colder it is.
14. The old woman placed kettle on fire and come back to the bedroom.
15. Never give the ear to the slanderous talk of others because they are always motivated by jealousy.
16. The District Magistrate possesses both the civil and criminal jurisdiction.
17. You must enjoy classical music on radio even if you are not able to understand its true spirit.
18. I have a work to do and so I will reach late.
19. You should be true to a word because it is a characteristic of a gentleman.
20. This young man is in search of an employment because he is in grave financial crisis.
21. Although he is a hard working student, his success in the examination is out of question.
22. Wisdom of Vikramaditya solved many riddles that pepole brought to him for solution.
23. The Chinese is a very difficult language to understand for those who have never been to China.
24. News you broke to his wife made her nervous and she broke down.
25. The lions are carnivorous.

□

Chapter

9 Noun

What is a Noun?

A Noun is used as the name of a person, thing, place, idea and quality of a person, a thing and a place.

I) Kinds of Noun—

(a) Common Noun—It is the name given common to every person or a thing of the same kind. It is not a name of any particular person or thing or place. *e.g.*, boy, girl, teacher etc.

(b) Proper Noun—It is the name given to some particular person, thing or place. *e.g.*, Delhi, Sania, India, Jupiter.

(c) Collective Noun—It is the name of a collection of persons and things treated and spoken together as a whole. *e.g.*, fleet, audience, class, committee, crowd, mob etc.

(d) Abstract Noun—It is the name of a quality, idea, concept or state. *e.g.*, beauty, youth, honesty, death etc.

(e) Material Noun—Such as gold, coal, wheat, tea.

II) Number of a Noun — Singular - Plural

III) Gender of a Noun — Masculine - Feminine - Neuter

IV) Case of a Noun

For example—

(i) Mohan is my friend.	Subjective/Nominative case
(ii) Who brought this book?	Objective/Accusative case
(iii) She is Mohan's wife.	Possessive/Genetive case
(iv) Help me, Mohan	Vocative case

Case in Apposition—

Mohan, the Captain of our team, has been rewarded.

Appositon means a placing near just 'as captain' is placed after 'Mohan'. It is a kind of descriptive expression not joined by any conjunction.

Rules of Noun

Rule I

(A) **(a)** Uncountable Nouns are used in the singular forms only.
(b) Indefinite article is not used before them.
(c) They are not used with plural verbs.
(d) 'Much' or Some are used in place of 'Many' for denoting plurality.

Some of the important Nouns of this kind are :

'Advice, information, hair, luggage, business, work, word (in the sense of promise, message, discussion) **mischief, bread, scenery, abuse, vacation, evidence, employment, alphabet, poetry, food, furniture, baggage, fuel, paper, equipment, machinery, material etc'.** *e.g.,*

(i) He gave me an information. (Omit 'an')
(ii) You should be true to your words. (Use 'word' in place of 'words')
(iii) He was punished for committing many mischiefs. (Use 'much mischief' in place of 'many mischiefs')
(iv) Young persons dislike the advices of the elderly people. (Use 'advice' in place of 'advices')

(B) These nouns may be used to denote singularity as follows—
(i) a piecc/a word of advice.
(ii) a word of abuse
(iii) an act of mischief.
(iv) a piece of work.
(v) a piece/loaf of bread.
(vi) an article of luggage.

(C) These nouns may be used to denote plurality as follows—
(i) much/some advice.
(ii) a lot of/many words/many pieces of advice.
(iii) two pieces/loaves of bread.
(iv) words of abuse.

Rule II

There are some of the collective nouns which are used with plural verbs. *e.g.,*

(a) **'cattle, gentry, peasantry, poultry, clergy, people, majority, folk.'**

(b) The nouns **'committee, jury, House, ministry, family, mob, crowd, audience, police, team, number, board, staff, public'** are used with singular verbs when they are used as a body or group and not as members.

(c) When these nouns denote members or individuals, the verb is used in Plural form.
(i) Cattles **are** grazing in the field. (Use 'cattle' in place of 'cattles')
(ii) Majority **is** in favour of this proposal. (Use 'are' in place of 'is')
(iii) The committee **is** unanimous on this issue. (Correct)
(iv) The committee **are** divided and there is bitterness among the members. (Correct)

(v) The peoples of all the countries should work for peace. (Correct)
(vi) The average Hindu family in India **consists** of four members. (Correct)
(vii) His family **are** not agreed on this point. (Correct)
(viii) The audience **was** spell bound. (Correct)
(ix) The audience **were** forbidden to occupy chairs. (Correct)
(x) The Police **has** become insensitive. (Correct)
(xi) The Police **were** posted all over the route. (Correct)
(xii) The team **are** full of high spirits. (Correct)
(xiii) The team is **at** the top in this competition. (Correct)

Note : 'Peoples' is used when we talk of the people of different countries.

Rule III

'Offspring, deer, fish, sheep'—are expressed as singular or plural only by the use of verb. Both in singular and the plural they have the same form.

(i) Sheeps are economically useful. (Use 'Sheep' in place of 'Sheeps')
(ii) A sheep is grazing in the field. (Correct)

Note : 'Fishes' may be used in the sense of different number and kind.

Rule IV

Some of the nouns (ending in 's' or 'es') are used with singular verb.

(A) Branches of learning. *e.g.*,
Mathematics, Physics, Mechanics, Politics, Statistics, Statics, Economics.

Note : Statistics as subject is used with singular verb. Statistics when taken as a collection of data is used with plural verb.

(B) Diseases. *e.g.*,
Mumps, Measles, Rickets etc.

(C) Games and sports. *e.g.*,
Billiards, Aquatics, Gymnastics, Athletics etc.

(D) Titles of books. *e.g.*,
Three Musketeers, Gulliver's Travels, Arabian Nights, War and Peace, Tales from Shakespeare.

(E) Descriptive names of countries. *e.g.*,
United States, United Arab Emirates etc.

(F) Some other nouns are—
Innings, Series, News, Summons, e.g.,

(i) The measles have broken out in the town. (Use 'has' in place of 'have')
(ii) Politics are a dirty game. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')
(iii) These news are disappointing. (Say 'this news is')
(iv) A/The summons has been served on him. (Correct)
(v) A series of matches are being played. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')
(vi) Two series of matches was played last year. (Use 'were' in place of 'was')

Rule V

Study the uses of Nouns as singular and plural in forms.

Noun	Used as	Noun	Used as
Wood	Material	Woods	Forest
Water	Material	Waters	Sea
Asset	Quality	Assets	Property
Sand	Material	Sands	Land
Iron	Material	Irons	Chains
Cloth	Material	Clothes	Dress
Abuse	Indecent words	Abuses	Misuses
Work	Labour	Works	Literary writings
Air	Element	Airs	Behaviour
Advice	Suggestion	Advices	Bills
Custom	Habit	Customs	Tax
Effect	Result	Effects	Goods
Colour	Material	Colours	Flag
Fruit	Edible thing	Fruits	Results
Wit	Ability to talk	Wits	Intelligence
Arm	Organ	Arms	Weapons
Good	Advantage/use	Goods	Articles

Rule VI

Some of the nouns are generally used in the plural form with plural verb.

(a) Articles of dress.
'Trousers, breeches, Jeans'

(b) Names of instruments.
'Scissors, spectacles, shears, scales'

(c) Other nouns such as

'Alms, thanks, proceeds, riches, contents, credentials, orders, refreshments, requirements, customs, rations, archives, annals, ashes, arrears, assets, stairs, spirits, statistics (data), quarters, earnings, manners, outskirts, savings, auspices (support), surroundings. e.g.,

(i) My scissors is not sharp. (Use 'are' in place of 'is')
(ii) My spectacles is very costly. (Use 'are' in place of 'is')
(iii) A pair of spectacles has been bought by me. (Correct)
(iv) Order for his transfer has been issued. (Incorrect)
(v) Orders for his transfer have been issued. (Correct)

Rule VII

A compound noun (numerical + noun) is not used in plural if a noun does the work of an adjective. *e.g.,*

(i) Ten-day tour
(ii) A ten-mile race
(iii) A ten-year old boy
(iv) He is ten years old. (Correct)
(v) A five-rupee note
(vi) Five-foot long room

Rule VIII

Nouns expressing number are used in singular with numerical adjectives.
'Two hundred, two thousand, five dozen, two score, two million, three lakh.' *e.g.*,

(i) I gave him two hundreds rupees. (Omit 's' in 'hundreds')
(ii) I gave him five dozens pencils. (Omit 's' in 'dozens')
(iii) There are hundreds of partially built houses. (Correct)

Rule IX

Use of Apostrophe with 's'—

(A) The use of apostrophe with 's' is not correct in the case of non-living things. It is restricted only to living things, time, weight, distance, amount or personified nouns.

(i) The table's wood. (Incorrect) (ii) Boy's hand.
(iii) Time's march. (iv) A one-kilometre's journey.
(v) A rupee's worth. (vi) A night's journey.
(vii) A metre's length. (viii) Nature's laws.
(ix) A week's holiday.

(B) Two nouns in the possessive case denote plural form. When apostrophe with 's' is used with one noun, it expresses singular form. *e.g.*,

(i) Sheela and Rohit's father. (the father of both Sheela and Rohit)
(ii) Sheela's and Rohit's fathers are meeting today. (fathers of Sheela and Rohit)

(C) With compound nouns apostrophe with 's' should be added only with the last word.

(i) Mother-in-law's behaviour
(ii) Maid-servant's absence.

(D) Pronouns are written by omitting apstrophe but 's' is added. e.g.,

(i) Yours truly. (ii) Its colour
(iii) Hers (iv) It's (It is)

(E) Possessive case is indicated by apostrophe without 's' after Plural nouns or words ending with 's'.

(i) John Keats' poems. (ii) Girls' Hostel.
(iii) Dickens' novels. (iv) Jesus' sake.
(v) Kalidas' works.

(F) **(a)** 'Else' combined with indefinite pronouns (somebody, any body, nobody etc.) is expressed in possessive case as <u>somebody else's</u> in place of somebody's else.

(b) The correct expression 'whose else' should be used in place of the wrong expression 'who else's'. However 'who else' is correct.

(i) This is not my book. This is somebody's else (Say somebody else's)
(ii) Who else is coming? (Correct)
(iii) Who else's book is this? (Use 'whose else' in place of 'who else's')

Note : 'Who' should be converted into possessive 'whose'. So 'whose else' is correct.

Rule X

Two adjectives denoting different meanings and qualifying the same noun are considered plural and are used with plural verbs. *e.g.*,

(i) Cultural and social life in India are changing.

(ii) Summer and winter vacation are compulsory in our schools.

(Look up Rule V on Articles)

Rule XI

Noun after preposition is repeated in singular form. *e.g.*,

(i) Word for word. (ii) Hour after hour. (iii) Door to door.

Rule XII

The use of fractions.

(i) One and a half years are wasted. (ii) One and a half hours are wasted.

(iii) A year and a half is wasted. (iv) An hour and a half is wasted.

Rule XIII

A student is required to study the plural forms of certain nouns carefully. Such nouns alongwith their plural forms are given below :

Singular Form	Plural Form
Commander-in-chief	Commanders-in-chief
Major General	Major Generals
Attorney General	Attorneys General
Maid servant	Maid servants
Looker-on	Lookers-on
Passer by	Passers by
Mother-in-law	Mothers-in-law
Man servant	Men servants
Woman servant	Women servants
M.A.	M.A.'s
Mouse	Mice
Ox	Oxen
Datum	Data
Medium	Media
Forum	Forums, Fora
Stadium	Stadia
Criterion	Criteria
Phenomenon	Phenomena
Formula	Formulae
Oasis	Oases
Lacuna	Lacunae
Erratum	Errata
Memorandum	Memoranda
Alumnus	Alumni
Syllabus	Syllabi
Addendum	Addenda

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. Cattles are not allowed to enter this ground.
2. The enemy has received many informations regarding the activities of the army of our neighbouring country.
3. Order has been issued for his transfer to another district but he has not received them so far.
4. The hills of the Uttar Pradesh abound in beautiful sceneries and visitors are attracted to it every year.
5. Although she has studied English for almost a year, she has yet to learn the alphabets.
6. There are two scores of books which are lying unused in the library.
7. Children are prone to making mischiefs if they have nothing to do.
8. Sheeps are economically useful and so they are reared in the hills.
9. I have not gone through the letter and so I am not aware of its content.
10. Twenty cattles were found wandering on the road.
11. I shall not attend the meeting since I have many works to complete within allotted time.
12. It is difficult to find man servants in big cities because they are engaged in other profitable professions.
13. All his sister-in-laws are married and settled in U.K.
14. You should always be true to your words if you are to succeed in life.
15. It is a pity that even five years old boys are engaged in hazardous factories.
16. I gave him two five hundred-rupees notes for depositing in my saving account.
17. It is never my business to give an advice to those who are not sensible enough to deal with their own problems.
18. The committee is divided over the issue of his appoinment and this has resulted in much rancour among its members.
19. I don't think it is your house. It is somebody's else.
20. There is a lack of girl's schools in the town and many parents don't like to send their children to co-educational institutions.
21. He was late and entered the female compartment in a hurry.
22. When we reached picture hall we found there was no place.
23. She misplaced her spectacle and is now feeling great difficulty in reading.
24. Arabian Nights are a collection of very interesting episodes of adventure.
25. I hope to visit my uncle only next year during summer vacations.
26. He was offered lecturership by the committee.

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. Ration has run out and the District Magistrate has been informed.
2. The table's wood is infested with mite and I am likely to dispose it of.
3. The morale of the army was high because the news coming from the front were very encouraging.

4. The majority likes reading sensational stories and watching western movies.
5. A variety of books is available in the market to help the students qualify the competitive examinations.
6. Variety are the spice of life otherwise life may become dull and drab.
7. Lots of friends come to meet him whenever he visits his home town.
8. He never believes in using a fair means because they are not acceptable in this materialistic age.
9. A plenty of informations about his activities was passed on to his boss.
10. I can't come to you now because a lot of works remains to be done.
11. All the evidences against him were rejected by the High Court.
12. Commander's one hot orders arrived late and the forces had to retreat.
13. Have you deposited the money in the Bank or not?
14. You can buy the scissors that is cheap.
15. He goes fishing every day and brings a lot of fishes that his wife cooks for him.
16. The house is made of bricks and stones, not of marbles.
17. A pair of specs has been found in the library.
18. This data are very useful to arrive at correct conclusion.
19. What is the criteria of selection in the examination?
20. A farmer was loading oxes to his field for ploughing early in the morning.
21. Please put your sign here.
22. The court turned down his witness.
23. There was no place to stand in the bar.
24. He has brought four breads for lunch today.
25. All members of the college are invited to college fun today evening.
26. Mohan's voice is her assets.
27. The five members delegation will call on the president.
28. He turned pages after pages.
29. He has not secured even passing marks.
30. My cousin brother is expected today.
31. It is a news that he has deserted his wife.
32. I have sent him a email to call me soon.
33. She is getting full freedom as she is the daughter of a martyr.
34. A foolish person does not know wrong from right.
35. We should not find fault with our children.
36. This has been our custom from immemorial times.
37. I go to sleep at 11 pm.
38. They will arrive tomorrow by 10.30 O'clock train.

Chapter

10 Pronoun

What is a Pronoun?

Pronoun is a word used in place of a noun is order to avoid repetition of the latter.

Kinds of Pronoun

1. **Personal Pronouns**—Words used in place of nouns referring to persons.
   'I, we, you, he, she, it, they' etc.

The Case of Personal Pronouns		Subject	Object	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
Singular	First Person	I	me	my	mine
Plural		We	us	our	ours
	Second Person	You	you	your	yours
Singular		She	her	her	hers
	Third Person	He	him	his	his
		It	It	Its	—
Plural		They	them	their	theirs

2. **Demonstrative Pronouns**—Words used for nouns to point out objects.
   'This, that, these, those' etc.
   (i) **This** is my book. (ii) **That** is her house.
   But in the following examples 'This' and 'That' are used as demonstrative adjectives.
   (i) This book (ii) That house

3. **Relative Pronouns**—Words used for nouns to express functions relating to '**who, which, that, whose, whom**' etc.
   (i) The man **who** has just entered the room is my friend.
   (ii) The book **that** I bought is very costly.

4. **Interrogative Pronouns**—Words used for nouns to ask questions.
   Who? What? Which? Whose? Whom?
   (i) **Who** took my bag?
   (ii) **Whom** did you meet?
   (iii) **Whose** books are these?
   (iv) **What** are you doing?
   (v) **What** shirt is this? Interrogative adjective
   (vi) **Whose** book is this? Interrogative adjective

5. **Indefinite Pronouns**—Words used for nouns in vague and general meaning **'everybody, nobody, somebody, either, neither, all, much, several, each, others, another'** etc.

6. **Reflexive Pronouns**—Words used as forms of Personal pronouns for emphasis. **'myself, ourselves, himself, themselves, yourself'** etc.

7. **Distributive Pronouns**—Used for individuals and objects referring to them as one at a time.

   'either, neither, each, every, none, anyone', etc.
   (i) **Either** of the two sisters is staying here.
   (ii) **Neither** of his arms is defective.
   (iii) You can take **either** room. Distributive adjective
   (iv) You can talk to **each** boy. Distributive adjective

8. **Reciprocal Pronouns**—Words used to point out mutual relationship. **'each other, one another'** etc.
   (i) Both the brothers love **each other.**
   (ii) Indians should not fight with **one another.**

Rules of Pronoun

Rule I

When the subject of the verb is the receiver of the action, the action is said to be reflected. Such verbs are used reflexively.

'Acquit, absent, avail, reconcile, amuse, resign, avenge, revenge, enjoy, exert, apply, adapt, adjust, pride' overreach, etc, are used reflexively. *e.g.*,

(i) You should avail yourself, of every chance in life. (Correct)
(ii) They enjoyed picture last evening. (No reflexive pronoun is needed)
(iii) They enjoyed during summer vacation. (Place 'themselves' after 'enjoyed')
(iv) He resigned himself to his failure. (Correct)
(v) The former D.M. acuqitted very efficiently. (Place 'himself' after 'acquitted').
(vi) He was determined to avenge the death of his wife. (Correct)

Rule II

The following verbs are not used reflexively.

'Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest, hide' are not used reflexively. *e.g.*,

(i) You should keep yourself from bad boys. (Drop 'yourself')
(ii) He has qualified himself for the post. (Drop 'himself')
(iii) He hid himself in the room. (Drop 'himself') (Int. verb)
(iv) The thief hid money under the carpet. (Correct) (Tran. Verb)

Rule III

A reflexive pronoun cannot act as a subject or object of a verb unless it is preceded by pronoun or noun concerned. *e.g.*,

(i) Myself will see to it that you get your share of property. (Change 'myself' into 'I')
(ii) Yourself and he reached there in time. (Change 'yourself' into 'you')
(iii) I myself like him. (Correct)
(iv) Raj will do it for myself and my sister. (Change 'myself' to 'me')

Rule IV

(a) The verb **'to be'** should be followed by subjective form when the complement is pronoun. *e.g.*,

(i) It is me who have brought you home. (Change 'me' into 'I')

(ii) Was it her who did it for you? (Change 'her' into 'she')

(iii) It will be us who will buy a new house. (Change 'us' into 'we')

Rule V

Verbs and Prepositions are followed by objective case of a pronoun.

(i) Between you and I Suhani is intelligent. (Say 'me')

(ii) She is teaching Rohit and 'she'. (Say 'her')

(iii) Let they go. (Say 'them')

Rule VI

(a) Good manners require that the order of singular pronouns should be **second person, third person and first person (231).**

(b) **But in plural 'we' is used before 'you' and 'they' after 'you' (123).** The latter order is also observed while referring to unpleasant acts. *e.g.*,

(i) I and you will attend her wedding tomorrow. (Correct use is 'You' and 'I')

(ii) He and you will share the mangoes. (Use 'You' and 'he')

(iii) You, Mohan and I will watch movie tonight. (Correct)

(iv) We, you and they are leaving for Mumbai tomorrow. (Correct)

(v) You and I will be punished. (Unpleasant act, use 'I and you')

Rule VII

Use of possessive adjectives (Possessive case of the pronoun)

(A) When two subjects are joined by—

'As well as, together with, along with, and not, in addition to, like, unlike, with' rather than, except, no less than, nothing but, more (noun) than one, the possessive case of the pronoun (possessive adjective) is used in accordance with the first subject.

(B) When two subjects are joined by—

'Either-or, neither-nor, not only-but also, none-but.'

the possessive case of pronoun (possessive adjective) is used according to the nearest subject.

(C) When the pronouns

'Each, every, neither, either, anyone' many a, more than one (possessive adjective) are used as subject, the possessive case should be third person singular. They may refer to two or more than two objects or persons.

(D) When **'one'** is used as a subject, the possessive case of the pronoun should be according to one. (i.e. one's)

(E) When a pronoun is used for more than one noun or pronouns of different persons, the possessive case is in the form of first person plural **(our)** and second person plural **(your)**. *e.g.,*

(i) Each boy and each teacher is required to bring their luggage. (Use 'his' in place of 'their')

(ii) One should do his duty sincerely. (Use 'one's' in place of 'his')

(iii) Neither the students nor-the teacher was playing in their proper uniform (Use 'his' for 'their')

(iv) Reena as well as her children has returned to their home. (Use 'her' for 'their')

(v) Only you and I have brought your books. (Use 'our' for 'your')

(vi) You and he completed their work. (Use 'your' for 'their')

(vii) Have you, he and I received their letters? (Use 'our' for 'their')

(viii) Neither of the two brothers has brought their bedding. (Use 'his' for 'their')

(ix) Each one of us is doing our duty properly. (Use 'his' for 'our')

(x) Every one should do one's duty. (Use 'his' for 'one's')

(xi) My sister along with her friends is doing her job at Delhi. (Correct)

Rule VIII

A noun or pronoun in the possessive case should not be used sometimes with the nouns such as—

'Separation, leave, excuse, mention, report, pardon, sight, favour.' e.g.,

(i) Your separation is very painful to me. (Say 'separation from you')

(ii) At his sight the robbers fled. (Say 'At the sight of him')

(iii) I beg your favour, please. (favour of/from you)

(iv) She did make mention of you. (Correct, 'your mention' is wrong.)

Rule IX

'Either, neither, each other'

are used in speaking of two persons or things. *e.g.,*

'Anyone, none, one another'

are used while referring to more than two persons or things. *e.g.,*

(i) Indians should never fight with each other. (Use 'one another' in place of 'each other')

(ii) Anyone of his eyes is defective. (Use 'either' in place of 'anyone')

(iii) None of his arms was wounded in the accident. (Use 'neither' for 'none')

(iv) Either of his four sons has sold his property after his death. (Use 'anyone' for 'Either')

Rule X

While writing **question tag the subject and verb must be according to the main sentence. e.g.,**

(i) Our teacher is intelligent, isn't it? (Use 'isn't he?')
(ii) The boys are not going on picnic, are they? (Correct)
(iii) They went to Delhi yesterday, isn't it? (Use 'didn't they?')
(iv) She comes here daily, does she? (Use 'doesn't she?)
(v) She will help me, won't she? (Correct)
(vi) I shall not play Shan't I? (Amn't is not correct)
(vii) Shall not play, (Correct)
(viii) He is seldom absent, is he? (Correct)
(ix) We need not worry, need we? (Correct)
(x) I used to write poetry, didn't I? (Correct)
(xi) We have a book, don't we? (Correct)
(xii) You have taken food, haven't you?

Imperative Sentence

(xiii) Don't close the room, will you? (Correct)
(xiv) Close the room, won't you/will you? (Correct)
(xv) Let them stay here, will they? (Correct)
(xvi) Let us stay here, shall we? (Correct)
(xvii) Let us play, shall we? (Correct)

Indefinite Pronouns

(xviii) Everything is settled, isn't it? (Correct)
(xix) Nothing is settled, Is it? (Correct)
(xx) None of your friends like her, do they? (Correct)
(xxi) Few students are working hard, are they? (Correct)
(xxii) Everybody can speak English, can't they? (Correct)
(xxiii) No one can speak English, can they? (Correct)
(xxiv) One of/most of/all of you will go there, won't you? (Correct)
(xxv) One of/most of/all of us shall go there, shan't we? (Correct)
(xxvi) One of/most of/all of them will go there, won't they? (Correct)

Note : (i) The negative statements having words such as **'hardly, seldom, barely, scarcely', few, little** are followed by ordinary question tag. (Affirmative)

(ii) With **'everybody, everyone, somebody, someone, nobody, no one, anybody, none, neither, either'**. 'They' is used in question tag.

Rule XI : Use of Both

'Both' should be followed by 'and' and not by **'as well as',**
Negative is avoided with Both e.g.

(i) Both you as well as my brother are going to attend her marriage tomorrow. (Use 'and' in place of 'as well as')

(ii) Both of them are not going there. (Incorrect)
Neither of them is going there. (Correct)

Rule XII

'Which' is used in place of 'Who' when we are referring to a choice between two or more than two things or persons. *e.g.*,

(i) Of the two sisters who is the more intelligent. (Use 'which' in place of 'who')

(ii) Who is your father in the crowd? (Use 'which' in place of 'who')

(iii) Who is better of the two dancers in our society?
(Place 'the' before better and change 'who' into 'which')

Rule XIII

Possessive case—We don't use noun after possessive case of a pronoun. e.g.,

(i) This book is mine = This is **my** book.

(ii) This shirt is yours = This is **your** shirt.

(iii) **Our** is a populous country. (Say 'Ours')

Rule XIV

The relative pronoun should be expressed according to its relation with the verb of the adjective clause. 'Who' is used as a subject of a verb of adjective clause and 'whom' is used as an object of a verb of adjective clause. *e.g.*,

(i) He was talking of the women who, he said, he met in America.
(Use 'whom' in place of 'who')

(ii) She is the kind of lady whom, every body knows, is intelligent.
(Use 'who' in place of 'whom')

Rule XV

The use of **'But'** as a relative pronoun. *e.g.*,

(i) There was none but wept. (Who did not weep)

(ii) There is no country but is corrupt. (Which is not corrupt)

Rule XVI

The use of the 'same' as pronoun is wrong. *e.g.*

(i) I shall give you a book and **the same** is very useful. (Say 'it' for the 'same')

(ii) He bought a house and is living **in the same.** (Say 'it' for the 'same')

Ruel XVII

'What' is used without an antecedent and it refers to things only. e.g.,

(i) It is incredible what she said.

(ii) I don't believe in the words what she uttered.
(Use 'which'/'that' in place of 'what')

(iii) I don't believe in what you say. (Correct)

(iv) I know which you say. (Say 'what')

Note : *For detailed study of relative pronouns look up adjective clause in the chapter on Clauses.*

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. He bought the books and put it in the bag.
2. Civil servants should acquit efficiently in the service of a common man.
3. My father always adivses me that I should keep myself from bad boys.
4. Avail every chance that comes your way lest you should repent in the long run.
5. There should be no misunderstanding between your father and she.
6. It was Mohan or her who came here last night and kept on knocking at the door.
7. Let Rohit and she complete this job as they like to do it.
8. Was it him who gave money to buy new books?
9. He and myself alone will complete this work because we don't need the help of anyone.
10. You, I and he should take examination seriously.
11. It was with great difficulty that each of the brothers could get their share of property.
12. They that hanker after fame and money are likely to be disappointed.
13. I am sad to learn that you and your brother have lost their money in share market.
14. Both he as well as I are going to Delhi tomorrow to buy new motorbike.
15. This is only one of her novels that have been published till date.
16. Neither of the two brothers has got their money back from the government.
17. You and I are expected to do your duty in the interest of the students.
18. Who is the more intelligent, you or he?
19. Anyone of the students is allowed to keep their books in the staff room.
20. Our is a country that is governed by corrupt politicians.
21. One should always remember that it is his duty to help the weak and the poor.
22. Everybody is honest in my office and does their work honestly.
23. I don't like which you told my father last night.
24. What is it which makes life happy?
25. This is not my house, it is her.
26. She was playing which was not liked by her father.
27. He taught me and which I admire most even today.
28. I gave him a pen but he has not returned the same to me.
29. His picture is the same that mine.
30. She did not tell me the story what you had told me.

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. Which we saw surprised all and one present at the function.
2. She is the woman who, I know, you can always rely upon.
3. Don't respect such persons who have no respect for elders.
4. When warned he stopped himself at once.
5. He is the same person who was present at the wedding party last night.
6. The only person who can read and write English well is my friend.
7. The Saraswati is a river whose origin has always been a matter of conjecture.

8. They that tell a lie should not be depended upon for doing anything right.
9. My friend is honest and hard working, isn't it?
10. They did not go to attend the marriage of their neighbours' daughter, didn't they?
11. Your separation is very painful to me.
12. It is difficult to say who is the better of the two sisters.
13. He is the same man who always likes to boast of his bravery.
14. All which glitters is not gold.
15. I never expected that you would provide me with such a servant that was not reliable at all.
16. My problem is the same like his because we both are living in the same locality.
17. I am getting late and beg your leave.
18. At my sight he ran inside the house because he did not like to meet me.
19. This is the best which we can do in the present circumstances.
20. To my surprise I found my brother smarter than he.
21. Generally we have our dinner at 9.00 p.m., haven't we?
22. Which cannot be cured, must be endured.
23. His marks in History are higher than English.
24. I don't like the students whose actions are dishonest and their words are contrary to their actions.
25. He is not one of those who will help everybody whom he meets.

❑

Review Exercise

Directions : *Some of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect and some are correct. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and mark that part. If there is no error, mark that part as your answer.*

1. These kind of dresses (a) seems to be (b) expensive but it is relatively economical (c) to maintain. (d) No error (e)

2. It was she (a) who suggested that you be (b) at the door (c) to welcome each participant on their arrival. (d) No error (e)

3. Book (a) I read (b) last week was (c) an interesting one. (d) No error (e)

4. The teacher asked the boys, (a) if it was their practice (b) to leave the class (c) whenever he pleased. (d) No error (e)

5. Each cigarette which (a) a person smokes does (b) some harm and eventually you (c) may get a serious disease from its (d) effects. No error (e)

6. One should (a) take advantage of opportunities (b) to talk with native speakers if one wants (c) to improve your (d) English. No error (e)

7. The bus was (a) hired by (b) the ladies for (c) its picnic. (d) No error (e)

8. The hall is full, (a) there is (b) no place for (c) anyone else. (d) No error (e)

9. How I wish it (a) had been me (b) whom (c) you had chosen and not she. (d) No error (e)

10. She is (a) one of those persons whom, (b) I am sure, always do their best (c) even in the most trying circumstances. (d) No error (e)

11. He has (a) a bad cold (b) and a sore throat. (c) He may still get flue. (d) No error (e)

12. I am given (a) so many works (b) to do at the (c) same time. (d) No error (e)

13. For her sake (a) as well as (a) for Mohan (b) I hoped fervently (c) that she might get (d) a job. No error (e)

14. In evaluating (a) your progress I have taken into account (b) your classroom performance, your receptivity (c) and how you have improved. (d) No error (e)

15. A body (a) of volunteers has been (b) organised to help the faculty (c) in their (d) attempt to raise funds. No error (e)

16. Everyone of (a) the men present here (b) has given a day's pay (c) as their contribution to the fund. (d) No error (e)

17. Neither he (a) nor his brother (b) can walk faster (c) than me. (d) No error (e)

18. Whom (a) did you mean to hurt (b) by your unkind remarks except (c) Sita and I. (d) No error (e)

19. Two external men (a) and yourself (b) will correct (c) the answer-books. (d) No error (e)

20. Who, (a) of the two do you think, (b) will be (c) dismissed first? (d) No error (e)

21. We will (a) learn a lot by attending (b) the English (c) course, isn't it? (d) No error (e)

22. I would (a) like you (b) to meet my cousin brother (c) who has just returned from the States. (d) No error (e)

23. India is (a) one of the leading (b) film producing country (c) in the world. (d) No error (e)

24. This is (a) the man (b) whom, (c) I remember, had picked my pocket. (d) No error (e)

25. He tried all the drawers (a) in his old desk (b) but could not find his purse (c) in anyone of it. (d) No error (e)

26. I will have (a) both (b) the blue (c) or the black pen. (d) No error (e)

27. A legislation (a) that restricts (b) the fundamental rights of a citizen has (c) no legal force. (d) No error (e)

28. After (a) every participant had had (b) three minutes to express (c) their opinion (d) the debate was thrown open to the audience. No error (e)

29. My choice (a) is quite (b) different from (c) your's. (d) No error (e)

30. The (a) great poet and dramatist the (b) Kalidas is quite often described as the (c) Shakespeare of (d) Sanskrit literature. No error (e)

31. You should make (a) it a rule never (b) to interfere (c) with other affairs. (d) No error (e)

32. At (a) that very moment (b) they were showing (c) signs of growing nervousness, isn't it? (d) No error (e)

33. She has a remarkably (a) kindly (b) disposition who (c) wins her (d) friends whenever she goes. No error (e)

34. It was generally agreed (a) that the speeches of their Prime Minister (b) were better (c) than the Ministers. (d) No error (e)

35. She is not leaving (a) Dehradun tomorrow as (b) order for her (c) transfer have been (d) cancelled. No error (e)

36. Myself and Gopalan (a) will take care of (b) the function (c) on Sunday. (d) No error (e)

37. Whatever work (a) that which you undertake (b) put your best efforts (c) in it. (d) No error (e)

38. As it was Ranjan's (a) first interview he dressed himself (b) in his most (c) formal suit. (d) No error (e)

39. The party chief made it a point to state that (a) the Prime Minister and the Union (b) Home Minister should also come (c) and see what his party men had seen. (d) No error (e)

40. If the teacher is good (a) the students (b) will respond (c) positively to them. (d) No error (e)

41. Mr. Sunil Pawar, our representative, (a) he will (b) attend the meeting (c) on our behalf. (d) No error (e)

42. He could not plan his strategy (a) until he knew (b) whom (c) his opponents could be. (d) No error (e)

43. Last summer (a) he went (b) to his uncle's village (c) and enjoyed very much. (d) No error (e)

44. May I (a) know who (b) you want (c) to see please? (d) No error (e)

45. The scientist must follow (a) his hunches and (b) his data (c) wherever it may lead. (d) No error (e)

46. Wherever they go, (a) Indians easily (b) adapt to (c) local circumstances. (d) No error (e)

47. The ruling party stood (a) for implementation of the Bill (b) and was ready to stake (c) their political existence. (d) No error (e)

48. The teacher was (a) busy and asked three (b) of we to divide (c) the work and do it. (d) No error (e)

49. He was fascinated by insects (a) and the more he studied (b) their habits (c) greater was his fascination. (d) No error (e)

50. I go to (a) the bed (b) at eight (c) every night. (d) No error (e)

51. Troy was taken (a) by Greeks; (b) this formed the basis of a story (c) which has become famous. (d) No error (e)

52. A person I met (a) in the theatre (b) was the playwright (c) himself. (d) No error (e)

53. Dr. Chandra (a) is only dentist (b) in (c) our village. (d) No error (e)

54. The majority of the (a) computer professionals recommends (b) that effective measures (c) should be taken against software piracy. (d) No error (e)

55. On my request (a) Lalit introduced me (b) to his friend (c) who is singer and a scientist. (d) No error (e)

56. Sunita opened a almirah (a) full of books (b) and took one of them (c) for reading. (d) No error (e)

57. According to the Bible (a) it is meek and humble (b) who shall (c) inherit the heaven. (d) No error (e)

58. The road (a) to famous monument (b) passes through (c) a forest. (d) No error (e)

59. A large scale exchange of nuclear weapons (a) will produce unprecedented (b) amounts of radiation (c) that can penetrate into (d) the biological tissue. (e) No error

60. He fixed a metal ladder (a) for the wall below his window (b) so as to be able to (c) escape if there was fire. (d) No error (e)

61. I am sure that (a) neither the house (b) nor its content is (c) for sale. (d) No error (e)

62. The Hindi and the Marathi are (a) different forms of the Sanskrit language, (b) which was once spoken (c) in almost every part of India. (d) No error (e)

63. The future is (a) yet to come (b) but you have a (c) right to shape it. (d) No error (e)

64. He won't (a) return the money (b) that he had borrowed, (c) will he? (d) No error (e)

65. The foremost criterion of selection we adopted (a) were the number of years of (b) training (c) a dancer had received (d) under a particular guru. (e) No error

❑

ANSWERS

UNIT-III

8. Articles

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. Drop 'the' before 'air'.
2. Drop 'a' before 'politician'
3. Drop 'the' before 'executive'
4. Drop 'a' before 'mention'
5. Drop 'a' before 'headache'
6. Insert 'a' before 'hurry'
7. Insert 'the' before 'country and town'
8. Insert 'a' before 'pity'
9. Insert 'an' before 'M.A.'
10. No error
11. Insert 'the' before 'dog'
12. Insert 'the' before 'snake'
13. Drop 'the' before 'bed'
14. Insert 'a' before 'child'
15. Insert 'the' before 'elephant'
16. Insert 'an' before 'hour'
17. Drop 'A' before 'sugar'
18. Insert 'the' before 'first'
19. Insert 'the' before 'flute'
20. Insert 'the' before 'Vedas'
21. Insert 'the' before 'rich'
22. Insert 'the' before 'Rajputs'
23. Insert 'a' before 'nice'
24. Drop 'a' before 'kind' and insert it before 'fellow'
25. Insert 'the' before 'World Cup'

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. Add 'a' before 'boy' by removing 'a' before weak
2. Drop 'an' before 'advice'
3. Drop 'the' before 'pride'
4. Drop 'a' before 'beautiful'
5. Drop 'the' before 'prison'
6. Drop 'the' before 'television'
7. 'an' in place of 'a'
8. Insert 'the' before 'tea'
9. Insert 'a' before 'day'
10. 'the' in place of 'a' before 'good'
11. Drop 'the' before 'singing'
12. Insert 'the' before 'Milton'
13. Insert 'the' before 'higher and colder'
14. Insert 'the' before 'fire'
15. Drop 'the' before 'ear'
16. Insert 'the' before 'criminal'
17. Insert 'the' before 'radio'
18. Drop 'a' before 'work' or use 'a piece of work'
19. Drop 'a' before 'word'
20. Drop 'an' before 'employment'
21. Insert 'the' before 'question'
22. Insert 'the' before 'wisdom'
23. Drop 'the' before 'Chinese'
24. Insert 'the' before 'news'
25. Drop 'the' before 'lions'.

9. Noun

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. 'Cattle' in place of 'Cattles'
2. 'many pieces of information'/much information
3. 'Orders have' in place of 'Order has'
4. 'scenery' in place of 'sceneries'
5. 'alphabet' in place of 'alphabets'
6. 'score' in place of 'scores'
7. 'mischief' in place of 'mischiefs'
8. 'Sheep are' in place of 'Sheeps are'
9. 'contents' in place of 'content'
10. 'Twenty head of cattle' in place of 'Twenty cattles'
11. 'much work' in place of 'many works'
12. 'men servants' in place of 'man servants'
13. 'sisters-in-law' in place of 'sister-in-laws'
14. 'word' in place of 'words'
15. 'five year old boys' in place of 'five years old boys.
16. 'rupee' in place of 'rupees'
17. 'advice'/ 'a piece of advice'
18. 'are' in place of 'is'
19. 'somebody else's' in place of 'somebody's else'
20. 'girls' school' in place of 'girl's school'
21. 'woman' in place of 'female'
22. 'seat' in place of 'place'
23. 'spectacles' in place of 'spectacle'
24. 'is' in place of 'are'
25. 'vacation' in place of 'vacations'
26. Say 'lectureship'

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. 'Rations have' in place of 'Ration has'
2. 'The wood of the table' in place of 'Table's wood'
3. 'was very encouraging' in place of 'were very encouraging'
4. 'like' in place of 'likes'
5. 'are' in place of 'is'
6. 'is' in place of 'are'
7. No error, 'a lot' of and 'lots of' (both are correct)
8. Remove 'a' before 'fair means'
9. 'information' in place of 'informations'
10. 'work' in place of 'works'
11. 'evidence' in place of 'evidences' and 'was' in place of 'were'
12. 'Commander-in-Chief's in place of 'commander's-in-chief'

13. 'proceeds' in place of 'proceed'
14. 'are' in place of 'is'
15. 'fish' in place of 'fishes'
16. Say 'brick and stone marble'
17. 'has been' in place of 'have been'
18. 'These data' in place of 'This data'
19. 'criterion' in place of 'criteria'
20. 'oxen' in place of 'oxes'
21. 'signature' for 'sign'
22. 'Evidence' for 'witness'
23. 'room' for 'place'
24. 'Four pieces of bread' for 'four breads'
25. 'Alumni' for 'Alumnus'
26. Use 'asset' in place of 'assets'
27. Say 'five member delegation'
28. Say 'page after page'
29. Say 'pass mark'
30. Remove 'brother'
31. Delete 'a' before 'news'
32. delete 'a'
33. Say free 'studentship' for 'freeship'
34. Say 'Right from wrong'
35. Say 'Faults' for 'fault'
36. Say 'Time immemorial'
37. Say 'go to bed'
38. Delete 'O' clock.

10. Pronoun

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. 'them' in place of 'it'
2. 'acquit themselves' in place of 'acquit'
3. Drop 'myself'
4. 'Avail yourself of' in place of 'Avail of'
5. 'her' in place of 'she'
6. 'she' in place of 'her'
7. 'her' in place of 'she'
8. 'Was it he' in place of 'Was it him'
9. 'I' in place of 'myself'
10. 'You, he and I' in place of 'You, I and he'
11. 'his' in place of 'their'

12. 'those' in place of 'they'
13. 'your' in place of 'their'
14. 'and' in place of 'as well as'
15. 'has' in place of 'have'
16. 'his' in place of 'their'
17. 'our' in place of 'your'
18. 'Which' in place of 'Who'
19. 'his books' in place of 'their books'
20. 'Ours' in place of 'Our'
21. 'one's' in place of 'his'
22. 'his' in place of 'their'
23. 'what' in place of 'which'
24. 'that' in place of 'which'
25. Use 'hers' for 'her'
26. Use 'and this' in place of 'which'
27. Use 'and this' in place of 'and which'
28. Use 'it' for 'same'
29. Use 'as' for 'that'
30. Use 'that' for 'what'

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. 'What' in place of 'which'
2. 'whom' in place of 'who'
3. 'as' in place of 'who'
4. Drop 'himself'
5. 'that' in place of 'who'
6. 'that' in place of 'who'
7. 'origin of which' in place of 'whose origin'
8. 'those' in place of 'they'
9. 'isn't he ?' in place of 'isn't it?'
10. 'did they?' in place of 'didn't they?'
11. 'separation from you' in place of 'your separation'
12. 'which' in place of 'who'
13. 'that' in place of 'who'
14. 'that' in place of 'which'
15. 'as' in place of 'that'
16. 'as' in place of 'like'
17. 'leave of you' in place of 'your leave'
18. 'at the sight of me' in place of 'my sight'
19. 'that' in place of 'which'
20. 'him' in place of 'he'
21. 'don't we?' in place of 'haven't we?'
22. 'What' in place of 'Which'
23. Insert 'those in' after 'than'
24. 'whose' in place of 'their'
25. 'they meet' in place of 'he meets'

Review Exercise

1. (a) Say 'this kind'
2. (d) 'his arrival' for 'their arrival'
3. (a) Place 'The' before 'book'
4. (d) Use 'they'
5. (c) Say 'he' for 'you'
6. (d) Use 'one's'
7. (d) Say 'their picnic'
8. (c) Say 'seat'
9. (b) Say 'had been I'
10. (b) Use 'who' for 'whom'
11. (d) Say 'the flue'
12. (b) Say 'so much work'
13. (b) Say 'Mohan's'
14. (a) Use 'while' for 'in'
15. (d) Say 'in its attempt'
16. (d) Say 'his contribution'
17. (d) Say 'than I'
18. (d) Say 'me'
19. (b) Say 'you'
20. (a) say 'which' for 'who'
21. (d) Say 'won't we'
22. (c) Delete 'brother'
23. (c) Say 'countries'
24. (c) Say 'who' for 'whom'
25. (d) Say 'anyone of them'
26. (d) Use 'and' for 'or'
27. (a) Use 'The' for 'A'
28. (d) Say 'his'
29. (d) Correct form is 'yours'
30. (b) Delete 'the' before 'Kalidas'
31. (d) Say 'other's' for 'other'
32. (d) Say 'weren't they'
33. (c) Say 'that' or 'which'
34. (d) Say 'than those of Ministers'
35. (c) Say 'orders'
36. (a) Say Gopalan and I.
37. (b) Remove 'that'
38. (b) Delete 'himself'
39. (d) Say 'their'
40. (d) Say 'him' for 'them'
41. (b) Omit 'he'
42. (c) Say 'who' for 'whom'
43. (d) Say 'enjoyed himself'
44. (b) Say 'whom'
45. (d) Say 'they/these' for 'it'
46. (c) Add 'themselves' after 'adapt'
47. (d) Say 'its' for 'their'
48. (c) Say 'of us'
49. (d) Say 'the greater'
50. (b) Say 'go to bed'
51. (b) Say 'the Greeks'
52. (a) Say 'The person'
53. (b) Say 'the only'
54. (b) Say 'recommend'
55. (d) Say 'a singer and scientist'
56. (a) Say 'an almirah'
57. (b) Say 'the meek and the humble'
58. (b) Say 'the famous'
59. (b) Say 'amount of radiation'
60. (b) Say 'against the wall'
61. (c) Say 'contents are'
62. (a) Delete 'The'
63. (e) No error
64. (e) No error
65. (b) Say 'was'

❑

Chapter 11 Adjective

What is an Adjective?

Adjective is a word that tells us about or add to the meaning of a noun. *e.g.*,

(i) She is a kind lady.

(ii) I like this pen.

(iii) She lives in a large house.

(iv) He is a strong player.

There are following two classes of adjectives :

(i) Descriptive adjective

(ii) Determiner adjective

Descriptive adjective denote the quality, size, colour, shape etc. of a noun.

Position of Adjectives—Descriptive adjectives are used both attributively and predicatively while Determiner adjectives are used only before the noun.

She is an honest girl. (Attributive use)

The girl is honest. (Predicative use)

Kinds of Adjectives

A. Descriptive Adjectives

Adjective of Quality — Ugly, heavy, dry, good, red.

B. Determiner Adjectives

(i) Demonstrative Adjectives — This, that, these, those.

(ii) Distributive Adjectives — Each, every, either, neither.

(iii) Quantitative Adjectives — Some, any, no, little.

(iv) Numerical Adjectives — few, many all, several, one, first

(v) Interrogative Adjectives — Which, what, whose.

(vi) Possessive Adjectives — My, our, your, his, her, their, its.

(vii) Present/Past Participle Adjectives — A moving bus, a wounded driver, a burnt man, tiring journey.

(viii) Relative Adjectives — who, which, that

(ix) Emphatic Adjectives — Own, such, same, very.

(x) Proper Adjectives — Indian, Asian, American.

(xi) Exclaimatory Adjectives — What, which, how

C. Articles as Determiners

A, An, The (See Chapter on Articles)

Distinction between Adjectives and Pronouns

(i) Demonstrative Adjectives and Demonstrative Pronouns—

(i) Please get me that book. (Adjective)
(ii) That is my book. (Pronoun)

(ii) Possessive Adjectives and Possessive Pronouns—

(i) This is my book. (Adjective)
(ii) This book is mine. (Pronoun)
(iii) It is her vanity box. (Adjective)
(iv) This vanity box is hers. (Pronoun)

(iii) Distributive Adjectives and Distributive Pronouns—

(i) Either boy has stolen my book. (Adjective)
(ii) Neither book will serve my purpose. (Adjective)
(iii) I do not like either of the sisters. (Pronoun)
(iv) We bought neither of the bikes. (Pronoun)

Note : Every is only adjective, and it cannot be used as determiner. But each can be used both as adjective and pronoun.

(v) Every boy was present. (Adjective)
(vi) Each boy was present. (Adjective)
(vii) Each of the boys will come. (Pronoun)
(viii) Everyone of them is wasting money. (Pronoun)

Rules of Adjective

Rule I

Generally speaking **adjective is used when the quality of a noun and pronoun rather than the action of a verb** is expressed.

Adverb is used to modify the action of a verb, an adjective, an adverb. *e.g.*

(i) She is a skilful dancer. (quality)
(ii) She dances skilfully. (action)
(iii) Sonu's act was thoughtful. (quality)
(iv) Sonu acted thoughtfully. (action)

Rule II

The verbs given below are **linking verbs–**

Some verbs are not modified by adverbs. 'Be, become, seem, appear, taste, smell, sound, feel, turn, get, grow, keep, look, make, prove, etc.

(i) Her voice sounds harsh.
(ii) She appears sad.

(iii) I feel sick
(iv) She has grown wise
(v) Mona is smart

Note : The distinction between the following sentences—

1 (a) She **looked** calm and quiet. (Linking verb, Correct)
(b) She looked at her angry husband calmly and quietly.
(In a calm and quiet manner, Correct)

2 (a) The mangoes taste sweetly. (Use sweet)
(b) She talks sweetly. (Correct)

Rule III

There are some adjectives which don't admit of any comparative and superlative degree. Such adjectives denote absolute position.

'Perfect, unique, ideal, chief, universal, extreme, complete, entire, excellent, absolute, impossible, eternal, supreme' etc. *e.g.*,

(i) I have never seen a more complete book on General Studies. (Drop 'more')
(ii) Happiness is the chiefest aim of mankind. (Use 'chief')
(iii) How can divided India become the most supreme power? (Remove 'the most')

Rule IV

The comparative adjectives such as—

'Prior, junior, senior, superior, inferior, prefer (verb), preferable, elder' etc. are followed by 'to' instead of 'than'.

Nor are they used in comparative degree.

(i) He is senior than me in service. (Use 'to' in place of 'than')
(ii) Lemon juice is preferable than tea. (Use 'to' in place of 'than')
(iii) My sister is elder than me by two years. (Use 'to' in place of 'than')
(iv) She prefers coffee rather than tea. ('rather than' in place of 'to' is correct.)
(v) She is comparatively smarter than her husband. (Use smart)
(vi) She is more senior to her boss in service. (Remove 'more')
(vii) Milk is more preferable to tea. (Remove 'more')

Note : 'Rather than' may be used for 'to' after 'prefer'. (iv)

Rule V

Note carefully the distinction among the following adjectives :

Little is *used for quantity*.
(little, less, least)
Little means hardly any.
(negative sense)
A little means not much (some).
(Affirmative meaning)
The little means not much but all.

Few is *used for number*.
(few, fewer, fewest)
Few means hardly anyone/anything.
(negative sense)
A few means not many (some).
(Affirmative meaning)
The few means not many but all.

Some is used in affirmative and while making request

in interrogative.
Some is used as an adjective.
Somewhat is used as an adverb.

Farther means more distant.
(Far, farther, farthest)

Other means the second of the two.

Older/Oldest is used for persons **(not blood relation)** and things.
(Old, older, oldest)
It refers both to age and time.

Later is the opposite of earlier.
(**Refers** to time)
Latest means recent, last up to now only.
(Late, later, latest) [time]

Any is used for negative and interrogative sentences and in the sense of every
(**No any/Not any** are wrong expressions.)
if any

Further means additional.

Another means additional one. (More)

Elder/Eldest is used for persons only in the case of blood relations.
(Old, elder, eldest)
It refers to age only.

Latter is the opposite of former.
(**Refers** to position)
Last means last of all.
(Late, latter, last) (Position)

Note : Little and few Cannot qualify the words 'quantity' and 'Number' Small is used to qualify these words.

Now study these sentences—

(i) Little common sense can bring success to you. (Use 'a little')
(ii) Little that she did for me is unforgettable. (Use 'The' before 'little')
(iii) Little knowledge is a dangerous thing. (Use 'a' before 'little')
(iv) I requested him to bring me few books. (Use 'a few')
(v) Few days I passed in her company were exciting. (Use 'The few')
(vi) There are less passengers in the compartment today. (Use 'fewer')
(vii) There are five students less in the class. (Correct)
(viii) I have ten rupees less to pay. (Correct)
(ix) Could you please give me some money? (Correct)
(x) Have you brought some gold for her? (Use 'any' in place of 'some')
(xi) Little Money you are earning should not be wasted (use the before little)
(xii) She was some angry. (Use 'somewhat' in place of 'some')
(xiii) She expressed somewhat anger (say 'some anger')
(xiv) I have no any money in my pocket. (Drop 'any')
(xv) Moradabad is further from Delhi than Meerut. (Use 'farther' in place of 'further')
(xvi) No farther help from government is required. (Use 'further' in place of 'farther')
(xvii) I am still thirsty, please give me other glass of water. (Say 'another' in place of 'other')
(xviii) My oldest sister is living in Chicago these days. (Use 'eldest' in place of 'oldest')
(xix) My sister is elder to me. (Correct)
(xx) My friend is older than I. (Correct)

(xxi) She came latter than I. (Use 'later' for time)

(xxii) Reena and Heena are two sisters but the later is more intelligent than the former. (Use 'latter' for position)

(xxiii) Jeans are the last rage of young generation. (Use 'latest' in place of 'last')

Note : In sentence (vii) & (viii) 'less' has been used in place of 'few' (number) because 'definite numerical adjectives + plural nouns' are followed by 'less'.

Rule VI

When two adjectives qualify the same noun, both the adjectives should be expressed in the same degree. *e.g.*,

(i) She is the most active and energetic social worker in our club. (Use 'most' before 'energetic')

(ii) She is both cleverer and intelligent than her sister. (Use 'more' before 'intelligent')

Rule VII

Ordinal is placed before numerical adjective. *eg*,

(i) You must study the two first chapters of the book. (Use 'the first two')

(ii) The two or last three lessons of your book are worth reading. (Use 'The last two or three')

Rule VIII

The comparative adjectives ending in 'er' (i.e. cleverer) should be used as 'more clever' while comparing the two qualities of one and the same thing or a person. *e.g.*,

(i) She is cleverer than honest. (Use 'more clever')

(ii) She is more clever than her sister. (Use 'cleverer' in place of 'more clever')

Rule IX

The expression 'these' and 'those' should not be used with the singular nouns **'kind' 'type'** and **'sort'**. *e.g.*,

(i) I will not do these kind/sort of acts. (Use 'this kind/sort' for 'these kind/sort')

(ii) This type of articles are not allowed into the hall. (Use 'is' for 'are')

Rule X

Note carefully the use of 'other & else' in comparative and superlative degrees. *e.g.*,

(i) She is a best teacher. (Use 'a very good teacher')

(ii) She is the most intelligent person. (Use 'a most' in the sense of very)

(iii) My brother is the smartest player of all others in the team. (Remove 'others')

(iv) She is better than anybody in the class. (Use 'anybody else')

(v) The Ganga is more sacred than any river of India. (Use 'other' after 'any')

(vi) He is the most corrupt politician than anybody in the country. (Use 'of all' in place of 'than anybody')

(vii) This novel is the most interesting of any in the library.
(Use 'of all' in place of 'of any')
(viii) No writer in India was so famous as R.K. Narayan. (Use 'other' after 'No')
(ix) His condition is good today. (Say 'better' in place of 'good').
(x) She is equally intelligent as my brother. (Use 'as' in place of 'equally')
(xi) The Nile is longer than any other river in India. (Remove 'other')
(xii) The Nile is longer than any other river in the world. (Correct)
(xiii) She is taller than any other boy in the class. (Remove 'other')
(xiv) The weather is as cold as last year. (Say 'as that of' or 'last year's)
(xv) I found this book the most interesting. (Delete 'the')
(xvi) Her shirt is cheaper than you. (Say 'yours'/your shirt)
(xvii) The climate of Chennai is warmer than Delhi. (Say 'that of Delhi')

Rule XI

The use of **'all, both & whole'** as adjectives.

(A) Place 'the'after 'all' and 'both' when used as adjectives for plural nouns. But 'the' is used before 'whole'. *e.g.*,
(i) All the students were present. (Correct)
(ii) Both the boys left soon. (Correct)
(iii) Whole country is suffering from drought. (Say 'The whole')
(iv) All sugar is wasted. (Uncountable noun, Correct)

(B) Place possessive case after 'all' and 'both'. *e.g.*,
(i) My all efforts ended in smoke. (Say 'All my')
(ii) Both my friends are honest. (Correct)
(iii) He is a fortunate person whose all efforts succeed. (Say 'all whose')

Rule XII

'Either, neither, only, both, even, but also' should be placed immediately before the words they emphasize. (qualify/ modify). *e.g.*,
(i) She not only came to see me but also to take her old books.
(Use 'not only' before 'to see')
(ii) Neither she is intelligent nor honest. (Use 'neither' before 'intelligent')
(iii) Her sister and her brother are both living with her. (Use 'both' before 'her sister')
(iv) Not only he likes to take coffee but also tea. (Use 'Not only' before 'coffee')

Rule XIII

'As' is used in the positive degree to denote equality while 'than' is used in the comparative degree. Both 'as' and 'than' are required to be used when a sentence contains adjectives in positive and comparative forms. *e.g.*,
(i) She is as honest, if not more honest than her brother. (Incorrect)
She is as honest as, if not more honest than her brother. (Correct)
(ii) I am as strong or even stronger than my foe. (Incorrect)
I am as strong as or even stronger than my foe. (Correct)

Rule XIV

When two adjectives require different prepositions, appropriate prepositions should be used with both adjectives. *e.g.*,

(i) He is senior and older than I. (Use 'to' after 'senior')
(ii) His dress is different and cheaper than mine. (Use 'from' after 'different')
(iii) She is stronger and younger than her sister. (Correct)

Rule XV

Place an adjective after noun when the noun is followed by preposition. *e.g.*,

(i) The subject is a worthy matter of note. (Say 'matter worthy of')
(ii) He is a suitable man for any post. (Say the 'man suitable for any post')

Rule XVI

Comparison of weight, quantity & number.

No comparison is implied in the following sentences, when there is 'time' used for comparison. So positive degree is used. *e.g.*

But we use comparative degree when the sentence is without 'times'

(i) My book is three times cheaper than yours. (Say 'as cheap as')
(ii) Your income is many times higher than Tushar's. (Incorrect, say 'as high as')
(iii) This book is five rupees cheaper than yours. (Correct)
(iv) This table is ten kilos lighter than that. (Correct)

Rule XVII

The following adjectives cannot be used before nouns (attributively), **'Afraid, asleep, due, ready, unable, alike, aware, glad, sorry, well, alone, ill, sure', worth.** *e.g.*,

'Ill man, asleep boy, alone lady, afraid man, alike situation' are wrong expressions.

(i) She alone is responsible for my problems. (Correct)
(ii) I found a boy asleep. (Correct)
(iii) The man is ill. (Correct)
(iv) The man is afraid of my dog. (Correct)
(v) This book is worth reading. (Correct)

Rule XVIII

The order of adjectives qualifying a noun (S S A C N M)

Size → Shape → Age → Colour → Nationality → Material → Noun

(i) Twenty year old black American Negro.
(ii) A small Indian Stadium.
(iii) A big round black Indian plastic table.
(iv) A spacious dark cell.
(v) A large glass room.

Work Book Exercise (A)

***Directions** : Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. There were no less than fifty persons in the dining hall.
2. Few remarks that he made were offensive to my brother.
3. It is a worth seeing movie and you must not miss it.
4. Of all the students Rita was less worried when the date for the annual examination was announced.
5. Even the most perfect person in the world is said to have erred when there was time to act.
6. I was surprised to see every student sitting quietly in the class, even though the teacher was not present.
7. Whole India expressed anger over the hijacking of Air India Boeing Jet by militant at Karachi.
8. I like him because he is the most interesting fellow because of his amiable nature.
9. The meeting was postponed because only the few persons were present there.
10. In the opinion of everyone she is wiser than beautiful.
11. The tiger is swifter than any animal.
12. He had to cut a sorry figure when he realised that he had no any money in his purse.
13. Of the three ministers, which, do you think, is going to prove more successful.
14. Neither she is intelligent nor hard working and still she expects to secure first class.
15. I requested him to lend me few books that might help me in my study.
16. Your essay should not exceed more than two hundred words.
17. Tanya is more intelligent than any other boy in her class.
18. The two last pictures of a very competent director have not proved a success.
19. He is the tallest than anybody in our team.
20. Nobody likes him because he is a worst teacher.
21. I was surprised to see her speak with somewhat anger.
22. My brother is elder than me although he looks younger.
23. Could you please give me any money to buy the newspaper?
24. Privatisation offers the most ideal situation for consumers because private sector is very conscious of quality.
25. Little care on your part would have made you more successful than your friend.

Work Book Exercise (B)

***Directions** : Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. He is as intelligent if not more intelligent than his brother.
2. She is better than any girl that studies in our class.
3. The latest chapter of this novel is the most comprehensive of all the chapters in the book.
4. She was not punished though she came latter than I.
5. She is the best and beautiful girl of our village.
6. My book is superior than yours although it has cost me much less.
7. Of all other my neighbours he is the kindest and most considerate to others.
8. 'Arabian Nights' is the most adventurous of any books written so far.
9. The works of Shakespeare are more famous than any other English dramatist.

10. It is all the more better if you work in my company.
11. These kind of roses are very popular.
12. He doesn't need your help because he is too intelligent.
13. Modinagar is further from Dehradun than Meerut.
14. It was bitter cold and we preferred not to go out that night.
15. No animal is so sacred to the Hindus as the cow is.
16. The food tasted deliciously and we enjoyed it to our fill.
17. She is as clever if not cleverer than her mother.
18. She went to the wholesale market and bought cheap vegetables.
19. There is no other name more glorious than Sardar Patel in the history of India.
20. He only is responsible for the problems which I am facing today.
21. Mr. Chopra is more senior to me in service.
22. The boys prefer playing cricket to hockey.
23. Because of her frank nature I like her the most.
24. She has not broken the window. Somebody has broken it.
25. There are five members less in the committee.
26. The rain was plenty last year and we had good time.
27. They travelled from one corner of the island to another.
28. The apple was quite raw and it was not tasted by the children.
29. He will spend his remaining life with his daugher.
30. She is a young lady of twenty five years old.

□

Chapter

12

Adverb

What is an Adverb?

An adverb is a word used to add something to the meaning of a verb, adjective or another adverb. It is said to modify verbs, adjectives and adverbs. *e.g.*,

(i) She is walking slowly.
(ii) She is very intelligent.
(iii) She is walking very slowly.

Kinds of Adverb

1. **Adverb of time**—Before, ago, lately, yet, now, soon, yesterday, already, never.
2. **Adverb of frequency**—Always, once, seldom, usually, rarely etc.
3. **Adverb of place**—Here, everywhere, down, near, away, backward, upward.
4. **Adverb of manner**—Slowly, so, soundly, delightfully.
5. **Adverb of affirmation and negation**—Certainly, apparently, obviously, no, undoubtedly.
6. **Adverb of degree**—Almost, fully, very, enough, rather, quite, too, really.
7. **Interrogative adverb**—How, what, when, why.
8. **Relative adverb**—When, where, why, how.

Relative adverbs are used to make an adjective clause.

He was born in the year **when** I left India. ('in which/on which')
He does not like to stay at the hotel **where** they are staying. ('in which/at which')
Don't you know the reason **why** she did not marry? ('for which')
You are supposed to know the manner **how** they cheated you. ('in which/by which')

Rules of Adverb

Rule I

Adjective qualifies a noun and a pronoun whereas **adverb** modifies a verb, an adjective and an adverb. *e.g.*,

(i) Her act was remarkable. (Correct)
(ii) She acted remarkably to achieve success. (Correct)
(iii) She ran quicker than I. (Say 'more quickly' for 'quicker')
(iv) She is a very skilful dancer. (Correct)
(v) She dances very skilfully. (Correct)

Rule II

Adverbs of time such as—

'Always, often, already, just, never, ever, sometimes, frequently, generally, recently, usually, seldom, hardly', rarely, normally etc. are generally placed before the verb they modify. *e.g.*,

(i) My brother comes often every Sunday. (Place 'often' before 'comes')
(ii) He goes usually to the movie every Friday. (Place 'usually' before 'goes')
(iii) He never talks ill of friends. (Correct)
(iv) He is always satisfied. (Correct)

Rule III

Adverbs of manners are placed only after the Intransitive verb. However, the adverb can be placed **either before or after the transitive verb. e.g.,**

(i) He returned immediately. (Correct)
(ii) He briefly narrated the incident to me. (Correct)
(iii) He narrated to me the incident briefly. (Correct)
(iv) He soundly slept last night. (Place 'soundly' after 'slept')

Rule IV

If the sentence is introduced by an adverb, inverted form of the verb is used for the sake of emphasis. *e.g.*,

(i) Seldom he visits his parents. (Incorrect)
(ii) Seldom does he visit his parents. (Correct)
(iii) He seldom visits his parents. (Correct)
(iv) Not seldom does he visit his parents. (Correct)
(v) Never I'll see her again. (Correct)
(vi) Never will I see her again. (Incorrect)
(vii) I'll never see her again. (Correct)
(viii) She no sooner reached the station **than** she met her friend. (Correct)
(ix) No sooner did she reach the station **than** she met her friend. (Correct)
(x) She had hardly reached the station **when** the train arrived. (Correct)
(xi) Hardly/scarcely had she reached the station **when** the train arrived. (Correct)
(xii) So quickly she ran that she overtook her rivals. (Use 'so quickly did she run')

Rule V : Use of Else and Other

'Else' should be followed by 'but'.

'Other' and **'otherwise'** are followed by 'than' *e.g.*,

(i) It is nothing else than sheer madness. (Use 'but' in place of 'than')
(ii) She had no other alternative but stay here. (Use 'than' in place of 'but')
(iii) She has no one else to look after her except me. (Use 'but' in place of 'except')

Rule VI

Both **'never'** and **'not'** are adverbs. The use of 'never' for 'not' is incorrect. *e.g.*,

(i) I never went to Ooty last year. (Use 'did not' go in place of 'never')
(ii) I never remember to have said so. (Use 'do not' in place of 'never')
(iii) I remember never to have said so. (Correct)
Or
I don't remember to have said so.
(iv) I never allow my son to go out in dark. (Correct/habitual action)

Rule VII

Note the use of phrases.

'Seldom or never', 'seldom, if ever', 'little or nothing', 'little, if anything'.
The phrases 'seldom or ever' and 'little or anything' are wrong in use. *e.g.*,

(i) We seldom or ever meet our relatives these days. (Incorrect)
(ii) We seldom or never (seldom, if ever) meet our relatives these days. (Correct)

Rule VIII

Negative adverbs should not be used with the words negative in meaning. So two negatives should be avoided.

'Seldom, nowhere, never, nothing, hardly, scarcely, neither, barely, rarely' are some of the adverbs expressing negative meaning. *e.g.*,

(i) I rarely went to meet nobody across the road. (Use 'anybody' in place of 'nobody')
(ii) She hardly knows nothing about the family. (Use 'anything' in place of 'nothing')
(iii) I hardly know somebody in the town. (Say 'anybody' in place of 'somebody')
(iv) He does nothing without never consulting me. (Use 'ever' for 'never')
(v) They do not seldom come here. (Remove 'do not')
(vi) This will not help him, nothing never does. (Use 'ever' for 'never')
(vii) He does not write well and I do not write neither. (Say 'either')

Note : (I) Avoid the use of negative, with 'deny, forbid' and 'both'.

(i) She denied that she had not given him books. (Delete 'not')
(ii) (a) Both of us are not going there. (Incorrect)
(b) Neither of us is going there. (Correct)

(II) Avoid the use of negative with Conjuntions—
until, unless, lest.

Rule IX

Given below are some of the examples of the words being treated as adverbs whereas they are adjectives or nouns. *e.g.*,

(A) Manly, masterly, slovenly, monthly, weekly, sickly, friendly, orderly, gentlemanly are adjectives and should not be confused with adverbs.

(B) Coward, miser, niggard are nouns.
'Cowardly, miserly, niggardly' are adjectives.
'In a cowardly, miserly, niggardly manner' are used as adverbs.

(C) Fast, straight, outright, direct, hard, hardly, late' light, high, safe, quiet etc, are used both as an adjective and adverb.

(D) **'Loudly'** and **'Aloud'** are adverbs though different in meanings. 'Loud' is an adjective.

(E) **Late, lately**

Late is both an adjective & an adverb

Lately is an adverb. (Recently)

(F) **Hard** is both an adjective and adverb used in affirmative sense.

Hardly is an adverb used in negative meaning. *e.g.*

(i) A soldier is trained never to fight cowardly. (Use 'in a cowardly manner')

(ii) I have never come across a coward Indian soldier. (Use 'cowardly' in place of 'coward')

(iii) The darkness closed in even as she was returning home fastly. (Use 'fast' in place of 'fastly')

(iv) You must learn to behave manly in the face of danger. (Use 'manfully' in place of 'manly')

(v) He is earning five hundred rupees monthly. (Say 'a month')

(vi) She is doing this work good these days. (Say 'well' for 'good')

(vii) Rohit always comes lately to school. (Say 'late' for 'lately')

(viii) He is coward. (Use 'a' before 'coward')

(ix) The teacher asked the students to talk loudly. (Say 'aloud')

(x) We must try to preserve hardly won freedom. (Use 'hard' in place of 'hardly')

(xi) Please keep the things in the room orderly. (Use 'in order' or 'in an orderly manner' in place of 'orderly')

(xii) She rejected my application outrightly. (Say 'outright')

(xiii) Outright rejection of my plan disappointed me. (Correct)

Rule X

The use of **'very, much, so, too, enough, rather'**.

(A) **'Very'** modifies present participle used as adjective, adverb and adjective in positive degree. **'Much'** is used with comparative degree and past participle. *e.g.*,

(i) It is a much interesting picture. (Use 'very' in place of 'much')

(ii) I was very exhausted in the evening. (Use 'much' in place of 'very')

(iii) She did this work very quickly. (Correct)

(iv) She is much wiser than her mother. (Correct)

(v) She is very tired after a day's work. (Correct)

Note : Students should note the use of **'very'** and **'much'** in superlative degree. e.g.,

(i) She is **the very best** teacher in our school. (Here 'very' means 'really')

(ii) She is **much the best** teacher in our school. (Here 'much' means 'decidedly')

(iii) She is **by far the** best teacher in our college. ('by far' means 'to a large extent')

(B) **'So'** and **'too'** should not be used without 'that' (Adverb clause) and 'to' (Infinitive) respectively.

'Very' and **'much'** may be used in the place of so and too.

(i) My brother is so healthy. (Use 'very' in place of 'so')

(ii) She is very kind. (Here 'very' means 'to a great extent')

(iii) She is too poor to study further.
(iv) She is so poor that she cannot study further. (Correct)
(v) She is too healthy. (Correct)
(vi) It is too bad. (Over healthy) say 'very' for too)
(Correct)

(C) **'Enough'** is both an adjective and adverb. As an **adverb** it is always placed after the adjective it modifies.

As an **adjective it** is placed before a noun. *e.g.*,

(i) She is enough wise to allow her son to go. (Place 'enough' after 'wise')
(ii) He has enough money to spend. (Correct)
(iii) She is too kind to help everybody.(Say 'kind enough' very kind in place of 'too')
(iv) She is too weak to pass. (Correct)

(D) The use of 'rather'

(a) 'Rather' is an adverb of degree like 'fairly, quite, pretty (to some degree)'. *e.g.*,

(i) She is rather intelligent.
(ii) He is walking rather slowly.

(b) 'Rather' can also be used before a noun. *e.g.*,

(i) It is rather a nuisance.
(ii) It is rather a good step. (or a rather good step)

Note : Article 'a', 'an' should be placed before a noun. If there is an adjective with a noun, articles 'a', 'an' may be placed either before or after 'rather'.

(c) 'Rather' is also used in case of preference–
'would rather, had rather, rather than' are used to express preference. *e.g.*,
(Refer to Rule III(c) on Infinitive)

Rule XI

Note the difference between too, as well, also.

(a) 'Too, as well, also', are used in the sense of "besides", "in addition to" in affirmative sentences. But 'also' cannot be used at end position.

(i) She found her bag and money too/as well.
(ii) She plays the piano and the harmonium as well/too.
(iii) She found her bag and money also. (say 'also money')

(b) So + auxilary + subject is used in affirmative sentences in relation to two persons doing one action.

(i) She won the prize and so did her sister. (win)
(ii) His wife plays piano and so does he. (play)

(c) Neither + auxilary + subject is used in negative sentences in realtion to two persons doing one action.

(i) He does not write well and niehter do I. (write)
(ii) She will not lend money and neither will he. (lend)

Rule XII

While answering a question the adverb 'yes' or 'no' should be used according to the affirmative and negative answer. *e.g.*,

(i) Have you taken food?
(ii) Yes, I have not taken so far? (Use 'No' in place of 'Yes')

Rule XIII

(A) Adverb **'as'** should be used to introduce predicative of the verbs **'regard, describe, define, treat, view, know'.**

(B) Adverb 'as' should be avoided to introduce predicative of the verbs **'name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose.'** *e.g.*,

(i) I regard him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')

(ii) Science has been defined the study of nature. (Add 'as' after 'defined')

(iii) She is considered as the best dancer in the town. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')

(iv) The teacher called him as stupid. (Drop 'as')

(v) The principal appointed him as peon. (Remove 'as')

(vi) He thinks her as a fool. (Remove 'as')

(vii) He was elected as the secretary of our club. (Remove 'as')

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. Although I was in Delhi last month I never met him.
2. One should face the misfortunes of life manly.
3. When I got home I was too exhausted.
4. I did not know hardly anyone in the city and so felt lonely.
5. I rarely find something in his character that I can admire.
6. You have acted nobler than all of us.
7. He is enough kind to help everybody in need.
8. Don't stop anywhere. Go home fastly.
9. He has no time to read novels and no desire neither.
10. He has not seldom visited his parents since he left this place.
11. It was much hot yesterday and we didn't go out.
12. I meet him often near the District Library.
13. I told her as blunt as I could but she was not convinced.
14. What to talk of tea they did not offer us even water.
15. My mother works very quicker than I at embroidery.
16. If you like to succeed in life, you must learn how to think independent.
17. She is sure a great singer and no other singer is a match for her.
18. The teacher asked the students to talk loudly because there was a noise outside the classroom.
19. It is better to be frugal but don't be miser in giving alms.
20. It is a pity that our leaders are misusing our hardly won liberty.
21. She knows swimming well.
22. You are advised to travel lightly.
23. The Tatas are regarded the most successful industrialist of modern India.
24. She is either honest or intelligent, if not both.
25. When she received telephone, she ran straightly to home.

Work book exercise (B)

Directions : *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. I never remember to have met a more interesting man in my life.
2. I refused to accompany him because I was so tired.
3. She did this work as good as she could do.
4. This fruit tastes more sweetly than any other fruit.
5. Raja Ram Mohan Roy tried to eradicate social evils with tooth and nail.
6. We seldom or ever go to the movie these days because we don't like moving out.
7. The student came to the classroom lately and was punished by the teacher.
8. He looks full of energy today because he soundly slept last night.
9. I care a fig for such a worthless fellow.
10. She had barely nothing to eat when she came to me last month.
11. Have you secured first class? Yes, I have not secured it.
12. It had been bitter cold the whole month and we preferred staying in the plains.
13. Don't be unreasonable angry with me because I understand your problem.
14. Never in the history of India there has been as brave a lady as Rani Lakshmi Bai.
15. They pay him hadsome salary and he is earning fifteen thousand rupees monthly.
16. Only I read poetry because I am much interested in it.
17. She does work with heart and soul to qulify the test.
18. The teacher refused to consider him as an honest boy.
19. The principal appointed him as an office boy in his office.
20. They reached home safely, although they started late.
21. The robbers behaved gentlemanly with the ladies.
22. Thanks, I have just taken coffee.

❑

Chapter

13 Prepositions

What is a Preposition?

The word **Preposition** (as is indicated by Prefix **'Pre'**) is a word or a group of words that is placed before a noun or pronoun to indicate direction, method, place, source etc. In other words, the noun or pronoun is shown to have a kind of relation with regard to something else with the help of a Preposition. *e.g.,*—

(i) The Preposition may join one noun to another.
Sheena was in the **kitchen**. ('Sheena' and 'kitchen')

(ii) It may join noun to a verb.
She **slipped** off the **stairs.** ('slipped' and 'stairs')

(iii) It may join noun to an adjective.
We are **proud** of our **country.** ('proud' and 'country')

1. **'At, in, on, of, off, through, below, with'** etc., are some of the prepositions.
2. The noun or pronoun used with the preposition is in the **accusative case.** *e.g.,*—
   (i) The book is on the **table**.
   (ii) I did not talk to **him**.
   Here **'table'** and **'him'** have been used in the accusative case because these are words the objects of the preposition.
3. A Preposition sometimes may have more than one object. *e.g.,*
   (i) I gave money to Ritu and her brother.
   (ii) Distribute the mangoes among the boys and the girls.
4. A clause can also be the object to a preposition. *e.g.,*
   (i) I was pleased with what she did for me.
   (ii) Pay attention to what your parents say.
5. Adverbs of time and place can also be the object of preposition. *e.g.,*
   (i) I don't like to go from here.
   (ii) She had returned by then.
6. When verbs are placed after prepositions (other than 'to') they should be in the gerund form except when they are used in infinitive form. *e.g.,*
   (i) I am confident of winning her love.
   (ii) She does not believe in wasting time.
   (iii) She insisted on going to Pune.

Prepositions before Particular Words

(A) Travel and movement—

(a) From, to, at, in, by, on, into, onto, off, out, out of. *e.g.*,
We travel daily from Meerut to Delhi.

(b) Arrive at/in, get to (reach). *e.g.*,
(i) They arrived in India in March.
(ii) I arrived at Patel Bridge.
(iii) I go to the Bus stand late.

(c) Home (Without preposition) *e.g.*,
(i) They went home by bus. (Without Preposition)
(ii) She returned to her home late. (With Preposition)

(B) Above and over—

(a) **'Above', 'over'** mean higher than

(b) But 'over' can also mean 'covering on the other side of', across, from one side to the other and in every part of the region. *e.g.*,
(i) We put a sheet over his body.
(ii) There is a bridge over the river.
(iii) He has friends all over the world.

(C) Under, below beneath—

(a) 'Below', 'under', mean lower than, but 'under' can indicate contact. *e.g.*,
(i) She kept money under the bed.
(ii) The old man was crushed under the car.

(b) However, 'below' is used when there is a space between the two surfaces. *e.g.*,
They live below us. (We live above them)

(c) 'Under' can mean junior in ranks. *e.g.*,
He is under me. (I am his superior, below doesn't have this meaning)

(d) 'Beneath' has the same meaning as under, but it is better to use it for abstract meanings. *e.g.*,
He would think it beneath him to do such a small work. (Unworthy of him)

(D) Time and date—

(Use at, on, by, in) at dusk, at noon, at dawn, at midnight, at midday, at sixteen (the age) at night, at six, at 7.30, in/on the morning/afternoon/evening/night (of a certain date) *e.g.*,

We left on the evening of the sixth at 5.30 p.m.
We left in the evening/afternoon.

(E) On time, in time, in good time—

(a) 'On time' (at time arranged, neither before nor after) *e.g.*,
The train is running on time.

(b) 'In time' *(not late) e.g.*,
Passengers should be in time for their train.

(c) 'In good time' (with comfortable margin) *e.g.*,
I arrived at the theatre in good time.

(F) At the beginning/at the end, in the beginning/in the end, at first, at last

(a) At the beginning of a book, there is a foreword. (Literally at the beginning)

(b) At the end, there may be an index.

(c) 'In the beginning/at first' = In the early stage. It implies that later there was a change. *e.g.*,
In the beginning we used hand tools, later we had machines.

(d) 'In the end/At last' = eventually/after sometime. *e.g.*,
At first he opposed marriage, but in the end he gave his consent.

(e) in, on, at, the back of
(i) What is there at the back of the table. (behind)
(ii) There is glossary at the back of the book. (few pages)
(iii) There is a room on the back of the house. (back of as part/area)
(iv) He was stabbed in the back.

(G) By, before—
By time/date (not later than)
Please be at home by 8.00 p.m.
By the end of this year my study will have finished.

Rules of Preposition

Rule I

A preposition is usually placed before its object but sometimes it is placed after it in the following cases :

(A) When the object in the interrogative pronoun is understood. *e.g.*,

(i) To whom are you talking?
Who are you talking to? (Incorrect)
Whom are you talking to? (Correct)

(ii) About what are you talking? (Correct)
What are you talking about? (Incorrect)

(iii) For what are you looking? (Correct)
What are you looking for? (Incorrect)

(iv) For what are you waiting? (Correct)
What are you waiting for? (Incorrect)

(B) When the object of the preposition is a relative pronoun 'that'. *e.g.*,

(i) This is the book for that I have been looking. (Correct)
This is the book that I have been looking for. (Incorrect)

(ii) This is the picture of that she always talks. (Correct)
This is the picture that she always talks of. (Incorrect)

(C) When an infinitive qualifies a noun, the preposition should be placed after the infinitive, if required. *e.g.*,

(i) It is not a safe place to live. (Say 'live in')
(ii) He gave me a pen to write. (Say 'write with')
(iii) He gave me money to spend. (Correct)

Rule II

(A) As a rule no preposition is placed after the following verbs when these verbs **are used in active voice.**

'Stress, emphasise, discuss (matter), investigate, comprise, accompany, consider, violate, demand, resemble, pervade, precede, succeed, reach (at), resign (post), attack, invade, resist, enter (come into), eschew, befall, order, direct, join, sign, affect, ensure, board, describe, await, lack, regret, concern

e.g.,

(i) The police are investigating into the case. (Drop 'into')
(ii) The teacher emphasised on the need of discipline in life. (Drop 'on')
(iii) I have ordered for his transfer. (Drop 'for')
(iv) I shall discuss about the problem with you. (Drop 'about')
(v) Soni resembles with her mother. (Drop 'with')
(vi) Our college comprises of class rooms. (Drop 'of')
(vii) India has never attacked on any country. (Drop 'on')
(viii) She promised to accompany with me to the park. (Drop 'with')
(ix) The Committee is comprised of five members. (Correct)

(B) Omission of 'to' with verbs of communication before the object, 'advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, order. urge. *e.g.,*—

(i) I advised to him to go. (Drop 'to')
(ii) I informed to the police of the accident. (Drop 'to')
(iii) I enquired of him. (Correct)

Rule III

Use of preposition in relation to its object—

(A) Omission of preposition before Indirect Object.

Study the following verbs.

'bring, give, lend, promise, leave, sell, buy, show, take, fetch, tell, hand, send, sing, read, cost, play (an instrument), find, get, ask, offer etc.' e.g.,

(i) I shall fetch you books from market.
Or I shall fetch books for you from market.
(ii) Her father left him large property.
Or Her father left large property to him.
(iii) I shall buy you this necklace.
Or I shall buy this necklace for you.
(iv) I shall find Robin a nice job.
Or I shall find a nice job for Robin.
(v) Will you sing me a song?
Or Will you sing a song for me?

(B) Note the placement of proper object (Direct/Indirect) with the use of the following verbs with special reference to the preposition.

The use of verbs **'provide, supply, furnish, entrust, present'**. *e.g.,*

I provided him money. (Incorrect)
I provided him with money. (Correct)
Or I provided money to him. (Correct)

(C) The correct use of **'rob, fine, inform, explain, recommend, compensate, suggest, propose'**, in relation to objects. *e.g.*,

(a) Rob a person of something.
(b) Fine someone (ten rupees etc).
(c) Inform someone of something.
(d) Explain something to a person.
(e) Recommend/Suggest/Propose something/some-body to others.
(f) Compensate someone for something. *e.g.*,

Examples worked out—

(i) He robbed the old woman of all her ornaments.
(ii) The teacher fined him ten rupees.
(iii) We informed the police of the accident.
(iv) The teacher explained the meaning of the poem to us.
(v) He recommended me for promotion to the Principal.
(vi) He recommended this book to his students.
(vii) I shall compensate you for the loss.

Rule IV

A student should take special note of the following Prepositions :

(A) 'Than & but' as Preposition :

'Than & but' are usually conjunctions. However, they may be sometimes used as Prepositions. *e.g.*,

(i) I did not see any other person than your brother.
(ii) I did not see any body else but your brother.

(B) 'A' in the following sentences has been used as a Preposition, though in a weakened form of (in) *e.g.*,

(i) He earns fifty rupees a day.
(ii) She visits me once a month.

(C) Between, Among

'Between' is used while referring to two persons/things. It may also be used for two or more in choice.

'Among' is used while referring to more than two persons/things. *e.g.*,

(i) The two brothers divided the property between themselves.
(ii) The two brothers and their sisters divided the property among themselves.

Note : Between the students in the class which is the best?
(between is correct in choice for more than two)

(D) Beside, Besides

'Beside' means 'by the side of '.

'Besides' means 'in addition to'. *e.g.*,

(i) Besides studying he is also working somewhere.
(ii) She sat beside him at the party.

(E) By, With

'By' is used for 'doer' of the action.

'With' is used to denote the instrument. *e.g.*,

(i) He struck the dog with a stick.

(ii) A dog was struck by him.

(F) Since (as a preposition)

(a) Since is used for time expression (time from the past to the present.)

Since is used for a definite time in the past or some past occasion. *e.g.*, since birth, since last Sunday, since Diwali, since 2'o clock.

(i) I have not met him since last month. (From last month till now)

(ii) She has been doing home work since morning. (From morning till now)

(b) Since as a conjunction

(i) It is ten years since I saw him. (or has been)

(ii) I have not met him since he came back.

(c) Since as an Adverb

(i) She went to the USA in 2003 and I have not seen her since. (From 2003 till now)

(ii) It was indeed a shock but she has since recovered from it. (long before now.)

(G) 'For' is used for time expression (indefinite) and a specific period of time (for two months/six years/two hours etc.) *e.g.*,

(i) I shall go to Delhi for two weeks. (Period of time)

(ii) He stayed with me for two hours daily.

(iii) She has been sleeping for two hours. (Time Expression)

(iv) She has been in Delhi for one week.

(H) From, Between

'From' is normally used with **'to/till/until'**.

'Between' is used with **'and'**. **e.g.,**

(i) He works in the office from ten to five.

(ii) The reception will be held between 5 p.m. and 9 p.m.

(I) Before, Ago

'Before' denotes the preceding action and can also be used in place of 'Ago'.

'Ago' refers to the past action. *e.g.*,

(i) She left India two days ago/before.

(ii) She had left India before she was married. (Conjunction) (Preceding action)

(J) In, At

'In' refers to towns, cities and countries in a wider sense while **'at'** is used for speaking of comparatively smaller places. *e.g.*,

(i) He lives in Delhi.

(ii) He lives at Rohini in Delhi.

(K) In, Into

'In' denotes position whereas **'into'** shows movement and entrance. *e.g.*,

(i) The students are in the classroom.

(ii) The students came into the classroom.

(L) On, Upon

'On' denotes position, **'upon'** denotes movement. *e.g.*,

(i) The book is on the table.

(ii) He threw the book upon the table.

(M) Within, In, On, In good time

'Within' means before the end of time, **'In'** means at the end of time while denoting a period of time. *e.g.*,

(i) He will return in ten minutes.

(ii) He will return within ten minutes.

(iii) The train is running on time. (Neither before nor after)

(N) Till, To (upto)

(a) 'Till' is used of time. *e.g.*,
He studied till 11 p.m.

(b) To (upto) is used of place/distance. *e.g.*,
I went upto Rani Bagh.

Rule V

When two words or adjectives require different prepositions, appropriate prepositions should be used with both the words. *e.g.*,

(i) He is senior and older than I. (Use 'to' after 'senior')

(ii) His dress is different and cheaper than mine. (Use 'from' after 'different')

(iii) She is younger and taller than her sister. (Correct)

Important Prepositions

Preposition	
1. Abound in (V)	(rich in)—Uttar Pradesh *abounds in* water resources.
2. Abound with (Adj.)	(full of)—The forest is *abound with* streams. (teeming with)
3. Absolve from	(declare free from guilt, promise, duty etc.)—The court has *absolved* him *from* the crime.
4. Absorb in	(busy in work)—He is completely *absorbed in* his work.
5. Abstain from	(hold oneself back, used for food habits)—His doctor asked him to *abstain from* drinks.
6. Abstemious in	(eating & drinking)—Those who are *abstemious in* food habits enjoy good health.
7. Accede to	(a request or proposal)—He *acceded to* my request.
8. Access to	(means of reaching, approaching)—I have no *access to* the Prime Minister.

9. **Adhere to** (stick to)—We decided to *adhere to* the programme already agreed upon.
10. **Approve of** (give one's approval)—She *approved of* my proposal in no time.
11. **Assent to** (*official agreement e.g. to a proposal*)—The President has given *assent to* the Bill.
12. **Abhorrent of** (abhor, to hate)—He is *abhorrent of* dowry system.
13. **Acquaint with** (familiar with)—I am not *acquainted with* this lady.
14. **Addicted to** (be given to something harmful)—He is *addicted to* alcohol.
15. **Assured of** (positive about)—I am *assured of* his help in need.
16. **Attain to** (arrive at a position/post)—He *attained to* this status after hard struggle.
17. **Attraction for** (a thing or person)—He has *attraction for* her.
18. **Attracted to** (thing or person)—He was *attracted to* her at first sight.
19. **Avail of** (take advantage of)—She *availed* herself of this opportunity and got success.
20. **Aloof from** (keep from)—Keep *aloof from* bad boys.
21. **Advance for** (mature)—He is *advanced for* his years.
22. **Advance by** (prepone by)—The visit of Viru has been *advanced by* two days.
23. **Abide by** (rules, comply with)—You should *abide by* the rules laid down by the committee.
24. **Accused of** (a crime, charge with)—He was *accused of* theft and convicted.
25. **Acquit of** (crime, fault) He was *acquitted of* the crime.
26. **Admit to** (admission)—He was *admitted to* the school on merit.
27. **Admit of** (scope for)—Your crime does not admit of any excuse.
28. **Admit into** (admittance)—He was *admitted into* the room of the Principal.
29. **Alight on** (the ground)—The birds *alighted on* the roof of my house.
30. **Alight from** (a bus, car, train)—When he *alighted from* the car, he was welcomed with open arms.
31. **Alight at** (site, a place)—The birds *alighted at* the antenna.
32. **Annoy with** (a person)—Noddy was annoyed with his friends an account of their misbehaviour.
33. **Annoy at** (an act)—Suhani was annoyed at the misbehaviour of her friends.
34. **Aspire after** (fame) – It is human nature to aspire after fame.
35. **Aspire to** (the post)–All the candidates aspire to the post of commussioned officers.
36. **Amuse at** (mock at, laugh at)—Everyone was greatly *amused at* his awkward behaviour during the cermony.
37. **Amuse with** (enjoy)—They *amused* themselves *with* playing video games.
38. **Answer** *(to)* (a person)—What will you answer to your father?
    (a) She did not *answer* my question.
    (b) She did not give *answer* to my question. (Used as a noun)

39. Answer for	(explain, account for)—You will have to *answer for* your misdeeds.
40. Account for	(explain)—You should *account for* your absence from the office.
41. Antipathy to	(averse to a thing)—I have great *antipathy to* wine.
42. Antipathy against	(a person)—We should not have *antipathy against* the poor.
43. Ask for	(demand)—I *asked* him *for* help but he refused.
44. Affiliated to	(a University or Board)—Agra college is *affiliated to* the B.R. Ambedkar University.
45. Affiliated with	(a party)—Indian Communists are *affiliated with* the Communist Parties of Russia & China.
46. Attend to	(pay attention to)—He did not *attend to* what his mother advised him.
47. Attend upon	(serve, wait upon)—He has no servant to *attend upon* him in old age.
48. Antidote to	(that counteracts the effect of poison)—There is no effective *antidote to* poison.
49. Antidote against	(cure for)—Quinine is an effective *antidote against* Malaria.
50. Agree with	(a person)—I do not *agree with* you.
51. Agree on	(a point)—After much discussion they *agreed on* the terms of Partnership.
52. Agree to	(views)—He *agreed to* all my views but his father did not.
53. Afflicted with	(disease, problem, mental trouble)—India is *afflicted with* extreme poverty.
54. Allowance for	(allow for)—Always make *allowance for* the mistake of others and pardon them.
55. Atone for	(a fault, sin)—The Hindus go to the Ganga to *atone for* their sins.
56. Aptitude for	(talent)—He shows some *aptitude for* languages.
57. Alliance with	(joined or united)—China has entered into *alliance with* Pakistan against India.
58. Acquiesce in	(accept passively)—I had no alternative but to *acquiesce in* his unfair demand.
59. Apprise of	(inform)—I *apprised* him *of* the serious food situation in the state.
60. Act upon	(comply with)—Always *act upon* the advice of your elders.
61. Adept in	(proficient in)—He is *adept in* the art of dancing.
62. Adept at	(thing)—My brother is *adept at* classical music.
63. Adapt to	(make suitable)—You must *adapt* yourself *to* new situations for attaining to high position in life.
64. Accustomed to	(be used to) I am *accustomed to* early rising.
65. Akin to	(similar to)—Your behaviour of indifference is *akin to* jealousy.
66. Alien to	(foreign to)—French is *alien to* me because I have never studied it.
67. Alive to	(aware of)—He is fully *alive to* the danger of the situation.
68. Amenable to	(advice, willing to be guided)—Now-a-days majority of the student are not *amenable to* discipline.

69. **Analogous to** (similar to)—Jahanara's wisdom was *analogous to* her beauty.
70. **Aware of** (know about)—I am *aware of* your success.
71. **Beware of** (cautious)—*Beware of* dogs lest you should be bitten.
72. **Blush at** (praise)—She *blushed at* the mention of her qualities.
73. **Blush for** (a fault, ashamed of)—I *blush for* the vices of my son who has disgraced the family.
74. **Blind in** (the eye)—He is *blind in* left eye and needs major surgery.
75. **Blind to** (defects)—We should not be *blind to* the fault of our children.
76. **Born of** (parents)—She was *born of* a beautiful mother/parents.
77. **Born to** (passive voice)—A son was *born to* her.
78. **Bearing on** (relation to)—Your speech has no *bearing on* the subject we are discussing.
79. **Beset with** (surrounded with)—India is *beset with* many problems these days.
80. **Believe in** (to have faith)—I *believe in* him because he is honest.
81. **Believe** (regard as true)—I *believe* him because he is speaking the truth.
82. **Benefit by** *(verb)*—You should *benefit by* the experience of others.
83. **Benefit from** *(noun)*—You should derive *benefit from* the experience of others.
84. **Compensate for** (give something to make up)—He *compensated* me *for* the damage to my scooter.
85. **Cure of** (a disease)—He is *cured of* illness after long treatment.
86. **Cure for** (treatment)—There is no *cure for* AIDS yet.
87. **Compete with** (person)—He will *compete with* me for the first position in the college.
88. **Compete for** (trophy etc.)—Our team will not *compete for* Roman Trophy.
89. **Conformity with** (views)—I acted in *conformity with* the opinion of the majority.
90. **Conformity to** (rules, according to)—I did that in *conformity to* the traditions of the family.
91. **Cling to** (to hold tight)—The child was *clinging to* her mother.
92. **Comply with** (act in accordance with)—You must *comply with* the rules laid down by the committee.
93. **Condemn to** (Punishment)–The accused was condemed to death.
94. **Congratulate on** (Success)–Arnav congratulated his friend on success.
95. **Certain of** (Sure of)–Those who work hard should be certain of their success.
96. **Confindent of** (Success)–My sister is always confident of success.
97. **Count on** (depend on)–You should never count on unreliable persons.
98. **Charge of** (Noun) crime–Charge of murder was framed against him.
99. **Charge with** (verb) crime–He was charged with the murder of his neighbour.
100. **Cope with** (manage work)–My advocate cannot cope with heavy court work.
101. **Contrast to** (noun) –Her character is a contrast to her husband's.
102. **Contrast with** (verb)–They tried to contrast the character of their father with mine.

103. Cash in on	(avail of)-Every body of them was trying to cash in on reservation of posts announced for the community.
104. Contribute to	(add to a thing)—Every Indian should *contribute to* the success of Indian economy.
105. Complain against	(a person)—He *complained* to the Principal *against* me.
106. Complain of	(a thing)—The teacher *complained of* his rude behaviour.
107. Cordone off	(protect)—The dias of the P.M. was *cordoned off.*
108. Commit to	(a promise, pledge, sentence)—He has *committed* himself to the service of the society.
109. Confide in	(a person)—I have always *confided in* him and he has never deceived me.
110. Confide to	(a person)—Do not *confide* your secrets to unreliable friends.
111. Consist in	(remain)—Beauty *consists in* the character of a person.
112. Consist of	(comprise)—The house *consists of* four rooms.
113. Commence	(on a day, at time, in a month)—The examinations will *commence* on monday next at 10 o'clock.
114. Commence with	(as first item)—He *commenced with* grammar when he started teaching English.
115. Clamour for	(demand)—The labourers are *clamouring for* the rise in their wages.
116. Clamour against	(complain against)—The residents are *clamouring against* the negligence of the police.
117. Cause for	(reason for)—There is no *cause for* anxiety.
118. Cause of	(result from)—The *cause of* Cancer is still unknown.
119. Concerned for	(worried)—I am greatly *concerned for* the safety of his money.
120. Concerned with	(have anything to do)—I am not *concerned with* his business.
121. Condole with	(a person)—I *condoled with* my friend in the death of his father.
122. Disappoint of	(hopes)—I was *disappointed of* my success in the new venture.
123. Despair of	(hopes)—He was *despaired of* the hope of early marriage of her daughter.
124. Dabble in/at	(art, politics etc.)—Though he belonged to the family of politicians, he never *dabbled in* politics.
125. Destined for	(some future)—He is *destined for* the post of D.M. and is expected to be promoted soon.
126. Disgrace on	(dishonourable)—He is a *disgrace on* his family.
127. Dwell on/upon	(speak/write in detail)—The teacher *dwelt on* the need of discipline.
128. Die of	(a disease)—He *died of* malaria after a few days' illness.
129. Die from	(some cause)—He *died from* over work because hard work had affected his health adversely.
130. Differ with	(a person in views)—I *differ with* you on the views of life.
131. Differ from	(in something)—She *differs from* me both in habits and looks.
132. Deal in	(trade in)—My friend *deals in* cloth.
133. Deal with	(a matter, a person)—You must learn how to *deal with* customers.

134. Dispense with	(to remove, to do without)—You cannot *dispense with* the use of fan in summer.
135. Dispense	(to deal out, distribute)—As a judge he *dispenses* equal justice to all and one.
136. Dispose of	(sell)—I shall *dispose of* my old furniture and buy new one.
137. Disposed to	(inclined to)—He is *disposed to* travelling abroad.
138. Decamp with	(booty)—The robbers had *decamped with* the booty before the police arrived.
139. Disgust with	(person, life)–Being spiritual he is disgusted with materials lie life.
140. Disgust at	(an act)–Every one felt disgusted at his jokes.
141. Descriminate against	(not to treat well)–No one should discriminate against the poor.
142. Discriminate between	(difference between)–We should always discriminate between right and wrong.
143. Embark on	(venture, undertake)—He has decided to *embark on* new business undertaking.
144. Enter	(place, no preposition)—He *entered* my room without my permission.
145. Enter into	(alliance, agreement)—India and America have *entered into* various agreements.
146. Enter upon/on	(undertake)—My brother has decided to *enter upon* expansion programme of his business.
147. Enlarge on/upon	(write or say more)—I need not *enlarge on* the problem and waste your time.
148. Endowed with	(gifted with)—His wife is *endowed with* both charms and talents.
149. Enamoured with	(a person)—Rosalind was *enamoured with* Orlando at first sight.
150. Enamoured of	(a thing)—Though it was their first meeting, he was *enamoured of* her talents.
151. Enrage at	(a thing, an act)–The teacher was enraged at the student's insolence.
152. Enrage with	(a person)–The teacher was enraged with the student for his insolence.
153. Exult over	(enjoy (bad sense))–The spectators exulted over the defeat of Pakistani team.
154. Exult at	(enjoy)–The spectators exulted at the victory of Indian team.
155. Eligible for	(a post)–Only graduates are eligible for the post.
156. Familiar to	(to know)—Her face is quite *familiar to* everyone.
157. Familiar with	(knowledge)—I am not very *familiar with* botanical names.
158. False of	(heart)—He is not *false of* heart.
159. False to	(friends or principles)—We should not be *false to* our friends.
160. Fascinated by	(a thing)—The children were *fascinated by* all the toys in the shop windows.
161. Fascinated with	(a person)—I was *fascinated with* her because of her admirable manners.

162. Fit into	(*oneself*)—[illegible]
163. Feed on	(*food*)—[illegible]
164. Fondness for	(*liking for*)—He has [illegible]
165. Fond of	(*liking for*)—He is fond of classical music.
166. For lack of For want of For short of	(*because of*)—For lack of money he could not [illegible]
167. Grieve for	(*a person*)—He grieved for the [illegible]
168. Grieve over	(*a thing*)—He grieved over the loss of money in [illegible]
169. Grieve at	(*an event*)—He grieved at my father's death when I [illegible] my personal tragedy.
170. Guard against	(*mistakes, temptation*)—You should guard against the wrong use of words.
171. Guard from	(*a danger of a thing*)—You should guard from him because he is false of heart.
172. Glance at	(*take a quick look*)—He glanced at her face and started reading from her address.
173. Glance through	(*go through*)—He glanced through the letter in a hurry and handed it back to me.
174. Good at	(*expert*)—He is good at games.
175. Good for	(*nothing*)—He is good for nothing fellow.
176. Hear from	(*a person*)—I have not heard from you for a long time.
177. Hear of	(*something*)—I heard of this event in Mumbai and rushed here to Delhi.
178. Hear by	(*post, through communication*)—I heard by a letter about his uncle's death.
179. Hard by	(*near*)—The college is *hard by* and I go to college on foot.
180. Hard up	(*financially tight*)—He is *hard up* these days.
181. Hanker after	(*run after, hunger after*)—Don't *hanker after* money and fame.
182. Healed of	(*a disease, cured of*)—He is *healed of* illness after long treatment.
183. Infer from	(*statement*)—You cannot infer anything from his statement.
184. Insight into	(*reality, situation*)—Wise persons have insight into the reality of life.
185. Impress upon	(*a person, advice*)—The Principal *impressed upon* the students the need of discipline.
186. Impress with	(*with a thing*)—He *impressed* me very much with his good manners.
187. Inquire for/about	(*a thing*)—He has just gone to *inquire for* the supply of rations.
188. Inquire after	(*welfare, ask after*)—I *inquired after* his father's health.
189. Inquire of	(*ask a person*)—I *inquired of* him the name of his father.
190. Inquired into	(*investigate*)—The police are *inquiring into* the case.
191. Interfere in	(*a thing*)—Don't *interfere in* my private affairs.
192. Interfere with	(*hinder*)—Refrain from *interfering with* the course of justice.
193. Invest with	(*authority*)—The Principal was *invested with* powers to deal with this problem.
194. Influence with	(*a person*)—He has immense *influence with* the police.

198. Influence over	(the people)—The P.M. has great influence over the people of other regions.
199. Influence on	(a thing)—The influence of books on young children is great.
200. Intrude into	(intrude)—He intruded into the room but was turned out.
201. Intrude on	(privacy)—Don't intrude on the privacy of others.
202. Intimate with	(friend)—She is intimate with my family.
203. Irritated at	(thing)—He seems greatly irritated at my refusal.
204. Incensed at	(thing)—He was greatly incensed at his conduct.
205. Indignant at	(thing)—Instead of being happy, he is indignant at my offer.
206. Judge of	(give opinion)—Don't judge of things by their outward appearance.
207. Judge by	(test by)—He was judged by his academic qualifications.
208. Jump to	(conclusion)—Don't jump to conclusion without giving due consideration to the facts.
209. Jump at	(an offer)—He jumped at the offer and was highly pleased.
210. Jeer at	(an act, a person)–The spectators jeered at their team on their fourth defeat.
211. Jest at	(an act, a person)–Never jest at those who are in trouble.
212. Known to	(passive voice)—You are known to her very well.
213. Known by	(recognize)—A man is known by the company he keeps.
214. Known for	(a quality)—Amav is well-known for his benevolence.
215. Knocked at	(the door)—I knocked at the door but there was no reply.
216. Knock on	(return) Malo heard a knock on the door.
217. Key to	(success)–Hard work is key to success.
218. Lean on	(depend on)—I had to lean on him in difficulties.
219. Lean to	(inclined towards)—He seems to lean more to his daughter than his son.
220. Live in	(region, area, country)—He is living in America.
221. Live at	(indicate the place)—He is living at Agra.
222. Live on	(food)—He lives entirely on vegetables these days.
223. Live by	(livelihood, manner)—I have to live by the labour of my own hands.
224. Live off	(source)—Now-a-days he is living off rental income.
225. Listen to	(advice)—You should listen to my advice.
226. Liable for	(responsible for)—I hold you liable for the murder.
227. Liable to	(deserve)—He is liable to imprisonment and fine.
228. Laugh with	(enjoy with others)—It is better to laugh with than to laugh at others.
229. Laugh at	(an act, person)–Never laught at the old persons.
230. Lacking in	(something, wanting in)–Even educated persons were lacking in table manner.
231. (Have) Liking for	(a person, a thing)–She has great liking for children.

229. (Take) Liking to	(a person, a thing)–My friend took liking to Arnav and married him.
230. Likeness between	(Similarity)–There is likeness between the Chinese and the Koreans.
231. Limit to	(extent)–There is always a limit to friendship.
232. Move to	(tears)—On listening to the tale of my sufferings Pearl was *moved to* tears.
233. Move with	(pity)—Pearl was *moved with* pity at his plight.
234. Move by	(condition)—We were moved by her pathetic *condition*.
235. Married to	(a woman)—Arnav was *married to* a famous doctor.
236. Married with	(a man)—She was *married with* Arnav.
237. Mix with	(a thing)—Please don't *mix* water *with* milk.
238. Menace to	(Treat to)–Terrorists are menance to the security of the country.
239. Match for	(a person in quality)–His father is no match for my uncle.
240. Mock at	(an act, a person)–Never mock at the poverty of others.
241. Meditate on	(Past act)–She was in tears when she meditated on her humiliation.
242. Meditate	(future act)–She is meditating revenge for her humiliation.
243. Neglectful of	(a person, work, a thing)—He has been *neglectful of* his business.
244. Negligent in	(careless in duty)—Don't be *negligent in* your duty.
245. Need for	(something)–There is no need for further action in the matter.
246. (in) need of	(Something)–I am not in need of money (feelings).
247. Originate in	(place as a source)—Modern civilization *originated in* Europe.
248. Originate with	(a person)—This scheme *originated with* the Finance Minister.
249. Occupied in	(doing a thing)—I am just now *occupied in* solving the problems.
250. Occupied with	(a thing)—My father is *occupied with* the expansion of his business.
251. Operate on/upon	(in the sense of operation)—The doctor decided to *operate on* her leg immediately.
252. Oblivious of	(having no memory, ignorant of)—*Oblivious of* danger, they kept on marching ahead.
253. Offend at	(thing)—He was *offended at* my words.
254. Offend with	(person)—Please don't get *offended with* her as she is honest.
255. Overwhelm with	(feelings)—Her mother was overwhelmed with love for his son.
256. Overwhelm by	(defeated by)–The enemy was overwhelmed by our army.
257. Part with	(a thing)—A miser cannot *part with* a single penny.
258. Part from	(a person)—I parted from my friend in Delhi.
259. Preface to	(a book)–He wrote a preface to his book.
260. Profit by	(learn)—You will profit by experience.
261. Profit from	(gain)—We may *profit* from new pension policy.
262. Partiality for	(a thing, liking)—She has *partiality for* sweets.
263. Partiality to	(a person's favour)—He always shows *partiality to* his relatives.
264. Prone to	(inclined to)—Thickly populated areas are *prone to* riots and diseases.

265. **Perish by** (destroy, famine, sword)—The tyrants *perish by* sword.
266. **Perish with** (suffer from)—They are *perishing with* starvation.
267. **Prevail against** (a thing, face)—They *prevailed against* all odds in life.
268. **Prevail on/upon** (a person, to compel)—I have *prevailed on* him to come to attend the function.
269. **Point out** (reveal)—I *pointed out* his errors and he got annoyed with me.
270. **Point at** (blame)—No one can *point at* his character because he is quite honest.
271. **Point to** (refer to)—His speech *pointed to* a few problems relating to poverty.
272. **Preside at** (a party, chief guest)—The Governor *presided at* the feast.
273. **Preside over** (meeting, president)—He *presided over* the meeting in the absence of the chairman.
274. **Provided against** (adversity)—We should always *provide against* a rainy day.
275. **Provided for** (arrange what is necessary)—He died without *providing for* his family.
276. **Popular for** (a good quality)—He is *popular for* his honesty.
277. **Popular with** (the people)—He is *popular with* the students of the class.
278. **Pine for** (crave for a person)—She is *pining for* the return of her lost son.
279. **Pine away** (die away with grief)—She *pined away* in the memory of her lost son.
280. **Play at** (cards)—We are *playing at* cards.
281. **Play upon** (a musical instrument)—She is *playing upon* the piano.
282. **Partake of** (share any thing)—They *partook of* our food and were satisfied.
283. **Prey on** (exploit)—The rich *prey on* the poor.
284. **Passion for** (strong desire)—He has *passion for* writing poetry.
285. **Peculiar to** (particular)—This habit is *peculiar to* my father.
286. **Pity for** *(noun)* We should feel *pity for* the poor.
287. **Pity on** (*noun*) He should take *pity on* the poor.
288. **Pity** (*verb*) We should *pity* the poor.
289. **Pride on** (*verb*) They *prided* themselves *on* their wealth.
290. **Pride in** (*noun*) They take *pride in* their wealth.
291. **Proud of** We should be *proud of* our country.
292. **Prompt in** (quick in)—You should be *prompt in* doing your duty.
293. **Quick at** (a thing)—The dog is *quick at* smelling.
294. **Quick in** (doing a thing)—The boy is *quick in* working out the problems.
295. **Quick of** (understanding)—The child is very *quick of* understanding.
296. **Quarrel over** (a thing)—They *quarrelled over* the division of their ancesteral property.
297. **Quarrel with** (a person)—Don't *quarrel with* your friends over trifles.
298. **Reputation for** (a quality)–My brother has a reputation for honesty.
299. **Remorse for** (wrong doing)–She felt remorse later on for neglecting her old parents.

300. Respite from	(relief from)—People have felt no respite from cold wave.
301. Replace by	(a new object)—Old furniture will be replaced by new one.
302. Repent of	(an action)—He repented of the misdeeds of his youth.
303. Recourse to	(resort to, adopt as means)—They took recourse to wrong means for success.
304. Revenge oneself on (*verb*)	(a person)—He *revenged himself* on his enemy for the murder of his brother.
305. Revenge for (*noun*)	(an injury)—She took *revenge* on him *for* his misdeeds.
306. Reconcile oneself to	(a thing)—You must *reconcile yourself to* the circumstances and endure them.
307. Reconcile with	(a person)—He has not yet been *reconciled* with his wife.
308. Reason with	(a person)—I *reasoned with* him but could not bring him round.
309. Reckon on/upon	(depend on)—You can safely reckon upon the books for advice.
310. Remonstrate with	(a person)—The players *remonstrated* with the umpire against his L.B.W. decision.
311. Remiss in	(duty)—Those found *remiss in* duty will be punished.
312. Sure of	(a thing)—We are sure of victory in the game.
313. Sequel to	(as a result)—Sequel to success in life he become extremely rich.
314. Smile at	(mock at)—All his friends smiled mockingly at his failure.
315. Smile on	(favour)—At last fate smiled on him and he was successful.
316. Slow at	(doing something)—On account her old age she is slow in cooking.
317. Substitute for	(Old thing)—New furniture will be substituted for old one.
318. Scare of	(afraid of)—I got scared of the sound of bomb blast.
319. Shoot at, strike at, catch at, Hit at	(Unsuccessful attempt)—The police shot at the thief who escaped in darkness.
320. Shoot at, Strike at, Catch at, Hit at	(Successful in attempt)—The police shot the robber dead.
321. Speak for	(favour)—I shall *speak for* you to the Commander.
322. Speak of	(praise)—There is no scenic spot here to speak of.
323. Start on	(journey)—He *started on* journey for Mumbai though he did not have enough money.
324. Strive for	(try for)—It is futile to *strive for* permanent joy in life.
325. Strive with	(compete with)—Don't *strive with* the rich and the powerful.
326. Side with	(*verb*) (favour)—He would never *side with* those who are unjust.
327. Search for	(a thing)—He is still *searching for* a good house.
328. Search	(frisk)—He was *searching* his pocket.
329. Seek	(try to find)—He *sought* shelter in the house of his friend when there were riots.
330. Seek after	(in demand)—He is much *sought after* actor these days.
331. Seek for	(try to win)—He always *sought for* his aim in his life.
332. Seething with	(anger, discontent)—The residents of the locality were *seething with* anger over the apathy of the police.
333. Suffer	(loss)—He *suffered* heavy loss in business.

334. Suffer from	(disease)—He is *suffering from* cancer and is not likely to survive long.
335. Show off	(display)-The modest persons do not show off their wealth.
336. Sentence to	(Punishment)-Madho was sentenced to death by the judge.
337. Spark off	(give rise to, trigger off)-Communal speech will spark off riots in the town.
338. Think of	(remember a subject)—*Think of* a plan and let me know tomorrow.
339. Think over	(to consider)—I will *think over* your case after sometime.
340. Tantamount to	(equal in effect)—His remarks are *tantamount to* insult.
341. Tired of	(sick of, fed up with, weary)—I am *tired of* listening to his flattering words.
342. Treat of	(a subject, deal with)—You should *treat of* this problem patiently.
343. Tresspass on	(encroach on, land)-Do not tresspass on government land.
344. Tresspass against	(law)-He was punished for tresspassing the rules of the road.
345. Triumph over	(difficulties)—At last he *triumphed over* his difficulties.
346. Trifle with	(make fun of)—Don't *trifle with* the feelings of the poor.
347. Usher in	(begin, bring out)-Globalisation has ushered in an era of market economy.
348. Verse in	(Thing, expert in)-She is versed in the art of cooking.
349. Vote for	(a person)—I don't *vote for* worthless politicians.
350. Vote on	(resolution)—The members *voted on* the resolution which was passed by majority.
351. Vote to	(win)—He was *voted to* power with thumping majority.
352. Venture upon	(an undertaking)—He did not dare to *venture upon* new enterprise.
353. Vain of	(proud of)—Though rich, she is not *vain of* her wealth.
354. Vexed with	(person) Don't get *vexed with* me.
355. Vexed at	(a thing)—I am *vexed at* my brother's absence.
356. Wait upon	(attend upon, to serve)—Who is *waiting on* this table?
357. Wait for	(person, thing)—He is *waiting for* her.
358. Weary of	(a thing)—He was *weary of* study and retired to bed.
359. Warn against	(fault, danger)—I have already *warned* you *against* your carelessness.
360. Warn of	(danger)—He *warned* the nation *of* financial crisis.
361. Wish for	(a thing)—I dont *wish for* anything in life.
362. Worthy of	(praise, note)—Your remarks are really *worthy of* note.
363. Wanting in	(lacking in)—She is wanting in common sense.
364. Ward off	(keep at a distance)—Hindus believe in many rituals to *ward* the evils *off*.
365. Wary of	(Something, Chary of)-We should be wary of strangers.
366. Yearn for	(acute desire, long for)—She *yearned for* the return to her own home.
367. Zealous for/about	(a thing)—A good soldier is always *zealous for* his country's honour.

Work Book Exercise (A)

***Directions** : Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—*

1. We should always listen the advice of our well wishers.
2. He closely resembles with his father in facial features.
3. While taking examinations, always write with dark ink.
4. The Insurance Company has promised to compensate the damage to my house.
5. You must revise your answer sheet again.
6. He suffered from heart attack last year.
7. Everybody complains against callous treatment of the police.
8. She is very popular among her friends and relatives.
9. The highway robbers robbed all their belongings.
10. Would you please ring me up on next Monday?
11. Don't quarrel on trifles with your friends.
12. My house comprises of five rooms and is spacious enough for two families.
13. There is no cause of anxiety about his health.
14. Children should be taught to write by a fountain pen.
15. Pakistan invaded on India in 1965.
16. His employers were compelled to dispense his services.
17. On Diwali he will order for a new pair of shoes.
18. You should at least congratulate your friend for his grand success in the elections.
19. The accused was bound by a chain and taken to prison.
20. My father has assured me to present me a new scooter on my next birthday.
21. The charge with murder against him could not be proved.
22. In vain you are searching your lost purse.
23. For coming late the teacher fined ten rupees on him.
24. It is very different and costlier than your shirt.
25. Don't laugh on the poor if they can't afford comforts of life.
26. Fragrance pervaded in the garden and we enjoyed our evening stroll.
27. Due to lack of common sense he cannot succeed in life.
28. He parted with his wife in tears.
29. It is not his nature to pick up a quarrel with his neighbours.
30. The residents informed the tragedy to the police long ago.
31. The reforms must come from up.
32. She never wavered from her loyality to me.
33. Please do not play into the hands of criminals.
34. She has aversion for senseless TV serials.
35. Your remarks are worthy to note.

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences—

1. In a democratic society no one should be discriminated because of caste and creed.
2. A summons was served to him last week.
3. As a responsible officer you should dispense with justice to the poor and the needy.
4. Whenever she goes out her chaperon accompanies with her.
5. The meeting began at about 2. p.m. and he had arrived quite earlier.
6. The news of the Prime Minister's death spread in all over the country.
7. He always travelled in second class with a view to understanding the pulse of his countrymen.
8. She was admitted in the hospital when she met with a serious accident.
9. After his death, his wife and children died of misery and starvation.
10. While going to college, I met my old friends in the way.
11. My friends entrusted me his valuables when he went abroad.
12. Our neighbour was charged of murder last year.
13. You must comply by the orders of your seniors.
14. The father of my friend deals with medicine.
15. She has been ill from fever since Monday.
16. Real beauty consists of good character.
17. The dacoits set fire on the house.
18. There was warning on the notice board "No admission without permission."
19. While returning back from Delhi, he lost his purse.
20. He was overwhelmed by grief on the demise of his father.
21. It is very difficult to resist against the prevailing system and traditions.
22. My father did not agree to me on this point.
23. The show will commence from 3 p.m.
24. Two terrorists were shot, but were able to escape through the dense forest.
25. Those who violate against the law of the country should be sent behind the bars.
26. You are not eligible to the post because you don't have the experience required by the company.
27. He aspires for fame in whatever field he takes up a job.
28. Though recently married they are not pulling on well with each other these days.
29. They are working with heart and soul and are sure to succeed in the long run.
30. She stayed at home in whole day because she felt sick.
31. What is time in your watch?
32. My uncle went to abroad last year.
33. The train is running in time.
34. His character is a contrast to my sister's.
35. He is not able to cope up with heavy work.
36. We suffer because we mistake the unreal as real.
37. There is tendency of leaving work undone on the part of children.
38. Please tear away this letter.

Work Book Exercise (C)

Directions : *Spot the errors if any, in the following sentences—*

1. She is very arrogant because she comes from a rich family.
2. He has not come to meet me although he came back before a week.
3. I saw him climbing on the tree to pluck mangoes.
4. Everybody knows what for Kanpur is famous.
5. He has never wished any reward although he has served suffering humanity throughout his life.
6. Do you know he will be operated tomorrow in a Delhi hospital?
7. Six teams are competing the Singer World Cup.
8. They were talking something but I don't know what they were talking.
9. She prays God everyday for the safe return of her son.
10. In a short time the new staff will be substituted by those who are on long leave.
11. You should not leave now because this road is not safe to travel.
12. My father has promised to provide me a scooter next year.
13. He always differs from his friends in views on life.
14. Indians should learn to remain united together.
15. She has a great liking to sweets.
16. He is wanting of honesty and nobody trusts him.
17. In accordance to my advice she did not go there.
18. After he had struggled, fate smiled at him at last.
19. Such a glorious success has never been dreamt by us.
20. In the meanwhile she kept on waiting outside.
21. I can't say to whom she was talking on phone yesterday.
22. She has been crying from morning.
23. He is not in fault and so he should be excused.
24. Always side those who are just and honest.
25. Selfish persons always seek after cheap popularity.
26. Please fill water in the bucket.
27. Kashmir is to the north of India.
28. He will wait here uptil 5 o'clock.
29. The D.M. will preside over the feast.
30. He was moved with tears on her condition.
31. They went to home soon after the accident.
32. It is a saying in the Kashmiries.
33. He does not seem to be aware as to his qualities.
34. His behaviour cannot be called into question.
35. The banquet to all accounts was lavish.
36. You must learn to tackle with complex problems.
37. I regret for my absurd remarks.

Work Book Exercise (D)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.*

1. His professional ability proves that he is cut ..... for this job.
(a) out (b) up (c) down
2. The history of Hindu religion dates ..... ancient times.
(a) from (b) since (c) for
3. Now government servants have the day ..... every Saturday.
(a) out (b) off (c) since
4. Nothing can deter him ..... pursuing his aim of life.
(a) for (b) from (c) in
5. After the death of his father the responsibility has devolved ..... him.
(a) on (b) at (c) from
6. In accordance with the advice of a doctor she is ..... diet.
(a) on (b) at (c) off
7. Normally he stays ..... until **11** p.m. these days.
(a) up (b) out (c) on
8. No one believes him because he is false ..... heart.
(a) to (b) at (c) of
9. The officials have the habit of fawning ..... ministers.
(a) above (b) at (c) on
10. The problem of communal harmony cannot be glossed ..... by government.
(a) at (b) on (c) over
11. Kanishka was initiated ..... Buddhism by Buddhist monks.
(a) to (b) into (c) in
12. Consequent upon heavy loss he is worse ..... these days.
(a) upon (b) off (c) over
13. Co-operation between friends stems ..... mutual consideration.
(a) in (b) out (c) from
14. Many Russians name their children ..... Indians.
(a) after (b) to (c) for
15. Indians have pinned their hopes ..... the emergence of some superman.
(a) on (b) in (c) at
16. She could not muster ..... courage to stand against the maltreatment.
(a) to (b) up (c) about
17. Strangely her name did not occur ..... me on the second meeting.
(a) to (b) on (c) about
18. The whole town was plunged ..... sorrow after the massacre of the students.
(a) in (b) into (c) to
19. On seeing a robber he at once reached ..... his pistol in his pocket.
(a) to (b) for (c) on
20. The government acted judiciously to stave ..... the crisis.
(a) of (b) out (c) off
21. The boys were seen hanging ..... girls' hostel.
(a) out (b) on (c) about

22. There is a tendency to trump ..... charges against opposition leaders in every country.
(a) up (b) on (c) at

23. In fact there is no library in our town to speak ..... .
(a) for (b) about (c) of

24. To my surprise even well to do persons have no scruple ..... cheating others.
(a) in (b) into (c) on

25. You should not mind his ..... the cuff remarks.
(a) on (b) off (c) over

26. The court has yet to serve summons ..... him for the suit filed against him.
(a) to (b) on (c) for

27. The court has yet to serve him ..... summons for the suit filed against him.
(a) to (b) on (c) with

28. He is 5' 1" and he is tall ..... his age.
(a) over (b) upon (c) for

29. He stared me ..... the face as if he would devour me.
(a) at (b) in (c) into

30. Don't stare ..... the girls as long as you are in the class.
(a) at (b) in (c) into

Work Book Exercise (E)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.*

1. You cannot expect respect from him becaues he is lost ..... sense of shame.
(a) in (b) to (c) into

2. You have not to get up because the book is lying ..... hand.
(a) at (b) in (c) on

3. After all hard work has come to tell ..... your health.
(a) on (b) upon (c) at

4. Dishonesty is always detrimental ..... progress in life.
(a) to (b) for (c) in

5. He made insulting remarks that are derogatory ..... his reputation.
(a) for (b) to (c) in

6. In the long run, drinking proved fatal both ..... his reputation & health.
(a) for (b) to (c) of

7. The rich are not inured ..... manual labour.
(a) of (b) on (c) to

8. Disintegration of the country is inimical ..... the progress of the people.
(a) to (b) for (c) from

9. The court has absolved him ..... all the charges levelled against him.
(a) of (b) from (c) to

10. Children, by the force of habit, are attracted ..... anything that glitters.
(a) by (b) to (c) with

11. Anyone who comes in contact with him is enamoured ..... his charismatic personality.
(a) with (b) of (c) by

12. Encouraged by the success of his ventures he has decided to embark ..... the expansion programme.
(a) for (b) upon (c) at

13. At the sight of his former wife he flew ..... a rage.
(a) in (b) into (c) to

14. Now a days there is rage ..... pop music among the Indian youth.
(a) for (b) with (c) of

15. Most of the family members dissented ..... the suggestion he made.
(a) to (b) from (c) of

16. The President dwelt ..... the problems facing the country.
(a) on (b) for (c) with

17. The robbers not only injured the landlord but also decamped ..... booty.
(a) with (b) off (c) about

18. The labourers are clamouring ..... hike in their wages.
(a) against (b) for (c) about

19. On the eve of the Prime Minister's visit, Civil Line has been cordoned ..... .
(a) off (b) in (c) for

20. ..... the campus there is much indiscipline for want of proper management.
(a) In (b) On (c) At

21. He has great antipathy ..... those who are hypocrites.
(a) to (b) against (c) for

22. Quinine is an effective antidote ..... Malaria.
(a) to (b) against (c) for

23. As a dancer she has aptitude ..... Classical system.
(a) for (b) to (c) in

24. One should never acquiesce ..... unjustified demands of the employees.
(a) in (b) on (c) for

25. She blushed ..... the mention of her lover's name.
(a) on (b) at (c) for

26. He is born ..... an intelligent mother.
(a) from (b) to (c) of

27. Your remarks don't have any bearing ..... the communal problem.
(a) at (b) for (c) on

28. He was vexed ..... the belated reply from his son.
(a) at (b) with (c) on

29. The lady was greatly incensed ..... the misbehaviour of the bus conductor.
(a) for (b) with (c) at

30. He decided to enter ..... a new course of life.
(a) into (b) upon (c) for

Work Book Exercise (F)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.*

1. As a step to renovation he has decided to replace old furniture ..... new one.
   (a) with (b) by (c) for
2. During the course of speech the Principal enlarged ..... the need of improving college library.
   (a) upon (b) to (c) in
3. He was in a hurry and just glanced ..... the letter.
   (a) over (b) at (c) through
4. Now-a-days the rich persons enjoy influence ..... the police authorities.
   (a) with (b) over (c) on
5. Nobody likes anyone to intrude ..... his privacy.
   (a) in (b) into (c) on
6. Think over the matter. Please don't jump ..... conclusions in a hurry.
   (a) to (b) at (c) for
7. The scheme of Rozgar Yojna originated ..... the Prime Minister.
   (a) in (b) with (c) by
8. We must not show partiality ..... our relatives.
   (a) to (b) for (c) of
9. The Hindus believe in many rituals to ward ..... evils.
   (a) against (b) off (c) out
10. There is no limit ..... the wants of man.
    (a) for (b) to (c) of
11. The mosquito is a menace ..... the health of mankind.
    (a) for (b) to (c) of
12. Don't think that there is any exception ..... the rules of moral conduct.
    (a) to (b) for (c) in
13. Cold climate is conducive ..... working conditions for man.
    (a) for (b) to (c) on
14. We have decided to adhere ..... the original programme.
    (a) by (b) for (c) to
15. Those abstemious ..... habits are known to live long.
    (a) for (b) in (c) of
16. Don't mix with those who don't approve ..... your style of living.
    (a) with (b) by (c) of
17. The visit of the P.M. has been advanced ..... two days.
    (a) for (b) by (c) to
18. Since her failure in the exams, she prefers to remain aloof ..... her friends.
    (a) from (b) by (c) of
19. Everyone was greatly amused ..... her ignorance of simple facts of life.
    (a) with (b) by (c) at
20. We have the habit of exulting ..... the discomfiture of our rivals.
    (a) at (b) over (c) by

Work Book Exercise (G)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with appropriate preposition.*

1. Disruptive forces in the country are fatal ..... the integrity of the nation.
2. Politeness is a quality that is alien ..... Mrs. Kapoor.
3. Liquor is not the best means to gain respite ..... sufferings in life.
4. I think his long silence is tantamount ..... a refusal.
5. Never in life has he been beset ..... grave financial problems.
6. Heedless ..... consequences he remained deaf ..... her request.
7. Temperance in life is conducive ..... health.
8. As a literary artist he is indifferent ..... praise or blame.
9. There is no need ..... helping a reckless fellow like him.
10. For want ..... experience he was easily taken in by his sweet words.
11. The newspaper will issue a supplement ..... the issue of August 15.
12. Pollution is growing as a potential menace ..... human survival.
13. Sequal ..... the announcement of new fiscal policy the industrial sector has started looking up.
14. Pakistan has ever been hostile ..... India since it came ..... being.
15. The Yadavs claim their descent ..... the clan of Lord Krishna.
16. As an educated lady she is very much alive ..... her rights.
17. Afflicted ..... penury he died a miserable death.
18. Pre-independent India had given birth to a number of sons fired ..... patriotism.
19. She was overcome ..... fatigue and went to bed.
20. How can a highly successful person like him be devoid ..... common sense.
21. She is destined ..... a career higher than you expect.
22. The youngman eligible ..... marriage can apply to the Matron of the Rescue Home.
23. As a policy of the office he is not fit ..... the post he is holding.
24. After straying/digressing ..... the main subject he reverted ..... it again.
25. The two injured persons succumbed ..... their injuries in the District Hospital.
26. At dusk the intruder emerged ..... behind the bushes.
27. Although it is an exaggerated statement it does not detract ..... the truth.
28. The players remonstrated ..... the umpire ..... his partiality.
29. Learn to grapple ..... the problems of life.
30. This fellow is good ..... nothing.

Work Book Exercise (H)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with appropriate prepositions.*

1. He is always distrustful ..... the prejudicial motives of his partners.
2. The attitude of the fanatics is always prejudicial ..... other religion.
3. The way she uses cosmetics is offensive ..... good taste.
4. The competitive exams should never be allowed to coincide ..... university examinations.
5. At the fag end of his life he was bereft ..... wealth and home.

6. Extremism is detrimental ..... the progress of a country.
7. The Minister has decided to sue the newspaper ..... libellous writing.
8. You have no right to trespass ..... the law of the land.
9. The government has decided to impose enhanced excise duty ..... luxury goods.
10. Aurangzeb divested Shahjahan ..... royal powers.
11. He is a cosmopolitan and tolerant ..... the religious views of others.
12. Your behaviour of indifference smacks ..... jealousy.
13. Now-a-days the majority of students are not amenable ..... discipline.
14. The D.M. has consented to preside ..... the function.
15. The rich are always susceptible ..... flattery.
16. Since the death of his son he remains confined ..... his home.
17. This year the result is contrary ..... the expectations of everyone.
18. The thickly populated localities are prone ..... communal riots.
19. "Have compassion ..... every creature", preached Buddha.
20. Those found remiss ..... duty will not be pardoned.
21. The climate of Mumbai does not agree ..... me.
22. He is still smarting ..... humiliating behaviour of his boss.
23. Your future plans rest ..... imaginary ideas.
24. The jewellery recovered from the robbers has not yet been restored ..... him.
25. The police had to resort ..... lathi charge ..... extreme provocation.
26. The question of unemployment bristles ..... insurmountable difficulties.
27. The godowns of the F.C.I. are infested ..... rats.
28. Her house is adjacent ..... Amitabh's.
29. Never do any thing that is incompatible ..... national interests.
30. He treated ..... religious communalism in India exhaustively.

Work Book Exercise (I)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with appropriate preposition.*

1. Don't side ..... those who act contrary ..... national interests.
2. She took exception ..... his oblique reference to her parents.
3. Mr. Narayan has been overwhelmed ..... grief since his young son met with a fatal accident.
4. At last she acceded ..... his proposal of marriage after long courtship.
5. The team was elated ..... joy ..... their victory.
6. Despite financial programme they could not adhere ..... it.
7. The emergency meeting of the college staff approved ..... the budget proposals for the coming year.
8. They have apprised the authorities concerned ..... the failure of the plan.
9. Never judge ..... a metal ..... its glitter as all that glitters is not gold.
10. My guest had to pay for lunch since I had no money ..... me.
11. His head is teeming ..... brilliant ideas.
12. At present the country is agog ..... rumours of civil war.

13. You must account ..... your absence ..... the hostel warden.
14. "Who is waiting ..... this table?" The customer asked.
15. At present India is beset ..... many problems.
16. He is dead ..... all sense of honour.
17. No noble act is prompted ..... selfish motives.
18. She is proficient ..... the art of cooking.
19. Now-a-days material values take precedence ..... spiritual values.
20. Mr. Kakkar has a retinue of servants working ..... him.
21. He fell ..... the horse and sustained injuries.
22. We have not yet decided ..... the venue of the meeting.
23. I have done ..... her as she is impervious ..... reasonable advice.
24. Don't despair ..... your efforts despite failure.
25. How come, you are getting negligent ..... your duty.
26. Your apprehensions about your wife borders ..... lunacy.
27. Have you caught up ..... your pending work?
28. Sitting idle and living ..... rental, income does not agree ..... my taste.
29. He smelled ..... liqour when he entered the banquet hall.
30. The visit of the Prime Minister has been preponed ..... ten days.

❑

Review Exercise

Directions *: Some of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect and some are correct. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and mark that part. If there is no error mark that part as your answer.*

1. He does not seem (a) to be (b) aware (c) as to (d) his merits. No error (e)

2. Between every blow (a) of the hammer (b) the blacksmith (c) looked up at (d) the door. No error (e)

3. As (a) we see, she appears (b) to be unreasonable (c) anxious about (d) pleasing her husband. No error (e)

4. The landscape of Kashmir (a) is (b) by far (c) more enchanting of all. (d) No error (e)

5. She stated to me (a) as blunt as (b) she could the reasons why (c) she was opposed (d) to my thoughtless suggestion. No error (e)

6. They were (a) charged of having (b) sheltered (c) anarchists. (d) No error (e)

7. It was barely (a) midnight when I arrived home (b) but I found them both sitting (c) at the table waiting on me. (d) No error (e)

8. She can (a) understand Marathi (b) but she cannot speak (c) it proper or fluent. (d) No error (e)

9. Hardly (a) any other monument (b) in the world is beautiful (c) as the Taj Mahal. (d) No error (e)

10. She was noticeably (a) upset by (b) how indignant (c) he responded to her final question. (d) No error (e)

11. I don't know why (a) he has been (b) unreasonably anxious (c) to solve this problem. (d) No error (e)

12. The two or three first chapters (a) of most of (b) the novels (c) are dull reading. (d) No error (e)

13. He had (a) no other wish (b) but to see his son (c) fixed up in a steady job. (d) No error (e)

14. This widely publicised (a) detergent is not much (b) different than (c) the one which I have been using. (d) No error (e)

15. Lata (a) parted with her mother (b) with tears but the journey (c) to Delhi amused her (d) No error (e)

16. After toiling very hardly (a) over a long period of time (b) he found that people (c) recognised him as a successful person. (d) No error (e)

17. Sorry (a) I cannot drink (b) this tea (c) There is too many sugar in it. (d) No error (e)

18. Although (a) there are some similarities in the qualifications of both the candidates (b) the differences among (c) them are considerably (d) pronounced. No error (e)

19. The woman who is certain (a) of her judgement is sure (b) a match for (c) a man who doesn't know his own (d) mind. No error (e)

20. During (a) the final minutes of his speech the speaker requested to (b) the audience to hold (c) its applause (d). No error (e)

21. He has been (a) trying to (b) search the lost book (c) since Monday. (d) No error (e)

22. Journey by Car is (a) as quick (b) or perhaps quicker (c) than by train. (d) No error (e)

23. Like (a) the committee has written (b) in its current report (c) the rules need to be enforced more strictly (d). No error (e)

24. There is (a) no other way (b) to end war (c) except disarmament. (d) No error (e)

25. Found guilty (a) on murder (b) the accused was (c) sentenced to death. (d) No error (e)

26. The smuggler yielded (a) for the temptation (b) and fell into the (c) Police trap. (d) No error (e)

27. The girl said (a) that she preferred (b) the blue gown (c) than the black one. (d) No error (e)

28. She is either (a) intelligent (b) or honest, (c) if not both. (d) No error (e)

29. The students (a) repeated (b) the lesson (c) word by word. (d) No error (e)

30. I complimented (a) him for (b) his brilliant success (c) in the examination. (d) No error (e)

31. He returned (a) quicker (b) than (c) I expected. (d) No error (e)

32. The extent to which (a) he is guilty (b) is not a matter (c) of our consideration. (d) No error (e)

33. The real (a) important thing to remember (b) is that language learning (c) requires (d) a lot of practice. No error (e)

34. These days (a) one (b) hears of less (c) railway accidents than motor accidents. (d) No error (e)

35. Everyone looked uneasy (a) while I was trying to explain why we ought to (b) protest but in (c) the end no one had any objection of (d) it. No error (e)

36. They found themselves (a) in competition with (b) men who were as good (c) if not better than themselves. (d) No error (e)

37. We should appreciate (a) that the telephones here (b) have been working (c) as efficient as in the past. (d) No error (e)

38. The (a) mission in (b) his life is to improve the lot (c) of the economically (d) deprived and the socially oppressed. No error (e)

39. I was promoted to (a) the post of Principal though (b) I was junior than (c) all the other members of the staff. (d) No error (e)

40. My friend is (a) equally intelligent (b) and hard working (c) as your sister. (d) No error (e)

41. Merely speeches made (a) from (b) all sorts (c) of public platforms cannot bring about an economic (d) revolution. No error (e)

42. Do you insist (a) that we met (b) at least once tomorrow (c) to discuss about (d) the subject. No error (e)

43. Our people (a) must work hard (b) with a view to (c) improving our national economy. (d) No error (e)

44. The tallest (a) among them (b) expressed a keen desire (c) to sit under (d) the shade of a tree. No error (e)

45. Except he (a) and possibly (b) our mother, all others have agreed (c) to come back soon. (d) No error (e)

46. Believe me (a) I couldn't hardly believe (b) what anyone of them (c) had said. (d) No error (e)

47. The Socialist Party (a) is as good if not better (b) than any other (c) political party. (d) No error (e)

48. I got much less (a) marks in my History paper (b) which I had offered (c) as an alternative to Economics. (d) No error (e)

49. The principal (a) forbade (b) us not to use (c) the entire (d) central hall. No error (e)

50. The interviewer asked (a) the candidate (b) to what district (c) he came from. (d) No error (e)

51. For young Mamu (a) peace in Kashmir (b) is almost terrible (c) as war. (d) No error (e)

52. Everyone felt that (a) the big glittering (b) diamond (c) was most unique. (d) No error (e)

53. I advised my son (a) to engage two coolies instead of one (b) because the luggage was too much (c) heavy for a single coolie. (d) No error (e)

54. The angry man walked hurriedly (a) into the crowded room (b) and shouted loud (c) at the guest. (d) No error (e)

55. I tried on (a) both the dresses (b) and finally decided (c) to buy the least expensive one. (d) No error (e)

56. It is the duty of every citizen (a) to do his utmost (b) to defend the hardly won (c) freedom of the country. (d) No error (e)

57. Inspite of working (a) very neat and careful (b) he could not win (c) even the third prize. (d) No error (e)

58. The car flew off the road (a) and fell into the valley (b) because Anish (c) was driving faster. (d) No error (e)

59. Watch how careful (a) the sparrow knits the (b) straws into one another (c) to form a nest. (d) No error (e)

60. Of all the friends (a) I have had (b) he is the most helpful (c) and less arrogant. (d) No error (e)

61. Geometry and Drawing (a) are more easier (b) than (c) Geography and Social studies. (d) No error (e)

62. He is (a) too intelligent (b) to make (c) a mistake. (d) No error (e)

63. My observation (a) is that (b) between Vivek and Shashi, (c) Vivek is the most intelligent. (d) No error (e)

64. The technician reminded (a) them to have a (b) thoroughly cleaning of the (c) machine after use. (d) No error (e)

65. First you should (a) think over the meaning (b) of the words (c) and then use them. (d) No error (e)

66. With little patience you will be able to cross this hurdle. No error
a b c d e

67. When asked about his children the veteran sportsman said
a b c
that his yougest son's health was too good. No error
d e

68. To perform this experiment, drop little sugar into a glass of water. No error
a b c d e

69. As he had taken only few sips there was still a little water left in the glass.
a b c d
No error
e

70. This town isn't very well-known and there isn't much to see
a b c
so a few tourists come here. No error
d e

71. Mr. Smith was accused for murder but the court found him not guilty
a b c
and acquitted him. No error
d e

72. On his attitude it seems that what he wants is that the decision making power
a b c
should rest with him. No error
d e

73. My uncle frequently goes to abroad on business by air. No error
a b c d e

74. Our laxity in duty increases with our aversion for work. No error
a b c d e

75. Globalization is not likely to usher economic progress of
a b c
the country as we are expecting. No error
d e

76. The situation is so tense in the city that even a small incident can spark
a b c
communal riots in the city. No error
d e

77. I have advised my brother to dispose off his old car and buy new one. No error
a b c d e

78. Our Mathematics teacher often emphasises on the need for a lot of practice.
a b c d
No error
e

79. Children of ten quarrel on petty issues. No error
a b c d e

80. Young children should not sit close to the T.V. set as it affects on their eyes.
a b c d
No error
e

81. I am vexed at him about what he has done. No error
a b c d e

82. This kind of behaviour has not been seen here since the last four years.
a b c d
No error
e

83. Rekha was trying for admission in the engineering college
a b
even though her parents wanted her to take up medicine. No error
c d e

84. As the party was going we noticed Mr. Roy fall back in his chair
a b c
gasping for breath. No error
d e

85. Of all the men known to me none is inclined to think ill to others. No error
a b c d e

86. The man told to her that he had not brought his dog out for a walk
a b c
as he was afraid that it would rain. No error
d e

87. This text-book on Physics, which has been written for under-graduate
a b c
students, comprises of fourteen chapters. No error
d e

88. He went to England to work as a doctor, but returned back
a b
as he could not endure the weather there. No error
c d

89. The meeting, scheduled to be held between 2 p.m. to 3 p.m.
a b
was postponed suddenly. No error
c d

90. Originally they had planned to buy an air-conditioner, but finally settled for an
a b
air-cooler as the cost of the latter was very less. No error
c d e

91. What we fail to understand is that the life of a scientist
a b
will always be different from a politician. No error
c d

92. He was not considered for promotion (a) because his performance was not (b) so good as the other members of the organization. (c) No error (d)

93. In some tribal areas (a) people worship snakes (b) and are not scared from them. (c) No error (d)

94. Not only it is our duty (a) to support our parents (b) but also to respect them. (c) No error (d)

95. After nagging constantly for months (a) and administering weekly tests (b) the teacher was at last pleased for the boy's progress. (c) No error (d)

ANSWERS

UNIT-IV

11. Adjective

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. 'fewer' in place of 'less'
2. 'The few' in place of 'Few'
3. Say 'movie worth seeing'
4. 'the least' in place of 'less'
5. Drop 'most'
6. 'quiet' in place of 'quietly'
7. Insert 'the' before 'whole'
8. 'a most' in place of 'the most'
9. delete 'The' before 'few'
10. 'more wise' in place of 'wiser'
11. 'any other' in place of 'any'
12. Drop 'any'
13. 'the most' in place of 'more'
14. 'she is neither intelligent'
15. 'a few' in place of 'few'
16. Delete 'more than'
17. Delete 'other'
18. 'last two' in place of 'two last'
19. 'of all' in place of 'than anybody'
20. 'very bad' in place of 'worst'
21. 'some' in place of 'somewhat'
22. 'to' in place of 'than'
23. 'some' in place of 'any'
24. Drop 'most'
25. 'A little' in place of 'Little'.

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. Insert 'as' after 'intelligent'
2. Insert 'other' after 'any'
3. 'the last' in place of 'latest'
4. 'later' in place of 'latter'
5. Insert 'most' before 'beautiful'
6. 't[illegible] in pla[illegible]
7. Drop 'other' before 'my neighbours'
8. 'all' in place of 'any'
9. Insert 'those of' after 'than'
10. Drop 'all the more' before 'better'
11. Say, 'this kind' and 'is'
12. 'very' in place of 'too'
13. 'farther' in place of 'further'
14. 'bitterly' in place of 'bitter'
15. Insert 'other' after 'No'
16. 'delicious' in place of 'deliciously'
17. Insert 'as' after 'clever'
18. Say 'vegetables cheap' in place of 'cheap vegetables'
19. 'Patel's/Patel's name' in place of 'Patel'
20. Place 'only' before 'he'.
21. Remove 'more'
22. No error
23. Delete 'the' before 'most'
24. Add 'else' after 'Somebody'
25. No error
26. Say plentiful
27. Say other for another
28. Unripe for raw
29. Rest of for remaining
30. Delete 'of'

12. Adverb

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. 'did not meet' in place of 'never met'
2. 'manfully' in place of 'manly'
3. 'much' in place of 'too'
4. 'knew' in place of 'did not know'
5. 'anything' in place of 'something'
6. 'more nobly' in place of 'nobler'
7. 'kind enough' in place of 'enough kind'
8. say 'fast'
9. 'either' in place of 'neither'
10. Drop 'not'
11. 'very' in place of 'much'
12. Place 'often' before 'meet'
13. 'bluntly' in place of 'blunt'
14. 'not to talk of' in place of 'what to talk of'
15. 'more quickly' in place of 'very quicker'
16. 'independently' in place of 'independent'
17. 'surely' in place of 'sure'
18. 'aloud' in place of 'loudly'
19. 'miserly'/'a miser' in place of 'miser'
20. 'hard' in place of 'hardly'
21. Use 'how to swim'
22. Say 'light'
23. Add 'as' after 'regarded'
24. Use 'if neither' in place of 'if not both'
25. Say 'straight'

Work book Exercise (B)

1. 'don't' in place of 'never'
2. 'very' in place of 'so'
3. 'well' in place of 'good'
4. 'sweeter' in place of 'more sweetly'
5. Drop 'with'
6. 'never' in place of 'ever'
7. 'late' in place of 'lately'
8. 'slept soundly' in place of 'soundly slept'
9. Add 'don't' after 'I'
10. 'anything' in place of 'nothing'
11. 'No' in place of 'Yes'
12. Say 'bitterly cold'
13. 'unreasonably' in place of 'unreasonable'
14. 'has there been' in place of 'there has been'
15. 'a month' in place of 'monthly'
16. place 'only' before 'poetry'
17. Delete 'with'
18. Drop 'as'
19. Drop 'as'
20. 'safe' in place of 'safely'
21. Say 'in a gentlemanly manner'
22. Say 'No, Thanks'

13. Prepositions

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. listen to
2. Drop 'with'
3. write in dark ink
4. compensate me for damage
5. Drop 'again'
6. drop 'from'
7. 'of' in place of 'against'
8. 'with' in place of 'among'
9. robbed them all of the belongings
10. drop 'on'
11. 'over' in place of 'on'
12. drop 'of'

13. 'for' in place of 'of'
14. write with
15. invaded India
16. dispense with
17. Drop 'for' after 'order'
18. on his grand success
19. 'bound with' in place of 'bound by'
20. present me with a new scooter
21. 'of' in place of 'with'
22. searching for your lost purse
23. fined him two rupees
24. different from
25. laugh at the poor
26. Drop 'in' after pervaded
27. 'For' in place of 'Due to'
28. parted from his wife
29. to pick a quarrel
30. informed the police of
31. 'from above'
32. 'waver in'
33. 'Play in the hands'
34. 'aversion to'
35. 'worthy of'

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. discriminated against
2. 'on' in place of 'to'
3. dispense justice
4. accompanies her
5. began at 2 p.m. about 2 p.m.
6. spread all over the country
7. travelled second class
8. admitted to the hospital
9. died from
10. on the way
11. entrusted me with his valuables
12. 'with' in place of 'of'
13. 'with' in place of 'by'
14. 'in' in place of 'with'
15. 'with' in place of 'from'
16. 'in' in place of 'of'
17. 'to' in place of 'on' set house on fire
18. Say 'admittance'
19. Drop 'back'
20. 'with' in place of 'by'
21. Remove 'against'
22. 'with' in place of 'to'
23. 'at' in place of 'from'
24. 'at' after 'shot'
25. Remove 'against'
26. 'for' in place of 'to'
27. 'after' in place of 'for'
28. Remove 'on'
29. Remove 'with'
30. Remove 'in'
31. by your watch
32. Delete 'to'
33. Say 'on time'
34. No error
35. Remove 'up'
36. 'unreal for'
37. 'tendency for'
38. 'tear up'

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. 'of' in place of 'from'
2. a week before/ago
3. 'up' in place of 'on'
4. what Kanpur is famous for
5. Insert 'for' after 'wished'
6. 'on/upon' after 'operated'
7. Insert 'for' after 'competing'
8. Insert 'about' after 'talking' on both the cases.
9. Insert 'to' after 'prays'
10. 'for' in place of 'by'
11. Insert 'by' after 'travel'
12. Insert 'with' after 'me'
13. 'with' in place of 'from'
14. Remove 'together'
15. 'for' in place of 'to'
16. 'in' in place of 'of'
17. 'with' in place of 'to'
18. 'on' in place of 'at'
19. Insert 'of' after 'dreamt'
20. Delete 'In'
21. who she was talking to
22. 'since' in place of 'from'

23. 'at' in place of 'in'
24. Insert 'with' after 'side'
25. 'for' in place of 'after'
26. fill the bucket with water
27. Use 'in' for 'to'
28. Say 'till'
29. Use 'at'
30. Use 'to'
31. 'went home'
32. 'saying among'
33. 'aware of'
34. 'call in question'
35. 'for all accounts'
36. 'tackle problems'
37. delete 'for'

Work Book Exercise (D)

1. (a)	2. (a)	3. (b)	4. (b)	5. (a)	6. (a)	7. (a)	8. (c)	9. (c)	10. (c)
11. (b)	12. (b)	13. (c)	14. (a)	15. (a)	16. (b)	17. (a)	18. (b)	19. (b)	20. (c)
21. (c)	22. (a)	23. (c)	24. (a)	25. (b)	26. (b)	27. (c)	28. (c)	29. (b)	30. (a)

Work Book Exercise (E)

1. (b)	2. (a)	3. (b)	4. (a)	5. (b)	6. (b)	7. (c)	8. (a)	9. (b)	10. (b)
11. (b)	12. (b)	13. (b)	14. (a)	15. (b)	16. (a)	17. (a)	18. (b)	19. (a)	20. (b)
21. (b)	22. (b)	23. (a)	24. (a)	25. (b)	26. (c)	27. (c)	28. (a)	29. (c)	30. (b)

Work Book Exercise (F)

1. (b)	2. (a)	3. (c)	4. (a)	5. (c)	6. (a)	7. (b)	8. (a)	9. (b)	10. (b)
11. (b)	12. (a)	13. (b)	14. (c)	15. (b)	16. (c)	17. (b)	18. (a)	19. (c)	20. (b)

Work Book Exercise (G)

1. to
2. to
3. from
4. to
5. with
6. of, to
7. to
8. to
9. for
10. of
11. to
12. to
13. to
14. to, into
15. from
16. to
17. with
18. with
19. by
20. of
21. for
22. for
23. for
24. from, to
25. to
26. from
27. from
28. with, against
29. with
30. for

Work Book Exercise (H)

1. of
2. to
3. to
4. with
5. of
6. to
7. for
8. against

9. on
10. of
11. of
12. of
13. to
14. at
15. to
16. to
17. to
18. to
19. for
20. in
21. with
22. under
23. on
24. to
25. to, under
26. with
27. with
28. to
29. with
30. of

Work Book Exercise (I)

1. with, to
2. to
3. with
4. to
5. with, over
6. to
7. of
8. with
9. of, by
10. on
11. with
12. with
13. for, to
14. on
15. with
16. to
17. by
18. in
19. over
20. for
21. off
22. on
23. with, to
24. of
25. in
26. on
27. with
28. off with
29. of
30. by

Review Exercise

1. (d) 'of' for 'as to'
2. (a) Say 'after' for 'between'
3. (c) Say 'unreasonably anxious'
4. (d) Use 'the most enchanting'
5. (b) Say 'bluntly'
6. (b) Use 'charged with'
7. (d) Say 'waiting for'
8. (d) Say 'properly or fluently'
9. (c) Add 'as' before 'beautiful'
10. (c) Say 'indignantly'
11. (a) No error
12. (a) Say 'the first two or three'
13. (c) Use 'than' for 'but'
14. (c) Use 'from'
15. (b) Say 'part from'
16. (a) Say 'hard'
17. (d) Say 'too much'
18. (c) Use 'between' for 'among'
19. (b) Say 'surely'
20. (b) Omit 'to'
21. (c) 'search for' in place of search
22. (b) Place 'as' after 'quick'
23. (a) Say 'As' for 'Like'
24. (d) Say 'than' for 'except'

25. (b) Use 'of' for 'on'
26. (b) Say 'to the temptation'
27. (d) Say 'to' for 'than'
28. (d) Say 'neither' for 'not both'
29. (d) Say 'word for word'
30. (b) Use 'on' in place of 'for'
31. (b) Say 'more quickly'
32. (d) Say 'for our consideration'
33. (a) Say 'the really important'
34. (c) Say 'fewer'
35. (d) Say 'to' for 'of'
36. (c) Add 'as' after 'good'
37. (d) Say 'efficiently'
38. (b) Use 'of' in place of 'in'
39. (c) 'junior to' is correct
40. (b) Use 'as' for 'equally'
41. (a) Say 'Mere' for 'Merely'
42. (d) Delete 'about' after 'discuss'
43. (d) Say 'their' for 'our'
44. (d) Say 'in the shade'
45. (a) Say 'him' for 'he'
46. (b) Remove 'not'
47. (b) Add 'as' after 'good'
48. (a) Say 'fewer' for 'less'
49. (c) Delete 'not'
50. (c) Delete 'to'
51. (c) Add 'as' after 'almost'
52. (d) Remove 'most'
53. (c) Delete 'much'
54. (c) Say 'loudly'
55. (d) Say 'less expensive'
56. (c) Say 'hard won'
57. (b) Say 'very neatly and carefully'
58. (d) Say 'fast'
59. (a) Say 'how carefully'
60. (d) Say 'the least arrogant'
61. (b) Remove 'more'
62. (e) No error
63. (d) Say 'the more intelligent'
64. (c) Say 'Thorough cleaning'
65. (e) No error
66. (a) Say 'with a little patience'
67. (d) Say 'very good'
68. (c) Say 'a little'
69. (c) Say 'a few'
70. (d) Say 'few'
71. (a) Say 'accused of'
72. (a) Say 'From his attitude'
73. (b) Say 'goes abroad'
74. (d) Say 'aversion to'
75. (b) Say 'usher in'
76. (c) Say 'spark off'
77. (b) Say 'dispose of'
78. (b) Delete 'on' after 'emphasises'
79. (b) Say 'quarrel over'
80. (d) Delete 'on' after 'affects'
81. (b) Say 'with him'
82. (d) Say 'for the last four years'
83. (b) Say 'to' for 'in'
84. (a) Say 'was going on'
85. (d) Say 'ill of others'
86. (a) Delete 'to'
87. (d) Remove 'of'
88. (b) Remove 'back'
89. (b) 'and' in place of 'to'
90. (d) Use 'much' for 'very'
91. (c) Say 'that of a politician' after 'from'
92. (c) Say 'that of the other members'/other members'
93. (c) 'of' in place of 'from'
94. (a) Use 'not only' before 'to support'
95. (c) 'with' in place of 'for'

❑

Chapter 14 Phrasal Verbs

What are Phrasal Verbs?

English language abounds in the use of verbs with prepositions or adverbs to obtain a variety of meanings. The verbs used with prepositions, adverbs or both are defined as phrasal verbs and they denote idiomatic meaning only **when taken as a whole.** These prepositions and adverbs are known in grammar as Particles. *e.g.*,

(i) Set in ..... start. (verb + preposition)
(ii) Set up ..... establish. (verb + adverb)
(iii) Put up with ..... tolerate. (verb + adverb + preposition)

Note : These expressions are to be taken **as a whole** ..... verb + particles.

When particle is separated from its verb, both verb & particle revert to their individual meanings separately.

(i) Set, in
(ii) Set, up
(iii) Put, up, with

There are two types of expressions of phrasal verbs :

1. Transitive expressions
2. Intransitive Expressions

1. Transitive Expressions

I. Nouns (as direct objects) are usually placed at the end of transitive expressions or immediately after the verb & before the particle.

(i) She **took off** her apron.
(ii) She **took her apron** off.

II. Pronoun objects are more often used after the verb or before the short words — 'off, on, up, down, in, out, away' etc.

(i) I went to **see him off**.
(ii) She **brought him up**.

III. Pronoun objects are placed at the end of such expressions when verbs cannot be split such as 'look for, account for, call at, call on, look after' etc.

(i) I am **looking for** him.
(ii) You should **look after** her.
(iii) I **called on** him yesterday.
(iv) You have to **stand by** me.

2. Intransitive Expressions

Intransitive expressions of phrasal verbs **donot** admit of any object.

(i) She **broke down** in the court.
(ii) His father **came round** at last.
(iii) Their marriage **comes off** next month.
(iv) The meeting **broke up** suddenly.

Now, study the following phrasal verbs that are currently in use.

1. **Account for** (explain the reason, answer for)—I can't *account for* his unusual behaviour in this matter.
2. **Ask after** (ask about the welfare, inquire after)—I met your brother at the party, he *asked after* you.
3. **Ask for** (request for)—She *asked for* a glass of water.
4. **Back out** (go back on, withdraw from promise)—He agreed to help but *backed out* at the last moment.
5. **Be in for** [about to take place (unpleasant)]—On account of his bad habits he *is in for* trouble.
6. **Bear away** (win)—Suhani *bore away* the first prize in the dance competition.
7. **Bear on/upon** [relevant, (bearing on)]—Your remarks have no *bearing on* the main problem.
8. **Bear out** (support the argument, corroborate)—I am sure my classmates will *bear out* my statement.
9. **Bear with** (to show patience, co-operate)—In view of the heavy losses suffered by the company, the shareholders were requested to *bear with*.
10. **Blow out** (extinguish)—The candle *blew out* as the gust of wind came in.
11. **Blow over** (pass off without harm, come to an end)—Don't worry, the crisis are likely to *blow over*.
12. **Blow up** (explode, start suddenly)—The plan of the enemy to *blow up* the fly-over was foiled by the police.
13. **Break down** (emotional collapse, stop functioning)—While giving evidence in the court, she *broke down*.
14. **Break into** (enter by force)—The robbers *broke into* his house last night.
15. **Break off** (come to an end, unsuccessfully)—The talks between India and China *broke off*.
16. **Break out** [spread (war, epidemic, fire, riots)]—The fear that AIDS has *broken out* in India is not unfounded.
17. **Break through** (discover a secret, major achievement)—There is no hope of break through in the murder case.
18. **Break up** [terminate (meeting, school, session)]—The college will *break up* next week for summer vacation.
19. **Break up with** (quarrel)—After long and fruitful friendship the two friends *broken up with* each other.

    Break open (open by force)—The theif broke open the lock and stole money.

20. **Bring about** (cause to happen)—The administration helped to *bring about* a peaceful settlement.
21. **Bring out** (explain the meaning, publish)—When asked to explain, she could not *bring out* the meaning of the poem.
22. **Bring round** (to make one agree, bring to senses)—I was able to *bring* my mother *round* to my views with great difficulty.
23. **Bring up** (rear, educate)—Fathers are beginning to play a bigger role in *bringing up* their children.
24. **Call at** (visit a place to meet)—I *called at* the residence of my boss yesterday.
25. **Call for** (necessary, require)—For the unity of the country discipline among the people is *called for*.
26. **Call in/call out** (send for help)—The police were *called in* without delay by the residents.
27. **Call off** (suspend or abandon)—We decided to *call off* the strike.
28. **Call on** (go and visit a person)—It is a tradition for the Prime Minister to *call on* the President.
29. **Call out** (ask to come for help)—The National Guards has been *called out*.
30. **Call up** (to telephone, recall)—Many of my friends *called* me *up* to congratulate me.
31. **Call upon** (appeal, exhort)—He was *called upon* to prove the correctness of the press reports.
32. **Carry away by** (lose control)—On hearing the news of his success he was *carried away by* joy.
33. **Carry on** (continue)—Now it is difficult to *carry on* this business in the teeth of stiff competition.
34. **Carry out** (implement, obey, execute)—It is not likely that your father will *carry out* the threat of disinheriting you.
35. **Cast away** (throw away as useless)—We usually give our servants the old clothes which we *cast away*.
36. **Cast down** (dejected, down cast)—Now-a-days he is *cast down* as a result of his failure in the examination.
37. **Cast off** (release, remove)—Organization must *cast off* old fashioned practices in order to survive.
38. **Catch up with** (make up for deficiency, overtake)—He remained ill for many days but *caught up with* the pending work very soon.
39. **Come about** (happen)—It is not good that such an unfortunate accident *came about*.
40. **Come across** (meet by chance)—I *came across* my old friend in the market yesterday.
41. **Come by** (get)—How have you *come by* such a precious diamond?
42. **Come of** (belong to)—Reeta *comes of* a family of freedom fighters.
43. **Come off** (take place as arranged, fade, get separated)—I was surprised to see that plaster had *come off* the walls.
44. **Come over** (get over, overcome)—You can *come over* your problems by honest means.
45. **Come round** (agree, recover from illness)—My father at first refused to let me continue study but he *came round* in the end.

46. **Come upon** (come across, get by chance)—My friend *came upon* the evidence just by chance.
47. **Cope with** (manage)—They *coped with* all their problems cheerfully.
48. **Cut down** (curtail, reduce)—Since you are out of job these days, you must *cut down* your expenditure.
49. **Cut off** (discontinue, die, remove)—Gas supplies have now been *cut off*.
50. **(Be) cut out for** (suitable)—He is *cut out for* an administrative career.
51. **Cut out** (to take a piece from the whole)—He *cut out* a piece of the cake and put it in my plate.
52. **Cut up** (distressed, cut into small pieces)—She was *cut up* because she had been scolded by her teacher.
53. **Die down** [gradually disappear (riots, excitement, storm etc.)]—The wind has *died down*.
54. **Die out** (become out of use or existence)—He thought that the custom had *died out* a long time ago.
55. **Dispose of** (sell off)—She has decided to *dispose* of her old house.
56. **Dispose to** (willing, inclined favourably)—My friend is *disposed to* discussing the problems thoroughly.
57. **Do away with** (eradicate)—We should *do away with* social evils.
58. **Do for** (serve the purpose)—This book will *do for* the SSC examination.
59. **(have) Done with** (have no relation)—I have *done with* him because of his dishonesty.
60. **Do without** (dispense with, to manage without)—We cannot *do without* fan in summer.
61. **Done for, done in** (be ruined)—He appears to be *done for* since he has lost heavily in gambling.
62. **Draw up** (to write, compose, draft)—I was busy *drawing up* plans for the new course.
63. **Draw on or upon** (to get money from)—He was able to *draw on* vast reserves of talent.
64. **Drop in** (to pay a short visit)—I thought I'd just *drop in* and see how you were.
65. **Drop out** (retire in the midst of doing something)—She could not qualify for the selection as she *dropped out* while the race was in progress.
66. **Fall back** (retreat)—The rioters *fell back* when the police arrived.
67. **Fall back on** (depend on)—You must save money to *fall back on* it in old age.
68. **Fall off** (decrease in number, get separated)—In the wake of roof tragedy the admissions in the school have *fallen off*.
69. **Fall out** (quarrel)—The two friends appear to have *fallen out* over a minor issue.
70. **Fall in with** (agree with)—Instead of challenging the lie, she *fell in with* their views.
71. **Fall through** (to remain incomplete, fail)—For want of sufficient funds your new project is likely to *fall through*.
72. **Follow up** (pursue after the first attempt)—The idea has been *followed up* by a group of researchers.
73. **Get ahead** (go forward)—You can *get ahead* of your rivals only by hard work.

74. **Get along** (be friendly)—They just can't *get along* together because of temperamental differences.
75. **Get at** (reach, understand)—It is very difficult to *get at* the truth etc.
76. **Get away** (escape)—They *got away* on scooter.
77. **Get away with** (without being punished or with little punishment)—Although his fault was serious, he *got away with* light punishment.
78. **Get on** (progress)—How is your son *getting on* with your study?
79. **Get on with** (live together, pull with)—Both husband and wife are *getting on* well with each other.
80. **Get over** (recover from illness or shock, come over)—He is still trying to *get over* the financial crises.
81. **Get through** (pass through, succeed)—It is not possible to *get through* examination without labour.
82. **Get up** (rise from bed, dressed)—The woman *got up* from her chair with the baby in her arms.
83. **Give away** (distribute)—She has *given away* jewellery worth thousands of Rupees.
84. **Give in** (surrender, agree)—At first she was adamant but at last she *gave in* to the request of her friend.
85. **Give out** (announce verbally, emit)—It was *given out* that she had failed.
86. **Give up** (stop, abstain from)—He *gave up* smoking to save money.
87. **Give way** (collapse under pressure, break)—The contractor was charged with negligence when the roof of a new building *gave way*.
88. **Given to** (accustomed to)—He is *given to* smoking.
89. **Go back on** (withdraw, back out)—One should not *go back on* one's promise.
90. **Go down** (be believed)—Your excuse will not *go down*.
91. **Go in for** (buy, practise, to enter a contest)—I thought of *going in for* teaching.
92. **Go off** (explode and be discharged)—When he was cleaning his gun it *went off* and killed him.
93. **Go on** (continue)—There is no need to *go on* arguing about it.
94. **Go over** (examine carefully, look over)—On *going over* the balance sheet of the company the auditors have found serious mistakes.
95. **Go through** (read hurriedly, endure)—He didn't lend me the newspaper because he was *going through* it.
96. **Go up** (rise, increase)—As a result of a sharp rise in prices the price of washing soap has *gone up*.
97. **Hand out** (distribute)—*Hand out* the books to the students.
98. **Hand over** (give charge or authority)—He has not *handed over* charge to the new manager.
99. **Hang about** (stay waiting, roam about)—The boys *hanging about* girls' hostel were rounded up by the police.
100. **Hold on** (carry on, bear difficulties, persist)—Inspite of financial difficulties he *held on* and succeeded in the long run.

101. **Hold out** (resist)—When the robbers ran short of ammunition, they could no longer *hold out*.
102. **Hold over** (postpone)—Most of the bills are *held over* till the next session of the Parliament.
103. **Hold up** (to stop in order to rob, delay)—The terrorists *held up* the motor car and kept the ladies as hostages.
104. **Jump at** (accept happily)—He *jumped at* the offer of his boss to accept the job abroad.
105. **Jump to** [arrive suddenly (conclusion)]—You should never *jump to* conclusions.
106. **Keep from** (refrain from, not to mix with)—Always *keep from* selfish people because they can harm you anytime.
107. **Keep off** (keep at a distance)—There was a notice at the site, "*Keep off* the bushes."
108. **Keep on** (continue)—She *kept on* crying inspite of my assurance of help.
109. **Keep up** (maintain)—Always try to *keep up* the standard of life even in the face of crises.
110. **Keep up with** (try to move with, not to fall behind)—Young men should *keep up with* the latest development in international field.
111. **Lay by** (save money)—The wise men always *lay by* money for their old age.
112. **(Be) laid up with** (confined to bed)—She is not going out as she is *laid up with* the flu.
113. **Lay down** (establish a rule, sacrifice, surrender)—The conditions *laid down* by the Department of Health were violated by the nursing homes.
114. **Lay off** (to discontinue work, dismiss temporarily)—The workers have been *laid off* for want of raw material.
115. **Lay out** (plan building, garden etc.)—A number of gardens were *laid out* by the Moghuls.
116. **Let down** (humiliate, to lower down)—We should never *let down* our friends.
117. **Let into** (allow to enter)—After repeated requests he was *let into* the classroom.
118. **Let off** (to free from punishment, pardon)—She was *let off* by the Principal with light punishment.
119. **Let (somebody) in on** (share a secret)—I will not *let* her *in* on my plans.
120. **Let up** (cessation, respite)—There is no *let up* in heat during May.
121. **Live on** (depend for food (staple food)—The lion is carnivorous and *lives on* flesh.
122. **Live by** (means/manner)—You must learn to *live by* honest means.
123. **Live off** (source of income)—They were *living off* rental income.
124. **Look about** (in search of, on the watch)—The thirsty crow was *looking about* water here & there.
125. **Look after** (take care of)—In her old age she has no one to *look after* her.
126. **Look at** (see carefully)—The boys are *looking at* the sky.
127. **Look back on** (to think of the past)—People can often *look back* and reflect on happy childhood memories.
128. **Look for** (search for a lost thing)—She was *looking for* her lost books.
129. **Look down upon** (hate, despise)—It is folly on your part to *look down upon* the poor students.

130. **Look into** (investigate the matter)—A committee was set up to *look into* the problem.
131. **Look on** (to see as a spectator)—His parents *looked on* with a triumphant smile.
132. **Look over** (examine carefully, go over)—The examiner has yet to *look over* practice note books.
133. **Look out** (watch out, careful, beware)—*Look out*, there is a snake under the bush.
134. **Look out for** (in search of, on the watch)—He is *looking out* for a decent job.
135. **Look to** (rely upon, be careful)—The poor *look to* financial help from the government.
136. **Look up** (consult some book for a word, rise)—Please *look up* this word in the dictionary.
137. **Look upto** (respect)—His younger brother *looks up to* him and obeys his every order.
138. **Look upon** (consider, regard)—We must *look upon* social evils as nuisance.
139. **Make off with/away with** (run away, destroy)—They *made off with* the cash and fled.
140. **Make out** (understand the meaning)—The police could not *make out* the coded message they intercepted.
141. **Make over** (transfer possession, convert)—Since she had no legal heir, she *made over* her house in charity.
142. **Make up** [to end (quarrel), compose]—You should make an effort to *make up* a quarrel with your friend.
143. **Make up for** (compensate for)—After her long illness she is trying her best to *make up for* her deficiency in study.
144. **Pass away** (die, expire)—On the *passing away* of his father I sent him a message of condolence.
145. **Pass for** (regarded to be)—The TATAs *pass for* philanthropists in the country.
146. **Pass off** (take place)—The elections are likely to *pass off* peacefully.
147. **Pass oneself off** (show off)—The hypocrites always *pass themselves off* as honest persons.
148. **Pass through** (go through, undergo, endure)—He is *passing through* financial difficulties these days.
149. **Pass out** (leave after completing education)—The cadets will *pass out* next month after completing their training.
150. **Pull down** (demolish a structure)—Why did they *pull* the shops *down*?
151. **Pull off** (succeed)—India *pulled off* victory in the last stage of the match.
152. **Pull through** (recover from illness)—I think she'll *pull through* her serious illness very soon.
153. **Pull up** (stop, scold)—The students were *pulled up* by the Principal for their misbehaviour with the class teacher.
154. **Pull with** (live together, get on with)—He is *pulling* well *with* his wife these days.
155. **Put down** (crush, keep down)—The riots were put *down by* the local police.
156. **Put off** (postpone, avoid, discourage)—The meeting had to be *put off* because the President could not come.
157. **Put on** (wear, pretend)—It is difficult *to put on* the appearance of innocence for a long time.
158. **Put out** (extinguish)—The fire was *put out* suddenly.

159. **Put up** (stays, question)—He is *putting up* at a hostel these days.
160. **Put up with** (tolerate patiently)—For an honourable person it is difficult to *put up with* the haughty behaviour of the Directors.
161. **Round up** (arrest)—The police *rounded up* anti-social elements last night.
162. **Run after** (pursue, hanker after)—We should not *run after* money.
163. **Run down** (criticise, poor health)—As a result of long illness she has *run down* a lot.
164. **Run into** (come across, meet by chance)—While walking along the roadside, I *ran into* my old schoolmates.
165. **Run out** (come to an end)—When the rations *ran out*, the head office was informed.
166. **Run over** (crush under)—He was *run over* by a speeding car.
167. **Run through** (waste money)—It is a pity that he has *run through* his fortune over gambling and drinking.
168. **See off** (to escort a guest for his departure)—His friends were present at the station to *see* him *off*.
169. **See through** (discover something hidden, motive)—Man has grown so clever that it is difficult to *see through* his tricks.
170. **Send for** (summon)—She *sent for* a doctor when her husband fell ill.
171. **Set about** (start doing)—As soon as she reached home, she *set about* calling up her friends
172. **Set aside** (allocate, strike down, turn down)—The High court *set aside* the verdict of the lower court in this sensitive matter.
173. **Set in** (begin)—As soon as the summer *sets in*, the reptiles come out of hibernation.
174. **Set off** (to start a series of events, process, improve)—(i) Cosmetics *set off* the natural grace.

    (ii) Privatisation has *set off* the process of liberalisation in foreign trade.
175. **Set up** (establish)—The factory was *set up* by his uncle.
176. **Set forth** (start on a journey, explain)—The party will *set forth* its view on globalisation at a public rally.
177. **Set out** (start on a journey, set forth)—No sooner was the hunter informed of a lion's presence in the forest than he *set out*.
178. **Sit back** (relax)—He believes that he has the right to *sit back* while others should work hard.
179. **Sit up** (stay out of bed, stay up)—She *sat up* till her son returned.
180. **Stand by** (support, help)—Although he promised to *stand by* me in difficulties, he did not live up to it.
181. **Stand for** (represent)—T.E.C. *stands for* Technical Education Certificate.
182. **Stand out** (to be conspicuous)—She *stood out* from the crowd because of her amiable manners.
183. **Stand up for** (defend)—It is your duty to *stand up* always for the poor.
184. **Strike off** (remove from the list)—His name has been *struck off* the admission list.
185. **Take after** (resemble)—She always reminds me of her mother since she *takes after* her mother.
186. **Take down** (write)—She was busy in *taking down* the dictation which the teacher was giving.

187. **Take off** (remove, leave the ground, improve)—It is difficult for Indian economy to *take off* in the absence of heavy investment.
188. **Take over** (take up responsibility)—The agency tried to *take over* another company.
189. **(Be) Taken to** (form a habit)—He *took to* wearing black leather jackets.
190. **Take up** (start a hobby or study, occupy)—He has *taken up* modelling as a career.
191. **Tell upon** (affect adversely)—I have warned him that heavy work will *tell upon* his health.
192. **(Be) taken in** (be deceived)—For all your intelligence you are likely to be *taken in* by impostors.
193. **Take for** (suppose to be, identify)—I *took* the scoundrel *for* a noble person.
194. **(Be) taken aback** (be surprised)—I was *taken aback* to hear of the news of his failure.
195. **Talk over** (discuss a matter)—I agreed to go home and *talk* over the matter.
196. **Turn down** (reject, strike down)—I *turned down* the request of my friend to go to Simla.
197. **Turn off** (stop, switch off)—Please make it a point to *turn off* water tap before you go out.
198. **Turn on** (switch on, start)—She *turned on* the shower to take bath.
199. **Turn over** (change, capsize, upset)—The boat *turned over* and ten persons were drowned.
200. **Turn out** (prove, reveal, expel)—Nothing ever *turned out* right for me in life.
201. **Turn up** (arrive, take place)—Who can say what will *turn up* next?
202. **Watch out** (look out, careful)—If you do not *watch out*, he might harm you.
203. **Wipe away** (cleanse, remove)—The marks of blood were *wiped away* by the accused.
204. **Wipe out** (destroy completely)—We must try to *wipe out* poverty from the country.
205. **Wind up** (bring to an end)—We were forced to *wind up* the business on account of heavy loss.
206. **Work out** (solve the problem)—He is very intelligent and can *work out* any difficult problem.
207. **Work up** (incite, instigate)—The politicians should not try to *work up* communal frenzy.
208. **Work upon** (influence)—The leader tried to *work upon* the mob.

Addenda

209. (get the) **Hang of something** (learn about)—As I entered the conference hall I got the hang of conspiracy.
210. **Hang together** (fit together)—Your present statement does not hang together with the past one.
211. **Hang round with** (spend time together)—I used to hang round with my friends on the Mall road.
212. **Pull in** (enter)—As the train pulled in, the passengers ran here and there.
213. **Set to** (determined)—If we really set to, we can get the work done within time.
214. **Break with** (tradition and customs)—It is very difficult to break with past customers.

Phrasal Verbs used as Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives

Break

Breakout *(noun)*—escape from prison
The news of prison *breakout* has been confirmed.

Outbreak *(noun)*—beginning
The *outbreak* of the third world war will prove to be a universal disaster.

Breakdown *(noun)*—of machinery, mental collapse
The *breakdown* of the car delayed our departure.

Break-through *(noun)*—major achievement
There is no sign of any *break-through* in the negotiations.

Beat

Offbeat *(adj.)*—different, unusual
They like *offbeat* themes of the novels.

Bring

Upbringing *(noun)*—bringing up of a person.
His *upbringing* has been very simple.

Call

Call-up *(noun)*—a summons for military service.
He avoided *call-up* pretending illness.

Come

Outcome *(noun)*—result of an action
We are not aware of the *outcome* of the meeting.
Overcome *(verb)*—solve problem, succeed, defeat
Have you *overcome* your financial problems?

Fall

Fall-out *(noun)*—dangerous redioactive dust, bad result
The *fall out* of globalisation has not proved a blessing for a common man.

Hold

Hold-up *(noun)*—attempt for robbery
The news of *hold-up* made us turn our route.
Uphold *(verb)*—support what is right, confirm
We should *uphold* the dignity of our profession.

Keep

Upkeep *(noun)*—maintenance
The *upkeep* of my office costs me a lot these days.

Let

Outlet *(noun)*—way of expressing feelings of energy, a place for selling goods.
Children must have *outlet* to spend their energy.

Lay

Layout *(noun)*—The way a building or book is planned
He does not like the *layout* of this building
Outlay *(noun)*—expenditure
The *outlay* on the plan is exorbitant
Lay-off *(noun)*—a period when labour is unemployed, an account of no work
There is six month *lay off* in our sugar factory.

Look

Look-out *(noun)*—on watch
He is on the *look-out* for a good job.
Outlook *(noun)*—attitude to life & the world
You must have optimistic *outlook*.
Overlook *(verb)*—fail to see, pardon
He was kind enough to *overlook* my fault.

Make

Make-up *(noun)*—use of cosmetics
It takes her long to put on her *make-up*.

Mix

Mix-up *(noun)*—confusion
The *mix-up* of the luggage in the cloak room caused the confusion.

Round

Round-up *(noun)*—bringing people together, arrest
The government ordered a *round-up* of the miscreants.

Run

Runaway *(noun, adj)*—one who has escaped.
Noun : The *runaways* from the prison were arrested again.
Adj. : The *runaway* prisoners were arrested again.

Sell

Sell-out *(noun)*— not a single article left
The new edition of the look has been a complete *sell-out*.

Set

Outset *(noun)*—start, beginning
The trainees were warned of the danger at the *outset*.
Offset *(verb)*—do something to reduce the effect of others
The rise in income is generally *offset* by Income Tax.
Upset *(noun, verb)*—an unexpected situation, unhappy, anxious
Noun : The *upset* in the semi finals has completely dashed our hopes.
Verb : The behaviour of her daughter has *upset* her.

Take

Intake *(noun)*—The quantity or number taken in a period.
The famous institute in our city has a yearly *intake* of 1,500 students.
Take-off *(noun)*—leaving ground (plane)
The *take-off* of the aeroplane has been delayed.
Take-over *(noun)*—an offer to buy company
The *take-over* of Sahara Airlines has been finalised.
Overtake *(verb)*—to go past a vehicle
Overtaking heavy vehicles is sometimes fatal.

Turn

Turnover *(noun)*—amount received for sale
He has a *turnover* of about 5 lakh a year.
Overturn *(noun)*—capsize
The boat *overturned* and sank.
Turn-out *(noun)*—attendance
There was a heavy *turn-out* for the opening ceremony.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.*

1. He didn't lend me the newspaper because he was going ..... it.
   (a) over (b) through (c) about
2. For want of sufficient funds your new project is likely to fall ..... .
   (a) out (b) through (c) under
3. How have you come ..... such a precious diamond?
   (a) across (b) upon (c) by
4. We usually give our servants the old clothes we cast ..... .
   (a) off (b) aside (c) away
5. He was called ..... to prove the correctness of the press reports.
   (a) up (b) on (c) upon
6. For the unity of the country discipline among the people is called ..... .
   (a) forth (b) for (c) out
7. Now it is difficult to carry ..... this business in the teeth of stiff competition.
   (a) out (b) on (c) off
8. The fear that AIDS has broken ..... in India is not unfounded.
   (a) up (b) about (c) out
9. The plan of the enemy to blow ..... the fly-over was foiled by the police.
   (a) over (b) down (c) up
10. In view of the heavy losses suffered by the company, the shareholders were requested to bear ..... .
    (a) over (b) with (c) out
11. The two friends appear to have fallen ..... over a minor issue.
    (a) down (b) out (c) into

12. When the robbers ran short of ammunition, they could no longer hold ..... .
(a) on (b) up (c) out

13. The wise men always lay ..... money for their old age.
(a) down (b) by (c) aside

14. The robbers made ..... with whatever they could lay their hands on.
(a) out (b) off/away (c) for

15. The detectives arrested him while he was palming ..... counterfeit currency notes.
(a) off (b) over (c) by

16. After her long illness she is trying her best to make ..... her deficiency in study.
(a) out (b) up for (c) for

17. On the passing ..... of his father I sent him a message of condolence.
(a) by (b) over (c) away

18. Please make it a point to turn ..... water tap before you go out.
(a) down (b) about (c) off

19. Although he promised to stand ..... me in difficultties he did not live up to it.
(a) for (b) by (c) over

20. For an honourable person it is difficult to put ..... the haughty behaviour of the Directors.
(a) up (b) up with (c) on

21. She stood ..... from the crowd because of her amiable manners.
(a) out (b) up (c) for

22. The examiner has yet to look ..... practice note books.
(a) after (b) over (c) about

23. The lion is carnivorous and lives ..... flesh.
(a) at (b) to (c) on

24. She always reminds me of her mother since she takes ..... her.
(a) after (b) to (c) off

25. While walking along the roadside I ran ..... my old schoolmate.
(a) into (b) over (c) out

Work Book Exercise (B)

Directions : *Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.*

1. The Tatas pass ..... philanthropists in the country.
(a) off (b) for (c) of

2. As a result of long illness she has run ..... a lot.
(a) out (b) down (c) over

3. Who can say what will turn ..... next?
(a) down (b) up (c) out

4. His friends were present at the station to see him .....
(a) through (b) into (c) off

5. Cosmetics help to set ..... the natural grace of the face.
(a) forth (b) up (c) off

6. The sessions court has held ..... the verdict till the next date.
(a) on (b) over (c) out

7. The newly married couple is not getting ..... well with each other.
(a) on (b) up (c) over

8. The students were pulled ..... by the Principal for their misbehaviour with the class teacher.
(a) up (b) down (c) off

9. The police were called ..... without delay by the residents.
(a) up (b) for (c) in

10. The college will break ..... next week for summer vacation.
(a) out (b) in (c) up

11. The candle blew ..... as the gust of wind came in.
(a) over (b) out (c) up

12. Reeta comes ..... a family of freedom fighters.
(a) of (b) by (c) off

13. It was given ..... that he had failed.
(a) in (b) over (c) out

14. I can't understand how these undesirable events came .....
(a) over (b) of (c) about

15. We should try to ..... the evil practices in the society.
(a) do with (b) do away with (c) do away

16. It is difficult for Indian economy to take ..... in the absence of heavy investment.
(a) on (b) off (c) up

17. Take your shoes ..... when you enter my room.
(a) on (b) off (c) with

18. The number of members absent was large so the meeting had to be put .....
(a) off (b) out (c) down

19. He is still trying to get ..... the financial crises.
(a) on (b) off (c) over

20. He jumped ..... the offer of his boss to accept the job abroad.
(a) over (b) at (c) on

21. Always try to keep ..... the standard of life even in the face or crises.
(a) on (b) through (c) up

22. She was let ..... by the Principal with light punishment.
(a) off (b) into (c) down

23. It is folly on your part to look ..... upon the poor students.
(a) off (b) in (c) down

24. You should make an effort to make ..... a quarrel with your friend.
(a) out (b) up (c) for

25. Her mother sat ..... till midnight waiting for him.
(a) up (b) out (c) on

❑

Chapter

15 Idioms and Phrases

The command of idiomatic expressions in any language is pre requisite for expressive writing and comprehension. Phrasal verbs, idiomatic adjectives, and noun phrases and idiomatic pairs of nouns, adjectives and adverbs comprise such a vast portion of idiomatic expressions that it is nearly impossible to deal with them comprehensively in such a short space. However, this chapter contains the most important usages that are indispensable for any competitive examination. Students would do well to consult the dictionary for further improvement in this field.

A

1. **At one's wit's end** (perplexed)—Sohan was **at his wit's** *end* to find that his younger brother has taken poison.
2. **At one's fingertips** (complete knowledge)—All the rules of synthesis are **at his fingertips**.
3. **At the spur of the moment** (without delay)—In an interview we must reply **at the spur** of the moment.
4. **All in all** (most important)—As he was the only son in a big family, he was **all in all** in his home.
5. **At close quarters** (close examinations)—Many of my friends proved selfish **at close quarters**.
6. **Apple-pie order** (in perfect order)—On the eve of inspection everything was kept in **apple-pie** order.
7. **Above board** (honest and straightforward)—He is known for his **above board** conduct.
8. **Above all** (before everything else)—**Above all,** he is blunt and dare devil.
9. **As fit as a fiddle** (strong and healthy)—He has recovered from illness and now he is **as fit as a fiddle**.
10. **At random** (aimlessly)—The militants fired **at random** killing a lot of innocent persons.
11. **At a loose end** (unoccupied, idle)—Now-a-days he is **at a loose end** because he has wound up his business.
12. **At logger heads** (to be at strife)—The partners of our firm are **at logger heads** these days.
13. **At odds** (in dispute)—The members of the group were **at odds** over the selection procedure.
14. **An apple of discord** (cause of quarrel)—Ancestral property is **an apple of discord** between two sisters.

15. **At cross purposes** (have conflicting intentions)—How can there be peace in their family when husband and wife are **at cross purposes**.
16. **After one's own heart** (to one's liking)—When Deepa met a man **after her own heart**, she got married to him.
17. **At the bottom of** (to be mainly responsible for)—It was found later that Shanu was **at the bottom of** the whole trouble.
18. **At a loss** (to be unable to decide)—I am **at a loss to** know what to do.
19. **At dagger's drawn** (to have bitter enmity)—The quarrel between the two brothers has grown more bitter now and they are **at dagger's drawn**.
20. **At large** (abscond, to keep unchained)—People keep their dogs **at large** at night.
21. **At sea** (applied to a person confused)—My sister is **quite at sea** in Maths; she cannot solve a single problem.
22. **Add fuel to the flame or fire** (to make matter worse)—The attempt to suppress the agitation of the strikers only **added fuel to the flame**.
23. **At sixes and sevens** (in disorder)—There was a robbery in our neighbourhood last night and when I entered the house to inquire, everything was **at sixes and sevens**.
24. **Assume airs** (to pretend superiority)—The rich are in the habit **of assuming airs** in the presence of their poor relations.
25. **Argus eyed** (careful, observant)—As a politician, he is **Argus eyed** and never overlooks even a small matter.
26. **At a stone's throw** (very close)—My friend's house is **at a stone's throw** from mine.

B

1. **By hook or by crook** (by one means or another)—He is determined to obtain first division in his class **by hook or by crook**
2. **Bear the brunt of** (to bear the main shock of)—The poor have **to bear the brunt** of increasing prices.
3. **Bell the cat** (to take first step at personal risk)—Many people can boast of their bravery, but very few can **bell the cat**.
4. **Bid defiance** (to ignore)—Rohan **bade defiance** to his father's wish of becoming a doctor and instead became an engineer.
5. **Blow one's trumpet** (to praise oneself)—No one likes to talk to those who are always **blowing their own trumpet**.
6. **Break the news** (to give bad news)—He **broke the news** of her husband's death very gently so as to lessen the intensity of the shock.
7. **Burn a hole in one's pocket** (money spent quickly)—Money given to a spendthrift only **burns a hole** in his pocket.
8. **Bury the hatchet** (to make peace)—India and Pakistan must **bury the hatchet** to bring about peace to the region.
9. **Beside oneself** (to feel excessively)—Due to the accidental death of his wife he was **beside himself** with grief.

10. **Bad blood** (bitter relations)—The riots have created **bad blood** between the two communities in India.
11. **Black and blue** (to beat mercilessly)—The thief was beaten **black and blue** by the police.
12. **Beat about the bush** (to talk in a round about manner)—We should always come to the point and should not **beat about the bush**.
13. **Beat the air** (to make useless efforts)—Some speakers merely **beat the air** in speech while preaching.
14. **Build castles in the air** (to make visionary schemes)—Many people who live in dreams **build castles in the air** and do not succeed in life.
15. **Break the ice** (to speak first after prolonged silence)—In the meeting Rajesh **broke the ice** and suggested the plan to solve the problem.
16. **Bring to book** (to punish, to call to account)—The manager was **bought to book** for his negligence.
17. **Breathe one's last** (to die)—He **breathed his last** in the prime of his life.
18. **Back stairs influence** (by unfair means)—These days many persons are given good posts through **back stairs influence**.
19. **Bird's eye view** (concise view)—We had a **bird's eye view** of the whole fair from the top of a giant wheel.
20. **Bolt from the blue** (sudden or unexpected shock)—The news of her husband's death in the air crash came to her as **a bolt from the blue**.
21. **Burn one's boats** (point of no return)—We had **burnt our boats** by declaring that we were not going to sign C.T.B.T.
22. **By the by** (by the way)—**By the by**, what is your age?
23. **Be upto** (to be equal to)—He is **upto** all the tricks of the trade to grind his own axe.
24. **Bated breath** (in anxiety, expectancy)—The fate of the match hung in balance and every body waited for the result with **bated breath**.
25. **Bandy words** (to wrangle, to argue)—Obedient children don't **bandy words** with their parents when they are advised.
26. **Bee in one's bonnet** (to be fussy)—She seems to have a **bee in her bonnet** because she is always finding faults with others.
27. **Bite the dust** (to be defeated)—Pakistan had **to bite the dust** in the final of the World Cup.
28. **Blue stocking** (educated but pedantic lady)—No body likes to mix with her because she is **a blue stocking**.
29. **Book worm** (a person in the habit of pouring over books)—He has no time for social activities because he is **a book worm.**
30. **Bring down the house** (receive applause)—Though it was his maiden speech, he **brought down the house** because of his oratory skill.
31. **Brow beat** (to bully)—The President of the college union always tries **to brow beat** the students opposed to him.
32. **Bad egg** (a worthless)—He comes of a noble family but he himself is **a bad egg**.

33. **Beside the mark** (irrelevant)—No body agreed with him because his arguments were **beside the mark.**
34. **Burn one's fingers** (to get into trouble)—Those who interfere in the affairs of others, often **burn their fingers.**
35. **Brown study** (reverie, day-dream)—He could not follow the significance of my offer. He was in **brown study.**
36. **Bank on** (depend on, count on)—The rich always **bank on** money to get things done.
37. **Blaze the trail** (to start a movement)—Surinder Nath Bannerjee **blazed the trail** of Indian National Movement.
38. **Bull in a China shop** (one who causes damage)—Most of the leaders of the freedom struggle have proved **bulls in a China shop.**
39. **By the rule of thumb** (according to practical experience)—In older times business was run **by the rule of thumb.**
40. **Big draw** (a huge attraction)—The match between India and Pakistan is always **a big draw.**
41. **Broken reed** (support that failed)—When he needed help, his friend proved a **broken reed.**
42. **By the skin of the teeth** (narrowly)—He escaped death in the accident **by the skin of the teeth.**
43. **Bone of contention** (cause of quarrel)—Since India got independence, Kashmir problem has been **a bone of contention** between India and Pakistan.
44. **Bit/piece of one's mind** (to scold)—My father wrote to my brother giving **a piece of his mind** about his insulting conduct.
45. **Born with silver spoon** (to be born in a rich family)—My friend does not have to worry about spending any amount of money as she is born **with a silver spoon** in her mouth.
46. **Burn candle at both ends** (squander)—After the death of his father he is **burning candle at both ends.**
47. **By fits and starts** (irregularly)—If we study **by fits and starts** we can never be successful in our exams.
48. **By dint of** (by force of)—He achieved success in life **by dint of** hard work.
49. **Blow hot and cold** (to speak in favour and against at the same time)—Do not trust those who **blow hot and cold** in the same breath.
50. **By and by** (gradually)—He is recovering **by and by** after long illness.
51. **Blue blood** (aristocratic blood)—Though my friend **has blue blood** yet her conduct is very mean and vulgar.

C

1. **Carry matters with a high hand** (to deal with a person strictly)—The owner of the industry **carried matters with a high hand** and expelled two workers who were caught doing mischief in the office.
2. **Clip one's wings** (to weaken the power)—My elder sister is very ambitious but my mother will surely **clip her wings**

3. **Come home to** (to understand)—Seema wanted to be a teacher in the college but soon it **came home to her** that she was not fit for the job as she was only a graduate.
4. **Come to a standstill** (come to a sudden stop)—When we were going to Mussoorie yesterday, our car **came to a standstill** right in the middle of the journey.
5. **Come off with flying colours** (to come out successfully)—The final football match was very crucial but finally we won and **came off with flying colours**.
6. **Cross one's mind** (to occur to oneself)—In the examination hall it **crossed my mind** that I had left my pen outside on the table.
7. **Cry for the moon** (to wish for something impossible)—The hope of winning the lottery amounting to lakhs of rupees is simply **crying for the moon**.
8. **Curry favour with** (win favour of somebody)—Neeta gave a lot of costly presents to her science teacher **to carry favour with him**.
9. **Call a spade a spade** (to speak plainly)—People often get angry when one **calls a spade a spade**.
10. **Carry the day** (to win a victory)—After initial setback India **carried the day** in the Test match.
11. **Cut a sorry figure** (to give a poor show)—The speaker **cut a sorry figure** in the meeting.
12. **Cry over spilt milk** (repent)—Careless students often have to **cry over spilt milk** during the exams.
13. **Cut one's coat according to one's cloth** (to live within one's means)—A wise man always **cuts his coat according to his cloth** if he wants to be successful in his life.
14. **Call names** (to abuse)—Neeta **called me names**, so she was severely punished by the teacher.
15. **Curtain lecture** (a reproof by wife to her husband)—My brother never pays any attention to his wife's **curtain lecture** and does what he thinks.
16. **Chip of the old block** (resembling one's parents in habits)—My friend is quite helpful like her father, so she is **a chip of the old block**.
17. **Cave in** (yield)—Although our team fought bravely, yet had to **cave in** before the superior power play of the opposite team.
18. **Cloven hoof** (the evil intention)—The Chinese showed **the cloven hoof** in 1962.
19. **Cut throat** (tough)—It is very difficult for Indian Industry to survive in the teeth of international **cut throat** competition.
20. **Call in question** (doubt)—You should not **call in question** my honesty.
21. **Cheek by jowl** (close together)—In metropolitan cities it is common that affluence and poverty exist **cheek by jowl**.
22. **Come to a pass** (a difficult situation)—The things have *come to* such a pretty *pass* that he is financially ruined.
23. **Close shave** (a narrow escape)—As he was driving recklessly in a crowded street, he had a **close shave**.
24. **Cut and dried** (readymade form)—There is no **cut and dried** formula for success in life.

25. **Clinch the issue** (decide the matter)—When he agreed to leave the house for good, it **clinched the issue** in favour of his wife.
26. **Carry one's point** (win approval)—After heated discussion he was able **to carry his point**.
27. **Chequered Checkered career** (full of ups and downs)—Politicians have generally **chequered career** all along.
28. **Cut both ends** (argue in favour of both sides)—He is ambiguous because he always **cuts both ends**.
29. **Cock sure** (very sure and certain)—He was so **cock sure** of his success that he applied for the job before the declaration of the result.
30. **Cock a snook** (to show impudent contempt)—She is so proud of her wealth that she always **cocks a snook** at the acts of her husband.
31. **Chapter and verse** (in full detail, to give proof)—He has such a sharp memory that he can narrate the story **chapter and verse**.
32. **Cool one's heels** (to be kept waiting)—He had to **cool his heels** before he could meet the President of the party.
33. **Carrot and stick policy** (reward and punishment)—A successful businessman follows **the carrot and stick policy** towards his employees.
34. **Come in handy** (to be useful)—Take some woollen clothes. They may **come in handy** in Simla.

D

1. **Dig the grave** (to tarnish, to destroy)—By taking side of the culprit he **dug the grave** of his reputation.
2. **Draw the long bow** (exaggerate)—In calling him the best politician of the world, his followers **draw the long bow**.
3. **Die in harness** (die while working)—Our Principal **died in harness.**
4. **Dutch courage** (bravery under alcoholic influence)—Drunkards often indulge in **Dutch courage** and boast of their imaginary qualities.
5. **Dare devil** (fearless person)—Only a **dare devil** can face the land mafia.
6. **Dead broke** (penniless)—On account of reckless spending he is **dead broke** these days.
7. **Down and out** (poor and ruined)—After a slump in share market he is **down and out** these days.
8. **Draconian law** (extremely severe law)—During emergency in 1.975 the Govt. imposed **Draconian laws** to subdue opposition.
9. **Die-hard** (persistent in struggle)—He is **a die-hard** person and will not easily surrender.
10. **Days of reckoning** (time to answer for one's actions)—You may commit crime after crime but **days of reckoning** are never far off.
11. **Down in the mouth** (out of elements)—Now-a-days he is **down in the mouth** because he has suffered heavy loss in business.

12. **Dog in the manger** (a person who prevents others from enjoying what he himself cannot)—By disrupting Parliament Session the Congress is following **a dog in the manger** policy.
13. **Damp squib** (complete failure)—The visit of our Foreign Minister to China proved **a damp squib** on border issue.

E

1. **Eat humble pie** (to apologize)—Inspite of his constant bragging he lost the match and had to **eat humble pie**.
2. **Eat one's words** (take a statement back)—I warned my friend to be very careful in her speech otherwise she would have **to eat her own words**.
3. **End in smoke/fiasco** (come to nothing)—He spoke a lot about his new film but it all **ended in smoke** and it flopped on box office.
4. **Egg on** (to urge somebody)—The Captain **egged** the players *on* to continue to play foul till the end of the match.
5. **Eke out** (supplement income)—**To eke out** his income he also works as a part time accountant in the evening.
6. **Every dog has his day** (good fortune comes sooner or later)—Don't be disappointed. It is truly said that **every dog has his day**.
7. **Ever and Anon** (now and then, sometimes)—He visits his parents **ever and anon**.
8. **(An) eye wash** (a pretence)—My friend's promise to help me just proved **an eye-wash**.

F

1. **Flesh and blood** (human nature)—People in some villages are so poor that their sufferings are more than a **flesh and blood** can endure.
2. **Fish in troubled waters** (to take advantage of the trouble of others)—Shrewd businessmen **fish in troubled waters** when there is scarcity of things.
3. **Follow suit** (to act in a like manner)—If you do not obey your elders, your children will **follow suit**.
4. **Fall flat** (to have no effect)—The minister's speech **fell flat** on the audience.
5. **Fight shy of** (to attempt to avoid a thing or a person)—I generally **fight shy of** confronting my elder sister as she is in the habit of making sickening comments.
6. **Fabian policy** (policy of delaying decisions)—Politicians generally follow a **Fabian policy** in order to keep everyone satisfied.
7. **For no rhyme or reason** (any reason whatsoever)—Seema did not appear for her final examinations **for no rhyme or reason**.
8. **Fight to the finish** (fight to the end)—Indian Army has vowed to **fight to the finish** and turn every intruder out of Indian territory.
9. **Few and far between** (very rare)—His visits to his home town are **few and far between** because of his expanding business.

10. **Flog a dead horse** (to revive interest in old matters)—The rivals always **flog a dead horse** to insult their enemies.
11. **Fool's errand** (useless undertaking)—His visit to the States to earn money proved to be a **fool's errand**.
12. **Fall foul of** (to quarrel)—They were once bosom friends but now they have **fallen foul of** each other.
13. **Fly off the handle** (to lose one's temper)—When his father questioned him about money, he **flew off the handle**.
14. **French leave** (to be absent without permission)—Those who take **french leave** should not be pardoned.
15. **Fair and square** (upright)—My father advised me to be **fair and square** in business dealings.
16. **Feather one's own nest** (to provide first for one self)—Our leaders are busy **feathering their own nests** and have no concern for the poor.
17. **From pillar to post** (rush in all directions and suffer much harassment)—You may rush **from pillar to post,** but you stand no chance of getting what you want without a bribe.
18. **Foot the bill** (bear expenses)—Although he hosted the feast, his brother had to **foot the bill**.
19. **Fair weather friend** (selfish friend)—**A fair weather friend** will never stand by you in difficulty.
20. **Flash in the pan** (sudden success)—The success of Indian cricket team is never constant and steady. It is generally **a flash in the pan**.
21. **Fit to hold a candle to** (match for, equal in quality)—He is the son of a famous writer but he is not **fit to hold a candle** to his father.
22. **The Fourth Estate** (the press)—The newspaper is regarded as the **Fourth Estate** of the state.
23. **Feather in one's cap** (additional success)—His success in his M.A. exams has **added a new feather in his cap**.
24. **Fly in the face of** (to defy)—It is disobedience on their part **to fly in the face of** the orders of the Principal.

G

1. **Gain ground** (to succeed slowly & steadily)—The belief in the abolition of dowry system is **gaining ground**.
2. **Get off scot free** (to escape without punishment)—A murderer can also very easily **get off scot free** for lack of evidence.
3. **Grease the palm** (to bribe)—Now-a-days if you want to get your work done, you will have to **grease the palm of** someone or the other.
4. **Gird up the loins** (to prepare for hard work)—Indians must **gird up the lions** to face any foreign attack on their country.

5. **Go to the dogs** (to be ruined)—The rich industrialist will **go to the dogs** because of his son's bad habits.
6. **Get oneself into a mess** (to drift into trouble)—Due to sheer ignorance, Vijay seems to have **got himself into a mess** in his office.
7. **Give a wide berth** (to avoid)—We should always **give a wide berth** to all selfish and mean persons.
8. **Gentleman at large** (an unreliable person)—We must not believe **a gentleman at large**.
9. **Good Samaritan** (one who helps strangers)—He is **a good Samaritan** because he always comes to the help of the old and the children in difficulties.
10. **Give a good account of oneself** (to act creditably)—As the eldest son of his family he **gave a good account of himself** when calamity befell the family.
11. **Give the devil his due** (give credit to a worthless person for his good qualities)—We should **give the devil his due** for his good qualities.
12. **Green horn** (inexperienced)—Though **a green horn** in political field, he appears to have a bright future.
13. **Give up the ghost** (pass away, die)—After long illness he **gave up the ghost** last week.
14. **Go the whole hog** (to do something thoroughly)—You will have **to go the whole hog** to come out of this mess.
15. **Get into a scrape** (awkward situation)—He **got into a scrape** when his wife refused to let him help his sister.
16. **Go broke** (become bankrupt)—As a result of heavy gambling he had **to go broke** in the long run.
17. **Get into hot waters** (get into trouble)—He **got into hot waters** by marrying a girl of another caste.
18. **Give currency** (to make publicly known)—The Government has refused **to give currency** to a number of scams.
19. **Great hand** (expert)—He is **a great hand** at organising social parties.
20. **Get down to brass tacks** (to deal with the matter straight)—Instead of wasting time in discussion, please **get down to brass tacks**.
21. **Give one a long rope** (to let someone commit mistakes)—He never **gives his employees a long rope**.
22. **Good turn** (an act of kindness)—He did me **a good turn** by recommending me for the post of Vice-president.

H

1. **Hold water** (sound, tenable)—His statement will not **hold water** as it is not based on facts.
2. **Hang together** (support one another)—The two statements delivered by the leader of the party do not **hang together**.
3. **Hope against hope** (hope inspite of disappointment)—Sohan's case is very weak and everybody knows that finally he will lose, but he is still **hoping against hope**.

4. **Have an axe to grind** (to have a selfish interest)—Reema is very selfish but the way she is being polite with everyone gives the impression that she **has an axe to grind**.
5. **Have the gift of the gab** (art of speaking)—Meena is not highly qualified but she has **the gift of the gab**.
6. **Hit below the belt** (to strike unfairly)—We should always face the enemy boldly and never **hit him below the belt**.
7. **Hold one's tongue** (to keep quiet)—We should always **hold our tongue** before our elders.
8. **Herculean task** (very difficult)—It is a **Herculean task** to root out corruption in India.
9. **Haul over the coals** (to take to task)—She was **hauled over** the coals by her parents for her misconduct.
10. **Have one's finger in everyone's pie** (to partake of something)—My best friend likes **to have her finger in everyone's pie** as she is in the habit of meddling with the affairs of others.
11. **Halcyon days** (peaceful days)—The days we spend in our school life are the **halcyon days** of our life.
12. **Have an iron will** (strong will)—If we have to live among the mean and selfish people, we must **have an iron will**.
13. **Hold out an olive branch** (offer of peace)—The terrorists are not prepared **to hold out an olive branch** to the Government of India.
14. **Hanky Panky** (jugglery)—None of this **hanky panky**, tell me the truth.
15. **Have feet of clay** (full of faults)—The C.B.I. inquiry has revealed that many ministers **have feet of clay**.
16. **Heart and soul** (devotedly)—He took part in the annual function **heart and soul**.
17. **Hard and fast** (strict)—No **hard and fast** rule is laid down about being regular in the college.
18. **Hang fire** (remain unsolved)—Kashmir problem has been **hanging fire** for many years.
19. **High & dry** (a difficult situation)—He was left **high & dry** by his business partners.
20. **Hit the nail on the head** (to do the right thing at the right time)—He **hit the nail on the head** by resigning his job.
21. **Hobson's choice** (no alternative)—The employees in the private sector have **Hobson's choice** because they are forced to accept what they are ordered to do.
22. **Have too many irons in the fire** (doing many things at a time)—He is fickle minded and **has too many irons in the fire**.
23. **Hold in abeyance** (postpone)—For lack of funds the district administration has *held* the construction of road **in abeyance**.
24. **High and mighty** (proud persons)—The **high and mighty** forget that everything in the world is transient.
25. **Hard nosed attitude** (aggressive)—I don't know why my teacher always has a **hard nosed attitude** towards me.
26. **Hold in leash** (to restrain)—As a responsible leader of a party you must **hold** criticism of party workers **in leash**.

27. **Head and shoulders** (superior)—Shri Atal Behari Vajpayee is **head and shoulder** above his predecessors.
28. **Hold a brief** (to defend someone)—It is very improper for parents **to hold a brief** for their children who are in the wrong.
29. **Hush money** (a bribe)—He managed to escape punishment by paying **hush money**
30. **Hold at bay** (to prevent enemy from coming)—Maharana Partap could not hold the Mughal army **at bay** for long.
31. **Hit the jack pot** (unexpected success)—He **hit the jack pot** by investing his money in shares.
32. **Helter skelter** (here and there)—When the police arrived the rioters ran **helter skelter**.
33. **Have a brush with** (to have encounter)—Our principal **had a brush with** the Vice Chancellor over the appointment of a lecturer.
34. **Hornet's nest** (raise controversy)—The speaker stirred up **hornet's nest** by referring to impending changes in the rules.
35. **Hold somebody to ransom** (to demand concession by making someone captive)—It is a pity that a handful of militants are **holding the nation to ransom**
36. **Hole and corner** (secret)—I have come to know of your **hole and corner** method of dealing with people.

I

1. **Ill at ease** (uncomfortable)—A student is often **ill at ease** when he has to see the Principal after he has done something wrong.
2. **In a fix** (In a dilemma)—The whole police department is **in a fix** about the threatening letters written by the kidnappers.
3. **In a fair way** (hopeful)—The doctor feels that patient is **in a fair way** on to recovery.
4. **In the good books of** (to be in favour with a person)—Sunita's brilliant success in her final examination has led her **to be in the good books** of her teachers.
5. **In tune** (in a mood)—The teacher asked the students if they were **in tune** for study.
6. **In the lurch** (to leave a friend in difficulty)—You must never leave your best friend **in the lurch**.
7. **Ins and outs** (secrets)—The servants are generally familiar with **the ins and outs** of the family.
8. **In the blues** (in dumps, depressed)—After his failure in the Examination he is **in the blues** these days.
9. **In the red** (suffer a loss)—Most of our Public Sector Undertakings are **in the red** for lack of efficient administration.
10. **In the limelight** (prominent)—After being out of favour with the leader of the party he is again **in the limelight** these days.
11. **In the teeth of** (inspite of bitter opposition)—Hindu Code Bill was passed **in the teeth of** opposition by various organizations.

12. **In a tight corner** (in difficult situation)—After losing in gambling heavily, he is **in a tight corner**.
13. **In cold blood** (to do something deliberately)—The child was murdered **in cold blood**.
14. **In doldrums** (to be depressed)—After his failure in the examination **he is in doldrums** these days.
15. **In the family way** (pregnant)—She has been advised complete rest because she is **in the family way**.
16. **Ivory tower** (imaginary world)—Those who talk of non-violence as a useful tool in international politics live in **Ivory tower**.
17. **In the dumps** (in low spirits)—Her visit cheered me up as I was **in the dumps** before her visit.
18. **In a flutter** (excited)—My sister is in **a flutter** today because she is going for the interview.

J

1. **Jaundiced eye** (prejudice)—You must not evaluate the success of your rivals with a **jaundiced eye**.

K

1. **Keep body and soul together** (to maintain life)—These days because of rising prices it is difficult **to keep body and soul together**.
2. **Keep at an arm's length** (to keep at a distance)—Selfish people should always be **kept at an arm's length**.
3. **Keep the wolf from the door** (to avoid starvation)—In India millions of people struggle hard **to keep the wolf from the door**.
4. **Kith and kin** (blood relation)—If we have no love for our **kith and kin,** we cannot be expected to love humanity.
5. **Knit the brow** (to frown)—Her mother-in-law always **knits the brow** at everything she does.
6. **Kick the bucket** (to die)—He **kicked the bucket** after long illness in the prime of his life.
7. **Keep up appearances** (to maintain outward show)—Though he is in financial crisis, he is able to **keep up appearances**.
8. **Keep one's fingers crossed** (to wait expectantly)—We had to **keep our fingers crossed** till the last ball was bowled.
9. **Keep the pot boiling** (earn hardly enough for living)—He is earning only to **keep the pot boiling**.
10. **Kick one's heels** (to waste time in waiting)—As the train was late we had to **kick our heals** at the station.
11. **Keep abreast of** (not to fall behind)—It is very important for the young persons to **keep abreast of** political developments in the country.

L

1. **Lost in the clouds** (confused)—My psychology teacher is often **lost in the clouds** as she sometimes is unable to explain the questions clearly.
2. **Lose ground** (fail to keep position)—The belief in prophecies and horoscopes is **losing ground** these days.
3. **Laugh in one's sleeves** (to laugh secretly)—The students **laughed in their sleeves** at the teacher's ignorance of the subject.
4. **Leave no stone unturned** (to make all possible efforts)—The minister assured the poor that he shall **leave no stone unturned** to uplift their condition.
5. **Leap in the dark** (to take a risk deliberately)—You must not **leap in the dark** by entering the business without experience.
6. **Look sharp** (to make haste)—**Look sharp**, the bus is moving.
7. **Let the cat out of the bag** (to disclose)—Sunita has, at last, **let the cat out of the bag** by confessing that she had stolen her brother's money.
8. **Live in a fool's paradise** (false hope)—My brother is **living in a fool's paradise** if he thinks that he can be a rich man without working hard.
9. **Lion's share** (large part)—Generally the sons as compared to daughters have **a lion's share** of their mother's affection.
10. **Loaves and Fishes** (material benefit)—Most of the ministers are more concerned with the **loaves and fishes** of office than the service of man.
11. **Live-wire** (energetic)—India needs **live-wire** political leaders who can put the country on the right track.
12. **Look a gift horse in the mouth** (criticize a gift)—One should not **look a gift horse in the mouth** because it is given out of love and regards.
13. **Lose one's head** (to be carried away)—One should not **lose one's head** even in such a victory.
14. **Long and short** (in brief)—The **long and short** of the principal's speech was that examination would be held on time.
15. **Latin and Greek** (incomprehensible)—The speech of literary persons is always **Latin and Greek** to illiterate persons.
16. **Last nail in the coffin** (causing ruin)—Second world war proved to be a **last nail in the coffin** of British imperialism.
17. **Lead up the garden path** (to cheat)—The traders **lead the credulous customers up the garden path** by assuring them of warranty.
18. **Leaps and bounds** (rapidly)—In comparison to India, China has progressed by **leaps and bounds** in every field.
19. **Last straw** (the final trial of patience)—The Rowlet Act was **the last straw** on the Camel's back and the whole India rose in protest against the British rule.
20. **Let the grass grow under feet** (to delay the matters)—We are bound to suffer if we **let the grass grow under feet** by postponing action.

M

1. **Make both ends meet** (to live within one's means)—As my uncle has to bring up five children, he finds it difficult to **make both ends meet.**
2. **Mend one's fences** (to make peace)—It is high time for the two brothers to bury the hatchet and **mend their fences.**
3. **Make a clean breast** (to confess)—When asked by the Magistrate sternly, the thief **made a clean breast** of the whole crime.
4. **Make amends** (to give compensation)—The government **made amends** to the family for the loss of their earning member in the war.
5. **Make the most of** (to utilize time)—Students should **make the most of** their time if they want to get an administrative job.
6. **Move heaven and earth** (to try utmost)—Ramesh **moved heaven and earth** to gain his end but failed.
7. **Make sure** (to ascertain)—We went to the office **to make sure** if our exams would start in the next week.
8. **Make neither head nor tail** (not to understand)—The students can **make neither head nor tail** of what Mr. Dev teaches them.
9. **Moot point** (a debatable point, undecided)—The question of abolition of child marriage is **a moot point** as far as Indians are concerned.
10. **Meet one's Waterloo** (to face final defeat)—Tipu Sultan **met his Waterloo** in the fourth battle of Mysore.
11. **Man of letters** (literary person)—Dr. Radhakrishnan was a **man of letters.**
12. **Make light of** (not to care)—He is in the habit **of making light** of the advice of his parents.
13. **Midas touch** (a touch which turns anything into gold)—Our manager seems to be gifted with **Midas touch** because he is capable of selling every product.
14. **Man of parts** (a man of qualities)—Our Principal is **a man of parts** and is respected by all and one.
15. **Mealy mouthed** (soft spoken)—A **mealy mouthed** shopkeeper is always successful.
16. **Man of straw** (a weak person)—The king being **a man of straw,** his orders were often disobeyed.
17. **Mince matters** (hide the truth and pretend)—Tell the truth to your parents because it does not pay **to mince matters.**
18. **Mare's nest** (a false invention)—The involvement of teachers in the scheme proved to be **a mare's nest.**

N

1. **Null and void** (ineffective)—Strangely, the laws made by the British in India are not yet **null and void.**
2. **Next to nothing** (almost nothing)—The thieves made off with everything from the kitchen and there was **next to nothing** left.

3. **Neck and crop** (completely)—The decoits finished him off **neck and crop** beyond recognition.
4. **No love lost** (intense dislike)—There is **no love lost** between the two neighbours.
5. **Nip in the bud** (to destroy in the very beginning)—The evils of the society must be **nipped in the bud**.
6. **Not worth one's salt** (not deserving)—We should not help the persons who are **not worth their salt**.

O

1. **Off hand** (without preparation or delay)—I am very poor in English grammar & can't answer all the questions **off hand**.
2. **Over head and ears** (excessively)—Mohan is **over head and ears** in love with Neena.
3. **Out of question** (certain)—His success is **out of question** because he is working hard these days.
4. **Out of the question** (unlikely, uncertain)—His success is **out of the question** because he is not working hard these days.
5. **Out of the woods** (out of danger)—The patient is not **out of the woods** yet.
6. **Order of the day** (in fashion)—It is difficult to get any work done without bribery because bribery is the **order of the day**.
7. **On the score of** (on the grounds of)—He was debarred from appearing in the examination **on the score of** indiscipline.
8. **On that score** (for the reason)—You need not worry **on that score**.
9. **Over and above** (moreover, besides)—I shall lend you books **over *and* above** what I have promised to give you in cash.
10. **Out and out** (completely)—Shri Bhagat Singh was a patriot **out *and* out**.
11. **Off and on** [occasionally (now & then)]—Since she is over busy these days, she visits me **off *and* on**.
12. **One's Achilles heel** (a weak point)—Howsoever powerful a person may be, he is vulnerable because of his **Achilles' heel.**
13. **Off colour** (not in usual form)—Once a glamorous actress, she is **off colour** these days.
14. **Odds and ends** (scattered things)—The thief made away with the **odds and ends** lying about the drawing room.
15. **Off the hook** (out of trouble)—He is not yet **off the hook** because Income Tax department is making a thorough inquiry into his financial status.
16. **Oily tongue** (flattering words)—He has often won over the enemies by his **oily tongue**.
17. **On the horns of dilemma** (in a fix)—He is **on the horns of dilemma** in the matter of his marriage.
18. **One's cup of tea** (to one's liking)—Teaching is not my **cup of tea**.
19. **Out of sorts** (to be unwell)—Sohan had been **out of sorts** the whole day and could not do his office work properly.

20. **On its last legs** (about to collapse)—In many sections of Indian society the system of child marriage is **on its last legs**.
21. **On the carpet** (to be under consideration)—What is **on the carpet** these days is in the newspapers.

P

1. **(A) Past master** (an expert)—He is **a past master** in befooling the people by his oily tongue.
2. **Palmy days** (prosperous, affluent days)—We still remember the **palmy days** of our life when we had nothing much to do and still got everything to fulfil our needs.
3. **Part and parcel** (inseparable part)—Every Indian citizen living in India must regard himself as **part and parcel** of a larger whole.
4. **Pass the buck** (to blame each other)—Political parties **pass the buck** on to one another for failure on economic front.
5. **Pay off old scores** (to take revenge)—The way he is treating his younger brother makes it quite obvious that he is **paying off old scores**.
6. **Pay through one's nose** (to pay dearly)—A hapless customer has to **pay through his nose** when there is shortage of goods in the market.
7. **Pay lip service** (pretend to regard)—Most of the political parties **pay lip service** to the plight of the poor.
8. **Pay one back in the same coin** (tit for tat)—We should not hesitate in paying China and Pakistan **back in their own coins**.
9. **Pin-money** (allowance given to housewife for personal use)—She is frugal and saves even out of **pin-money**.
10. **Pell-mell** (great confusion)—After the thieves had ransacked the house, every thing was **pell-mell.**
11. **Play fast and loose** (repeatedly change one's attitude)—No one can trust Rohan as he is used to **playing fast and loose** with his friends.
12. **Play second fiddle to** (to play a subordinate part)—A self-respecting man can never **play second fiddle to** anyone.
13. **Play truant** (to be absent from duty without permission)—It is a very bad habit of the employees **to play truant** from office.
14. **Play to the gallery** (to gain cheap popularity)—The speeches of our leaders are not sincere; they are intended to **play to the gallery.**
15. **Play ducks and drakes** (to squander money)—After the death of his father he got into heavy debt by **playing ducks and drakes** with money.
16. **Play foul** (to do something wrong)—Don't **play foul** with your well-wishers.
17. **Plough the sands** (futile labour)—He cannot make money because he appears **to be ploughing the sands.**
18. **Pour oil on troubled waters** (to pacify the matters)—The two good friends exchanged hot words but the intervention of their teacher **poured oil on troubled waters.**

19. **Pull a long face** (to look sad)—Seema **pulled a long face** when she was scolded by her teacher for her carelssness.
20. **Pull one's socks up** (work hard)—You must **pull your socks up** to get over financial problems.
21. **Pull strings** (to exercise influence secretly)—He managed his promotion by **pulling strings.**
22. **Put heads together** (consult seriously)—Our leaders should **put their heads together** to solve national problems.
23. **Put a spoke in a wheel** (to obstruct)—He would not like me to succeed; so he always **put a spoke in a wheel.**
24. **Put the cart before the horse** (to do wrong thing first)—Our leaders **put the cart before the horse** by neglecting villages in the name of industrial progress.
25. **Pros and cons** (for and against a thing)—We must always consider the **pros and cons** of any new project that we take in hand.
26. **Pyrrhic victory** (victory at a high cost)—Greek victory over Trojans proved to be **pyrrhic victory**.
27. **Pick holes** (to find fault with)—He is **always picking** holes in every project.

Q

1. **Queer fish** (strange person)—One cannot make anything out of Sohan's attitude as he is such a **queer fish.**
2. **Quixotic project** (foolishly ideal)—Being not worldly wise he wasted his money in **quixotic projects**.

R

1. **Rise to the occasion** (to act as the occasion demands)—To face critical situations boldly you should **rise to the occasion.**
2. **Run short of** (shortage)—These days due to some financial crises my friend is **running short of** money.
3. **Rank and file** (common man)—If we want our country to progress in every field, we must improve the economic lot of the **rank and file**.
4. **Red tapism** (official delay)—**Red tapism** is a bane of Indian bureaucracy.
5. **Rest on one's laurels** (complacent, self satisfied)—Ambitious persons never **rest on their laurels** because they dream of unending achievements.
6. **Rock the boat** (upset the balance)—If your party withdraws the support from the Government, it may **rock the boat.**
7. **Red herring** (something to distract attention)—The demand of inquiry into his conduct is just **a red herring** as there is no truth in it.
8. **Rip up old sores** (to revive forgotton quarrel)—Rahul and his wife can't live in peace; they are always **ripping up old sores.**
9. **Read between the lines** (to understand the hidden meaning)—If her essay is **read between the lines,** we will find that she has made comments against the Government.

10. **Rule the roost** (to dominate)—Today the rich **rule the roost**.
11. **Red rag to a bull** (anything that provokes)—The law against the dowry system is, for the greedy persons, like **a red rag to a bull**.
12. **Ride rough shod over** (to treat in a high handed fashion)—**Don't ride rough shod over** a person when he is down and out.
13. **Rub one the wrong way** (annoy)—If you **rub him the wrong way**, he is bound to react.

S

1. **Sit on the fence** (not to commit oneself)—When the party split Ramesh was accused of **sitting on the fence**.
2. **Smell a rat** (to be suspicious)—I **smelt a rat** in the bargain that my uncle made with my father.
3. **Shed crocodile tears** (to show false sorrow)—The mother **shed crocodile tears** on the death of her step daughter.
4. **Split hair** (to indulge in over refined arguments)—We should not try **to split hair** with our elders.
5. **Stand in good stead** (to be helpful in need)—During the time of distress the advice of elders always **stands in good stead**.
6. **Show white feather** (to show cowardice)—Brave people never **show white feather** in the face of difficulties.
7. **See eye to eye** (to agree)—Neema could never **see eye to eye** with her elder brother.
8. **Set store by** (to value)—I have always **set store by** my father's opinion.
9. **Snap one's fingers at** (to show contempt)—The industry owner feels that he may **snap his fingers at** the demands of his workers, but he is greatly mistaken.
10. **Speak volumes for** (to have abundant proof)—The amount of sacrifice made by Reena's friend **speaks volumes for** her true love for her friend.
11. **Steal a march** (to get ahead secretly)—Rohan **stole a march** on my brother in business and is very rich today.
12. **Steer clear of** (to avoid)—Everyone, if possible, should **steer clear of** selfish people.
13. **Swan song** (last creation)—'Lament' was **the swan song** of Shelley.
14. **Snake in the grass** (a secret enemy)—The country is always betrayed by the **snakes in the grass**.
15. **Sword of Damocles** (facing imminent danger)—A **sword of Damocles** is always hanging over the head of a soldier in the event of war.
16. **Sail under false colours** (a hypocrite)—We should not believe our leaders because they **sail under false colours**.
17. **Spartan life** (life of ascetic)—Swami Vivekanand led **a spartan life** for promoting health of mind and body.
18. **Save one's face** (to avoid disgrace)—He is making lame excuses **to save his face** because he could not qualify the examination.

19. **A scarlet woman** (a woman with loose morals)—Being a **scarlet woman** she is looked down upon by her neighbours.
20. **Set people by ears** (to incite people)—The communal speeches **set people by ears**.
21. **To set Thames on fire** (to achieve something impossible)—Qualifying Civil Services examination for you is like **setting Thames on fire**.
22. **Sweat of the brow** (hard labour)—The honest persons live by **sweat of the brow**
23. **Steal someone's thunder** (make a better impression)—The young actor performed so well that he **stole his rival's thunder**.
24. **Straight from the shoulders** (candidly)—My lawyer told me **straight from the shoulders** that my case was weak.
25. **Shop lifter** (one who steals from the shop)—A **shop lifter** often visits a shop as a customer.
26. **Spick and span** (in order)—Her house looked **spick and span** because everything was in its place.
27. **Shot in the arm** (encouraging)—A victory in Kargil war proved **a shot in the arm** of our Defence Forces.
28. **Something up one's sleeve** (a secret plan)—She is quite a mischievous lady. There is always **something up her sleeve**.
29. **Send about one's business** (to dismiss)—His employees **sent him about his business** when he behaved insolently.
30. **Stand one's ground** (remain firm)—He did not yield to pressure and **stood his ground** till the end.
31. **Small fry** (insignificant person)—Who cares for him, he is **a small fry** in the office.
32. **Seamy side of life** (immoral side of society)—The picture depicts realism and presents the **seamy side of life** in modern India.
33. **Sow wild oats** (irresponsible pleasure seeking)—After **sowing his wild oats** Ram has decided to stick to the straight and narrow path in future.
34. **Spill the beans** (to give information)—Continuous interrogation finally made the man **spill the beans** and the disaster was averted.
35. **A stalking horse** (pretence)—The trade union's seemingly rightful demand is only a **stalking horse** to black-mail the management.

T

1. **Turn the tables** (to reverse the condition)—A batsman often **turns the table** on the opposite team by his good batting.
2. **Turn up one's nose** (to take lightly with contempt)—Meena has failed twice in her class and yet she **turns up her nose** at my advice.
3. **Turn coat** (one who changes political affiliations)—Anti-defection bill is aimed at checking the evil practices indulged in by **turn coats**.
4. **Take up the cudgels** (to support or defend)—One of my lawyer friends **took up the cudgels** on my behalf to defend me.

5. **Turn the corner** (to pass a critical stage)—After long illness at last my friend **turned the corner** and was completely out of danger.
6. **Tall talk** (exaggerate the matters)—No one likes to be in the company of Neema as she always indulges in **tall talk**.
7. **Tooth and nail** (violently)—All the students revolted **tooth and nail** against the partiality of the teachers towards some students.
8. **Throw in a towel** (to be defeated)—When the wrestler could not resist the opponent, he had to **throw in a towel**.
9. **Take with a pinch of salt** (to accept with doubt)—Everybody takes Rahul's problems with **a pinch of salt** because he is an unreliable person.
10. **Turn a hair** (show any reaction)—Although his friends provoked him against Rohit, he did not **turn a hair** and remained calm.
11. **Tall stories** (exaggerated stories)—Since he retired from Army, he has been famous for his **tall stories** which regale the villagers.
12. **Take the floor** (make a speech)—When the Prime Minister **took the floor** in the cabinet meeting there was pin drop silence.
13. **Take lying down** (accept insult)—It is impossible for me to *take* his remarks *lying down*. It amounts to meek surrender.
14. **Turn to account** (turn to advantage)—The brave *turn* their failures *to account*.
15. **Take heart** (feel bold)—You must **take heart** and face life boldly.
16. **Take to heart** (feel excessively)—He *took* his failure **to heart** and lost interest in worldly affairs.
17. **Take bull by horns** (to meet the danger boldly)—You can succeed in life only if you have courage **to take bull by horns**.
18. **Through and through** (entirely)—He was drenched in the rain **through and through**.
19. **To the back bone** (thoroughly)—We need leaders who are selfless **to the back bone**.
20. **Take wind out of another's sails** (to gain advantage by anticipation)—Farsighted Generals can win war by **taking wind out of enemy's sails**.
21. **Throw down the glove/gauntlet** (to challenge)—China had **thrown down the glove** by not recognising Sikkim as part of India.
22. **Take leaf out of somebody's book** (to emulate)—The young should **take leaf out of great men's books**.
23. **Take people by storm** (to surprise unexpectedly)—The successful launching of GSLV-1. **took the nation by storm**.
24. **Tall order** (something difficult)—It is **a tall order** to check population explosion in India.
25. **Throw a spanner** (to sabotage a plan)—He refused to finance my project and so **threw a spanner** in it.
26. **Take to task** (punish, ask for explanation, to scold)—To *took* my younger sister **to task** for not obeying her elders.

27. **Turn a deaf ear** (not to pay attention to, refuse to listen)—All the party members **turned a deaf ear** to their leader.
28. **Throw out of gear** (not working properly)—Many of our small scale industries have been **thrown out of gear** because of lack of finance.
29. **Take to heels** (to run away)—The students making mischief **took to their heels** on seeing the Principal.
30. **Throw cold water** (to discourage)—Instead of encouraging me my business partner **threw cold water** on my plans.
31. **Turn over a new leaf** (to be entirely changed)—After the sudden death of his father Rajesh **turned over a new leaf** and took all the responsibilities of the family on himself.
32. **Take somebody for a ride** (to deceive a person)—The traders **take the customers for a ride** by selling fake foreign goods to them.
33. **Take up arms** (to fight)—The tribals of this region have **taken up arms** against the government.
34. **To and fro** (forward and backward)—He was strolling in the garden **to and fro**
35. **Throw up the sponge** (surrender)—He never **threw up the sponge** and at last got over his problems.

U

1. **Uphill task** (difficult task)—The problem of holding exams on time is an **uphill task** for the V.C. of Ch. Charan Singh University.
2. **Ups and downs** (change in fortune)—My uncle has experienced many **ups and downs** in his furniture business.
3. **Under the rose** (secretly)—When the parents of Amul did not agree to the marriage of their son, he married Meeta **under the rose**.
4. **Up and doing** (active)—A labourer should be **up and doing** daily if he has to earn his living.
5. **Under a cloud** (to be under suspicion)—His secret connections with the smugglers have brought him **under a cloud**.
6. **Upto the mark** (as good as should be)—Your speech was upto the mark.

W

1. **With open arms** (cordially, warmly)—When my cousin came back from England after ten years he was welcomed **with open arms** by all the relatives.
2. **Win laurels** (to win distinction)—Dr. Tagore **won laurels** in the world of literature.
3. **White elephant** (anything with less utility and more expenditure)—The Public Sector Undertakings have proved **white elephants** to our economy.
4. **Well disposed to** (friendly or helpful to somebody)—One is always **well disposed to** those who are honest and hard working.

5. **Writing on the wall** (signal, warning)—The factory owner read the **writing on the wall** and closed down the factory.
6. **When the crunch comes** (the moment of decision)—Brave persons never despair **when the crunch comes**.
7. **Willy-Nilly** (whether one wishes or not)—**Willy-Nilly,** she has to agree to the views of her husband all the time.
8. **Window shopping** (to look at goods displayed but not for buying)—Though I did not have any mind to make purchases, I just went out **window shopping** in the evening.
9. **Wear and tear** (damage caused by use)—**Wear and tear** of the machinery is known as depreciation in accountancy.
10. **Weal and woe** (joy and sorrow)—We must learn to bear **weal and woe** of life patiently.
11. **Wash hands of** (to have nothing to do)—I have **washed hands of** your affairs because you do not take me seriously.
12. **Wide berth** (keep away)—We should give a **wide berth** to bad characters.
13. **Will o' the wisp** (elusive, unreal)—To Romantic poets reality appears to be **will o' the wisp**
14. **Wry face** (disappointed look)—He made a **wry face** when he was refused admission to the college of his choice.
15. **Win hands down** (win easily)—Australia **won hands down** in the Davis Cup finals.
16. **Within an ace of** (close to something)—When our team was **within an ace of** victory, Iraq scored a last minute goal to draw the game.
17. **Wear the trousers** (dominant)—It is Leena who **wears the trousers** and her husband simply obeys her.
18. **Wee hours** (at dawn)—The old couple was murdered in the **wee hours** of the day.
19. **With a high hand** (oppressively)—He was a king who ruled his subjects **with a high hand.**
20. **Wet blanket** (any person that dampens enthusiasm)—The principal proved **a wet blanket** while the students were on picnic.
21. **Wild-goose chase** (unprofitable)—All the efforts of the government to remove illiteracy in India is like **a wild-goose chase.**
22. **Wind fall** (sudden gain)—The legacy left by his uncle proved a **wind fall** for Arnav.
23. **Wide berth** (keep away)—We should give a wide berth to bad characters.
24. **Wrangle over an ass' shadow** (to quarrel over trifles)—Their long friendship ended because they **wrangled over an ass' shadow.**

Y

1. **Yellow press** (newspaper publishing sensational news)—In recent times there is a spurt of sensational newspapers making **yellow press** popular.
2. **Yeoman's service** (excellent work)—Sardar Patel did a **Yeoman's service** by welding numberless States into one strong nation.

Work Book Exercise (A)

Directions : *For each of the following sentences four alternatives are given. You are required to choose the correct meaning of the Idioms given in italics in the sentences.*

1. The boy turned a *deaf ear* to the pleadings of all his well-wishers.
   (a) listened carefully
   (b) was deadly opposed
   (c) posed indifference
   (d) did not pay any attention
2. We should give a *wide berth* to bad characters.
   (a) keep away from
   (b) publicly condemn
   (c) give publicity to
   (d) not sympathise with
3. Sumit had to look *high and low* before he could find his scooter key.
   (a) nowhere
   (b) always
   (c) everywhere
   (d) somewhere
4. You may *rush from pillar to post*, but you stand no chance of getting what you want without a bribe.
   (a) be very busy
   (b) rush in all directions and suffer much harassment.
   (c) go to all post boxes and post offices.
   (d) go to many offices and post letters.
5. At a party, he is always in *high spirits*.
   (a) talkative
   (b) cheerful
   (c) drunk
   (d) uncontrollable
6. She rejected his proposal of marriage *point blank*.
   (a) directly
   (b) pointedly
   (c) absurdly
   (d) briefly
7. We should guard against our *green-eyed* friends.
   (a) rich
   (b) jealous
   (c) handsome
   (d) enthusiastic
8. It was clearly a case of the *pot calling the kettle black* when Jagjit said that Ramu was a thief.
   (a) Someone criticizing another for a fault which he himself has.
   (b) A person accusing another of being black.
   (c) A person blaming another for something, he has not done.
   (d) Both are guilty of the same mistake.
9. Rahul fought *tooth and nail* to save his company.
   (a) with weapons
   (b) as best as he could
   (c) using unfair means
   (d) with strength and fury
10. The popularity of the yester year's superstar is *on the wane*.
    (a) growing more
    (b) at its peak
    (c) growing less
    (d) at rock bottom
11. The sight of the accident made my *flesh creep*.
    (a) worried me
    (b) frightened me
    (c) confused me
    (d) drew my attention
12. He is a *queer fish*. I have failed to understand him.
    (a) funny person
    (b) sensitive person
    (c) strange person
    (d) quarrelsome person

13. The involvement of teachers in the scheme of education proved to be a mare's *nest*.
(a) a false invention (b) a noble thing
(c) a successful (d) a timely sleep

14. Chandu used very ugly words against his kind uncle; he *threw down the gauntlet* before him.
(a) abused and insulted (b) threw the challenge
(c) behaved as an important person (d) put conditions

15. The present undergraduate syllabus leaves very little *elbow room* for teachers to be innovative.
(a) room for elbow (b) space
(c) freedom (d) ground

16. The members of the group were *at odds* over the selection procedure.
(a) acting foolishly (b) in dispute
(c) unanimous (d) behaving childishly

17. There is *no love lost* between the two neighbours.
(a) close friendship (b) intense dislike
(c) a love-hate relationship (d) cool indifference

18. I did not mind what he was saying, he was only *talking through his hat*.
(a) talking insultingly (b) talking irresponsibly
(c) talking ignorantly (d) talking nonsense.

19. If you pass this difficult examination, it will be a *feather in your cap*.
(a) you will get a very good job
(b) additional achievement
(c) your parents will be very happy
(d) you will get a scholarship for higher studies.

20. If you *rub him the wrong way*, he is bound to react.
(a) annoy him (b) abuse him
(c) flatter him (d) encourage him

21. There was opposition to the new policy by *the rank and file* of the government.
(a) the majority (b) the ordinary members
(c) the cabinet members (d) the official machinery

22. Dowry is a *burning question* of the day.
(a) a dying issue (b) a relevant problem
(c) an irrelevant problem (d) a widely debated issue

23. His voice gets *on my nerves*.
(a) makes me sad (b) irritates me
(c) makes me ill (d) pierces my eardrums

24. Some people have a habit of *wearing their heart* on their sleeve.
(a) Avoiding being friendly with others.
(b) Saying something which is not to be taken seriously.
(c) Exposing their innermost feelings to others.
(d) Wasting their time on unnecessary details.

25. The doctor says that the patient has *turned the corner*.
(a) completely recover (b) become worse
(c) passed the crisis (d) died

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. Komal was left *high and dry* by her friends when she lost all her money.
   (a) isolated (b) rejected
   (c) wounded (d) depressed
2. The party stalwarts have advised the president to take it *lying down* for a while.
   (a) to show no reaction (b) to take rest
   (c) to be on the defensive (d) to be cautious
3. A movement for the world unity is *in the offing*.
   (a) at the end (b) about to start
   (c) on decline (d) in the air
4. In the Armed Forces, it is considered a great privilege to *die in harness*.
   (a) die with honour (b) die on a horse back
   (c) die while still working (d) die in the battlefield
5. Sita is not *cut out* for this kind of work.
   (a) trained (b) suitable
   (c) recommended (d) considered
6. His most trusted friend proved to be *a snake in the grass*.
   (a) cowardly and brutal (b) an unreliable and deceitful person
   (c) a hidden enemy (d) low and mean
7. The politician was able to sway the mob with *his gift of the gab*.
   (a) fluency of speech (b) flattering words
   (c) abundance of promises (d) political foresight
8. The speaker gave a *bird's eye view* of the political conditions in the country.
   (a) a detailed presentation (b) a biased view
   (c) a general view (d) a personal view
9. After *sowing his wild oats* Ram has decided to stick to the straight and narrow path in future.
   (a) becoming a gardener
   (b) becoming a farmer
   (c) a period of wildness
   (d) going through a period of irresponsible pleasure seeking
10. They sold their house because it was a *white elephant*.
    (a) an expensive one (b) a big one
    (c) a useless one (d) a rare find
11. When he tells stories about himself, he *is inspired to draw the long bow*.
    (a) get excited (b) exaggerate
    (c) get emotional (d) underrate
12. He was a king who ruled his subjects *with a high hand*.
    (a) oppressively (b) kindly
    (c) conveniently (d) sympathetically
13. Discipline is *on the wane* in schools and colleges these days.
    (a) increasing (b) declining
    (c) spreading (d) spiralling

14. He *did me a good turn* by recommending me for the post of Vice-president.
(a) became suddenly good
(b) improved my prospects
(c) did an act of kindness
(d) returned my kindness

15. Being an introvert, he will only *eat his heart out.*
(a) eat too much
(b) keep brooding
(c) invite trouble
(d) suffer silently

16. The question of abolition of private property is still *a moot point.*
(a) unknown
(b) undecided
(c) not clear
(d) uncertain

17. Sumit and I have known each other for a long time but when I met him the other day for some unknown reason, he *cut me dead.*
(a) abused me
(b) treated me as a complete stranger
(c) shouted at me
(d) showed dislike for me

18. I have come to know of your *hole and corner* method of dealing with people.
(a) strict
(b) servile
(c) secret
(d) suspicious

19. Continuous interrogation finally made the man *spill the beans* and the disaster was averted.
(a) blurt out the truth
(b) to give information
(c) to scatter the truth
(d) to scatter the beans

20. The trade union's seemingly righful demand is only a *stalking horse* to blackmail the management.
(a) trick
(b) proposal
(c) pretence
(d) suggestion

21. The teacher was *as good as his word.*
(a) incapable of action
(b) better than expected
(c) highly pretentious
(d) ready to fulfil his promise

22. The reporter said to the editor. "You need not consult anyone. You can take *my word for it.* "
(a) believe what I say
(b) use the work I suggest
(c) take my promise
(d) listen to my explanation

23. If we give them this concession, it will be the *thin end of the wedge.*
(a) a compromise on principles
(b) the least we could do for them
(c) the beginning of further concessions
(d) inadequate for their needs

24. He is always *picking holes* in every project.
(a) asking irrelevant questions on
(b) suggesting improvement in
(c) finding fault with
(d) creating problems in

25. After the dinner was over she refused *to foot the bill.*
(a) to pay
(b) to prepare
(c) to destroy
(d) to play trick

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. Caesar was *done to death* by the conspirators.
   (a) attacked (b) removed
   (c) eliminated (d) murdered
2. His boss was always *breathing down* his neck.
   (a) abusing and ill-treating him
   (b) watching all his actions closely
   (c) shouting loudly at him
   (d) giving him strenuous work
3. He is *not worth his salt* if he fails at this juncture.
   (a) quite worthless (b) very proud of himself
   (c) quite depressed (d) very strange
4. After having finished the last project, I find myself at *a loose end*.
   (a) happy (b) on vacation
   (c) free of troubles (d) with nothing to do
5. With the existing management, the future of the company is in *doldrums*.
   (a) dull (b) bright
   (c) uncertain (d) secure
6. It was such a strange affair that I would not make *head or tail of it*.
   (a) face it (b) tolerate it
   (c) remember (d) understand it
7. A good teacher should have the *gift of the gab*.
   (a) a good personality (b) a blent for acting
   (c) a talent for speaking (d) an interest in discipline
8. She exhibited remarkable *sang froid* during the crisis.
   (a) temper (b) irritation
   (c) composure (d) anger
9. My father *strained every nerve* to enable me to get settled in life.
   (a) worked very hard (b) spent a large amount
   (c) tried all tricks (d) bribed several persons
10. Though she herself was *as ugly as sin*, she had the audacity to criticize the looks of her companion.
    (a) sinfully ugly (b) very ugly
    (c) exceptionally ugly (d) quite ugly
11. He *bids fair* to be an excellent cricketer.
    (a) seems likely (b) is ambitious
    (c) is confident (d) is unlikely
12. He does not like to be friendly with Sarla. He always gives *her a cold shoulder*.
    (a) pushes her with his shoulder wherever they meet
    (b) insult her in the presence of others
    (c) tries to be unfriendly by taking no notice of her
    (d) argues with her on any issue

13. It was he who *put a spoke in my wheel.*
(a) tried to cause an accident
(b) helped in the execution of the plan
(c) thwarted the execution of the plan
(d) destroyed the plan

14. The captain played with determination because the honour of the team was at *stake.*
(a) very tense
(b) at the top
(c) in danger
(d) appropriate

15. His promotion is *on the cards.*
(a) due
(b) evident
(c) certain
(d) probable

16. He resigned the post of *his own accord.*
(a) according to his judgement
(b) which he liked
(c) voluntarily and willingly
(d) according to his convenience

17. Being out of job, he is *down in the mouth* these days.
(a) out of spirits
(b) always in a fighting mood
(c) become smelly
(d) always telling lies.

18. He *faced the music* for reaching home late.
(a) faced punishment
(b) faced entertainment
(c) faced reprimand
(d) faced pleasure

19. While the ladies continued their *small talk* in the drawing room he felt bored.
(a) light conversation
(b) gossip
(c) backbiting
(d) whispering

20. He was *carried off his feet* when he was declared to have won the prize.
(a) became delirious
(b) danced on his toes
(c) was dizzy
(d) was wild with excitement

21. The trial was so important that the entire proceedings were held *in camera.*
(a) photographed
(b) made into film
(c) secret
(d) not open to the public

22. She was in a *brown study* and not notice my entrance.
(a) reverie
(b) fear
(c) sleep
(d) dream

23. The authorities *took him to task for* his negligence.
(a) forced him to resign
(b) suspended his assignment
(c) reprimanded him
(d) gave him additional work

24. I did not know that he was *pulling my* leg all the time.
(a) befooling me
(b) degrading me
(c) defaming me
(d) complimenting me

25. To tell you in a *nutshell,* lust for power and money has almost spoiled him.
(a) as objectively as possible
(b) in simple and brief manner
(c) an actual experience described vividly
(d) to take in confidence

Work Book Exercise (D)

1. He is a plain, simple and sincere man. He will always call a *spade a spade.*
   (a) say something to be taken seriously
   (b) desist from making controversial statement
   (c) find meaning or purpose in your action
   (d) avoid controversial situations
2. She is a *cut above* other teachers in the schools.
   (a) inferior (b) worthy
   (c) superior (d) worthless
3. Harassed by repeated acts of injustice he decided to *put his foot down.*
   (a) resign (b) not to yield
   (c) withdraw (d) accept the proposal unconditionally
4. At Christmas, even the elderly fathers *paint the town red.*
   (a) indulge in rioting (b) paint the house red
   (c) spill red wire (d) have a lively time
5. His letters to his ward *speak volumes* for his forbearance and good sense.
   (a) show indications of (b) speak ill of
   (c) are intended to impress (d) serve as strong testimony
6. He is in the habit of *chewing the cud.*
   (a) accusing other (b) crying over spilt milk
   (c) forgetting things (d) to muse on
7. I just paid him a *left handed compliment.*
   (a) an honest (b) a well deserved
   (c) an insincere (d) a flattering
8. The new C.M. *stuck his neck out* today and promised 10 kgs free wheat a month for all rural families.
   (a) extended help (b) took an oath
   (c) caused embarrassment (d) took a risk
9. He *burnt his fingers* by interfering in his neighbour's affairs.
   (a) got rebuked (b) got himself insulted
   (c) burnt himself (d) got himself into trouble
10. When the police came, the thieves *took to their heels.*
    (a) were taken by surprise (b) took to flight
    (c) took shelter in a tall building (d) unconditionally surrendered
11. The dispute regarding the emoluments of junior doctors *came to a head* this week.
    (a) settled amicably (b) reached a crisis
    (c) took a turn for the better (d) resulted in senseless violence
12. He is a strange fellow, it is very difficult to deal with him, it seems that he has a *bee in his bonnet.*
    (a) an achievement to be proud of
    (b) an obsession about something
    (c) to face problems as a result of his senseless actions
    (d) a peculiar habit of confusing others

13. It will be wise on your part to let the *bygones be bygones.*
(a) resist the past
(b) ignore the past
(c) recollect the past
(d) revive the past

14. The boy had a *hair-breadth* escape from a street accident.
(a) lucky
(b) easy
(c) narrow
(d) quick

15. Inspite of the efforts of all peace loving people, world peace is still a *far cry.*
(a) an abstract ideal
(b) a long way off
(c) an impracticable idea
(d) out of reach

16. The management dismissed him and *made no bones* about it.
(a) made no secret of it
(b) did not consult anyone
(c) did not defend the act
(d) had no scruple about it

17. He has reached present position in his job through *elbow grease.*
(a) his persistent fighting
(b) his good connections
(c) flattering his superiors
(d) his hard work

18. I am afraid there is something *fishy* about the Bofors deal.
(a) full of fish
(b) very clear
(c) black at the bottom
(d) as lucid as water

19. Ram could not get to Kolkata for vacation since he was *banking on* his arrears of pay which he did not get in time.
(a) depending on his bank
(b) sloping on
(c) relying on
(d) calling on

20. In the organized society of today no individual or nation can *plough a lonely furrow.*
(a) remain unaffected
(b) do without the help of others
(c) survive in isolation
(d) remain non-aligned

21. He always follows *cut and dried* religious dogmas.
(a) works for religion
(b) inflicts injuries
(c) unalterable
(d) behaves honestly

22. The new economic policy is likely *to run into rough weather.*
(a) make things difficult
(b) confuse matters
(c) encounter difficulties
(d) create problems

23. Sumit thought he was very clever but found himself *in a soup.*
(a) involved
(b) ruined
(c) in trouble
(d) stranded

24. He cannot make *both ends meet.*
(a) work hard
(b) manage the business
(c) earn enough
(d) control affairs

25. The soldiers laid *down their arms.*
(a) put their arms on the ground
(b) surrendered
(c) refused to obey orders
(d) put the arms in their place

Work Book Exercise (E)

1. India was in a *pretty pass* over the question of signing the CTBT.
   (a) in a beautiful passage (b) in a pretty way
   (c) in a difficulty (d) in a problem
2. The scenery of Kashmir *beggars* description.
   (a) beyond the power of description (b) beg for description
   (c) describe a beggar (d) description of a beggar
3. As her result is likely to be declared in a day or so she is on *tenter hooks* these days.
   (a) sitting on hooks (b) consfuse'
   (c) pleased (d) anxious suspense
4. It is a pity that our politicians are more interested in the *loaves and fishes* than with the uplift of the poor.
   (a) bread and butter (b) kinds of fishes
   (c) worldly benefits (d) means of power
5. Eloquent lamentations regarding the fate of the flora and fauna are certain to be rendered as a *cry in the wilderness.*
   (a) a cry in vain (b) an unpleasant situation
   (c) a cry with a laughter (d) a laughter having no end
6. India *carried the day* by defeating Australia in hockey series.
   (a) lose (b) loose
   (c) win (d) decisive victory
7. In modern democratic societies *lynch law* seems to have become a common feature in almost all the spheres of life.
   (a) law of the parliament (b) law of the constitution
   (c) law of the mob (d) law of the underworld
8. India must not expect any super power at the *beck and call* at the time of attack.
   (a) at the service (b) ask for service
   (c) at the back of (d) call to help
9. The Principal proved to be a *wet blanket* at the party of the students.
   (a) discouraged from enjoying (b) damp clothes
   (c) blanket wet in the rain (d) cold blank
10. In a parliamentary democracy the Prime Minister is at the *helm of national affairs.*
    (a) in the main position (b) in the centre
    (c) helm of a boat (d) centre of attraction
11. The arrival of the mother-in-law in the family proved a *rift-in the lute.*
    (a) brought about disharmony
    (b) brought about a disciplined atmosphere
    (c) caused unnecessary worries
    (d) caused a pleasant atmosphere
12. Seema is a little *hard of hearing.*
    (a) inaudible (b) disinterested
    (c) deaf (d) insensitive

13. The statement made by Pakistan about Kashmir problem was *Gall and Warmwood* to every Indian.
(a) woodworm
(b) a source of anger
(c) a great fuss
(d) beyond reason

14. You cannot *have your cake and eat it* too.
(a) enjoy forever
(b) have it both ways
(c) run away from responsibility
(d) absolve yourself of guilt

15. He is an eloquent speaker and is never *at a loss* for a suitable word.
(a) under a loss
(b) to lose something
(c) to be confused
(d) suffer a loss

16. He is accused of *sitting on the fence.*
(a) confused
(b) observing the scene
(c) hesitating between two options
(d) resting on the fence

17. Mohan was over *head and ears* in love with Reena and insisted on marrying her.
(a) excessively
(b) in the long run
(c) with all efforts
(d) with all might

18. This regular absenteeism is a *bad bussiness* since no work is being completed.
(a) bad for business
(b) unbusiness like
(c) an unfortunate event
(d) creating ill will

19. Why do you wish to tread *on their toes?*
(a) to give offence to them
(b) To follow them grudgingly
(c) To treat them indifferently
(d) to be kicked by them

20. The people were *all agog* at the airport at the arrival of our victorious team.
(a) all ready
(b) in a state of excitement
(c) a ringing bell
(d) nervous

21. On the sight of the thieves in the night, my neighbour developed *cold feet* and could not even raise his voice.
(a) to show indifference
(b) to get afflicted with cold
(c) to fall down
(d) to feel frightened

22. My friend *got the sack* from his first job.
(a) resigned
(b) got tired
(c) was demoted
(d) was dismissed

23. Our forces *made a mincemeat* of the enemy.
(a) warned
(b) did no care for
(c) appealed for cease-fire
(d) destroyed completely

24. They have decided to go *hand in hand* in this business.
(a) work in competition
(b) keep parallel accounts
(c) move in unision
(d) make joint venture with others

25. Qualities of character are *at a discount* in this *material world.*
(a) not in demand
(b) out of question
(c) at a disadvantage
(d) unsuitable

Work Book Exercise (P

Directions : *In each of the following questions an idiomatic phrase is given followed by four alternatives. Choose the alternative that best expresses the meaning of the expression.*

1. Hang together
   (a) confirm each other (b) live together
   (c) hang with each other (d) go together

2. Hard boiled
   (a) boiled hard (b) extremely hot
   (c) hardened (d) hardly boiled

3. Get cold feet
   (a) to run for life (b) to get cold
   (c) to be afraid (d) to become discourteous

4. Make no bones about
   (a) to make no effort (b) to admit something readily
   (c) to make fuss about (d) to create no hindrance

5. Turn out crabs
   (a) end in failure (b) to be successful
   (c) to bring up crabs (d) to be victorious

6. Devil's Advocate
   (a) an advocate of a Devil (b) an advocate like a Devil
   (c) disscussion of an Advocate (d) one who is against religion

7. Between the Devil and the Sea
   (a) in a fix (b) a Devil in the sea
   (c) in a worse situation (d) a compromising situation

8. Dance attendance upon
   (a) to flatter (b) to dance with a partner
   (c) to attend upon (d) to attend to

9. Go abegging
   (a) go in vain (b) go for begging
   (c) beg for going (d) request for something

10. A Gala day
    (a) a day of success (b) a day of merry-making
    (c) an eventful day (d) a day of singificance

11. Go hot & cold
    (a) get angry (b) get irritated
    (c) get out of cold (d) sudden feeling of fear and anxiety

12. Gird up one's Loins
    (a) get ready for a job (b) leave bag & baggage
    (c) hunt for lions (d) a loin cloth

13. Pocket an insult
    (a) bear insult without protest (b) not to take any action
    (c) sit over a resolution (d) ignore a case

14. In pretty pass
(a) problems of a passage (b) in difficulties
(c) in a difficult way (d) caught in heavy traffic

15. Small talk
(a) light conversation (b) gossip
(c) back biting (d) whispering

16. Plough a lonely furrow
(a) work single handedly (b) plough the field
(c) plough the sands (d) work in a furrow

17. Rub shoulders with
(a) come in contact with (b) quarrel with a person
(c) rub shoulders of someone (d) have a cause to fight

18. Run the gauntlet
(a) lash with gauntlet (b) run away with gauntlet
(c) face criticism (d) accept a challenge

19. Rest on one's oars
(a) take rest after working long (b) tired of working
(c) tired of boating (d) rest with oars

20. On the cards
(a) a winner (b) accept defeat
(c) play at cards (d) likely to happen

21. Join the majority
(a) on the side of majority (b) to die
(c) a turn coat (d) have the majority

22. Wash dirty linen in public
(a) to criticise (b) make personal quarrels public
(c) to talk dirty things in public (d) to wash clothers.

23. At the eleventh hour
(a) at eleven o'clock (b) at the last hour
(c) arrive late (d) at the last possible time

24. Augean stables
(a) to remove an evil (b) to clean the stables
(c) a place for horses (d) stables for Augean horses.

25. At the helm of
(a) at the helm of the ship (b) at the main situation
(c) in the centre of a storm (d) in the centre of the ship

26. An apple of discord
(a) the cause of a contention (b) sour apple
(c) a quarrel (d) a fight for an apple

27. Call one's shot
(a) make intentions clear (b) call with a shot
(c) shoot at a call (d) to show determination

28. Call it a day
(a) good bye to active life (b) name the day
(c) call in day time (d) call on someone

29. Few and far between
(a) very small in number
(b) very small in distance
(c) very small in quantity
(d) between near & far

30. Force an issue
(a) make an issue
(b) force a decision
(c) solve an issue
(d) bring an issue

31. To lose face
(a) to look angry
(b) to be humiliated
(c) to be helpless
(d) to look vacant

32. Much ado about nothing
(a) to make a noise
(b) to make a fuss over small matter
(c) a play by Shaw
(d) talk about nothing

33. Make the best of a bad bargain
(a) to turn failure to best advantage
(b) to make a bad bargain
(c) to make the best bargain
(d) to make a bargain

34. Chapter and verse for a thing
(a) to produce proof
(b) to praise a thing
(c) to make publicity
(d) to attach value to a thing

35. Bid fair
(a) have a good prospect
(b) to be just
(c) try in a fair manner
(d) fair effort

36. Talk shop
(a) talk about shop
(b) talk in shop
(c) talk business
(d) talk to the point

37. Tread on one's toes
(a) to give offence
(b) walk on toes
(c) tread with toes
(d) flatter someone

38. Carry the can
(a) accept the blame
(b) get into trouble
(c) face the repercussions
(d) share the responsibility

39. Take time by the forelock
(a) forecast on event
(b) forecast time
(c) talk one's own time
(d) prepare for action before time

40. All agog
(a) all happy
(b) rife with rumours
(c) restless
(d) playful

41. Toe the line
(a) mark the line
(b) cross the line
(c) hit on the toe
(d) follow others

42. Throw up one's cards
(a) accept defeat
(b) spoil the card's game
(c) throw cards in the air
(d) throw away the game

43. Turn tail
(a) run like a coward
(b) one who changes ideas
(c) run with a tail
(d) run at the end

44. Shot in the dark
(a) go in dark
(b) done as a guess
(c) shoot when dark
(d) to take risk

45. A skeleton in one's cupboard
(a) a skeleton in a closet
(b) a secret murder
(c) something embarassing kept as a secret
(d) a hidden skeleton

46. A storm in a tea cup
(a) impending storm
(b) excitement over something trivial
(c) danger to come
(d) something trivial but important

47. Smell a rat
(a) foul smell
(b) to misunderstand
(c) suspect something foul
(d) the hidden meaning

48. Sail in the same boat
(a) in similar circumstances
(b) sail in one boat
(c) a boat with sails
(d) enjoy boating

49. Show a clean pair of heels
(a) run away when chased
(b) cool heels
(c) clean the heels
(d) show heels

50. Fast and loose
(a) to beguile others
(b) to play tricks
(c) to play with feelings
(d) to be losing fast

51. Foar in the mouth
(a) bitten by a snake
(b) to reveal the sceret
(c) extreme hatred
(d) to be furious ***(Investigator 2005)***

52. Have the last laugh
(a) be of a cheerful nature
(b) laugh only after understanding something
(c) to be victorious at the end of an argument
(d) to crack the final joke

53. Turn a deaf ear
(a) disregard
(b) disobey
(c) defy
(d) dismiss

54. A dark horse
(a) an unforeseen competitor
(b) a black horse
(c) a nightmare
(d) an unknown person

55. To run across
(a) to have an appointed meeting
(b) to meet by chance
(c) to run in the playground
(d) to run very fast

56. To steer clear of
(a) drive carefully
(b) avoid
(c) explain clearly
(d) escape

57. To beat a retreat
(a) to withdraw in defeat or humiliation
(b) to withdraw after scoring a victory
(c) to march back after a ceremonious parade
(d) to run away in fear

58. To blaze a trail
(a) to lead the way as a pioneer
(b) to light a track
(c) to set up a fire
(d) to wear a blazer while running

59. A red-letter day
(a) a colourful day
(b) fatal day
(c) happy and significant day
(d) hapless day *[Audit (SO) 2006]*

60. At one's wit's end
(a) to understand thoroughly
(b) to be puzzled
(c) to be stupid person
(d) to behave irrationally

61. At beck and call
(a) at rest
(b) at disposal
(c) at work
(d) at their desks

62. In the long run
(a) permanently
(b) occasionally
(c) universally
(d) ultimately

63. In the good books of
(a) work well for the boss
(b) praise the boss
(c) in favour with
(d) co-operate with the boss

64. By leaps and bounds
(a) very slowly
(b) irregularly
(c) very quickly
(d) very systematically

65. Pros and cons
(a) measure the ingredients
(b) observe etiquette
(c) consider all facts
(d) postpone action

66. Got the sack
(a) resigned
(b) was demoted
(c) got rid of
(d) was dismissed

67. The green-eyed monster
(a) anger
(b) envy
(c) hatred
(d) jealousy

68. To fight tooth and nail
(a) to fight a losing battle
(b) to oppose resolutely
(c) to have a physical fight
(d) to lodge a formal protest

69. To run one down
(a) to be in a hurry
(b) to be weak and tired
(c) to disparage someone
(d) to run down a lane

70. At snail's pace
(a) to do things very slowly
(b) to walk like a snail
(c) to lack interest in work
(d) to do things in a methodical manner

71. To take to one's heels
(a) to run off
(b) to show one's heels
(c) to turn around
(d) to walk leisurely

72. To have something up one's sleeves
(a) having a practical plan
(b) having an important project
(c) having an ambitious plan
(d) having a secret plan

73. To end in smoke
(a) to have a smoking session
(b) to be on fire
(c) to come to nothing
(d) to burn slowly

74. At one's wit's end
(a) to work hard
(b) to get puzzled
(c) to be intelligent
(d) to be stupid

75. To take someone to task
(a) to scold someone
(b) to assign work to someone
(c) to take someone to his place of work
(d) to praise someone for the work done

76. To face the music
(a) to be greeted rudely
(b) to be offered warm hospitality
(c) to enjoy a musical programme
(d) to bear the consequences

77. To blow one's own trumpet
(a) to play on one's own trumpet
(b) to praise one's own self
(c) to create noisy disturbances
(d) to have a high-pitched voice

(Translator 2006)

78. Make bricks without straw
(a) cheat
(b) do the right thing
(c) do the impossible
(d) make hollow bricks

79. As fit as a fiddle
(a) as slim as a fiddle
(b) good at fitting up fiddles
(c) extremely healthy
(d) of the fiddling type

80. In character with
(a) found to be good
(b) found to be peculiar
(c) found to be in keeping with
(d) found to be familiar with

81. Rank and file
(a) the upper class
(b) the rich
(c) ordinary folk
(d) one section of people

82. Tied the culprit in knots
(a) they tied him a rope
(b) they tied his limbs and interrogated him
(c) they bewildered him to a great extent
(d) they beat him in the joints

83. To get into a stew
(a) to get into trouble
(b) to take shelter
(c) to run into danger
(d) to have an anxious state of mind

84. A man of letters
(a) a man who wrote many letters
(b) a leader who received more letters
(c) a scholar with literary taste
(d) a good reader of letters

85. Once in a blue moon
(a) rarely
(b) always
(c) frequently
(d) often

86. To go by
(a) to throw away
(b) to be guided by
(c) to disobey
(d) to avoid

(Commercial Auditor 2005)

87. Reading, between the lines
(a) reading slowly and haltingly
(b) understanding the sense rather than the actual words.
(c) understanding the meaning of words and not the sense
(d) reading superficially

88. By fits and starts
(a) consistently
(b) irregularly
(c) in high spirits
(d) enthusiastically

89. Put up with
(a) excuse
(b) accept
(c) refuse
(d) tolerate

90. Talking through one's hat
(a) talking nonsense
(b) talking ignorantly
(c) talking irresponsibly
(d) talking insultingly

91. Through fire and water
(a) approach everybody for help
(b) avail himself of any opportunity
(c) use any conceivable method
(d) undergo any risk

92. Ran riot
(a) behaved cleverly
(b) acted without restraint
(c) wandered aimlessly
(d) had the best of time

93. Give in
(a) accede
(b) yield
(c) oblige
(d) conform

94. Cheek by jowl
(a) very near
(b) tongue tied
(c) very far
(d) irritated

95. Gave the game away
(a) lost the game
(b) gave out the secret
(c) played badly
(d) withdrew from the game

96. Turn an honest penny
(a) make a ligitimate living
(b) make a good living
(c) have dealings in white money
(d) become more honest

97. Made a clean breast of
(a) confessed
(b) took off his shirt
(c) suffered
(d) spoke ill

98. Done for
(a) ruined (b) rewarded
(c) answered (d) questioned

99. On the level
(a) equally rich (b) mentally compatible
(c) honest and sincere (d) ready for sacrifices

100. Made ducks and drakes
(a) squandered (b) distributed
(c) spent (d) gave in charity

101. Went to the winds
(a) dissipated (b) spread all over
(c) got speed of the winds (d) became well-known

[Combined Audit (SO) 2006]

102. Made my flesh creep
(a) thrilled me (b) horrified me
(c) excited me (d) frightened me

103. Burnt his boats
(a) felt dejected (b) blasted his hopes
(c) ruined himself (d) left no means of retreat

104. Can not hold a candle
(a) equal to (b) not as clever as
(c) cannot be compared to (d) duller than

105. Brought up
(a) discussed at great length (b) introduced for discussion
(c) criticised vehemently (d) vaguely referred to

106. Cut no ice with me
(a) had no influence on me (b) did not hurt me
(c) did not benefit me (d) did not make me proud

(Tax Assistant 2006)

107. A fair weather friend
(a) a good friend (b) a friend who meets difficulties calmly
(c) one who deserts you in difficulties (d) a favourable friend

108. Die in harness
(a) riding a horse (b) in a stable
(c) in a uniform (d) still in service

109. Keep under wraps
(a) covered (b) protected
(c) unpacked (d) secret

110. Like a phoenix
(a) with a new life (b) with a start
(c) with royal gait (d) with vengeance

111. A sore point
(a) something which hurts (b) something that brings fear to
(c) something memorable for (d) something pleasurable to

112. On the verge of
(a) on the brink of
(b) at the outset of
(c) in the midst of
(d) at the sisk of

113. Out of thin air
(a) appear suddenly
(b) descend gradually
(c) fall down quickly
(d) enter from space

114. A bolt from the blue
(a) something unexpected
(b) something unpleasant
(c) something horrible
(d) something unexpected and unpleasant
(CDS 2006)

115. Touch-and-go
(a) a weak person
(b) uncertain as to the result
(c) to catch a chief
(d) a tough competitor

116. To mind one's Ps & Qs
(a) to have an illegible handwriting
(b) to overdress
(c) to be careful & polite
(d) to remember poetry by heart

117. To go for the jugular
(a) to play a music instrument
(b) to make a destructive attack
(c) to go to watch a circus
(d) to go for hunting

118. Lead somebody to the altar
(a) to make somebody to learn games
(b) to marry somebody
(c) to arrest somebody
(d) to pass judgement

119. The primrose path
(a) A modern market place
(b) the pursuit of pleasure
(c) the right of self determination
(d) process using high technology

120. Odds & ends
(a) Quarrelsome persons
(b) various intentions
(c) miscellaneous things
(d) nonsense

121. To kick the bucket
(a) to start an account
(b) to start a serious journey
(c) to die
(d) to start agricultural activity

122. To champ at the bit
(a) to be careless in making preparations
(b) to show off
(c) to be restlessly impatient
(d) to win in a tournament

123. With a flea in one's ear
(a) to know secrets
(b) to have severe headache
(c) to be rebuked
(d) to flatter someone

124. Pie in the sky
(a) beautiful surroundings
(b) event unlikely to happen
(c) rainy season
(d) foreign traditions
(NDA 2006)

125. On the blink
(a) apologetically
(b) blindly
(c) legally
(d) not in working order

126. Forty winks
(a) a person beyond 40 years (b) a studious person
(c) ordeals of life (d) a short nap

127. The worse for wear
(a) worrisome (b) financially poor
(c) hostile (d) shabby from use

128. To brow beat
(a) to bully (b) to chase
(c) to give a hint (d) to revive old friendship

129. Come a cropper
(a) to come as a surprise (b) to fail
(c) to get injured (d) to get unexpected success

130. The lie of the land
(a) protection of environment (b) spirit of adventure
(c) assessment of a situation (d) mountaineering

131. An eager beaver
(a) an enthusiastic person (b) fond of travelling
(c) a rich person (d) a successful politician

132. Plain as pike staff
(a) polished surface (b) extremely honest
(c) extremely poor (d) very obvious

133. In tatters
(a) in prison (b) under mortgage
(c) ruined (d) under confusion

134. At a rate of knots
(a) very rapidly (b) sluggishly
(c) technology savvy (d) highly opininonated

135. Raise somebody's hackle
(a) to praise somebody (b) to deceive somebody
(c) to flatter somebody (d) to make somebody angry

136. Beneath contempt
(a) guilt (b) completely unworthy of respect
(c) animosity (d) under wraps

137. In the fullness of time
(a) by sheer hard work (b) at leisure
(c) night of full moon (d) at the appropriate time ***(CDS 2007)***

138. A bread and butter letter
(a) a contract termination letter (b) a letter to thank a host
(c) a request to get donation (d) an appointment letter

139. Cloak and dagger
(a) involving intrigue (b) to become very weak
(c) family fued (d) fond of hunting

140. A fair crack of the whip
(a) to go for a morning walk (b) to get a fair chance
(c) to get unexpected success (d) to be routed

141. Take up the cudgels
(a) to support somebody
(b) to start a new business
(c) to go on a holiday
(d) to relax

142. As the crow flies
(a) to wander in jungles
(b) in a straight line
(c) to protect environment
(d) to travel to a foreign land

143. Chew the cud
(a) Chew grass
(b) think over
(c) Chew something
(d) get into trouble

144. On the anvil
(a) an instrument
(b) in the making
(c) depend on
(d) equal to

145. Off the cuff
(a) The aid of a sleeve
(b) take off the cuff
(c) speak without preparation
(d) without cuff links

Review Exercise

Directions : *Some of the following sentences are grammatically correct and some are incorrect. Find out which part of the sentence has an error and mark that part. If there is no error mark that part as your answer.*

1. Continuous drizzle (a) in the city (b) kept the people (c) indoors today (d) No error (e)
2. For a long time (a) I did not know who (b) was sitting besides me (c) because it was very dark. (d) No error (e)
3. The professor tried his very best (a) to bring home (b) on the students the need for hard work. (c) No error (d) (e)
4. She has been practicing (a) medical profession (b) for a (c) long time but is yet to (d) attain perfection. No error (e)
5. My friends insisted (a) that I should (b) see the movie (c) from beginning to the end. (d) No error (e)
6. Irregardless of (a) what people (b) say, I must repeat that these are the facts concerning (c) the requirements for the position. (d) No error (e)
7. A nationwide survey (a) has brought up an (b) interesting finding (c) regarding infant mortality-rate in India. (d) No error (e)
8. Several prominent figures, (a) involved in the scandal (b) are required to appear (c) to the investigation committee. (d) No error (e)
9. It is wrong (a) on your part to call into (b) question the integrity (c) of your elder brother (d) No error (e)
10. You are never practical (a) and your suggestions (b) hold no water (c) because they are not convincing. (d) No error (e)

11. When the police approached him (a) he held up his both hands, (b) to show that he was surrendering. (c) No error (d)

12. You have to make a commitment based on the faith (a) that all human beings have (b) capabilities and abilities that are always not visible. (c) No error (d)

13. I find it impossible to hold up (a) any longer (b) and I must therefore resign my post. (c) No error (d)

14. Inspite of my (a) consoling her she kept weeping (b) throughout the day. (c) No error (d)

15. Do not be afraid of (a) difficulties and carry out (b) your business as usual. (c) No error (d)

16. Though (a) recently married (b) Rita and Rahul are not pulling on well (c) with each other. No error (d)

17. She called on my office (a) yesterday but I was (b) out of station on tour. (c) No error (d)

18. She comes from a (a) rich family but she (b) does not know how to behave. (c) No error (d)

19. It is difficult (a) to put up his abrasive (b) behaviour in such circumstances. (c) No error (d)

20. He will not attend (a) cffice today as his wife (b) is laid down with (c) fever. No error (d)

21. You are expected to (a) stand by your friends (b) when they are in (c) difficulties. No error (d)

22. If you do not (a) know the meaning of any word, (b) please see in the (c) dictionary. No error. (d)

23. He is so busy a man (a) that he cannot cope up with (b) heavy rush of work. (c) No error (d)

24. When you enter (a) her room, please (b) put off your shoes. (c) No error (d)

25. The doors are very strong (a) as they are made up with (b) fine wood. (c) No error (d)

26. If you wish to succeed, (a) please keep away (b) from bad boys. (c) No error (d)

27. For safe travel (a) you are advised (b) not to get down from (c) the moving bus. No error (d)

28. It is evening (a) and please open (b) the light. (c) No error (d)

29. On the eve of independence (a) the Congress party leaders pledged (b) to wipe out tears (c) from every eye. No error (d)

30. Shruti was accused of (a) sitting at the fence by her husband (b) when he was in trouble. (c) No error (d)

31. The university (a) has invited (b) alumnus to the annual functions. (c) No error (d)

32. The Government is (a) likely to announce an interim (b) measures to check the (c) inflation. No error (d)

33. He introduced (a) his fiance to the guests (b) present at the banquet. (c) No error (d)

34. Everybody was attracted (a) to literatur present (b) in the audience last night. (c) No error (d)

35. She is working (a) as a couturier (b) in the boutique. (c) No error (d)

36. She has fallen off (a) with the boy (b) she wanted to marry. (c) No error (d)

37. Even after taking tuition (a) my daughter is not at the home (b) in Physics. (c) No error (d)

38. Even though our team took (a) the field, the opposition made them (b) eat the humble pie. (c) No error (d)

39. The student turned (a) the deaf ear to (b) the advice of his teacher. (c) No error (d)

40. Though he is working hard, (a) his success is (b) out of question. (c) No error (d)

❑

ANSWERS

UNIT-V

14. Phrasal Verbs

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. (b)	**2.** (b)	**3.** (c)	**4.** (c)	**5.** (c)	**6.** (b)	**7.** (b)	**8.** (c)	**9.** (c)	**10.** (b)
11. (b)	**12.** (c)	**13.** (b)	**14.** (b)	**15.** (a)	**16.** (b)	**17.** (c)	**18.** (c)	**19.** (b)	**20.** (b)
21. (a)	**22.** (b)	**23.** (c)	**24.** (a)	**25.** (a)					

Work book exercise (B)

1. (b)	**2.** (b)	**3.** (b)	**4.** (c)	**5.** (c)	**6.** (b)	**7.** (a)	**8.** (a)	**9.** (c)	**10.** (c)
11. (b)	**12.** (a)	**13.** (c)	**14.** (c)	**15.** (b)	**16.** (b)	**17.** (b)	**18.** (a)	**19.** (c)	**20.** (b)
21. (c)	**22.** (a)	**23.** (c)	**24.** (b)	**25.** (a)					

15. Idioms and Phrases

Work Book Exercise (A)

1. (d)	**2.** (a)	**3.** (c)	**4.** (b)	**5.** (b)	**6.** (a)	**7.** (b)	**8.** (a)	**9.** (d)	**10.** (c)
11. (b)	**12.** (c)	**13.** (a)	**14.** (b)	**15.** (c)	**16.** (b)	**17.** (b)	**18.** (d)	**19.** (b)	**20.** (a)
21. (b)	**22.** (d)	**23.** (b)	**24.** (c)	**25.** (c)					

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. (a)	**2.** (a)	**3.** (b)	**4.** (c)	**5.** (b)	**6.** (c)	**7.** (a)	**8.** (c)	**9.** (d)	**10.** (a)
11. (b)	**12.** (a)	**13.** (b)	**14.** (c)	**15.** (d)	**16.** (b)	**17.** (b)	**18.** (c)	**19.** (b)	**20.** (c)
21. (d)	**22.** (a)	**23.** (c)	**24.** (c)	**25.** (a)					

Work Book Exercise (C)

1. (d)	**2.** (b)	**3.** (a)	**4.** (d)	**5.** (c)	**6.** (d)	**7.** (c)	**8.** (c)	**9.** (a)	**10.** (c)
11. (a)	**12.** (c)	**13.** (c)	**14.** (c)	**15.** (c)	**16.** (c)	**17.** (a)	**18.** (c)	**19.** (a)	**20.** (d)
21. (d)	**22.** (a)	**23.** (c)	**24.** (a)	**25.** (b)					

Work Book Exercise (D)

1. (b)	**2.** (c)	**3.** (b)	**4.** (d)	**5.** (d)	**6.** (d)	**7.** (c)	**8.** (d)	**9.** (d)	**10.** (b)
11. (b)	**12.** (b)	**13.** (b)	**14.** (c)	**15.** (c)	**16.** (d)	**17.** (d)	**18.** (c)	**19.** (c)	**20.** (b)
21. (c)	**22.** (c)	**23.** (c)	**24.** (c)	**25.** (b)					

Work Book Exercise (E)

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (a)
11. (a) 12. (c) 13. (b) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (c) 17. (a) 18. (c) 19. (a) 20. (b)
21. (d) 22. (d) 23. (d) 24. (c) 25. (c)

Work Book Exercise (F)

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (b) 5. (a) 6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (b)
11. (d) 12. (a) 13. (a) 14. (b) 15. (a) 16. (a) 17. (a) 18. (c) 19. (a) 20. (d)
21. (b) 22. (b) 23. (d) 24. (a) 25. (b) 26. (a) 27. (d) 28. (a) 29. (a) 30. (b)
31. (b) 32. (b) 33. (a) 34. (a) 35. (a) 36. (c) 37. (a) 38. (a) 39. (d) 40. (c)
41. (d) 42. (a) 43. (a) 44. (b) 45. (c) 46. (b) 47. (c) 48. (a) 49. (a) 50. (b)
51. (d) 52. (c) 53. (a) 54. (a) 55. (b) 56. (b) 57. (c) 58. (a) 59. (c) 60. (b)
61. (b) 62. (d) 63. (c) 64. (c) 65. (c) 66. (d) 67. (d) 68. (b) 69. (c) 70. (a)
71. (a) 72. (d) 73. (c) 74. (b) 75. (a) 76. (d) 77. (b) 78. (c) 79. (c) 80. (c)
81. (c) 82. (c) 83. (d) 84. (c) 85. (a) 86. (b) 87. (b) 88. (b) 89. (d) 90. (a)
91. (d) 92. (b) 93. (b) 94. (a) 95. (b) 96. (a) 97. (a) 98. (a) 99. (b) 100. (a)
101. (a) 102. (b) 103. (d) 104. (c) 105. (b) 106. (a) 107. (c) 108. (d) 109. (d) 110. (a)
111. (a) 112. (a) 113. (a) 114. (d) 115. (b) 116. (c) 117. (b) 118. (b) 119. (b) 120. (c)
121. (c) 122. (c) 123. (c) 124. (b) 125. (d) 126. (d) 127. (d) 128. (a) 129. (b) 130. (c)
131. (a) 132. (d) 133. (c) 134. (b) 135. (d) 136. (b) 137. (d) 138. (d) 139. (a) 140. (b)
141. (a) 142. (b) 143. (b) 144. (b) 145. (c)

Review Exercise

1. (a) 'continual' for 'continuous'
2. (c) Use 'beside'
3. (b) 'bring home to' is correct expression
4. (a) Use 'practise'
5. (d) Say 'from beginning to end'
6. (a) Say 'regardless'
7. (b) Say 'bring out'
8. (d) Say before for 'to'
9. (b) Say 'call in question'
10. (c) Say 'do not hold water'
11. (b) Say 'both his hands'
12. (c) Say 'are not always'
13. (a) Say 'hold on'
14. (b) Say 'kept on'
15. (b) Say 'carry on'
16. (c) Delete 'on'
17. (a) Say 'call at'
18. (a) Say 'come of'
19. (b) Say 'put up with'
20. (c) Say 'laid up with'
21. (d) No error
22. (c) Say 'look up' for 'see'
23. (b) Delete 'up'
24. (c) Say 'take off'
25. (b) Say 'made of' 'for made up with'
26. (b) Delete 'away'
27. (c) Delete 'from'
28. (b) Say 'switch on/turn on' for 'open'
29. (c) Say 'wipe away'
30. (b) Say 'on the fence'
31. (c) Use 'alumni' for 'alumnus'
32. (c) Say 'measure for measures'
33. (b) Say 'fiancee' for 'fiance'
34. (b) Say 'literati' for 'literatur'
35. (b) Say 'couturiere' for 'couturier'
36. (a) Say 'fallen out'
37. (b) Say 'at home'
38. (c) Say 'eat humble pie'
39. (b) Say 'turned deaf ear'
40. (c) Say 'out of the question'

❑

Chapter

16 Spotting Errors (Miscellaneous)

Directions : *Some of the sentences are grammatically correct and some are incorrect. Find out which part of the sentence has an error and mark that part. If there is no error, mark that part as your answer.*

Exercise (A)

1. Another baffling change (a) that I notice in him now-a-days (b) is that he avoids to speak to me. (c) No error (d)

2. I asked him (a) how could he go out (b) if it started raining. (c) No error (d)

3. One of the state in which (a) Satyagraha was offered was Rajkot, (b) where he had spent his youth. (c) No error (d)

4. Hardly the inspector had arrived there (a) to investigate the crime (b) when the house was set ablaze. (c) No error (d)

5. Since his arrival at his native town (a) he is trying to the best of his power (b) to spread education among the poor masses. (c) No error (d)

6. In various parts of the country (a) ponds just dry down (b) in the scorching heat of summer. (c) No error (d)

7. He lay the watch on the table (a) and then forgot all about it (b) when he went out. (c) No error (d)

8. Although he draws a reasonably good salary, (a) he has a large family to support, (b) and he finds it difficult to make both ends meet. (c) No error (d)

9. While it is apparent (a) that biotechnology offers significant benefits (b) adequate attention has not been focussed to this vital area. (c) No error (d)

10. Being a sunny day (a) I decided to skip (b) work and stay at home. (c) No error (d)

11. We had to cancel our trip to Delhi (a) because when we reached the railway (b) station, the train left. (c) No error (d)

12. Many a student (a) has failed in the Mathematics test (b) but Dilip has scored 100 per cent. (c) No error (d)

13. The General with over 1000 officers and soldiers (a) have surrendered to the (b) Indian troops who are patrolling the valley. (c) No error (d)

14. If he wrote the examination faster (a) and had answered one more question (b) he would have scored better. (c) No error (d)

15. For decades (a) there have been (b) a debate on whether schizophrenia is a psycho- (c) logical condition. (d) No error

16. Mohan is the one (a) who always finds (b) fault with whatever Ram does. (c) No error (d)

17. There is a need (a) to revising Government policies (b) on controlling unauthorized (c) constructions. (d) No error

18. We know where it begins (a) but we don't know (b) that where it ends. (c) No error (d)

19. The simplest method (a) of welding two pieces of metal together (b) in known as pressure welding. (c) No error (d)

20. One of the important benefits (a) of machine age (b) is that our standard of life has (c) improved. (d) No error

21. There is sense of urgency (a) in locating alternative sources of water (b) to augment the dwindling supply. (c) No error (d)

22. Although there is virtually no production in India (a) the 'Encyclopaedia Britannica' (b) estimate that India has perhaps the largest accumulated stocks of silver in the (c) world. No error (d)

23. Neither the severe earthquake (a) or the subsequent famine (b) could demoralize the people of the country. (c) No error (d)

24. As soon as I shall reach New Delhi (a) I shall send you the file (b) you have asked for. (c) No error (d)

25. All the furnitures have been (a) replaced by the owner of the house (b) before shifting. (c) No error (d)

Exercise (B)

1. Beware of (a) a fair weather friend (b) who is neither a friend in need nor a friend (c) indeed. No error (d)

2. Copernicus proved (a) that Earth (b) moves round the Sun. (c) No error (d)

3. Seldom we have been treated (a) in such a rude manner (b) by the police personnel. (c) No error (d)

4. Some men are born great (a) some achieve greatness (b) and some had greatness thrust on them. (c) No error (d)

5. The property (a) was divided (b) among the two brothers. (c) No error (d)

6. I am quite certain (a) that the lady is not only greedy (b) but miserly. (c) No error (d)

7. There are a number of reasons (a) I do not like him, (b) but his selfishness is intolerable. (c) No error (d)

8. I have read an interesting book yesterday (a) and underlined the new words (b) which are simple but effective. (c) No error (d)

9. He cannot be trusted (a) with important secret informations; (b) otherwise I would have made him my assistant. (c) No error (d)

10. Is there further reasons (a) you can give me for your failure (b) to do as you promised? (c) No error (d)

11. During the final minutes of the speech (a) the speaker requested to (b) the audience to have patience. (c) No error (d)

12. He is running temperature since last Friday (a) and doctors suspect (b) that he is down with typhoid. (c) No error (d)

13. Travel agents around the world have come to rely on computers (a) to book seats (b) in air flights or rooms in hotels, either today or a year from now. (c) No error (d)

14. She expressed her gratitudes (a) to all those (b) who had supported her. (c) No error (d)

15. When the meeting was over, (a) he was very tired (b) so that he went home immediately. (c) No error (d)

16. Modern man must pull himself off together (a) and act his part in life (b) as God's own most favourite creature. (c) No error (d)

17. There would be fewer follies, (a) and happiness and good feeling all round (b) if we applied the scientific attitude for all our affairs. (c) No error (d)

18. Heera told to the teacher (a) that she couldn't come for the rehearsals (b) the next day. (c) No error (d)

19. I am told that Anjali has been (a) suffering from fever (b) since ten days. (c) No error (d)

20. The armed forces have been working around the clock (a) to bring a semblance of (b) normality (c) in the flood affected areas. (d) No error (e)

21. Just when Alfred Nobel's discoveries were beginning to bring him rewards, (a)
which were to make him one of the richest man of his day, (b)
an anti-Nobel campaign was started in France. (c) No error (d)

22. This is the second communication we have sent (a) and we are much surprised (b)
at receiving no answer. (c) No error (d)

23. Several guests noticed Mr. Sharma (a) falling back in his chair (b)
and gasping for breath. (c) No error (d)

24. Long life is good (a) if one be happy (b) and has friends. (c) No error (d)

25. His assistants have (a) and are still doing (b) excellent work for the organization. (c)
No error (d)

Exercise (C)

1. None of the diplomats at the conference (a) was able either (b)
to comprehend or solve the problem. (c) No error (d)

2. Rather than go (a) with Amit, he decided (b) to stay at home. (c) No error (d)

3. He always practices (a) justice and (b) cares for moral principles. (c) No error (d)

4. The whole block of flats (a) including two shops were (b) destroyed in fire. (c) No error (d)

5. He feels his troubles (a) as much or (b) even more than they. (c) No error (d)

6. Such rules (a) do not apply to (b) you and I. (c) No error (d)

7. It is a (a) quarter to ten (b) by my watch. (c) No error (d)

8. I like reading (a) more than (b) to play games. (c) No error (d)

9. The sum and substance (a) of this poem (b) is as follows. (c) No error (d)

10. The team was (a) now in the field and (b) about to take their place. (c) No error (d)

11. Perhaps you know (a) that I have passed (b) the examination in 1990. (c) No error (d)

12. The teacher (a) kept advising us (b) to work hard. (c) No error (d)

13. At a very young age (a) he died with (b) heart disease. (c) No error (d)

14. The average age (a) at which people (b) begin to need (c) eye-glasses are increasing. (d) No error (e)

15. He is trying (a) to earn money (b) for myself (c) and him. (d) No error (e)

16. We Indians (a) don't understand that (b) driving vehicles (c) require care and skill. (d) No error (e)

17. Indians are (a) wedded in the (b) democratic way (c) of life in a peaceful manner. (d) No error (e)

18. The present president of (a) the United States (b) is thinking of (c) becoming the most supreme leader of the world. (d) No error (e)

19. Although the truck was (a) moving very fast (b) the driver stopped it (c) in a skilfully manner. (d) No error (e)

20. Although (a) he achieved great success (b) but he (c) could not win fame. (d) No error (e)

21. I pretended as if (a) interested in the conversation (b) but really it was very boring. (c) No error (d)

22. I don't usually like staying at hotels, (a) but last summer we spent a few days (b) at a very nice hotel by sea. (c) No error (d)

23. I will try to be on time (a) but do not worry (b) when I am late. (c) No error (d)

24. The teacher remarked that (a) they all had (b) done it very badly. (c) No error (d)

25. The train is supposed (a) to arrive at 10 a.m. yesterday (b) but it was an hour late. (c) No error (d)

Exercise (D)

1. Ritu will be surprised (a) as she hears (b) the news. (c) No error (d)
2. I asked two persons (a) the way to the station (b) but none of them knew it. (c) No error (d)
3. Despite of a good monsoon this year, (a) the production of food grains in the (b) country did not go up. (c) No error (d)
4. The last of the Mughal emperors of India (a) was first imprisoned and (b) was later sent into exile by the British. (c) No error (d)
5. Hardly as I stepped out of my house (a) when I saw some policemen (b) coming towards my house. (c) No error (d)
6. Today, the cost of living (a) is such higher that many people (b) find it difficult to keep their hearth burning. (c) No error (d)
7. Rina was trying for admission in the engineering college (a) even though her parents (b) wanted her to take up medicine. (c) No error (d)
8. Yavanika is one of the latest (a) additions to good drama (b) which appeared in recent times. (c) No error (d)
9. Children visiting the park (a) are amused by the monkeys (b) play in the cages. (c) No error (d)
10. I am better acquainted (a) with the country (b) than you. (c) No error (d)
11. Being occupied with important matters (a) he had no leisure (b) to see us. (c) No error (d)
12. He was not promoted to the (a) rank of a Colonel (b) till for a few months of his resignation. (c) No error (d)
13. The man who is perpetually (a) hesitating which of the two things he will do first (b) will ultimately do either. (c) No error (d)

14. No other hill station is as (a) beautiful as Darjeeling (b) with its scenic beauties. (c) No error (d)

15. Being a well-known physicist, he (a) was invited to deliver (b) a lecture on laser technology. (c) No error (d)

16. The chief idea of every common type (a) of traveller is to see as (b) many objects of interest as he possibly could. (c) No error (d)

17. He was hard down (a) for money and was (b) being harassed by his creditor. (c) No error (d)

18. If we really set to (a) we can get the whole house (b) cleaned in an afternoon. (c) No error (d)

19. The main reason (a) for his fiscal success (b) is that (c) he is hardworking. (d)

20. Since the two parties each won (a) the same number of seats, (b) the minority party holds the balance of power. (c) No error (d)

21. It's arrogant for you (a) to assume you'll (b) win every time. (c) No error (d)

22. We've paid for our travel and accommodation, (a) so we need only to take (b) some pocket-money with us. (c) No error. (d)

23. There's no evidence to show (a) that information technology secrets are more (b) vulnerable in India than Britain or the U.S. (c) No error (d)

24. It is shameful that hunting (a) is still considered sport (b) by some unscrupulous people in the civilized world. (c) No error (d)

25. The vacancy was filled by Mr. Rao (a) who the manager (b) thought worthy of (c) promotion. (d) No error

Exercise (E)

1. She was taller (a) than either of (b) her five sisters. (c) No error (d)
2. 'Treasure Island' is one (a) of the best pirate stories (b) that was ever written. (c) No error (d)
3. The population of Kolkata (a) is greater than (b) in any town in England. (c) No error (d)
4. He has a scheme of his own (a) which he thinks more preferable (b) to that of any other person. (c) No error (d)
5. Some people complain when they (a) encounter a small misfortune in the (b) course of their thorough happy life. (c) No error (d)
6. I am sorry worrying you with my troubles, (a) but when I have explained (b) I am sure you will understand. (c) No error (d)
7. I am very sorry that (a) a previous engagement will prevent me (b) from calling on you tonight. (c) No error (d)
8. No student is (a) as intelligent (b) as my son. (c) No error (d)
9. The most important feature (a) of our products are that (b) they are developed in house. (c) No error (d)
10. When he was tired (a) he took rest under (b) the shade of a tree. (c) No error (d)
11. The principal along (a) with the students (b) have gone to Simla. (c) No error (d)
12. When you have gone (a) through my book (b) give the same to me. (c) No error (d)
13. He said a number of lies (a) and then went without (b) saying me good bye. (c) No error (d)
14. Not only we saw (a) the Education Minister but (b) also the Chief Minister. (c) No error (d)
15. I came directly (a) to my residence (b) from the airport. (c) No error (d)

16. I signed on the receipt (a) in the morning but the pay (b) has not been disbursed to me. (c) No error (d)

17. This is the same story (a) which I heard (b) from him yesterday. (c) No error (d)

18. What to speak of (a) food even water (b) was not available. (c) No error (d)

19. It was difficult to get out (a) because the street was full of people (b) from one end to another. (c) No error (d)

20. It has been our custom (a) from time immemorial to be (b) hospitable to those who come to our doors. (c) No error (d)

21. She does not hardly (a) know what (b) happened yesterday. (c) No error (d)

22. In my opinion (a) a pencil is always (b) more preferable to a pen. (c) No error (d)

23. The salesman tried (a) to mislead me (b) with a talk of amazing savings on heating bills. (c) No error (d)

24. He is well up (a) these days despite (b) having ill health (c) No error (d)

25. He regarded his marriage (a) as a mean to an end; (b) he just wanted his wife's wealth. (c) No error (d)

Exercise (F)

1. Their offspring (a) are all (b) very inquisitive. (c) No error (d)

2. Their distress had (a) no affect on him (b) he was determined to have his pound of (c) flesh. (d) No error

3. Today should (a) be saluted for the (b) beginning of a new era. (c) No error (d)

4. Such considerations are (a) secondary with our main aim (b) of improving efficiency. (c) No error (d)

5. Ostensibly he was on a business trip (a) but he spent most (b) of time on the beach. (c) No error (d)

6. I can't do the fourth (a) and fifth questions (b) but I have done all the others. (c) No error (d)

7. After a year without defeat, (a) the team now reigns over supreme (b) as the finest in the country. (c) No error (d)

8. The question of finance is (a) subsidiary to the question whether (b) the project will be approved. (c) No error (d)

9. They've surcharged us 10 per cent (a) on the price of the holiday (b) because of a rise of air fares. (c) No error (d)

10. She's all sweetness and lightness (a) provided you're doing (b) what she wants. (c) No error (d)

11. Unemployment has reached (a) a level that would have been not (b) thinkable two years ago. (c) No error (d)

12. The smell of cooking (a) told them there (b) was a meal in the offing. (c) No error (d)

13. I told him outrightly (a) what I thought (b) of his behaviour. (c) No error (d)

14. You may be a bit upset, (a) but it's really nothing (b) else than unreasonable anxiety (c) No error (d)

15. She would resign sooner than (a) take part in (b) such dishonest business deals. (c) No error (d)

16. Don't apply for that job: (a) you're in danger of (b) over-reaching yourself. (c) No error (d)

17. Weather conditions were bad enough (a) even to give a pause to (b) the most experienced climbers. (c) No error (d)

18. We had a lot of difficulty (a) to find (b) the house. (c) No error (d)

19. Patience as well as perseverance (a) are necessary (b) for success. (c) No error (d)

20. The passer-by told us (a) where was the marriage hall (b) and even led us to it. (c) No error (d)

21. The increase in consumption is directly (a) proportional to the increase (b) in income. (c) No error (d)

22. In Singapore (a) my brother-in-law with his wife (b) were present at the function. (c) No error (d)

23. Scarcely had (a) I arrived than (b) the train left. (c) No error (d)

24. The reason why (a) he was rejected (b) was because he was too young. (c) No error (d)

25. Teachers of various schools (a) met to discuss about (b) how to improve the standard of English. (c) No error (d)

Exercise (G)

1. His tradition-bound attitude (a) was a constant source of dissatisfaction (b) among the younger members of the family. (c) No error (d)

2. The two first to arrive (a) were the lucky recipients (b) of a surprise gift. (c) No error (d)

3. Adults suffering chicken pox (a) can develop (b) all kinds of complications. (c) No error (d)

4. The well-known pianist (a) had to practice for several hours a day (b) even after he rose to fame. (c) No error (d)

5. The Prime Minister was asked (a) to write a forward (b) to the book. (c) No error (d)

6. I must complement you (a) on your good manners (b) and your impeccable behaviour. (c) No error (d)

7. The young men from Japan (a) found the assent of the mountain (b) hard going. (c) No error (d)

8. Even today (a) it is incredulous to think (b) that men have walked on the moon. (c) No error (d)

9. The firemen wore (a) inflammable clothing (b) for protection. (c) No error (d)

10. Beside food (a) the pilgrims carried (b) some medicines. (c) No error (d)

11. The sweets (a) were shared (b) between the four girls. (c) No error (d)

12. The long-distance train (a) which met with an accident (b) was carrying some army personal. (c) No error (d)

13. I have (a) seen her only once (b) but I am liking her a lot. (c) No error (d)

14. I told him (a) that we enjoyed very much (b) at the party. (c) No error (d)

15. John is working very hardly (a) as the examinations (b) are fast approaching. (c) No error (d)

16. Two hours have passed (a) since (b) he had fallen asleep. (c) No error (d)

17. Having broken down (a) the driver sent the car (b) to the garage. (c) No error (d)

18. He is one of those writers (a) who has won acclaim (b) the world over. (c) No error (d)

19. The mason will not (a) do the work (b) except give the order. (c) No error (d)

20. When students are ill (a) they find that they have a lot of work (b) to catch up when they return. (c) No error (d)

21. Scarcely did I reach the airport, (a) nervous and tense than the plane took off (b) leaving me stranded in an alien place. (c) No error (d)

22. The power to (a) distinguish between differences (b) is the basis of science and art. (c) No error (d)

23. He ate (a) nothing (b) since yesterday. (c) No error (d)

24. An experimental vaccine (a) has brought (b) glimmer of hope for malarial researcher. (c) No error (d)

25. After making me wait for two agonising hours (a) the great man called me in (b) and asked me what do I want. (c) No error (d)

Exercise (H)

1. The ebb and flow of the tides (a) are (b) now understood. (c) No error (d)

2. The green paint on the wall (a) provides a suitable contrast (b) with the yellow doors. (c) No error (d)

3. Either of the roads (a) lead (b) to the park. (c) No error (d)

4. I went to the temple (a) with my parents, (b) my aunts and my cousins. (c) No error (d)

5. I have passed (a) the examination (b) two years ago. (c) No error (d)

6. The earth moves (a) round the sun. (b) Isn't it? (c) No error (d)

7. Unless you do not give (a) the keys of the safe (b) you will be shot. (c) No error (d)

8. Of the billions of stars in the galaxy, (a) how much are (b) suitable for life. (c) No error (d)

9. The value of the dollar (a) declines as the rate (b) of inflation raises. (c) No error (d)

10. One of my desires (a) are to become (b) a doctor. (c) No error (d)

11. A hot and (a) a cold spring (b) was found near each other. (c) No error (d)

12. All doubts are cleared (a) between (b) you and I. (c) No error (d)

13. He never has (a) and never will (b) take such strong measures. (c) No error (d)

14. I forgot (a) if I had to pay (b) the fees today. (c) No error (d)

15. He has been working on (a) the problem for a long time (b) but is still not able to solve it. (c) No error (d)

16. Standing on the top of the light house (a) the distant ships (b) are clearly visible. (c) No error (d)

17. The train came (a) at 2 O' clock (b) in the next morning. (c) No error (d)

18. It is high time (a) you buy (b) a car. (c) No error (d)

19. I and my brother (a) live with our parents (b) and work in the farm. (c) No error (d)

20. Few scientists changed people's ideas as much as Charles Darwin (a) with his theory of evolution. (b) yet as a boy (c) he showed little sign of becoming a great scientist. (d) No error

21. The Prime Minster's good looks won him (a) the election but he has still (b) to prove that he's not a just pretty face. (c) No error (d)

22. The two books are the same (a) except for the fact that this (b) has an answer in the back. (c) No error (d)

23. He estimated his income tax bill (a) by extrapolation over figures (b) submitted in previous years. (c) No error (d)

24. The modern office block (a) sticks out like a sore thumb (b) among the old buildings in the area. (c) No error (d)

25. I have not been to (a) New york before (b) and neither my sister (c) No error (d)

Exercise (I)

1. A major contribution of Mathura sculptors (a) of that period were the creation and popularization (b) of the Buddha's image in human form. (c) No error (d)

2. I had hoped that (a) I would see you the other day (b) but unfortunately (c) I fell ill. (d)

3. Mahavira was an advocate of non-violence and vegetarianism, (a) who revived and recognized the Jain doctrine (b) and established rules for their monastic order. (c) No error (d)

4. Microwaves are the principle carriers of television, (a) telephone and data trasmissions (b) between stations on earth and between the (c) earth and satellites. (d) No error

5. An unit is an abstract idea, (a) defined either by reference to a randomly chosen (b) material standard or to a natural phenomenon. (c) No error (d)

6. She stood off (a) from the crowd (b) because of her height and flaming red hair. (c) No error (d)

7. The data on (a) the divorce case is (b) on the judge's desk. (c) No error (d)

8. There is a beautiful moon out tonight (a) and Neeta and I are going for a stroll; (b) would you like to come along with she and I? (c) No error (d)

9. Your husband doesn't (a) believe that you are older (b) than I. (c) No error (d)

10. You should be cautious (a) and make a few discrete enquiries about (b) the firm before you sign anything. (c) No error. (d)

11. Deepa arrived did (a) all the preparation and (b) then has called up one (c) of her intimate friends. (d)

12. I wish (a) he saw you (b) when you were in Nepal. (c)

13. Rupa was driven from post to pillar (a) and each person she spoke to (b) was more unhelpful than the last. (c) No error (d)

14. Critics of government policy (a) argue that the new measures introduced (b) to fight crime are simply papering on the cracks. (c) No error (d)

15. I could not (a) remember story to tell the children (b) so I made one up as I went along (c) No error. (d)

16. You must make up the (a) time you wasted this afternoon by working (b) late over tonight. (c) No error (d)

17. I am going to bed (a) and you would be well (b) advised to do likely. (c) No error (d)

18. On the land turtle (a) is ungainly, (b) but in the water it is very agile. (c) No error (d)

19. Your argument was clear (a) to us from the start (b) there's no need to labour the point. (c) No error (d)

20. The fact that I do not like (a) your fiance is neither here nor there (b) what matters is what you feel. (c) No error (d)

21. "Here is coming my parents," (a) exclaused Parul (b) when she was anxious (c) No error. (d)

22. The Minister has put (a) a different glass on recent (b) developments in Middle East. (c) No error (d)

23. She certainly has gone up in my estimation since she
a b
told the Manager what she thought of him. No error
c d

24. The plans have been under discussion for a year now
a b
but no decision has reached. No error
c d

25. Unless their paths diverged Lennon and Mccartney wrote many hits together.
a b c
No error
d

Exercise (J)

1. Amit needs marry a down-to-earth person who will organize his life for him.
a b c
No error
d

2. As soon as the clock strike five, they down tools and off they go. No error
a b c d

3. A careful driver watches the road and goes slowly or quickly
a
depending upon the condition of the road,
b
the visibility and the traffic. No error
c d

4. Despite some past experiences with averse publicity
a b
she is usually gracious to reporters. No error
c d

5. According to a spokesman for the government,
a
the charge of corruption is a contemptuous lie
b
inspired by political motives. No error
c d

6. If I would have arrived sooner, I would not have missed the fun. No error
a b c d

7. Unless two or more members object to him joining the club, we shall have to
a b
accept his application for membership. No error
c d

8. The prospective buyer of the house (a) left the premises because he was asked to (b) pay a considerable higher price than he could afford. (c) No error (d)

9. You are being quite cynical (a) when you say that the reason why we have (b) such a large turnout is because we are serving refreshments. (c) No error (d)

10. We can't hardly believe (a) that the situation is so serious as to (b) justify such precautions as you have taken. (c) No error (d)

11. Although I am playing cricket (a) for more than three years (b) I have not been able to (c) score a century. (d) No error

12. If I have to make a choice between Aryan, Amit and Abhishek (a) I think I'll select Aryan (b) because of his commanding personality. (c) No error (d)

13. Man's happiness or misery (a) are in a great measure (b) in his own hands. (c) No error (d)

14. I feel bad about the present conflict (a) because I do not know how to resolve it (b) without hurting either you or him. (c) No error (d)

15. Cows are amongst the gentlest of breathing creatures; (a) none shows more passionate (b) tenderness to their young. (c) No error (d)

16. He is not the kind of a person (a) who accepts such treatment passively; (b) he is certain to seek revenge. (c) No error (d)

17. The rise and fall (a) of the tide are due (b) to lunar influence. (c) No error (d)

18. I was surprised and pleased (a) when I was informed of me (b) winning the contest. (c) No error (d)

19. Many a man (a) has succumbed (b) to this temptation. (c) No error (d)

20. The street lights (a) come in at dusk and (b) go off at dawn. (c) No error (d)

21. Two of the mountain climbers (a) were suffering (b) with frost-bite. (c) No error (d)

22. Although there was still (a) a faint heart beat, the patient was (b) for all intents and purposes dead. (c) No error (d)

23. When the rules for police procedure (a) were laid up (b) a lot of grey areas remained. (c) No error (d)

24. Anurag is eclipsed by his wife, (a) who is much clever and (b) more amusing than he is. (c) No error (d)

25. The company took a gamble by (a) cutting the price of its products, (b) and it paid up. (c) No error (d)

Exercise (K)

1. The Indian farmers have been (a) realing under the weight (b) of illiteracy since time (c) immemorial. (d) No error

2. It's difficult to make friends (a) with her; she's constantly (b) in the offensive. (c) No error (d)

3. I needed that money (a) so desperately, it was (b) like manna from heaven when it arrived. (c) No error (d)

4. I can't see much (a) likelihood between (b) him and his father. (c) No error (d)

5. The world today is totally (a) different than we have seen (b) in the last century. (c) No error (d)

6. Of all the teachers I have ever met, (a) Dr. Subramaniam is the (b) most remarkable teacher. (c) No error (d)

7. The moral of the entire novel (a) is how money doesn't (b) make you happy. (c) No error (d)

8. That store (a) hadn't hardly (b) any of those goods. (c) No error (d)

9. Meals will be served (a) outside on the terrace, (b) weather allowing. (c) No error (d)

10. Everyone of the films (a) you suggested (b) are not worth seeing. (c) No error (d)

11. The Secretary and the Principal of the college (a) are attending (b) the District Development Council Meeting at the collectorate. (c) No error (d)

12. No sooner had the hockey match started (a) when it began (b) to rain. (c) No error (d)

13. The secretariat (a) comprises of (b) many air-conditioned rooms. (c) No error (d)

14. It is high time (a) he stood on his own (b) two legs. (c) No error (d)

15. You should avoid (a) to travel (b) in the rush hour. (c) No error (d)

16. There is (a) only one of his novels (b) that are interesting. (c) No error (d)

17. He denied (a) to have (b) been there. (c) No error (d)

18. Knowledge of (a) at least two languages (b) are required to pass the examination. (c) No error (d)

19. The members of the opposition party in the Parliament (a) shout upon the minister (b) if he makes a wrong statement. (c) No error (d)

20. It is about time (a) you have taken your children (b) to school. (c)

21. You will find it difficult (a) to explain of your use (b) of such offensive language. (c) No error (d)

22. Because of the (a) extenuating circumstances (b) the court acquitted him out of the crime. (c) No error (d)

23. The carpet was badly stained (a) to such an extent (b) that you could not tell its original colour. (c) No error (d)

24. It is greatly to Amit's credit (a) that he gave back the money he found; (b) his honesty does him for credit. (c) No error (d)

25. The company has (a) set off itself some stiff production (b) goals for this year. (c) No error (d)

Chapter

17 Sentence Improvement

The technique to attempt Sentence Improvement questions is a variation of Spotting errors. In this type of questions a sentence is given with a word or a phrase italicised, underlined or in bold letters. Under this sentence a number of substitutes are given as alternatives. An examinee is required to locate the error and find the correct answer from among the alternatives given. When the alternative has been substituted, the sentence becomes grammatically correct. If no other alternative is required, the answer is 'no improvement'.

However, this kind of questions can be attempted only if a student is comprehensively equipped with the knowledge of common errors, vocabular, correct use of phrases, and overall comprehension of rules of grammar e.g.

1. If *I* am present there now, I would help him.
   (a) I was (b) I were
   (c) I have been (d) no improvement

   As the sentence expresses regret for the present situation, subjunctive mood is required to be substitued for the italicised portion. Hence the correct answer is (b).

2. They told me that they *had already sold* out all their belongings.
   (a) has sold already (b) have already been sold.
   (c) had already sold (d) no improvement.

   Since the italicised portion requires no improvement, the correct answer is (d).

Directions : *In the following qeustions you will find sentences, part of which are italicised. Compare the italicised part of each sentence with the expressions (a), (b) and (c) given below. Choose the expression which is an improvement upon the italicised part. If none of the three expressions improves the sentence, then your answer is (d).*

Revision Exercise (A)

1. I am tired as *I am working* since 7 O' clock in the morning.
   (a) I was working (b) I had been working
   (c) I have been working (d) no improvement
2. When it was dark they decided to *put at* an inn.
   (a) put off with (b) put up at
   (c) put out in (d) no improvement
3. We should be bound by a code of conduct, *isn't it*?
   (a) Shouldn't we (b) is it
   (c) aren't we (d) no improvement
4. A highly improved variety of seeds *is* available to the farmer these days.
   (a) are (b) will be
   (c) has been (d) no improvement

5. The boy *told his teacher* to explain the passage.
(a) asked his teacher (b) said to his teacher
(c) invited his teacher (d) no improvement

6. *What struck one most* was their kindness.
(a) What stroke one most (b) What struck one more
(c) What stroke one more (d) no improvement

7. You should *avoid to make* such trivial mistakes.
(a) avoid making (b) avoid to have made
(c) avoid make (d) no improvement

8. The teacher gave the students some *advice.*
(a) advices (b) advise
(c) advises (d) no improvement

9. If you come across my umbrella anywhere, bring it to me, *can you*?
(a) isn't it (b) don't you
(c) will you (d) no improvement

10. The floor of the hall was *covered by* a carpet.
(a) covered in (b) covered with
(c) covered upon (d) no improvement

11. The passengers *are waiting* for the bus outside the bus stand at the main gate for long.
(a) were waited (b) were waiting
(c) have been waiting (d) no improvement

12. Miss Pillai teaches very well, *isn't it*?
(a) didn't she (b) doesn't she
(c) wasn't it (d) no improvement

13. He has *fallen out* with the girl he wanted to marry.
(a) fallen off (b) fallen in love
(c) fallen for (d) no improvement

14. They are social insects, *living in communities*, regulated by definite laws, each member of society bearing a well-defined and separate part in the work of a colony.
(a) who are living in communities (b) living among a community
(c) who lives with a community (d) no improvement

15. *If the room had been brighter*, I would have been able to read for a while before bed time.
(a) if the room was brighter (b) if rooms are brighter
(c) had the room brighter (d) no improvement

16. I shall be grateful to you if you are *of help to* me now.
(a) help (b) would help
(c) helped (d) no improvement

17. The reason *why he wrote the letter was because* he could not contact him over the phone.
(a) why he wrote the letter was since (b) for which he wrote the letter because
(c) why he wrote teh letter was that (d) no improvement

18. The right-to-work implies the obligation on the part of the government to give a job to *all the unemployed.*
(a) any of the unemployed (b) every unemployed
(c) each of the unemployed (d) no improvement

19. Most donors would seriously *protest* any effort to infer from such limited data.
(a) protest against (b) protest at
(c) protest to (d) no improvement

20. I hope you vividly remember the premier of the film when *I, my wife and you* were present in the hall.
(a) my wife, I and you (b) you, my wife and I
(c) my wife, you and I (d) no improvement

21. With a thundering roar the huge rocket *soared up* from the launching pad.
(a) flew up (b) went upwards
(c) took on (d) no improvement

22. My *opinion for* the film is that it will bag the national award.
(a) opinion to (b) opinion about
(c) opinion on (d) no improvement

23. He *sent a word* to me that he would be coming late.
(a) sent word (b) had sent a word
(c) sent words (d) no improvement

24. It became clear that the strangers were heading *into* a serious disaster.
(a) along (b) towards
(c) for (d) no improvement

25. Young men and women should get *habituated* to reading and writing about current affairs.
(a) used (b) prepared
(c) trained (d) no improvement

26. While crossing the highway a five-year-old child was knocked *out* by a passing car.
(a) away (b) up
(c) down (d) no improvement

27. When he heard the rhetorical speech of the leader, he was *carried along* by his enthusiasm.
(a) was carried aloft (b) was carried down
(c) was carried away (d) no improvement

28. After the heavy rains last week, the water in the lake *raised another two feet.*
(a) rose another two feet (b) rised another two feet
(c) would raise another two feet (d) no improvement

29. When we saw him last, he *ran* to catch a bus.
(a) has run (b) had run
(c) was running (d) no improvement

30. I would like to *avail* a fifteen day holiday this summer.
(a) to avail of (b) to avail myself of
(c) to avail myself (d) no improvement

31. Is your *brother yet* at the university?
(a) brother still at (b) brother continue at
(c) brother till at (d) no improvement

32. A bird in hand is worth *two in bush.*
(a) two on bush (b) two in the bush
(c) two at a bush (d) no improvement

33. The doctor said that there was no *cause of anxiety*.
(a) cause to (b) cause for
(c) cause with (d) no improvement

34. His brother *is working* in this factory since 1970.
(a) was working (b) worked
(c) has been working (d) no improvement

35. He cannot succeed in business because he works *by fits and starts*.
(a) with fits and starts (b) into fits and starts
(c) fit and start (d) no improvement

36. Eve-teasing is not only a moral offence *but* a crime punishable under law.
(a) as also a (b) as well as a
(c) but also a (d) no improvement

37. The detectives followed *on* several clues but failed to find the murderer.
(a) through (b) up
(c) by (d) no improvement

38. He stopped *to work* an hour ago.
(a) to working (b) to have worked
(c) working (d) no improvement

39. The summer has *set out*, and the days are getting warm.
(a) set off (b) set in
(c) set up (d) no improvement

40. *It was a week* since the exams began.
(a) It is a week (b) It has a week
(c) It had been a week (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (B)

1. An overdose of any medicine is *enough fatal* to a plant as to a man.
(a) too fatal (b) so fatal
(c) as fatal (d) no improvement

2. There is nothing *quite miserable* than illiteracy in youth.
(a) as miserable (b) very miserable
(c) more miserable (d) no improvement

3. My brother-in-law has a house *for letting*.
(a) for letting out (b) to rent our
(c) to let (d) no improvement

4. Netaji was by far a *great man* of India.
(a) a very great man (b) too great a man
(c) the greatest man (d) no improvement

5. Hardly had he finished his lunch *than* the phone rang.
(a) when (b) then
(c) while (d) no improvement

6. A very horrifying serial *was broadcasted* ten days ago.
(a) has brodcast (b) was broadcast
(c) was broadcasting (d) no improvement

7. After a few hours he unconscious patient began to come *out*.
(a) round (b) on
(c) up (d) no improvement

8. As you are a born liar, *I don't believe* in what you say.
(a) I am not believing (b) I will not believe
(c) I will not be believing (d) no improvement

9. You must not forget to call me after you *reach* Delhi.
(a) will reach (b) will have reached
(c) have reached (d) no improvement

10. Rohan died *of a wound and not from cancer.*
(a) from a wound and not of cancer (b) of a wound and not of cancer
(c) from a wound and not from cancer (d) no improvement

11. All criminal attitudes must be *nipped at the bud.*
(a) nipped on the bud (b) nipped in the bud
(c) nipped off the bud (d) no improvement

12. Each village adopted by the club was *provided by* electric supply.
(a) provided with (b) provided for
(c) provided (d) no improvement

13. Every man must *look up* the future and find wasys of providing for his needs.
(a) look for (b) look to
(c) look in (d) no improvement

14. When Seema was fourteen, she *sat* the entrance examination for Senior Secondary school.
(a) sat in (b) sat at
(c) sat for (d) no improvement

15. The mother could not help but *cry* at his behaviour.
(a) crying (b) cry
(c) but crying (d) no improvement

16. Galileo escaped *burning* for heresy because he apologized and withdrew his previous statements.
(a) from being burnt (b) being burnt
(c) from having been burnt (d) no improvement

17. Unless efforts are made and the population growth *stabilised* environmentalists predict a world-wide starvation by 2020 A.D.
(a) stabilises (b) will stabilise
(c) must stabilise (d) no improvement

18. It is the time the three years old is *learning* how to read and write.
(a) was learning (b) has learned
(c) learnt (d) no improvement

19. All the people are supposed to *take out* their shoes when they enter a place of worship.
(a) to take off (b) to put off
(c) to put away (d) no improvement

20. They served a *summons* on the Member of Parliament to appear in the court of law.
(a) a summon (b) the summon
(c) summons (d) no improvement

21. *If I had money*, I would send to you.
(a) had had (b) have had
(c) have (d) no improvement

22. This house is *belonging* to me for two years.
(a) belongs (b) has been belonging
(c) has belonged (d) no improvement

23. All my friends *are waiting* for me since morning.
(a) have been waiting (b) were waiting
(c) wait (d) no improvement

24. Amit is extraordinarily clever at *mimicking* his friends.
(a) clever for mimicking (b) clever in mimicking
(c) clever to mimick (d) no improvement

25. He has got many friends because he had got *much money*.
(a) enough money (b) a lot of money
(c) bags of money (d) no improvement

26. When the students *take their exams* they will have a holiday.
(a) took their exams (b) had taken exams their
(c) have taken their exams (d) no improvement

27. Shakespeare lived *for* the reigns of Elizabveth I and James I.
(a) since (b) in
(c) during (d) no improvement

28. She didn't believe in God *but* she went to temple regularly.
(a) and (b) yet
(c) however (d) no improvement

29. I think myself there is a third dimension which science has added to modern war.
(a) I myself think (b) to myself I think
(c) I to myself think (d) no improvement

30. Both Ramesh and his brother were invited but neither *accepted* our invitation.
(a) had accepted (b) had accept
(c) were accepted (d) no improvement

31. The thief must be hiding in the attic or he *must* run into the woods.
(a) should (b) must have
(c) might (d) no improvement

32. They both tried hard *though* the box could not be opened.
(a) and (b) but
(c) so (d) no improvement

33. Runu *has been ill* for a week when her parents arrived for a visit.
(a) had been ill (b) was ill
(c) might be ill (d) no improvement

34. We have no right *to take a claim* to the moon.
(a) to make a claim on (b) to stake a claim to
(c) to demand a claim for (d) no improvement

35. Human beings *are* in existence only for some three million years.
(a) have been (b) has been
(c) must be (d) no improvement

36. She behaved as though *she was* the principal.
(a) she were (b) had been
(c) she has been (d) no improvement

37. We had to move slowly and carefully to our seats *for avoiding* stepping on their toes.
(a) so that to avoid (b) in order to avoid
(c) because of (d) no improvement

38. It is *interesting for noting* that some of the villages have a telephone exchange but no drinking water.
(a) interesting to note (b) interested to note
(c) of interest for noting (d) no improvement

39. Man's first power source *of doing work* was his own body.
(a) in doing work (b) for doing work
(c) to do his work (d) no improvement

40. Life in the modern world *depended greatly* on transportation over long distances.
(a) will depend greatly (b) depends greatly
(c) should greatly depend (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (C)

1. If a person or an animal *eats* much his body changes the extra Carbohydrates and Proteins into fat and stores it.
(a) can eat (b) will eat
(c) eat (d) no improvement

2. Socrates was *one of the wisest man* that ever lived.
(a) one of the wisest men (b) one wise man
(c) one of the wise men (d) no improvement

3. We must not think that people belonging to *few castes* are superior to others.
(a) many castes (b) high castes
(c) some castes (d) no improvement

4. *If he studied more*, he would have been able to get a distinction.
(a) if he were studying more (b) if he had to study more
(c) if he had studied more (d) no improvement

5. He has very good command *on* English.
(a) over (b) in
(c) of (d) no improvement

6. The people in the village *are deprived* of essential commodities for the past two weeks.
(a) are being deprived (b) had been deprived
(c) have been deprived (d) no improvement

7. The farmer's way of life can be *contrasted* to that of the factory worker.
(a) contrasted with (b) contrasted against
(c) contrasted on (d) no improvement

8. The enthusiastic voters *were queuing up* out side the polling station since morning.
(a) queued up (b) had queued
(c) had been queuing up (d) no improvement

9. The brochure, which is being enclosed with the application form will give you *information* that you need.
(a) the information
(b) an information
(c) informations
(d) no improvement

10. Mr. Patel and the other dissident leaders *have taken shelter* at the Church last month after the authorities ordered their arrest.
(a) took shelter
(b) are taking shelter
(c) had taken shelter
(d) no improvement

11. He came to the cave uphill as the evening mist rose, and drew a deep breath and looked *up the valley.*
(a) across the valley
(b) into the valley
(c) down the valley
(d) no improvement

12. The child spent two mornings with his parents and on the third he insisted *for accompanying* his grand mother on her rounds in the city.
(a) in accompanying
(b) on accompanying
(c) to accompanying
(d) no improvement

13. With the hubble space telescope astronomers expect to learn the age and size of the universe and to *probe* its origin, evolution and ultimate fate.
(a) probe for
(b) probe in
(c) probe after
(d) no improvement

14. The police *are* trying to solve the mystery.
(a) is
(b) was
(c) has been
(d) no improvement

15. We have been caught in a *rat race.*
(a) rat race
(b) the rat race
(c) this rat race
(d) no improvement

16. Can I exchange *my book for yours*?
(a) my book with you
(b) my book with yours
(c) our book with your
(d) no improvement

17. He *shook hand with me* after receiving the prize.
(a) shook my hand
(b) shook hands with me
(c) shook my hands
(d) no improvement

18. I would like that *you finish the project on time.*
(a) you finished the project on time
(b) that you would finish the project on time
(c) you finishing the project on time
(d) no improvement

19. There are sufficient funds to meet the requirements of *the entire schools* in our zone.
(a) schools
(b) all of the schools
(c) all the schools
(d) no improvement

20. It is *long since* I saw you last.
(a) long ago
(b) long time
(c) long before
(d) no improvement

21. The angry boys *were* arguing with the Principal since morning.
(a) have been
(b) was
(c) has been
(d) no improvement

22. He has been absent *for* the past few months.
(a) since the past
(b) since the last
(c) for past
(d) no improvement

23. You will be punished *if you will come* to my class.
(a) if you come
(b) if you shall come
(c) if you came
(d) no improvement

24. The good fortune *of being your student* in my younger days had helped me greatly in my life.
(a) of my being your student
(b) of my having been your student
(c) of myself being your student
(d) no improvement

25. A good house has been *alloted* to him.
(a) aloted
(b) allotted
(c) alotted
(d) no improvement

26. Before I met her *I had* had a poor opinion of her.
(a) have had
(b) had
(c) did have
(d) no improvement

27. Kindly let us know the time of your arrival *by return of post.*
(a) by the return of post
(b) on return of post
(c) in return post
(d) no improvement

28. *I* elected him president of the society.
(a) We
(b) She
(c) John
(d) no improvement

29. The children *are playing* in the garden since ten O' clock this morning.
(a) have been playing
(b) have playing
(c) were playing
(d) no improvement

30. We had better *send for* a policeman.
(a) sent for
(b) send off
(c) send in
(d) no improvement

31. In spite of all these hurdles, my marriage *came of* in a few months.
(a) came off
(b) came on
(c) came over
(d) no improvement

32. The wedding *took place* last Saturday.
(a) was taken place
(b) was took place
(c) did take place
(d) no improvement

33. He has done nothing *from* yesterday.
(a) through
(b) after
(c) since
(d) no improvement

34. The teacher asked "*why you are late*?
(a) why you were late.
(b) why late you are?
(c) why are you late?
(d) no improvement

35. He killed the enemy *by his sword.*
(a) with his sword.
(b) by sword
(c) by a sword.
(d) no improvement

36. He told us the story *in a nutshell.*
(a) in the nutshell.
(b) putting it in a nut.
(c) in nutshell.
(d) no improvement

37. She is *having a lot of money.*
(a) has lot of
(b) has a lot of
(c) is having lot of
(d) no improvement

38. He shouted *that he may attract attention.*
(a) to attract attention
(b) for attracting
(c) can attract attention
(d) no improvement

39. You can mix it *with some sugar* and eat it.
(a) in some sugar
(b) into some sugar
(c) any sugar
(d) no improvement

40. I don't want to distrub you, please *get with* your work.
(a) get up with
(b) get over with
(c) get on with
(d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (D)

1. There is plenty of time *to catch* the train.
(a) to get
(b) to reach
(c) to hold
(d) no improvement

2. Hundreds of people were killed *by* the earth quake.
(a) in
(b) from
(c) of
(d) no improvement

3. He *insisted* on he was innocent.
(a) insisted on that
(b) insisted that
(c) insists that
(d) no improvement

4. John, who *studies* medicine at present, hopes to go abroad after graduation.
(a) is studying
(b) will study
(c) studied
(d) no improvement

5. The forest is infested *of* snakes.
(a) by
(b) with
(c) off
(d) no improvement

6. He is *having* three cars.
(a) has
(b) was
(c) got
(d) no improvement

7. He goes to *cinema* every Sunday.
(a) a cinema
(b) in cinema
(c) to the cinema
(d) no improvement

8. *Would* you find me absent, please don't forget to leave a message behind.
(a) should
(b) unless
(c) as
(d) no improvement

9. My mother always *finds fault* with the maid servant.
(a) is finding faults
(b) has found fault
(c) find faults
(d) no improvement

10. You ought not to *have gone* there, but you did.
(a) to go (b) to have been
(c) to be going (d) no improvement

11. Mary met with an accident, she did not just twist her leg. She *has broken it.*
(a) had broken it (b) break it
(c) broke it too (d) no improvement

12. What is needed *are* not large houses but small cottages.
(a) was (b) were
(c) is (d) no improvement

13. It was hard to believe that he *was dead* for two years.
(a) has been dead (b) is dead
(c) had been dead (d) no improvement

14. Do not take another step, else your life *will face* great peril.
(a) might be thrown into (b) will be in
(c) would be placed in great (d) no improvement

15. I *would gladly accompany* your sister if you had asked me.
(a) would have gladly accompanied
(b) was to have gladly accompanied
(c) will gladly accompany
(d) no improvement

16. He was likely to win the elections by the *sweeping majority.*
(a) with the sweeping majority (b) by a sweeping majority
(c) with sweeping a majority (d) no improvement

17. It is sheer folly to believe that you can improve the situation by *doing away* people.
(a) doing with (b) doing away with
(c) doing it to (d) no improvement

18. Governments in developing countries are under increasing pressure *for the recruiting and training* teachers to meet the demands of their rapidly expanding systems of education.
(a) in the recruiting and training of
(b) to recruit and train
(c) so as to recruit and train
(d) no improvement

19. Last evening I went to the Optician and bought *spectacles.*
(a) a spectacle (b) two spectacles
(c) a pair of spectacle (d) no improvement

20. As John dived off the spring board, he was horrified to see that the water *was drained from* the pool the night before.
(a) was drained (b) had drained away
(c) had been drained off (d) no improvement

21. The situation remained the same, rather got worse, *all his efforts notwith-standing.*
(a) with all his efforts notwithstanding (b) in spite of all his efforts notwithstanding
(c) for all his efforts nowithstanding (d) no improvement

22. One can live and work in a town without being aware of the daily march of the sun across the sky without *never* seeing the moon and stars.
(a) seldom (b) hardly
(c) ever (d) no improvement

23. Being a handicapped youth, he *was put hard* to complete his military course.
(a) was hard put to (b) was put to it hard
(c) was hardly put to (d) no improvement

24. She cut a *sad figure* in her first performance on the stage.
(a) made a sorry figure (b) cut a sorry face
(c) cut a sorry figure (d) no improvement

25. *No sooner I saw* the tiger, than I ran away.
(a) As soon as I saw (b) No sooner I had seen
(c) No sooner did I see (d) no improvement

26. If a *person studied* this period of history, he would have wondered how such things had happened in India.
(a) a person would study (b) a person had studied
(c) a person could have studied (d) no improvement

27. According to the planning Commission estimates by the year 2020, India *will have become* self-sufficient in petroleum products.
(a) should have become (b) shall have become
(c) would have become (d) no improvement

28. *All his answers* were correct.
(a) his all answers (b) his every answers
(c) all of his answers (d) no improvement

29. It was quite clear that the runner *could be able* to improve upon his own record.
(a) should be able (b) would be able
(c) will be able (d) no improvement

30. Within the last few years most of the fertile land *had undergone* Indigo cultivation.
(a) had underwent (b) has undergone
(c) was undergone (d) no improvement

31. His *powerful desire* brought about his downfall.
(a) his intense desire (b) his desire for power
(c) his fatal desire (d) no improvement

32. If he *had time* he will call you.
(a) would have (b) would have had
(c) has (d) no improvement

33. More than one person *was killed* in the accident.
(a) were killed (b) are killed
(c) have been killed (d) no improvement

34. Not a word *they spoke* to the unfortunate wife about it.
(a) did they speak (b) they will speak
(c) they had spoken (d) no improvement

35. The poor villagers *have waited* in the bitter cold for more than four hours now.
(a) have been waiting (b) had waited
(c) has been waiting (d) no improvement

36. There is a dearth of *woman doctors* in our own state. We shall have to recruit some from the other state.
(a) womans doctors (b) women doctor
(c) women doctors (d) no improvement

37. It was indeed a shock for her but she has *later* recovered from it.
(a) since (b) then
(c) after wards (d) no improvement

38. I am used to *hard work.*
(a) work hard (b) work hardly
(c) hard working (d) no improvement

39. Twenty kilometres *are not a great distance* in these days of fast moving vehicles.
(a) is not a great distance (b) is not distance
(c) are not a great distance (d) no improvement

40. He should move to the next point, and not *harp one string only.*
(a) harp on string only (b) harp only one string
(c) harp upon one string only (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (E)

1. Hoping not to be disturbed, I sat down in my easy chair to read the book I *won as a prize.*
(a) I havd to win as a prize (b) I have won as prize
(c) I had won as a prize (d) no improvement

2. Practically *every part* of the banana tree is used by man.
(a) each part (b) any part
(c) most part (d) no improvement

3. If you are living near a market place you should be ready *to bear* the disturbance caused by traffic.
(a) to bear upon (b) to bear with
(c) to bear away (d) no improvement

4. Please remind me *of posting* these letters to my relatives.
(a) by posting (b) to post
(c) for posting (d) no improvement

5. Whenever my students come across new words, I ask them *to look for them* in the dictionary.
(a) to look it up (b) to look them up
(c) to look at them (d) no improvement

6. His father won't be able to leave for Varanasi *until they have arrived.*
(a) until they arrive (b) until they will have arrived
(c) until they will arrive (d) no improvement

7. The company goes to great length to ensure that employees *can be comfortable* in their work environment.
(a) are comfortable (b) will be comfortable
(c) should be comfortable (d) no improvement

8. I knew he could not be trusted, he *let off the cat from the bag.*
(a) let the cat out of the bag (b) let the cat from the bag
(c) let the cat jump out of the bag (d) no improvement

9. The mother has not seen the child for several months and now eagerly *looks forward* to seeing him.
(a) look a head to (b) look for
(c) looks into (d) no improvement

10. I am definitely late. The train *will have left* the station by the time I reach there.
(a) will leave (b) will be leaving
(c) would have left (d) no improvement

11. It is unreasonable to *distort* the statement of a man simply because he does not agree to your opinions.
(a) bend (b) denounce
(c) discourage (d) no improvement

12. Scarcely had he entered the room than the phone rang.
(a) as (b) when
(c) while (d) no improvement

13. *As soon as* I walked into the building, I could hear the sound of a celebration in progress.
(a) no sooner had (b) sooner than
(c) hardly (d) no improvement

14. The teacher *saw through the game* and punished him.
(a) saw into the game (b) saw at the game
(c) saw the game (d) no improvement

15. His is the *least expensive* of the two cars.
(a) last expensive (b) less expensive
(c) lessen expensive (d) no improvement

16. The train *left before* I reached the station.
(a) will have left (b) leaves
(c) had left (d) no improvement

17. I do not take any cognizance *on* what he says.
(a) about (b) for
(c) of (d) no improvement

18. In a few minutes time when the clock strikes six, I *shall* be waiting for her for three quarters of an hour.
(a) I would have been waiting (b) I would have waiting
(c) I shall have waited (d) no improvement

19. I *have* been writing ten letters since breakfast.
(a) am writing (b) have written
(c) wrote (d) no improvement

20. If you *call to him* to explain your problem he will help you.
(a) call in him (b) call at him
(c) call upon him (d) no improvement

21. He enjoys nothing more than *drawing* swords with others.
(a) playing (b) crossing
(c) clashing (d) no improvement

22. This beautiful shirt which I bought for my birthday *costed* only Rs. 150.
(a) was costed (b) cost
(c) wast cost (d) no improvement

23. I noticed that *the opposite man* was staring at me.
(a) the man opposite (b) the opposed man
(c) man opposite (d) no improvement

24. Do you think any man has a right to *break in* his neighbour's house ?
(a) to break through (b) to break into
(c) to break open (d) no improvement

25. They *are waiting* for her since morning.
(a) have been waiting (b) were waiting
(c) wait (d) no improvement

26. He asked me if I *can* help him to lift the box.
(a) will (b) could
(c) may (d) no improvement

27. This time my brother is coming to India for *an extending* stay.
(a) extensive (b) entension
(c) extended (d) no improvement

28. The man *who will score the maximum points* will carry the trophy.
(a) who would score the maximum points.
(b) who the maximum points scores
(c) who scores the maximum points
(d) no improvement

29. As soon as our plan is approved I shall favour *its* adoption.
(a) its' (b) our
(c) it's (d) no improvement

30. Our team is likely to lose unless all members learn to cooperate *with one other*.
(a) one other with (b) with one another
(c) with one and all (d) no improvement

31. The boy *which* came to see me this morning had come from Agra ?
(a) when (b) who
(c) that (d) no improvement

32. I gave him *the little* money I could spare then.
(a) a little (b) some little
(c) very little (d) no improvement

33. Education is a *strong* instrument for moulding the character of the young.
(a) potent (b) powerful
(c) striking (d) no improvement

34. I *have heard* the news an hour ago.
(a) was hearing (b) heard
(c) have been heaing (d) no improvement

35. I wish *I have* the time to do half the things you do.
(a) I am having (b) I will have
(c) I had (d) no improvement

36. I congratulate you *for* your success in the examinations.
(a) in (b) on
(c) at (d) no improvement

37. I have not written any letter to him since my father *had died*.
(a) has died
(b) died
(c) was died
(d) no improvement

38. My brother who *practises* law at present wishes for a change in his career.
(a) will practise
(b) practised
(c) is practising
(d) no improvement

39. This has been our practice *since immemorial* time.
(a) from immemorial
(b) from time immemorial
(c) since time immemorial
(d) no improvement

40. I would like to *enjoy* at some hill station this summer.
(a) enjoyed
(b) enjoy of
(c) enjcy myself
(d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (F)

1. He plays cricket and tennis *also*.
(a) both
(b) besides
(c) too
(d) no improvement

2. The *need* of the hour was some fast action on the part of the leaders.
(a) needed
(b) needing
(c) needs
(d) no improvement

3. On seeing the lion she felt *too much* afraid.
(a) very much
(b) excessively
(c) much
(d) no improvement

4. No one *needs to worry* about me.
(a) will worry
(b) need worry
(c) shall worry
(d) no improvement

5. The teacher asked the intruder *who was he and why was he* occupying his chair.
(a) who he was and why he was
(b) who he was and why was he
(c) who he had been and why he had been
(d) no improvement

6. *It is no good to cry over* spilt milk.
(a) It is no good crying
(b) It is of no good to cry
(c) It is of no good crying
(d) no improvement

7. The actress said that it sometimes took her two hours *to put* her make-up.
(a) put over
(b) put up
(c) put on
(d) no improvement

8. He has been working *off* and on for several years to compile a dictionary
(a) on or off
(b) on and off
(c) regularly
(d) no improvement

9. He has been growing weaker and his life now *hangs like a thread*.
(a) hangs with threads
(b) hangs by a thread
(c) hangs on a thread
(d) no improvement

10. She did not askk *any question to him*.
(a) any question from him (b) him any question
(c) to him any question (d) no improvement

11. Rohit assured Sunita that he *would look at* her work while she was on leave.
(a) would overlook (b) would look after
(c) will look (d) no improvement

12. No sooner had the umpire given the batsman out *than the crowd* rushed into the field.
(a) but the people (b) when the crowds
(c) and the crowd (d) no improvement

13. Newton wanted to *know why did the apple fall* to the ground.
(a) know that why did the apple fall (b) know why the apple fell
(c) know that why the apple fell (d) no improvement

14. Having finished the book, *it was put away by him*.
(a) he put it away (b) it was being put away by him.
(c) it was putting away by him. (d) no improvement

15. He was extremely unhappy because of *the inordinately delay*.
(a) the inordinate delaying (b) the inordinate delay
(c) the inordinately delaying (d) no improvement

16. She says she's already paid me back but I can't remember, so I'll have *to take her word*.
(a) to take her word true. (b) to take her at her word.
(c) to take her word for it (d) no improvement

17. When the clock struck six I *was waiting here* for an hour.
(a) had waited (b) had been waiting
(c) shall have waited (d) no improvement

18. When the soldier returned home after the war was over, his wife received him *with open hands*.
(a) with open arms (b) with unfolded hands
(c) with an open heart (d) no improvement

19. By the end of this century, scientists surely *have* discovered a cure for cancer.
(a) are discovering (b) will have discovered
(c) must discover (d) no improvement

20. *There is no more room* for you in this compartment.
(a) There is no more accommodation (b) There is no more space
(c) There is no more seat (d) no improvement

21. It is time to *immediately put the work in hand*.
(a) to put the work immediately in hand.
(b) to put the work in hand immediately
(c) There is no more seat
(d) no improvement

22. When he arrived to attend the wedding of his brother, he *had been dressed* in dark suit.
(a) dressed (b) was dressed
(c) had dressed (d) no improvement

23. He gave *witness* at the sensational trial.
(a) evidence (b) proof
(c) advice (d) no improvement

24. As soon as our plan is approved I shall favour *its'* adoption.
(a) our (b) it's
(c) its (d) no improvement

25. I can always *count on him* in times of difficulty.
(a) count at him (b) count on he
(c) count him on (d) no improvement

26. The *car's doors are loose.*
(a) car-doors are loose (b) the doors of the car are loose
(c) door of car are loose (d) no improvement

27. Sunita told me that she would not mind *to stand and eating* the lunch.
(a) to stand and eat (b) standing and eating
(c) standing and eat (d) no improvement

28. We did not see this movie yet.
(a) had seen (b) have not seen
(c) have seen (d) no improvement

29. In many parts of our country villagers don't get water to drink *where* many urban people have water even to waste.
(a) besides (b) and
(c) whereas (d) no improvement

30. How did one earn money is more important than how much did *he earn* ?
(a) he earns (b) he has earned
(c) one earn (d) no improvement

31. Modern industrialized communities have lost touch with the soil and do not experience that joy which nature gives and the rich glow of health *that which comes from contact* with mother earth.
(a) which comes from contact with. (b) which comes out from contact with
(c) which flows how from contact with (d) no improvement

32. He has been receiving no other message than an urgent telgram *asking him to rush his village* immediately.
(a) asking him rushing at his village (b) asked him to rush his village.
(c) asking him to rush to his village (d) no improvement

33. Ashutosh had *occupying* this house for over twenty-five years and has no intention of vacating it now.
(a) is occupying (b) will occupy
(c) has been occupying (d) no improvement

34. My elder brother *was* a British citizen since 1980 and is now living a retired life in London.
(a) had been (b) has been
(c) is (d) no improvement

35. During my school days I never had the courage to stand *my own.*
(a) by my own (b) on my own
(c) for my own (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (G)

1. Each of our *students pay their* tuition fee at the beginning of the month.
   (a) student pay their (b) students pays their
   (c) students pays his (d) no improvement
2. It is essential *to thoroughly clean* the machine after each use.
   (a) to thorough clean (b) to clean thoroughly
   (c) to clean thorough (d) no improvement
3. I told him clearly that he *hadn't ought to do* that to me.
   (a) ought not to have done (b) ought not done
   (c) ought not has done (d) no improvement
4. When a man has to give evidence he must *have a clean breast* of the whole matter,
   (a) make a clean breast (b) obtain a clean breast
   (c) possess a clean breast (d) no improvement
5. The fast train came a *halt to before* crossing the bridge.
   (a) came before to a halt (b) came to a halt before
   (c) came to halts before a (d) no improvement
6. Do you know *who she is going to marry*?
   (a) who she is married? (b) who is she going to marry?
   (c) whom she is going to marry? (d) no improvement
7. I took the cycle *which he has bought yesterday.*
   (a) that he bought yesterday (b) that he had bought yesterday
   (c) that which he had bought yesterday (d) no improvement
8. Even the people in authority agree that corruption has become *today's* order.
   (a) the order of the day (b) the order of today
   (c) the day's order (d) no improvement
9. Most of the employees from Rajan's factory were not *inclination to* using the new technology.
   (a) inclined to be use (b) incline to use
   (c) inclined to use (d) no improvement
10. All the allegations *levelled* against him were found to be baseless.
    (a) levelled for (b) level with
    (c) level against (d) no improvement
11. He *did many mischiefs.*
    (a) made many a mischiefs. (b) made much mischief
    (c) committed many mischiefs (d) no improvement
12. He has said so out of affection, do not take *it to heart*
    (a) in heart (b) it in the heart
    (c) by the heart (d) no improvement
13. What is needed *are* not large houses but small cottages.
    (a) were (b) was
    (c) is (d) no improvement
14. Sumit *would have been looked* smart in traditional dress.
    (a) was looked (b) would have looked
    (c) had looking (d) no improvement

15. People are *tiring* very soon in an activity which they don't like.
(a) tried (b) tyring
(c) tired (d) no improvement

16. Is there any *place* for me to sit ?
(a) space (b) room
(c) area (d) no improvement

17. They felt humiliated because they relized that they *had cheated.*
(a) had been cheated (b) have been cheated
(c) were to be cheated (d) no improvement

18. Sri Pashupatinath is *worth seeing temple* in Kathmandu.
(a) a temple worth seeing (b) a temple to see its worth.
(c) one of the worth seeing temples (d) no improvement

19. The practical importance of the role of the industrialist in the establishment of the new order is greater than the *economist and the politician.*
(a) of the economist and politicians (b) that of the economists and the politicians
(c) that of the economist and the politician (d) no improvement

20. Poor Tom *laid* in the shade of a tree before he could not walk further.
(a) lied (b) lain
(c) lay (d) no improvement

21. Tell your leader that I grant him permission *of stay* in my kingdom.
(a) about stay (b) to stay
(c) for stay (d) no improvement

22. He could not *cope up with* the heavy rush.
(a) cope upto (b) cope by
(c) cope with (d) no improvement

23. He opened the letter without *caring* to read the address on the envelope.
(a) thinking (b) bothering
(c) worrying (d) no improvement

24. We were still standing in the queue when the *film was beginning.*
(a) film begins (b) film had begun
(c) film began (d) no improvement

25. It was so hot during the school parade that several of the weaker pupils passed ***by***.
(a) out (b) through
(c) over (d) no improvement

26. When the train finally *came into* the station, the lonely traveller seemed relieved.
(a) pulled in (b) will pull into
(c) have pulled into (d) no improvement

27. The poor villagers *have waited* in the bitter cold for more than four hours now.
(a) has been waiting (b) had waited
(c) have been waiting (d) no improvement

28. He was so rude that they were compelled *for asking him to leave.*
(a) ask him to leave (b) to ask him to leave
(c) him to ask to leave (d) no improvement

29. Many accidents can be avoided if we *be careful.*
(a) might be careful (b) are careful
(c) were careful (d) no improvement

30. After the communal frenzy, slogans now occupy the air, exhorting the people to promote peace, harmony and amity.
(a) thicken (b) fill
(c) infest (d) no improvement

31. They succeeded *without hardly making* any effort
(a) hardly without making (b) with hardly making
(c) without making (d) no improvement

32. The quality of food served in this hotel is so poor that no respectable person would want *to eat* over here.
(a) will want to eat (b) will have wanted to eat
(c) will be wanting to eat (d) no improvement

33. *All but her,* had made an attempt
(a) All, but she (b) All, but herself
(c) All, but she herself (d) no improvement

34. When you want to rent a house, you should look *out* at first.
(a) for (b) into
(c) around (d) no improvement

35. She *gave* most of her time to music
(a) devoted (b) spent
(c) lent (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (H)

1. If *I was you*, I would not have joined the party.
(a) as you (b) were I you
(c) had I been you (d) no improvement

2. If you are absent for a week, you have to *catch with* the work when you return.
(a) catch up with (b) catch on with
(c) catch in with (d) no improvement

3. He was urgently in need *to get his eye operation.*
(a) of an eye operation (b) for operation on eye
(c) for eye to be operated (d) no improvement

4. It is easy for childen than for adults to learn a new language.
(a) as easy as children (b) easy for children as
(c) easier for children than (d) no improvement

5. *By definition, make a map is* to select certain features as relevant and ignore others.
(a) To make a map by definition (b) In making a map, the definiton
(c) Map making is defined as (d) no improvement

6. I have got some tea, but I do not have a sugar.
(a) some (b) any
(c) more (d) no improvement

7. I was delighted to see *him fully recover.*
(a) he full recovered (b) him fully recovered
(c) his full recovery (d) no improvement

8. Even more than my father was she intolerant of demonstrativeness and the wearing of one's heart *on his sleeve.*
(a) one the sleeve
(b) on one's sleeve
(c) on her sleeve
(d) no improvement

9. I suggest that he *study* medicine.
(a) will study
(b) studies
(c) studied
(d) no improvement

10. The baby was left *in charge of a neighbour.*
(a) to care of
(b) to care for
(c) in the charge of
(d) no improvement

11. An accident took place early *today morning.*
(a) this morning
(b) morning today
(c) at the morning
(d) no improvement

12. After a few minutes the unconscious boxer began to come *out.*
(a) up
(b) round
(c) on
(d) no improvement

13. The winter was *such severe* that even water in the taps was frozen.
(a) severe such
(b) so severe
(c) severe so much
(d) no improvement

14. To succeed in a difficult task, *persistent is needed.*
(a) persistence was needed
(b) one needs to be persistent
(c) persistence should have needed
(d) no improvement

15. We demonstrated to them how we *were prepared* the artistic patterns.
(a) are prepared
(b) have prepared
(c) had prepared
(d) no improvement

16. I *earnestly believe* that you will visit our relatives during your forthcoming trip to Mumbai.
(a) certainly believing that
(b) could not believe
(c) had hardly believe
(d) no improvement

17. In fact, if it hadn't been for his *invaluable advice* on so many occasions, I wouldn't have achieved anything in life.
(a) remarkable advice
(b) valuable advices
(c) priceless suggestions
(d) no improvement

18. By temperament *the English* are reserve, so they prefer to live in solitary houses.
(a) English
(b) English people
(c) Some English
(d) no improvement

19. My father agreed *with my going alone* for the examination.
(a) I go alone
(b) to my going alone
(c) that I go alone
(d) no improvement

20. Mala *was hurried* to reach the meeting when she slipped and fell down.
(a) is hurried
(b) was being hurried
(c) was hurrying
(d) no improvement

21. The parents became extremely *troubled* when their son did not return by midnight.
(a) anxious
(b) depressed
(c) sad
(d) no improvement

22. Are you *more clever than us* ?
(a) cleverer to us (b) more cleverer to us
(c) cleverer than we (d) no improvement

23. Your statement that you were *thorough ignorant* of the consequences cannot be trust
(a) thoroughly in ignorance (b) thoroughly ignorance
(c) thoroughtly ignorant (d) no improvement

24. Asking me *why was I absent, I was punished by the Headmaster.*
(a) why was I absent, was I punished by the Headmaster
(b) why I was absent, was I punished by the Headmaster
(c) why I was absent, the Headmaster punished me
(d) no improvement

25. I am quite hopeful *of securing* very high marks in the examination.
(a) to secure (b) to having secured
(c) of having secured (d) no improvement

26. People are generally found *absorbing* in the activity which they like most.
(a) absorb (b) absorbed
(c) observe (d) no improvement

27. Nothing but books and magazines *pleases* her.
(a) were pleasing (b) please
(c) are pleasing (d) no improvement

28. If the pain *is returning*, you would better take another pill.
(a) has returned (b) should return
(c) returns (d) no improvement

29. Do you *remember to meet her* at my house last year?
(a) remember of meeting her (b) remember about meeting her
(c) remember having met her (d) no improvement

30. The greatest thing in style is to have a *use* of metaphor.
(a) command (b) knowledge
(c) need (d) no improvement

31. From next term we will go *all out* for sports.
(a) all go out (b) all be out
(c) be all out (d) no improvement

32. If you had attended the meeting, you *would have benefitted* a great deal.
(a) would benefit (b) could benefit
(c) benefited (d) no improvement

33. *Not only did he criticise* the party's policies but also the leader's personal matters.
(a) He criticised not only (b) He not only criticised
(c) He did not criticise (d) no improvement

34. Though courageous, he could not *hold up* against the heavy odds.
(a) hold fast (b) hold out
(c) hold in (d) no improvement

35. The man *to who I sold* my house was a cheat.
(a) to whom I sell (b) to who I sell
(c) to whom I sold (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (I)

1. *Although partially destroyed, the experts were able to infer* from what remained that the treasure was buried in the cave.
   (a) Although partially destroyed, the experts had inferred
   (b) Destroyed partially, the experts were able to infer
   (c) Although it had been partially destroyed, the experts were able to infer
   (d) no improvement
2. He spent much time and energy over it, and lost a large sum *in the bargain.*
   (a) into the bargain
   (b) with the bargain
   (c) off the bargain
   (d) no improvement
3. The Principal lamented that though a detailed report was submitted to the management a month ago, *no action is being taken so far.*
   (a) no action had taken
   (b) no action has been taken
   (c) any action had been taken
   (d) no improvement
4. The old man felled some trees with *hardly no effort* at all.
   (a) hard effort
   (b) a hardly any effort
   (c) hardly any effort
   (d) no improvement
5. We *might not be* able to change the situation quickly but we should continue our efforts in that direction.
   (a) could not be
   (b) had not been
   (c) would not be
   (d) no improvement
6. The record for the biggest tiger hunt has not been *met* since 1911 when Lord harding then Viceroy of India shot a tiger that mesured eleven feet six and three fourth inches.
   (a) bettered
   (b) improved
   (c) broken
   (d) no improvement
7. He is called *as the founder of the school.*
   (a) founder of the
   (b) founder of
   (c) the founder of the
   (d) no improvement
8. Even if I had stood on a chair; I *would not have been able to reach* the light bulb.
   (a) did not reach
   (b) could not reach
   (c) would not be reaching
   (d) no improvement
9. My mother asked me when *would I* have a glass of milk.
   (a) I shall
   (b) I would
   (c) I will
   (d) no improvement
10. As *he was much hated* by his contemporaries, posterity praises his statesmanship.
    (a) he was as much
    (b) so much he was
    (c) much as he was
    (d) no improvement
11. It is a common belief that familiarity *despenses with* the necessity of politeness.
    (a) dispenses of
    (b) dispenses without
    (c) dispenses from
    (d) no improvement
12. *On basis* this information the Deputy Collector took strong action.
    (a) On basis of
    (b) on the basis
    (c) on the basis of
    (d) no improvement

13. Certainly man must *look up* the future and find ways of providing for his needs.
(a) look for (b) look to
(c) look in (d) no improvement

14. When Shankar came home afte a hard day in the office, he found his wife *had slept.*
(a) was sleeping (b) sleeping
(c) has been sleeping (d) no improvement

15. Had you helped me, I *shall not be miserable.*
(a) would not be (b) should not be
(c) would not have been (d) no improvement

16. Because of the patient's ill health *losing weight was advised him by the doctor.*
(a) lost weight was what the doctor advised
(b) to lose weight was advised to him by the doctor
(c) he was advised by the doctor to lose weight
(d) no improvement

17. The train will leave at 8.30 P.M., we *have been* ready by 7.30 P.M. so that we can reach the station in time.
(a) should have (b) must be
(c) were (d) no improvement

18. May I know *who did accompany you* to the bus station ?
(a) who accompanied you (b) whom you accompanying
(c) whom did you accompany (d) no improvement

19. Just *in a hour's time,* he could complete the work to my satisfaction.
(a) in a hour (b) in an hour's time
(c) in the time of an hour (d) no improvement

20. It is high time he *starts to look* into his own flaws before speaking ill of others.
(a) started to look (b) starts looking
(c) started looking (d) no improvement

21. *Leaving a little room for* misinterpretation, the senior politician offered clarification about his role in the past elections.
(a) Leaving less room for (b) Leaving little room for
(c) Having left less room for (d) no improvement

22. The workers are *hell bent at getting* what is due to them.
(a) hell bent for getting (b) hell bent on getting
(c) hell bent upon getting (d) no improvement

23. I would rather you ***help*** my brother.
(a) you helped (b) you will help
(c) you have helped (d) no improvement

24. We should take up the first item, let *us begin this song.*
(a) this song begin us (b) us begin with this song
(c) us beginning this song (d) no improvement

25. Any *able bodied* man is eligible for the job.
(a) Any able-bodied men are (b) Each-able-bodied man is
(c) Any able-bodied men have been (d) no improvement

26. When it was feared that the serfs might go too far and gain their freedom from serfdom, tha Protestant leaders joined the princes *at crushing* them
(a) into crushing (b) in crushing
(c) without crushing (d) no improvement

27. He found the gold coin *as he cleans* the floor.
(a) while he cleans (b) as he had cleaning
(c) while cleaning (d) no improvement

28. *I, your brother and you* will be partners in the business.
(a) I, you and your brother (b) You, your brother and I
(c) You, I and your brother (d) no improvement

29. Each village adopted by the club was *provided by* electric supply.
(a) provided (b) provided with
(c) provided for (d) no improvement

30. He found it difficult *to cope along with his work.*
(a) to cope also with his work (b) to cope with his work
(c) to cope up with his work (d) no improvement

31. While we would like *that all Indian children* to go to school, we need to ponder why they do not.
(a) all Indian children (b) that all the Indian children
(c) if all the children of India (d) no improvement

32. The question is *how* the motive of the robber was in this particular case.
(a) what (b) where was
(c) when was (d) no improvement

33. Madan will not be *at home* until eight O'clock
(a) in home (b) to home
(c) home (d) no improvement

34. Why *did you not spoken* to me earlier ?
(a) did you not spoke (b) you did not spoke
(c) did you not speak (d) no improvement

35. *Although* you examine it carefully, you will notice some flaws in it.
(a) Unless (b) If
(c) Despite (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (J)

1. All of you are invited *to* the function
(a) for (b) into
(c) at (d) no improvement

2. The monograph which was published three years ago, *would suggest* that by 2010 there would be seventy three million T.V. sets in India.
(a) has been suggesting (b) had suggested
(c) would have suggested (d) no improvement

3. No one could explain how a calm and balanced person like him could *penetrate* such a mindless act on his friends.
(a) perpetuate (b) perpetrate
(c) precipitate (d) no improvement

4. If you have paid only twenty rupees for this purse, it *has realy cheap.*
   (a) has really cheapest (b) is really cheap
   (c) is real cheap (d) no improvement
5. She had no difficulty *to settle down* to her new life in the city.
   (a) in settling down (b) for settling down
   (c) to settling down (d) no improvement
6. If I were a millionaire, I *would have helped* the poor.
   (a) can help (b) could have helped
   (c) would help (d) no improvement
7. Nelson Mandela struggled hard to get equality *from* the whites in South Africa.
   (a) for (b) with
   (c) at (d) no improvement
8. He is not *in the good books* of his master.
   (a) in the good book (b) into the good books
   (c) in the best book (d) no improvement
9. There is an endless *running* of traffic on Delhi-Jaipur road.
   (a) heaviness (b) river
   (c) stream (d) no improvement
10. The Chinese are said to have *invented* ice-cream almost three thousand years ago.
   (a) are said that they (b) are saying to have
   (c) had said to have (d) no improvement
11. I need not offer any explanation regarding this incident, my behaviour *is speaking himself.*
   (a) speaks about itself (b) speaks for itself
   (c) has been speaking (d) no improvement
12. Even though our team took the field with great confidence, the opposition made them eat *the humble pie.*
   (a) a humble pie (b) humble pie
   (c) humble pies (d) no improvement
13. *I think in my opinion that* all those who claim to be honest are not really so.
   (a) In my opinion, (b) It seems to me
   (c) It is my believing (d) no improvement
14. The officer *whom I went* reported that my case was pending.
   (a) whom I went to (b) who I went
   (c) that I went (d) no improvement
15. He found it difficult to *adapt to* the changed circumstances.
   (a) adapt himself to (b) adapt with
   (c) adapt according to (d) no improvement
16. Any order which *curbs* a police officer from doing his duty is itself unlawful and should not be obeyed.
   (a) restricts (b) prevents
   (c) stops (d) no improvement
17. After the successful performancee of the great actor was over, there was *thunder struck* applause for a few minutes.
   (a) fearful (b) cheerful
   (c) thunderous (d) no improvement

18. He is so *handsome* man that people turn round to look at him.
(a) very hansome
(b) such a handsome
(c) too handsome
(d) no improvement

19. They continued to work in the field *despite of the heavy rains.*
(a) inspite of the heavy rains
(b) although heavily rains
(c) even it rained heavily
(d) no improvement

20. She has a passion *of music.*
(a) with
(b) for
(c) in
(d) no improvement

21. Wil you *lend me few rupees* in this hour of need.
(a) borrow me a few rupees
(b) lend my any rupees
(c) lend me a few rupees
(d) no improvement

22. To get one's name in the Rowland Ward's book of hunting records was the *hot* ambition of every serious hunter.
(a) burning
(b) extreme
(c) high
(d) no improvement

23. I spoke for *an hour.*
(a) one hour
(b) one full hour
(c) an hour fully
(d) no improvement

24. Hold *hands of your child* while crossing the road.
(a) your child's hands
(b) you child's hand
(c) hand of your child
(d) no improvement

25. Taxpayers *are* to be conscious of their privileges.
(a) need
(b) have to
(c) ought to
(d) no improvement

26. You can't go that way, I am afraid, as the road is *in repairs.*
(a) under repairs
(b) under repair
(c) on repairs
(d) no improvement

27. Our team lost the football match although the boys *put* in a very good performance.
(a) put on
(b) put up
(c) put off
(d) no improvement

28. *Have you not reached* in time, we would have lost our lives.
(a) had you not reach
(b) if you have not reached
(c) Had you not reached
(d) no improvement

29. *On some evenings,* I leave office as late as seven O'clock.
(a) In some evenings
(b) Some evenings
(c) On some of the evenings
(d) no improvement

30. It was quite clear that the runner *could be able* to improve upon his own record.
(a) will be able
(b) should be able
(c) would be able
(d) no improvement

31. What tribute shall we pay to Sardar Patel that he *would appreciate* ?
(a) would have appreciated
(b) could have appreciated
(c) should appreciate
(d) no improvement

32. The teacher was fed up *by* the boy's persistent misbehaviour.
(a) about (b) with
(c) from (d) no improvement

33. After taking tuition they are now *at the home in the Physics.*
(a) at home in the Physics (b) at home in Physics
(c) at the home in Physics (d) no improvement

34. You must *accustom yourself with* new ideas.
(a) accustomed with (b) accustom to
(c) accustom yourself to (d) no improvement

35. Your results depend not only on how much you have studied but how long you have read.
(a) but also how long (b) but also on how long
(c) but also on how much (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (K)

1. I told him that I *waited* for him for an hour the previous day.
(a) had waited (b) was waiting
(c) had been waiting (d) no improvement

2. As Suresh spoke about his achievements, his *high* claims amused us.
(a) big (b) tall
(c) huge (d) no improvement

3. We ought to *stand* for what is right.
(a) stand up for (b) stand on for
(c) stand at (d) no improvement

4. I walked away as calmly as I could, *or else* they would have thought I was the thief.
(a) otherwise (b) failing which
(c) in case (d) no improvement

5. A number of steps have been taken with a view to *improving* the conditions of the backward classes.
(a) to improve (b) for improving
(c) at improving (d) no improvement

6. By this time next year John *should have completed* his degree course at Mumbai University.
(a) will complete (b) would complete
(c) could have completed (d) no improvement

7. He will not risk *going for* business with you.
(a) to go for (b) going into for
(c) going in for (d) no improvement

8. It is *raining* havily all through this week.
(a) has rained (b) rains
(c) rained (d) no improvement

9. When Rip Van Winkle awoke from his long sleep, he asked where *I am.*
(a) I was (b) am I
(c) he was (d) no improvement

10. To write regularly *in pleasure* is what she wants to do now.
(a) for pleasure
(b) for the pleasure
(c) with pleasure
(d) no improvement

11. The alternative *of* my first suggestion is to resign.
(a) for
(b) to
(c) with
(d) no improvement

12. The sparrows took no *notice* about the bread.
(a) notice of
(b) notice from
(c) notice to
(d) no improvement

13. I had liked her since the first time I *had seen* her.
(a) have seen
(b) saw
(c) did see
(d) no improvement

14. Applications of those *who are graduates* will be considered.
(a) who are only graduates
(b) only who are graduates
(c) who are graduates only
(d) no improvement

15. After several years of silent suffering he finally decided to *put* himself against the manipulations of his political rivals.
(a) stand
(b) fight
(c) set
(d) no improvement

16. She tried to shake him *up* but he continued to pester her.
(a) away
(b) of
(c) off
(d) no improvement

17. Scarcely *had she left* the place than children arrived.
(a) had she left the place and
(b) had she left the place when
(c) she had left the place than
(d) no improvement

18. I dislike *him interrupting* me so rudely.
(a) his interrupting
(b) he interrupting
(c) his interruption of
(d) no improvement

19. I wonder whether *he has finished the work still.*
(a) he has yet finished the work
(b) he has finished the work yet
(c) he has still finished the work
(d) no improvement

20. *It being* bad weather, the repainting of the building was completed before the agreed date.
(a) it being a
(b) in spite of being a
(c) in spite of the
(d) no improvement

21. If this book is neither mine nor yours, it must be *somebody's else.*
(a) somebody's
(b) somebody else
(c) somebody else's
(d) no improvement

22. Anju is not so stupid as she looks, *she is*?
(a) isn't it ?
(b) does she?
(c) is she ?
(d) no improvement

23. *To have acquainted* with him, I could easily understand why he had done it.
(a) to be acquainted
(b) having acquainted
(c) being acquainted
(d) no improvement

24. With a view to *detect any weapon* carried by a passenger, sensitive machines are used at airports.
(a) detect all weapons
(b) detecting all Weapons
(c) detecting any weapon
(d) no improvement

25. If the school had been destroyed we *would have to go home.*
(a) would go home
(b) would have had to go home
(c) should go home
(d) no improvement

26. *When* he left the house, it has not ceased raining.
(a) ever before
(b) ever since
(c) until
(d) no improvement

27. While campaigning against child-labour the leader said that he *was feeling strongly* about children being made to work when they should be going to school.
(a) was feeling strong
(b) has been feeling strongly
(c) felt strongly
(d) no improvement

28. You would have succeeded if you *acted* upon my advice.
(a) had acted
(b) would have acted
(c) have acted
(d) no improvement

29. Don't hold this dirty insect in your hand; *throw it.*
(a) throw it down
(b) throw it out
(c) throw it away
(d) no improvement

30. The Principal asked me *that I should not enter* his office without permission.
(a) don't enter
(b) not to enter
(c) not entering
(d) no improvement

31. All that I wish to tell you is that you *better* revise this essay.
(a) should better
(b) could better
(c) had better
(d) no improvement

32. If it were possible to get near where one of the volcanic eruptions *took* place, we should see grand sight.
(a) takes
(b) was taking
(c) is taking
(d) no improvement

33. Whenever Suresh gets into trouble he *makes* a story to get out of it.
(a) makes for
(b) makes out
(c) makes up
(d) no improvement

34. We *could not help* admire his inventive genius.
(a) could not but
(b) could not help to
(c) could not help but
(d) no improvement

35. There is absolutely no reason to call his statement *in question.*
(a) under question
(b) out of question
(c) into question
(d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (L)

1. I had given him a lot of money, but he *ran up* it in a couple of weeks.
   (a) ran into (b) ran down
   (c) ran through (d) no improvement
2. It is time you *start* earning your own living.
   (a) started (b) would start
   (c) may start (d) no improvement
3. The Sun *set* before we reached the village.
   (a) would have set (b) would set
   (c) had set (d) no improvement
4. He evaded *to pay* income tax.
   (a) from paying (b) against paying
   (c) paying (d) no improvement
5. The members swore *on* the constitution to uphold the integrity of the country.
   (a) by (b) at
   (c) upon (d) no improvement
6. *More he gets, more* he wants
   (a) The more he gets, the more (b) The more he gets, more
   (c) More gets, the more (d) no improvement
7. We had a grand party and *we enjoyed very much.*
   (a) enjoyed very much (b) we enjoyed ourselves very much
   (c) enjoyed much (d) no improvement
8. All this has been done with a view *to improve* the living conditions of the poor.
   (a) to improving (b) of improving
   (c) for improving (d) no improvement
9. Let's go for a picnic, *shouldn't* we ?
   (a) won't (b) shan't
   (c) shall (d) no improvement
10. If I *have* the money, I should have bought this house.
    (a) had had (b) would have
    (c) should have (d) no improvement
11. If you are told *of a downright lie* about goods to induce you to buy them, you may have a remedy.
    (a) about a downright lie (b) a downright lie
    (c) downright lie (d) no improvement
12. His father forbade him *about entering* politics.
    (a) from entering (b) on enter
    (c) to enter (d) no improvement
13. To some extent, every child takes *after* his father.
    (a) upon (b) for
    (c) off (d) no improvement

14. The boss said, "I shall look *at* the matter".
(a) about (b) in
(c) into (d) no improvement

15. I did nothing but *laughed*
(a) laughing (b) laugh
(c) laughed aloud (d) no improvement

16. The highest recorded speed *of* shorthand under championship conditions, is 300 words per minute.
(a) in (b) for
(c) with (d) no improvement

17. There were many petty Rajput Kingdoms in India *prior than* the coming of the Mohammadans.
(a) prior from (b) prior up to
(c) prior to (d) no improvement

18. *Until* the last twenty eight years he has been working in various units of this plant.
(a) for (b) since
(c) during (d) no improvement

19. I hope you will be able to *steer ahead* of the anti-social elements.
(a) steer out (b) steer free
(c) steer clear (d) no improvement

20. Had Alizee been well, she *could participate* in the competition.
(a) would participate (b) would have participated
(c) will have participated (d) no improvement

21. If you have *some* doubts, please let me know.
(a) a few (b) few
(c) any (d) no improvement

22. *Leave* my arm, please,
(a) give up (b) let go
(c) release (d) no improvement

23. May I request you to *see* my testimonials?
(a) look at (b) see through
(c) attend to (d) no improvement

24. Malaria, *being earlier confined* to a few pockets of migrant workers, is now spreading in the national capital.
(a) being confined (b) earlier having beeb confined
(c) earlier confined (d) no improvement

25. *Scarcely he entered* the room when the phone rang.
(a) scarcely had he entered (b) scarcely he had entered
(c) scarcely he was entering (d) no improvement

26. It was a drawn game; neither of the teams *were* able to score a goal.
(a) was (b) is
(c) are (d) no improvement

27. The death of his father was prior *than* that of his mother.
(a) from (b) to
(c) for (d) no improvement

28. I look forward *to meet* you during the coming festival.
(a) for meeting (b) at meeting
(c) to meeting (d) no improvement

29. *No sooner he saw* the Police Superintendent than he disappeared.
(a) no sooner did he see (b) no sooner he had seen
(c) as soon as he see (d) no improvement

30. If I were a king, I *would have helped* my subjects.
(a) did have helped (b) could help
(c) would help (d) no improvement

31. The criminal was ordered to be *hanged to death.*
(a) hung till death (b) hung to death
(c) hanged till death (d) no improvement

32. A bird in hand is better than *two in the bush.*
(a) two on bush (b) two in bush
(c) two at a bush (d) no improvement

33. Since I am not new to Mumbai, you *must not have* come to the Railway Station to receive me.
(a) should not have (b) need not have
(c) ought not to have (d) no improvement

34. She prefers coffee *to* tea.
(a) than (b) over
(c) for (d) no improvement

35. Our professor is an authority on the subject which he *had been teaching* since 1966.
(a) has been teaching (b) is teaching
(c) was teaching (d) no improvement

Revision Exercise (M)

1. It is high time she *changes* her job.
(a) must change (b) had changed
(c) changed (d) no improvement

2. I am considering *to set up* a cyber cafe.
(a) setting (b) set up
(c) setting up (d) no improvement

3. Another question *we often ask* in thnose days was whether they believed in God.
(a) we will often ask (b) we are often asking
(c) we often asked (d) no improvement

4. Yes I would, if I *should,* rather be a sparrow than a snail.
(a) can (b) shall
(c) could (d) no improvement

5. Machines *turn* human society from an agrarian one into an industrial one.
(a) has turned (b) turned
(c) have turned (d) no improvement

6. I am afraid you two *are at cross-purpose.*
(a) are at cross-purpose (b) are in cross-purpose
(c) are at cross-purposes (d) no improvement

7. I am surprised that he *dares speak* in such a tone to his father.
   (a) he dares to speak (b) he dare to speak
   (c) he dare speak (d) no improvement
8. Take care *that you* are not be cheated.
   (a) that you will not be cheated (b) you will not be cheated
   (c) that you are not cheated (d) no improvement
9. He does not smoke, *nor he drinks.*
   (a) nor he does drink. (b) neither he does drink.
   (c) nor does he drink. (d) no improvement
10. The patient *could have been saved* if he had been taken to the hospital in time.
   (a) could be saved (b) could save
   (c) had been saved (d) no improvement
11. I must speak to the landlord about the people. They make *much noise.*
   (a) much of noise. (b) very much noise
   (c) too much noise (d) no improvement
12. When the bomb went off, it broke *all of our windows.*
   (a) all our windows (b) all windows of us.
   (c) our all windows. (d) no improvement
13. Knowing very little English, *it was difficult to converse* with the foreigners.
   (a) I found it dificult to converse (b) to converse was difficult
   (c) conversing was difficult (d) no improvement
14. He is quite well now, *a slight cold.*
   (a) except with a slight cold (b) excepting a slight cold.
   (c) except for a slight cold. (d) no improvement
15. He does not like me *coming so late.*
   (a) my coming so late (b) I coming so late
   (c) me come so late (d) no improvement
16. *I have to cut* down my expenses due to my falling income.
   (a) I have to cut off (b) I have to cut out
   (c) I have to cut of (d) no improvement
17. Of the two candidates, I think *he is the best suited.*
   (a) he is suited best (b) he is the better suited
   (c) he is best suited (d) no improvement
18. The climate of Delhi is somewhat *like Jaipur.*
   (a) like Jaipur's (b) as jaipur's
   (c) as Jaipur (d) no improvement
19. His brother *never has* and never will be dependable.
   (a) never had (b) never has been
   (c) was never being (d) no improvement
20. If you *would have remembered* to bring the map, we would not have lost our way.
   (a) had remembered (b) were remembering
   (c) remembered (d) no improvement
21. You must *carry on* my order.
   (a) carry out my order (b) carry out my orders
   (c) carry of (d) no improvement

22. The boat *was* drowned.
(a) was drown
(b) was drowned
(c) was sunk
(d) no improvement

23. Now I must *beg leave of you.*
(a) beg your leave
(b) beg of your leave
(c) beg off your leave
(d) no improvement

24. *When describing* the accident, he was in tears.
(a) in describing
(b) when he was describing
(c) as describing
(d) no improvement

25. The two thieves distributed the loot *between themselves.*
(a) among themselves
(b) amongst themselves
(c) with themselves
(d) no improvement

26. *The preservation of peace* is necessary.
(a) maintenance of peace
(b) establishment of peace
(c) persuasion of peace
(d) no improvement

27. The spirit of democracy had sped *into* our way of thinking.
(a) leaked into
(b) permeated
(c) soaked into
(d) no improvement

28. The *decent* from the mountain peak was slow and painful.
(a) descent
(b) decline
(c) decrease
(d) no improvement

29. The building *will redecorate* during the summer season.
(a) will be redecorated
(b) will be redecorating
(c) will be redecorate
(d) no improvement

30. The police are *looking* the robber.
(a) looking to
(b) looking out
(c) looking for
(d) no improvement

31. He came in looking as if he *sees* a ghost.
(a) saw
(b) will see
(c) had seen
(d) no improvement

32. Ancient India *must has* learned scholars.
(a) must have
(b) must have had
(c) must had
(d) no improvement

33. He will *have this book print* at my press.
(a) have this book printed
(b) this book printed
(c) has this book printed
(d) no improvement

34. He *is travelling all over the country by next year.*
(a) has been travelling
(b) will have been travelling
(c) will have travelled
(d) no improvement

35. *The Guptas are living* in the colony for two years now.
(a) Guptas are living
(b) Guptas have been living
(c) The Guptas have been living
(d) no improvement

Chapter

18 Selecting the Correct Sentences

In this part of section each set comprises four alternatives where different forms of the same sentences are given on the same theme and subject.

A student is required to select a sentence which is the most suitable in respect of meaning and grammatical correctness. The correct alternative is supposed to give the exact meaning besides being grammatically correct.

Revision Exercise (A)

Directions : *Each set of the following sectences comprises four alternatives labelled as 'A', 'B', 'C' and 'D'. Candidate is required to select the most suitable alternative which coveys the exact meaning in accordance with the correct grammatical rules.*

1. A. To be intelligent is more essential than being hard working.
   B. Being intelligent is more important than to be hard working.
   C. For one to be intelligent is more important than being hard working.
   D. Being intelligent is more essential than being hard working.
2. A. If he wins the prize I would be very happy.
   B. If he were to win the prize I'll be very happy.
   C. If he was to win the prize I would be very happy.
   D. If he were to win the prize I would be very happy.
3. A. Our school had won the match if only we have concentrated.
   B. Our school would have won the match if only we would have concentrated.
   C. Our school would have won the match if only we had concentrated.
   D. Our school had won the match if only we would have concentrated.
4. A. My sister had left for America last week.
   B. My sister has been left for America last week.
   C. My sister has left for America last week.
   D. My sister left for America last week.
5. A. It is high time he will start earning.
   B. It is high time he started earning.
   C. It is high time he starts earning.
   D. It is high time he has started earning.
6. A. It is a pleasure to see an alligator basking in the sunshine on a river bank as long as ninety feet.
   B. It is a pleasure to see an alligator as long as ninety feet basking in the sunshine on a river bank.
   C. It is a pleasure to see an alligator basking in the sunshine as long as ninety feet on a river bank.
   D. It is a pleasure to see an alligator basking as long as ninety feet in the sunshine on a river bank.

7. A. The villagers were enjoying winter evening around the fire.
   B. The villagers were enjoying winter evening around a fire.
   C. The villagers were enjoying winter evening around fire.
   D. The villagers were enjoying winter evening round fire.

8. A. When he had lost the book he searched it everywhere.
   B. When he lost the book he searched for it everywhere.
   C. When he lost the book he had searched for it everywhere.
   D. When he lost the book he searched it up everywhere.

9. A. This was the ideal book available in the market.
   B. This was most ideal book available in the market.
   C. This was a most ideal book available in the market.
   D. This was the most ideal book available in the market.

10. A. An one-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.
    B. A one-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.
    C. The one-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.
    D. One-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.

11. A. It is the duty of a house-wife to wait on the guest.
    B. It is the duty of a house-wife to wait for the guest.
    C. It is the duty of a house-wife to wait the guest.
    D. It is the duty of a house-wife to await the guest.

12. A. You are not working hard so your success is out of a question.
    B. You are not working hard so your success is out of the question.
    C. You are not working hard so your success is out of question.
    D. You are not working hard so your success is not out of the question.

13. A. You cannot win my confidence without ever believing me.
    B. You cannot win my confidence without never believing me.
    C. You cannot win my confidence without not believing me.
    D. You cannot win my confidence with ever believing me.

14. A. It is strange that you don't know swimming.
    B. It is strange that you don't know how to swim.
    C. It is strange that you don't know how to swimming.
    D. It is strange that you don't know to swim.

15. A. The receptionist must answer courteously the questions what are asked by the callers.
    B. The receptionist must answer courteously the questions of all the callers.
    C. The receptionist should answer courteously the questions of all the callers.
    D. The receptionist courteously should answer the question of callers.

16. A. As he was sick, he was quite enthusiastic.
    B. Since he was sick, he was quite enthusiastic.
    C. As sick he was, he was quite enthusiastic.
    D. Sick as he was, he was quite enthusiastic.

17. A. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves me more than he.
    B. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves more than him.
    C. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves me more than him.
    D. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves I more than he.

18. A. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ with you.
    B. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ from you.
    C. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ in you.
    D. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ you.

19. A. Neena can do it alone and no body else can do it.
    B. Neena alone can do it and nobody else can do it.
    C. Neena can alone do it and nobody else can do it.
    D. Alone Neena can do it and no body else can do it.

20. A. Due to want of rain the wells have gone dry.
    B. Because of want of rain the wells have gone dry.
    C. For want of rain the wells have gone dry.
    D. Owing to want of rain the wells have gone dry.

Revision Exercise (B)

1. A. As the train which was my usual was missing I had to travel.
   B. Having missed the train which I usually catch and had to travel.
   C. I missed the train which I usually catch and had to travel by the next.
   D. I missed not only the train which I usually catch but had to travel on the next.

2. A. He may be poor now but he appears to have been rich in his youth.
   B. He may be poor now but he appears to be rich in his youth.
   C. He may be poor now but he appears being rich in his youth.
   D. He may be poor now but he appears to rich in his youth.

3. A. By June next year Ajay will be twenty years working in the office.
   B. Till June next year Ajay will work in the office for twenty years.
   C. Till June next year Ajay will work in the office for twenty years.
   D. By June next year Ajay will have been working in the office for twenty years.

4. A. He went to the wholesale market and bought the cheap rations.
   B. He went to the wholesale market and bought the rations cheap.
   C. He went to the wholesale market and bought rations cheaply.
   D. He went to the wholesale market and cheaply bought rations.

5. A. I went yesterday to the bank to collect the pass book.
   B. I went to the bank to collect the pass book.
   C. Yesterday to collect the pass book I went to the bank.
   D. To collect the pass book yesterday I went to the bank.

6. A. The principal appointed him as a peon in the college.
   B. The principal appointed him a peon in the college.
   C. As a peon the Principal appointed him in the college.
   D. The principal as a peon appointed him in the college.

7. A. The team is confident to win the match.
   B. The team is confident of winning the match.
   C. The team is confident of win the match.
   D. The team is confident for winning the match.

8. A. He is one of the best policeman who has ever lived.
   B. He is one of the best policeman who have ever lived.
   C. He is one of the best policemen that have ever lived.
   D. He is one of the best policeman that has ever lived.

9. A. My sister is the poet and the philosopher.
   B. My sister is a poet and the philosopher.
   C. My sister is a poet and a philosopher.
   D. My sister is a poet and philosopher.

10. A. Meena seldom or ever refuses an invitation.
    B. Meena seldom or always refuses an invitation.
    C. Meena seldom or never refuses an invitation.
    D. Meena seldom if never refuses an invitation.

11. A. There is no meaning in what you say.
    B. There is no meaning in that you say.
    C. There is no meaning as to what you say.
    D. There is no meaning that you say.

12. A. I hope you will excuse my leaving early.
    B. I hope you will excuse me leaving early.
    C. I hope you will excuse mine leaving early.
    D. I hope you will excuse leaving early.

13. A. I am ready to say this at her face.
    B. I am ready to say this on her face.
    C. I am ready to say this in her face.
    D. I am ready to say this to her face.

14. A. On account of shortage of time both of them cannot finish their work.
    B. On account of shortage of time none of them can finish their work.
    C. On account of shortage of time neither of them can finish his work.
    D. On account of shortage of time neither of them cannot finish his work.

15. A. Many problems are staring at my face.
    B. Many problems are staring in my face.
    C. Many problems are staring me into my face.
    D. Many problems are staring me in my face.

16. A. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives on grass and leaves.
    B. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives at grass and leaves.
    C. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives in grass and leaves.
    D. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives for grass and leaves.

17. A. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate the loss to him.
    B. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate him for the loss.
    C. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate him in the loss.
    D. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate his loss.

18. A. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I was to go there.
    B. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I have to go there.
    C. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I am to go there.
    D. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I was to have gone there.

19. A. She insisted on me to stay there.
    B. She insisted on me staying there.
    C. She insisted on my staying there.
    D. She insisted in my staying there.

20. A. You can meet my father only when he goes to prison.
    B. You can meet father only when he goes into prison.
    C. You can meet my father only when he goes in prison.
    D. You can meet my father only when he goes to the prison.

Revision Exercise (C)

1. A. Since the dividend being declared then the notices were prepared for mailing.
   B. No sooner had the dividend being declared then the notices were prepared for mailing.
   C. No sooner had the dividend been declared than the notices were prepared for mailing.
   D. Scarcely had the dividend being declared than the notices were sent out.

2. A. He did not report for work today. He must has gone to the party.
   B. He did not report for work today. He must have gone to the party.
   C. He did not report for work today. He must go to the party.
   D. He did not report for work today. He must had gone to the party.

3. A. She is not as wise as his brother.
   B. She is not equally wise as his brother.
   C. She is not as wise like his brother.
   D. She is not so wise as his brother.

4. A. There will be a meeting in the long room at 4 o'clock of all the boys who play cricket and football.
   B. There will be in the long room at 4 o'clock a meeting of all the boys who play cricket and football.
   C. In the long room at 4 o'clock there will be a meeting of all the boys who play cricket and football.
   D. There will be a meeting of all the boys who play cricket and football at 4 o'clock.

5. A. The teacher made it a point to explain him the situation.
   B. The teacher made it a point to explain the situation him.
   C. The teacher made it a point explain him about the situation.
   D. The teacher made it a point to explain the situation to him.

6. A. The landlady made the servant to run to market to fetch her sweets.
   B. The landlady made the servant run to market to fetch her sweets.
   C. The landlady made to the servant to run to market to fetch her sweets.
   D. The landlady made to the servant run to market to fetch her sweets.

7. A. The audience looked at him while he spoke.
   B. The audience looked at him while he had spoken.
   C. The audience looked at him while he was speaking.
   D. The audience looked at him while he had been speaking.

8. A. Your answers are better than Mohan.
   B. Your answers are better than Mohan's.
   C. Your answers are better than those of Mohan's.
   D. Your answers are better than answered by Mohan.

9. A. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing else but a cheat.
   B. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing else than a cheat.
   C. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing else except a cheat.
   D. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing but for a cheat.

10. A. The manager asked him how he would avail this opportunity.
    B. The manager asked him how he would avail of this opportunity.
    C. The manager asked him how he would avail himself of this opportunity.
    D. The manager asked him how he would avail himself this opportunity.

11. A. The teacher asked the students to thoroughly study this book.
    B. The teacher asked the students thoroughly to study this book.
    C. The teacher asked thoroughly the students to study this book.
    D. The teacher asked the students to study thoroughly this book.

12. A. The important lessons are following.
    B. The important lessons are as following.
    C. The important lessons are as follows.
    D. The important lessons are as follow.

13. A. The teacher asked the student with a frown on his face to leave the room.
    B. The teacher asked with a frown on his face the student to leave the room.
    C. With a frown on his face the teacher asked the student to leave the room.
    D. The teacher asked the student to leave the room with a frown on his face.

14. A. The typists had corrected the errors had they known that the supervisors would have seen the report.
    B. The supervisors reprimanded the typists whom they believed had made careless errors.
    C. The errors in the typed reports were so numerous that they could hardly be over-looked.
    D. The typist would have corrected the errors had they known that the supervisor would see the reports.

15. A. He carried the little child and me on his shoulders.
    B. It was me that gave away the prizes.
    C. All what he said had no effect on me.
    D. They who did this thing should be punished.

16. A. In order to solve the murder case a C.B.I. officer is looking about the matter.
    B. It is high time that you went to bed.
    C. Though he looked innocent he turned into be cheat.
    D. The majority of the workers was divided on the issue.

17. A. You cannot win my confidence until you are sincere.
    B. When he lost the book he searched it everywhere.
    C. She was intent to harm her friends.
    D. I have not met my friend for the last five days.

18. A. He started to work hard lest he might starve in old age.
    B. He started working hard lest he should not starve in old age.
    C. He started to work hard lest he should starve in old age.
    D. He started working hard lest he should starve in old age.

19. A. If I had money I would have bought the new house tomorrow.
    B. If I had had money I would have bought a new house tomorrow.
    C. If I had had money I would buy a new house tomorrow.
    D. If I had money I would buy a new house tomorrow.

20. A. Taking my food I left for college.
    B. While I was taking my food I left for college.
    C. Having taken my food I left for college.
    D. Taking my food I shall leave for college.

Revision Exercise (D)

1. A. The harassed wife shot herself after bidding her husband the last good bye with a gun.
   B. The harassed wife with a gun shot herself after bidding her husband the last good bye.
   C. The harassed wife shot herself with a gun after bidding her husband the last good bye.
   D. With a gun the harassed wife shot herself after bidding her husband the last good bye.

2. A. He repeated the essay word by word.
   B. Being a rainy day he did not go out.
   C. She is senior but not more efficient than I.
   D. All his friends are very sincere.

3. A. She had waited long before her husband had returned.
   B. She waited long when her husband returned.
   C. She had waited long after her husband returned.
   D. She had waited long before her husband returned.

4. A. Even if intelligent he may be he can't succeed.
   B. If intelligent he may be he can't succeed.
   C. However intelligent he may be he can't succeed.
   D. Even intelligent he may be he can't pass.

5. A. Had I been you I would help him.
   B. If I had been you I would help him.
   C. Should I you I would help him.
   D. Were I you I would help him.

6. A. I realised later on that he cheated me.
   B. I had realised later that he cheated me.
   C. I had realised later that he had cheated me.
   D. I realised later on that he had cheated me.

7. A. They arrived early because they may not miss the train.
   B. They arrived early that they may not miss the train.
   C. They arrived early when they miss the train.
   D. They arrived early so that they might not miss the train.

8. A. I was rather impressed by the manner of the speaker than by his matter.
   B. I was impressed by the manner of the speaker rather than by his matter.
   C. Rather I was impressed by the manner of the speaker than by his matter.
   D. I was impressed rather by the manner of the speaker than by his matter.

9. A. He is vain as though he were a millionaire.
   B. She acted as if her mother asked her to do.
   C. She carried the child carefully lest it should not fall.
   D. I don't relish the food whose taste is sour.

10. A. The nature of my brother is the same as yours.
    B. This is one of those novels which is admired all over the world.
    C. He is such a friend that will sacrifice for me.
    D. I wish he comes everyday.

11. A. So quickly he returned from market that I was surprised.
    B. So quickly did he returned from the market that I was surprised.
    C. So quickly did he return from the market that I was surprised.
    D. So quickly did he return from the market that I had been surprised.

12. A. Would you help my brother I shall get you a decent job.
    B. Had you helped my brother I shall get you a decent job.
    C. Did you help my brother I shall get you a decent job.
    D. Should you help my brother I'll get you a decent job.

13. A. A summon has been served on him.
    B. A summons have been served on him.
    C. A summons has been served on him.
    D. A summon have been served to him.

14. A. You are not allowed to enter into the house.
    B. You are not allowed to enter the house.
    C. You are not allowed to enter in the house.
    D. You are not allowed to enter on the house.

15. A. Little care was needed to avert the accident.
    B. The little care was needed to avert the accident.
    C. A little care was needed to avert the accident.
    D. Less care was needed to avert the accident.

16. A. Could you please help me with any money?
    B. Could you please help me with some money?
    C. Would you please help me with any money?
    D. Can you please help me with some money?

17. A. Leena is a most intelligent student in the class.
    B. Leena is the most intelligent student.
    C. Leena is a most intelligent student.
    D. Leena is most intelligent student in the class.

18. A. She is more intelligent than any other boy in the class.
    B. She is more intelligent than any girl in the class.
    C. She is more intelligent than any other girl in the class.
    D. She is the most intelligent than any other girl in the class.

19. A. The teaching staff must take their lectures regularly when are asked by the Principal.
    B. The teaching staff would have taken lectures regularly had they known that the Principal would know about it.
    C. The teaching staff had taken the lectures regularly had they known that the Principal would come to know about it.
    D. Many irregularities were found in their lectures by the Principal and he could not be disregarded them.

20. A. Anita was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple with her lap full of newspapers when Bunty and Bitto came up.
B. Anita with her lap full of newspapers was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple when Bunty and Bitto came up.
C. With her lap full of newspapers Anita was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple when Bunty and Bitto came up.
D. Anita was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple when Bunty and Bittu came up with her lap full of newspapers.

Revision Exercise (E)

1. A. As he is careless he will not hear what the teacher says.
B. As he is careless he will not hear to what the teacher says.
C. As he is careless he will not listen what the teacher says.
D. As he is careless he will not listen to what the teacher says.

2. A. Shikha has been known by me for five years.
B. Shikha is known by me for five years.
C. Shikha is known to me for five years.
D. Shikha has been known to me for five years.

3. A. As soon as holidays be begin than this beach will become very crowded.
B. Since the holidays being started this beach becomes very crowded.
C. As soon as the holidays begin, this beach will become very crowded.
D. No sooner did the holiday begin than this beach will become very crowded.

4. A. You must aspire for the post according to your capability.
B. You must aspire to the post according to your capability.
C. You must aspire after the post according to your capability.
D. You must aspire the post according to your capability.

5. A. A good teacher provides a student all the useful information.
B. A good teacher provides to a student all the useful information.
C. A good teacher provides a student with all the useful information.
D. A good teacher provides to student with all the useful information.

6. A. Nobody will want to play in his team if he does not treat people kindly.
B. If he will not treat people kindly nobody will want to play in his team.
C. Nobody will treat people kindly if he does not want to play in his team.
D. Nobody will want to treat people if he does not play in his team kindly.

7. A. The priest read to the dying man couplets from the scriptures.
B. The priest read the dying man the couplets from the scriptures.
C. The priest read for the dying man the couplets from the scriptures.
D. The priest read the couplets from the scriptures for the dying man.

8. A. I do not understand to whom she is talking.
B. I do not understand whom she is talking about.
C. I do not understand who she is talking to.
D. I do not understand whom she is talking.

9. A. The boy regretted that with a plastered leg he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair.
   B. The boy regretted that he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair with a plastered leg.
   C. With a plastered leg, the boy regretted that he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair.
   D. The boy with a plastered leg regretted that he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair.

10. A. In thirty-seven bomb blasts, fortunately only five lives were lost.
   B. In thirty-seven bomb blasts, only five lives were fortunately lost.
   C. In fortunately thirty-seven bomb blasts only five lives were lost.
   D. Fortunately, in thirty-seven bomb blasts, only five lives were lost.

11. A. She is annoyed with you. You ought not to tell her secrets to her mother.
   B. She is annoyed with you. You ought not to have told her secrets to her mother.
   C. She is annoyed with you, you ought to tell her secrets to her mother.
   D. She is annoyed with you. You ought to have told her secrets to her mother.

12. A. It is the best which she could do for me.
   B. It is the best what she could do for me.
   C. It is the best that she could do for me.
   D. It is best that she could for me.

13. A. The early age of three or four years, would begin our first recollection of the world, for many of us.
   B. Our first recollection of the world, for many of us, would be early age of three or four years.
   C. For many of us, our first recollection of the world is from the early age of only three or four years.
   D. For many of us, our first recollection of the world has been the early age of only three or four years.

14. A. Now-a-days singing is a very profitabe profession.
   B. Now-a-days the singing is a very profitable profession.
   C. Now-a-days singing is very profitable profession.
   D. Now-a-days the singing is very profitable profession.

15. A. The report was useless to them because there was no needed information.
   B. Since the report lacked needed information would have not been useful to them.
   C. Since the report did not control the needed information it was not really useful to them.
   D. Since the report lacked the needed information it was of no use to them.

16. A. Men are rather impressed by beauty than by character.
   B. Men are impressed rather by beauty than by character.
   C. Rather men are impressed by beauty than by character.
   D. Men are impressed by beauty than by character.

17. A. So quickly she ran upstairs that she over took me.
    B. So quickly did she ran upstairs that she over took me.
    C. She ran so quickly upstairs that she had overtaken me.
    D. So quickly did she run upstairs that she overtook me.

18. A. He wasn't rich by any means, although he never turned down anyone who needed help.
    B. Being not rich by any means he never turned away, anyone who needed help.
    C. He wasn't rich by any means but he never turned away anyone who needed help.
    D. Since he wasn't rich by any means, he never turned away anyone who needed help.

19. A. Some people consider Karan the valorous hero of all the characters in the Mahabharata.
    B. Some people consider Karan as the most valorous hero of all the characters in the Mahabharata.
    C. Some people consider Karan the most valorous hero of all the other characters in the Mahabharata.
    D. Some people consider Karan the most valorous hero of all the characters in the Mahabharata.

20. A. Neither she comes nor she writes.
    B. Neither does she comes nor she writes.
    C. Neither does she come nor writes.
    D. Neither does she come nor does she write.

❑

ANSWERS

UNIT-VI

16. Spotting Errors

Exercise (A)

1. (c) Say 'speaking' for 'to speak'
2. (b) Say 'he could go'
3. (a) Say 'One of the states'
4. (a) Say 'had the inspector'
5. (b) Say 'has been trying'
6. (b) Say 'dry up'
7. (a) Say 'laid' for 'lay'
8. (d) No error
9. (c) Use 'on' in place of 'to'
10. (a) Add 'It' before 'being'
11. (c) Say 'the train had left'
12. (c) say 'full marks'
13. (b) Use 'has' in place of 'have'
14. (a) Say 'had written'
15. (b) Say 'there has been'
16. (d) No error
17. (b) to revise
18. (c) Remove 'that'
19. (b) Remove 'together'
20. (b) Say 'the machine age'
21. (a) Add 'a' before 'sense'
22. (b) Say 'estimates'
23. (b) Use 'nor' for 'or'
24. (a) Remove 'shall'
25. (a) Say 'furniture has been'

Exercise (B)

1. (d) No error
2. (b) Say 'the Earth'
3. (a) Say 'have we been'
4. (c) Say 'have' for 'had'
5. (c) Say 'between' for 'among'
6. (c) Say 'but also'
7. (b) 'why I do not like him'
8. (a) Remove 'have'
9. (b) Say 'information'
10. (a) Say 'Are there' for 'Is there'
11. (b) Delete 'to'
12. (a) Say 'has been running'
13. (b) Use 'on air flights'
14. (a) Say 'gratitute'
15. (c) Remove 'that' after 'so'
16. (a) Remove 'off'
17. (c) Use 'to' in place of 'for'
18. (a) Remove 'to'
19. (c) Use 'for' in place of 'since'
20. (a) Say 'round the clock'
21. (b) Say 'men' for 'man'
22. (d) No error
23. (d) No error
24. (b) Say 'if one is happy'
25. (a) Say 'have done'

Exercise (C)

1. (d) No error
2. (d) No error
3. (a) Use 'practises'
4. (b) Use 'was' for 'were'
5. (b) Say 'as much as'
6. (c) Say 'you and me'
7. (d) No error
8. (c) Say 'playing games'

9. (d) No error
10. (a) Say 'The team were'
11. (b) Delete 'have'
12. (b) Add 'on' after 'kept'
13. (b) Use 'of' in place of 'with'
14. (d) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
15. (c) Say 'for me'
16. (d) Say 'requires'
17. (b) Use 'to' in place of 'in'
18. (d) Delete 'most'
19. (d) Say 'in a skilful manner'
20. (c) Remove 'but'
21. (b) Say 'I were interested'
22. (c) Say 'by the sea'
23. (c) Say 'if' for 'when'
24. (d) No error
25. (a) Say 'was supposed'

Exercise (D)

1. (b) Say 'when' for 'as'
2. (c) 'neither of them' in place of 'none'
3. (a) 'despite' for 'Despite of'
4. (c) Say 'sent to exile'
5. (a) Say 'hardly had I'
6. (b) Say 'so high'
7. (a) 'to' in place of 'in'
8. (c) Say 'which have appeared'
9. (c) 'playing' for 'play'
10. (d) No error
11. (d) No error
12. (c) 'Until' in place of 'till for'
13. (c) 'neither' in place of 'either'
14. (c) 'Beauty' in place of 'Beauties'
15. (d) No error
16. (c) Use 'can' in place of 'could'
17. (a) 'hard up' in place of 'hard down'
18. (c) In the afternoon
19. (b) say 'fiscal' for 'financial'
20. (a) 'have won' in place of 'won'
21. (a) Say 'arrogant of' for 'arrogant for'
22. (b) 'to take only' in place of 'need only'
23. (c) 'than those of Britain' in place of 'than Britain'
24. (b) 'a sport' for 'sport'
25. (b) Use 'whom' in place of 'who'

Exercise (E)

1. (b) 'any one' in place of 'either'
2. (c) 'were' in place of 'was'
3. (c) 'that of any' in place of 'in any'
4. (b) Remove 'more'
5. (c) 'thoroughly' for 'thorough'
6. (a) 'to worry' in place of 'worrying'
7. (d) 'No error'
8. (a) Use 'No other students' in place of 'No students'
9. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
10. (b) Use 'in the shade'
11. (c) Use 'has gone to Simla'
12. (c) Use 'it' in place of 'the same'
13. (a) Use 'told' in place of 'said'
14. (a) Place 'not only' after 'saw'
15. (a) Say 'direct'
16. (a) Drop 'on' after 'signed'
17. (b) Use 'that' in place of 'which'
18. (a) Use 'Not to speak of' in place of 'What to speak of'
19. (c) Say 'one end to other'
20. (c) Say 'door'
21. (a) Drop 'hardly'
22. (c) Drop 'more'
23. (d) 'no error'
24. (a) use 'off' for 'up'
25. (b) Use 'means' for 'mean'

Exercise (F)

1. (d) No error
2. (b) Use 'effect'
3. (d) No error
4. (b) Use 'to' for 'with'
5. (c) Say 'most of the time'
6. (c) all the other questions
7. (b) Remove 'over'
8. (d) No error
9. (c) Use 'in' in place of 'of' before 'air'
10. (a) 'light' in place of 'lightness'
11. (b) 'have not been' in place of 'have been not'
12. (e) that
13. (a) Use 'outright' in place of 'outrightly'
14. (c) use 'but' for 'than'
15. (d) No error
16. (d) No error
17. (a) Say 'too bad' for 'bad enough'
18. (b) Use 'in finding' for 'to find'
19. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
20. (b) Place 'was' after 'hall'
21. (d) No error
22. (c) Use 'was' in place of 'were'
23. (b) Use 'when' in place of 'than'
24. (c) Use 'that' in place of 'because'
25. (b) Drop 'about'

Exercise (G)

1. (c) say 'to' for 'among'
2. (a) Use 'The first two'
3. (a) Use 'suffer from'
4. (b) Use 'practise' in place of 'practice'
5. (b) 'foreword' in place of 'forward'
6. (d) No error
7. (b) Use 'ascent' for 'assent'
8. (b) Use 'incredible' for 'incredulous'
9. (b) Use 'non-inflammable' for 'inflammable'
10. (a) Use 'Besides' for 'Beside'
11. (c) Use 'among'
12. (c) Use 'personnel' for 'personal'
13. (c) Say 'I like' for 'I am liking'
14. (b) Use 'ourselves' after 'enjoyed'
15. (a) Use 'hard' in place of 'hardly'
16. (c) Use 'fell' in place of 'had fallen'
17. (a) Use 'the car' before 'having'
18. (b) Say 'have won'
19. (c) Use 'orders' for 'order'
20. (c) Say 'catch up with'
21. (a) Use 'No sooner' for 'Scarcely'
22. (d) No error
23. (a) Use 'has eaten' in place of 'ate'
24. (c) 'a glimmer of hope'
25. (c) Say 'what I wanted'

Exercise (H)

1. (a) Use 'the' before 'flow'
2. (c) Use 'to' for 'with'
3. (b) Use 'leads' in place of 'lead'
4. (a) Remove 'the' before 'temple'
5. (a) Say 'passed' in place of 'have passed'
6. (c) Use 'doesn't it?' in place of 'isn't it?'
7. (a) Remove 'don't'
8. (b) Use 'how many' for 'how much'
9. (c) Use 'rises' in place of 'raises'
10. (b) Use 'is' for 'are'
11. (c) Use 'were' in place of 'was'
12. (c) Use 'me' for 'I'
13. (a) Say 'has taken'
14. (b) Use 'that' for 'if'
15. (c) 'yet' in place of 'still'
16. (a) Say 'If one stands on' for 'Standing on'
17. (c) Delete 'in'
18. (b) Use 'you bought' in place of 'you buy'
19. (a) Use 'my brother and I'
20. (a) Add 'did' after 'Darwin'
21. (c) Use 'just a' in place of 'a just'
22. (c) Say 'at the back'
23. (b) Use 'from' in place of 'over'
24. (d) No error
25. (c) say 'neither has my sister been'

Exercise (I)

1. (b) Use 'was' in place of 'were'
2. (d) No error
3. (c) 'Its' for 'their'
4. (a) Use 'principal' in place of 'principle'
5. (a) Use 'A unit' in place of 'An unit'
6. (a) Use 'stood out' in place of 'stood off'
7. (b) Use 'are' in place of 'is'
8. (c) Use 'her and me' in place of 'she and I'
9. (d) No error
10. (c) say 'something'
11. (c) Remove 'has'
12. (b) say 'had seen' for 'saw'
13. (a) Say 'pillar' to 'post'
14. (c) Use 'paper over'
15. (b) Say 'a story'
16. (c) Remove 'over'
17. (c) 'so' in place of 'likely'
18. (a) Add 'the' before 'turtle'
19. (d) No error
20. (c) Say 'That what you'
21. (b) No error
22. (b) Say 'gloss' for 'glass'
23. (a) Say has certainly
24. (c) Use 'has been reached'
25. (a) Use 'Until' for 'Unless'

Exercise (J)

1. (a) Say 'needs to marry'
2. (b) Use 'strikes' for 'strike'
3. (d) No error
4. (b) Use 'adverse' for 'averse'
5. (b) Use 'contemptable' for 'contemptuous'
6. (a) Say 'if I had arrived'
7. (b) Say 'to his joining'
8. (c) Use 'considerably' for 'considerable'
9. (c) Use 'that' in place of 'because'
10. (a) Remove 'not'
11. (a) Say 'I have been playing'
12. (d) No error
13. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
14. (d) No error
15. (c) Say 'young ones'
16. (d) No error
17. (a) Use 'the' before 'fall'
18. (b) Use 'of my' in place of 'of me'
19. (d) No error
20. (b) Use 'come on' in place of 'come in'
21. (c) Say 'suffer from'
22. (c) Say 'to all intents and purposes'
23. (b) Say 'laid down'
24. (b) Use 'much cleverer'
25. (c) Say 'paid off'

Exercise (K)

1. (c) use 'from time immemorial'
2. (c) Say 'on the offensive'
3. (b) Add 'that' before 'it was'
4. (b) Say 'likeness' for 'likelihood'
5. (b) Say 'from what' for 'than'
6. (d) No error
7. (b) Say 'That how'
8. (b) 'did not have' for 'hadn't hardly'
9. (c) 'weather permitting' for 'weather allowing'
10. (c) Say 'is' for 'are'
11. (d) No error
12. (a) Say 'hardly' for 'No sooner'
13. (b) Delete 'of'
14. (c) Remove 'two'
15. (b) Say 'travelling'
16. (c) Say 'that is'
17. (d) No error
18. (c) Say 'is required'
19. (b) Say 'shout at'
20. (b) say 'took' for 'have taken'
21. (b) Remove 'of'
22. (c) Remove 'out'
23. (d) No error
24. (c) Remove 'for'
25. (b) Remove 'off'

17. Sentence Improvement

Revision Exercise (A)

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (a) 6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (b)
11. (c) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (d) 15. (d) 16. (a) 17. (c) 18. (c) 19. (a) 20. (b)
21. (b) 22. (b) 23. (a) 24. (c) 25. (a) 26. (c) 27. (c) 28. (a) 29. (c) 30. (b)
31. (a) 32. (b) 33. (b) 34. (c) 35. (d) 36. (c) 37. (b) 38. (c) 39. (b) 40. (a)

Revision Exercise (B)

1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (a)
11. (b) 12. (a) 13. (b) 14. (c) 15. (d) 16. (b) 17. (a) 18. (c) 19. (a) 20. (d)
21. (d) 22. (c) 23. (a) 24. (d) 25. (b) 26. (c) 27. (c) 28. (b) 29. (a) 30. (d)
31. (b) 32. (b) 33. (a) 34. (b) 35. (a) 36. (a) 37. (b) 38. (a) 39. (c) 40. (b)

Revision Exercise (C)

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (c) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (c) 9. (a) 10. (a)
11. (c) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (d) 15. (b) 16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (a) 19. (c) 20. (d)
21. (a) 22. (d) 23. (a) 24. (b) 25. (b) 26. (b) 27. (d) 28. (a) 29. (a) 30. (d)
31. (a) 32. (d) 33. (c) 34. (c) 35. (a) 36. (d) 37. (b) 38. (a) 39. (d) 40. (c)

Revision Exercise (D)

1. (a) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (d) 10. (d)
11. (c) 12. (c) 13. (c) 14. (b) 15. (a) 16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (b) 19. (d) 20. (c)
21. (d) 22. (c) 23. (a) 24. (c) 25. (c) 26. (b) 27. (d) 28. (d) 29. (b) 30. (d)
31. (b) 32. (c) 33. (d) 34. (a) 35. (a) 36. (c) 37. (a) 38. (d) 39. (a) 40. (c)

Revision Exercise (E)

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (b) 5. (b) 6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (d) 10. (d)
11. (b) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (d) 15. (b) 16. (c) 17. (c) 18. (c) 19. (b) 20. (c)
21. (b) 22. (b) 23. (a) 24. (b) 25. (a) 26. (b) 27. (c) 28. (c) 29. (d) 30. (b)
31. (b) 32. (d) 33. (a) 34. (b) 35. (c) 36. (b) 37. (b) 38. (c) 39. (b) 40. (c)

Revision Exercise (F)

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. d 5. (a) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (d) 9. (b) 10. (b)
11. (b) 12. (d) 13. (b) 14. (a) 15. (b) 16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (a) 19. (b) 20. (c)
21. (a) 22. (b) 23. (a) 24. (c) 25. (d) 26. (b) 27. (b) 28. (b) 29. (c) 30. (c)
31. (a) 32. (c) 33. (c) 34. (b) 35. (b)

Revision Exercise (G)

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (d)
11. (b) 12. (d) 13. (c) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (b) 17. (a) 18. (a) 19. (c) 20. (c)
21. (b) 22. (c) 23. (b) 24. (c) 25. (a) 26. (a) 27. (c) 28. (b) 29. (b) 30. (b)
31. (c) 32. (d) 33. (d) 34. (a) 35. (a)

Revision Exercise (H)

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (b) 8. (b) 9. (c) 10. (c)
11. (a) 12. (b) 13. (b) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (d) 17. (d) 18. (d) 19. (b) 20. (c)
21. (a) 22. (c) 23. (c) 24. (c) 25. (a) 26. (b) 27. (d) 28. (c) 29. (c) 30. (a)
31. (d) 32. (d) 33. (a) 34. (b) 35. (c)

Revision Exercise (I)

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (d) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (d) 9. (b) 10. (c)
11. (d) 12. (c) 13. (b) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (c) 17. (b) 18. (a) 19. (b) 20. (c)
21. (b) 22. (b) 23. (a) 24. (b) 25. (b) 26. (b) 27. (c) 28. (b) 29. (b) 30. (b)
31. (a) 32. (a) 33. (c) 34. (c) 35. (b)

Revision Exercise (J)

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (b) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (d)
11. (b) 12. (b) 13. (a) 14. (a) 15. (a) 16. (b) 17. (c) 18. (b) 19. (a) 20. (b)
21. (c) 22. (a) 23. (a) 24. (a) 25. (a) 26. (b) 27. (b) 28. (c) 29. (d) 30. (c)
31. (a) 32. (b) 33. (b) 34. (c) 35. (b)

Revision Exercise (K)

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (d) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (a)
11. (b) 12. (a) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (c) 16. (c) 17. (b) 18. (a) 19. (b) 20. (b)
21. (c) 22. (c) 23. (b) 24. (c) 25. (b) 26. (b) 27. (c) 28. (a) 29. (c) 30. (b)
31. (c) 32. (d) 33. (c) 34. (c) 35. (d)

Revision Exercise (L)

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (a)
11. (b) 12. (c) 13. (d) 14. (c) 15. (b) 16. (a) 17. (c) 18. (a) 19. (c) 20. (b)
21. (d) 22. (b) 23. (a) 24. (b) 25. (a) 26. (a) 27. (b) 28. (c) 29. (a) 30. (c)
31. (c) 32. (d) 33. (b) 34. (d) 35. (a)

Revision Exercise (M)

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (c) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (c) 9. (d) 10. (d)
11. (d) 12. (d) 13. (a) 14. (c) 15. (a) 16. (d) 17. (b) 18. (a) 19. (b) 20. (a)
21. (b) 22. (c) 23. (d) 24. (b) 25. (d) 26. (a) 27. (b) 28. (a) 29. (a) 30. (c)
31. (c) 32. (b) 33. (a) 34. (c) 35. (c)

18. Selecting the Correct Sentences

Revision Exercise (A)

1. (D) 2. (D) 3. (C) 4. (D) 5. (B) 6. (B) 7. (A) 8. (B) 9. (A) 10. (B)
11. (A) 12. (B) 13. (A) 14. (B) 15. (C) 16. (D) 17. (A) 18. (A) 19. (B) 20. (C)

Revision Exercise (B)

1. (C) 2. (A) 3. (D) 4. (B) 5. (A) 6. (B) 7. (B) 8. (C) 9. (D) 10. (C)
11. (A) 12. (A) 13. (D) 14. (C) 15. (D) 16. (A) 17. (B) 18. (D) 19. (C) 20. (D)

Revision Exercise (C)

1. (C) 2. (B) 3. (D) 4. (C) 5. (D) 6. (B) 7. (C) 8. (B) 9. (A) 10. (C)
11. (D) 12. (C) 13. (C) 14. (C) 15. (A) 16. (B) 17. (D) 18. (D) 19. (D) 20. (C)

Revision Exercise (D)

1. (C) 2. (D) 3. (D) 4. (C) 5. (D) 6. (D) 7. (D) 8. (D) 9. (A) 10. (A)
11. (C) 12. (D) 13. (C) 14. (B) 15. (C) 16. (B) 17. (C) 18. (C) 19. (B) 20. (B)

Revision Exercise (E)

1. (D) 2. (D) 3. (C) 4. (B) 5. (C) 6. (A) 7. (B) 8. (C) 9. (D) 10. (D)
11. (B) 12. (C) 13. (C) 14. (A) 15. (D) 16. (B) 17. (D) 18. (C) 19. (D) 20. (D)

PART-B

Verbal Ability

Verbal ability is synonymous with Word Power. A student's comprehension skill, writing skill and communication skill depend on his verbal ability. In written examinations the verbal ability of an examinee is tested by way of his comprehension skill.

This section of the book provides students with a large number of words and expressions. It would be presumptuous to claim that the words and expressions included in the book are sufficient. However we have taken every care to avoid superfluity. There is no tendency on our part to include a word just because no body has ever heard of it. Only such words and their figurative expressions as are currently in vogue have been dealt within the ensuing chapters to help students meet with the challenge confidently in this sphere.

Chapter

1 Paronyms and Homonyms

Confusion is often caused in understanding the meanings of certain words because they are either similar in meaning and form or similar in their sound of pronunciation. The words which are different in meaning or use but are similar in form or derivations are called **Paronyms**. On the other hand **Homonyms** are similar in their sound or pronunciation but different in meaning. They are also called **Homophones** (different in spelling and meaning but pronounced alike). In Modern English Paronyms and Homonyms (Homophones) are not much distinguished.

1. Access	(approach)—It is very difficult to have an *access* to the Prime Minister.
Accession	(coming to throne)—The *accession* of the prince to the throne was welcomed by the people.
Excess	(more than desired)—*Excess* of everything is bad.
2. Accept	(to take)—The teachers *accepted* the invitation of the students on the Teacher's Day.
Except	(leaving out)—Everybody *except* Rahul was invited to the party.
Expect	(hope)—I never *expected* that my friends would desert me in the lurch.
3. Alter	(change)—Mohan is so obstinate that no one can *alter* his views.
Altar	(place of worship)—When I visited temple, I saw him kneeling at the *altar*.
4. Assent	(agree)—I got *assent* of my father to study in a boarding school.
Ascent	(climbing up)—The *ascent* to Kargil hills is very arduous.
5. Adopt	(take up)—One should not *adopt* the bad habits of others.
Adapt	(adjust)—One must learn to *adapt* oneself to the circumstances of life.
Adept	(expert)—Shruti is *adept* in the art of dancing.
6. Amicable	(friendly)—Finally the two brothers came to an *amicable* settlement.
Amiable	(lovable, obliging)—Being an *amiable* house wife she is liked by her kith and kin.
7. Accede	(accept)—The director was kind enough to *accede* to the request of the labourers.
Exceed	(surpass)—Your essay should not *exceed* three hundred words.
Concede	(agree)—The prisoner did not *concede* to the argument of the jailor.
8. Alteration	(change)—There is no *alteration* in the programme yet.
Altercation	(wordy quarrel)—There was *altercation* between the shop keeper and my brother.

9. **Apposite**	(suitable)—Her remarks about the character of her friends are quite *apposite*.
Opposite	(contrary)—Sita's behaviour is *opposite* to that of her brother.
10. **Affect** *(verb)*	(to influence, to pretend)—Continuous attack of asthma has *affected* his health.
Effect *(noun)*	(influence)—Excessive hard work in life had adverse *effect* on her health.
11. **Allusion**	(reference)—The poem is explained properly by the help of many *allusions*.
Illusion	(unreal)—According to the Vedantists life is an *illusion*.
12. **Ail**	(suffer)—Rohit is getting weaker day by day, we don't know what *ails* him.
Ale	(intoxicating drink)—He visits *ale* house daily even against the advice of doctors.
13. **Apprehend**	(fear, perceive, arrest)—The soothsayer *apprehended* the day of Rohit's death.
Comprehend	(understand)—She could not *comprehend* the meaning of the passage.
14. **Admission**	(to get admitted, acceptance)—These days in order to get *admission* to convent schools you must give a lot of money.
Admittance	(entry)—No *admittance* without permission.
15. **Antique**	(of ancient times)—There are many *antique* pieces in the museum.
Antic	(odd, tricks)—*Antics* of the juggler regaled the children.
16. **Alternate**	(by turns)—We have a moral science class on every *alternate* day.
Alternative	(one of the two choices)—There is no *alternative* to honesty in dealing with the people.
17. **Artful**	(clever)—She was able to change the behaviour of her in laws towards her by *artful* means.
Artistic	(pertaining to art)—Everybody admires her for *artistic* temperament.
18. **Artist**	(one who practises fine art)—He is a frivolous *artist*.
Artiste	(performing)—There was no security for the *artiste*, who had come to perform for the charity show.
Artisan	(one who does handicraft)—The *artisans* of Moradabad are very skilful.
19. **Affection**	(love, kindly feeling)—My mother is held in high *affection* and respect by all the members of the family.
Affectation	(unnatural behaviour, pretence)—I always feel vexed at her *affectation*.
20. **Abstain**	[keep from things (eating, drinking, voting)] We should *abstain* from drinking.
Refrain	(keep from bad habits)—You should *refrain* from telling a lie.

21. Avenge	(just punishment)—Hamlet delayed *avenging* the murder of his father.
Revenge	(to punish out of personal grudge)—He *revenged* himself on his enemy by abducting his minor child.
22. Adulteration	(making impure)—The owners of the milk dairy were charged with *adulteration* of milk.
Adultery	(having extra marital relations)—Her husband accused her of *adultery* and deserted her.
23. Aspersion	(slander)—We should not cast *aspersions* on our friends.
Aspiration	(ambition, desire)—You can attain your *aspiration* only by hard work.
24. Avert	(to check)—A little common sense *averted* a major mishap.
Advert	(refer to)—He *adverted* to the problem of Indian security in his speech.
25. Birth	(to be born)—The exact date of the *birth* of a person is known from his birth certificate.
Berth	(a seat in a train)—I have got two *berths* booked in the Rajdhani Express.
26. Bridle	(reins)—It is very difficult to control a horse without a *bridle*.
Bridal	(of bride)—The *bridal* dress must have cost a lot.
27. Barbaric	(savage, simple)—She was selected to play the part of a village damsel because of her *barbaric* beauty.
Barbarous	(inhuman)—The muslim invaders were *barbarous* in their wars.
28. Barbarity	(cruelty)—Hitler's *barbarity* is too terrible to be related.
Barbarism	(uncivilised conditions)—*Barbarism* still prevails in most of the tribal regions of the world.
29. Beneficial	(useful)—Nutritious food is *beneficial* for health.
Beneficent	(kind)—Everybody paid rich tribute to the king as he was *beneficent* to all and sundry.
30. Beside	(by the side of)—He sat *beside* her father.
Besides	(in addition to)—*Besides* English she is also learning French.
31. Bear	(tolerate, carry, give birth)—Mohan cannot *bear* being insulted by his boss.
Bare	(naked)—He was bitten by a snake as he was *bare* foot.
32. Borne	(carried)—The dead body was *borne* by his friends.
Born	(take birth)—Pearl was *born* in Ashwini Hospital at Mumbai.
33. Bail	(security)—His application for release on *bail* was rejected.
Bale	(bundle of cloth)—He was carrying a *bale* of cotton on his head.
34. Beatific	(feeling joy & peace)—The saints are always in a *beatific* state of mind.
Beatitude	(state of bliss, blessedness)—He experienced *beatitude* before he died.

35. **Caste** (class of society)—In ancient times people were divided into different *castes* according to the work they did.
Cast (throw)—We *cast* away old clothes and buy new ones.
Cost (price)—The *cost* of living has risen a lot.

36. **Childlike** (simple, innocent as a child)—Her *childlike* face has won over many hearts.
Childish (silly)—No body likes him for his *childish* habits.

37. **Canvass** (propagate)—Because of approaching elections people are *canvassing* for their candidates.
Canvas (rough cloth)—While jogging he always wears *canvas* shoes.

38. **Cite** (to quote)—The advocate *cited* many examples to prove his case.
Site (place)—It is a very spacious *site* for constructing a nursing home.
Sight (scenery, vision)—The mutilated body of a child was a ghastly *sight*.

39. **Continuous** (without break)—He has been sleeping for an hour *continuously*.
Continual (continuity with break)—It has been drizzling *continually* since last night.

40. **Cemetery** (burial place)—The dead body was taken to the *cemetry* for burial.
Symmetry (quality of harmony or balance in size and design)—The building looks exquisite only because of its remarkable *symmetry*.

41. **Career** (vocation, profession)—If we want to make a good *career* we must work.
Carrier (that one carries)—The goods were taken to the destination on public *carrier*.

42. **Confident** (certain, sure)—I am very *confident* of my friend's success in the interview.
Confidant (one who shares a secret)—Once his *confidant*, now Dinesh is the arch enemy of his mentor.

43. **Compliment** (regards)—I *complimented* my friend on her success.
Complement (that completes)—Both husband and wife are *complement* to each other.

44. **Cannon** (big gun)—Hundreds of *cannons* were shot in the battlefield.
Canon (principle, a law)—*Canons* of any religion are not easy to follow.

45. **Creditable** (praiseworthy)—It is really *creditable* for a village boy to have topped the university.
Credible (believable)—Your excuse is not *credible*.
Credulous (simple, artless)—Children are *credulous* by nature.

46. **Coma** (state of unconsciousness)—After the accident my friend had been in state of *coma* for several hours.
Comma (a mark of punctuation)—*Comma* is a very important part of learning punctuation.

47. **Corporal** (physical)—In our school the children are not given *corporal* punishment.
Corporeal (having body, material)—Ghosts are not *corporeal* beings.

48. Comprehensive (exhaustive, extensive)—*Comprehensive* steps have been taken to meet with unforeseen emergency.

Comprehensible (understandable)—The talk of the new student in our class was not *comprehensible* to us at all.

49. Contagious (that spreads by contact)—Small pox is a *contagious* disease.

Contiguous (adjacent)—New Delhi and Noida are *contiguous*.

50. Censure (blame, criticize)—*Censure* motion tabled by the opposition fell through.

Censor (examination of films and plays)—The film 'The Bandit Queen' has not been approved of by the *censor* board.

51. Collision [striking against (face to face)] Due to heavy fog the car met with a *collision*.

Collusion (nexus)—There was a *collusion* between the smugglers and the political leaders.

52. Contemptible (deserving contempt)—The conduct of the taxi driver was highly mean and *contemptible*.

Contemptuous (expressing contempt)—She dismissed the servant with *contemptuous* gesture.

53. Considerable (large, to great extent)—The industrialist spent *considerable* amount of money to uplift the living conditions of his workers.

Considerate (thoughtful of others)—He is beneficent and *considerate* to his subordinates.

54. Ceremonious (formal)—One should not be very *ceremonious* in the marriage of daughters.

Ceremonial (of ceremony)—I could not attend the *ceremonial* function of his marriage.

55. Complaisant (pleasing, obliging)—He is popular with his friends on account of his *complaisant* nature.

Complacent (self satisfied)—Most of the students of my class are *complacent* in their outlook and will not revolt against the principal.

56. Conscious (aware)—We should always be *conscious* of what is going on around the world.

Conscience (inner voice)—I always act according to my *conscience*.

Consensus (general agreement)—Government should be run by *consensus*.

Conscientious (honest, scrupulous)—Being a *conscientious* worker he never shirks work.

57. Coherent (intelligible)—She was so nervous that her words were not *coherent*.

Inherent (inborn quality)—Sincerity is *inherent* in her character.

58. Collaborate (work together)—Indian industries are compelled to *collaborate* with multinational companies for survival.

Corroborate (confirm)—The principal *corroborated* the teacher's statement made to the police.

59. Casual	(occasional)—He is on *casual* leave today.
Causal	(relating to cause)—There is definite *causal* relationship between population and poverty.
60. Council	(an assembly)—The legislative *council* has passed the Bill.
Counsel	(advice)—His *counsel* proved very beneficial in the end.
61. Councillor	(member of council)—He is a *councillor* of the Legislative Council.
Counsellor	(adviser)—I have engaged a noted *counsellor* to defend my case.
62. Corpse	(dead body)—A mutilated *corpse* was found in a locked house.
Corps	(body of troops)—He is serving in Army Ordnance *Corps*.
Carcass	(dead body of animal)—A *Carcass* of a dog was lying in the road.
63. Coarse	(rough)—Though he is quite rich, he wears *coarse* clothes.
Course	(line of action)—He has given up immoral *course* of life.
64. Century	(one hundred)—Twentieth *century* will be known as the age of science.
Centenary	(100th anniversary)—*Centenary* of Indian National Movement was celebrated in 1985 A.D.
65. Conservation	(preservation)—*Conservation* of forests is very important for our survival.
Conservatism	(orthodox ideas)—I am quite liberal and do not believe in *conservatism*.
66. Conform	(adhere to)—You must *conform* to the rules laid down by your company.
Confirm	(ratify)—I shall *confirm* my programme tomorrow.
67. Capacity	(ability to contain)—The hall has a seating *capacity* for five hundred students.
Capability	(power of doing things)—My friend has *capability* to do any difficult task.
68. Commonplace	(ordinary, usual)—We are fed up with the *commonplace* speeches of our leaders.
Common place	(place for all)—The street is a *common place* for everyone.
69. Commandeer	(seize for military purpose)—When martial law was imposed in Pakistan huge area of vacant land was *commandeered* for building air strip.
Commander	(one who commands)—The *commander* of the army ordered the soldiers to capture the fort.
70. Disease	(illness)—My friend is suffering from an incurable *disease*.
Decease	(death)—On account of the *decease* of his father, the burden of the family fell on his shoulders.
71. Deny	[refers to past (action, knowledge)] She *denied* that she had gone to the movie last night.
Refuse	[refers to future (request, order)] Meeta *refused* that she would not return the money.

72. Duel	(fight between two persons)—In ancient times many *duels* were fought in order to settle disputes.
Dual	(double)—She follows *dual* policy and misguides her husband.
73. Deference	(regards)—All children should have *deference* for their elders.
Difference	(distinction)—There is no *difference* among the basic concepts of all the religions.
Deferment	(postponement)—His application for *deferment* of hearing was turned down.
74. Decent	(right and suitable)—She always wears *decent* clothes.
Descent	(coming down)—The *descent* of the hill is very dangerous.
Dissent	(disagreement)—Only a few members expressed *dissent* to my suggestion.
75. Desert *(noun)*	(sandy land)—The government has greatly solved the problem of pure drinking water in the *desert*.
Desert *(verb)*	(leave)—She was *deserted* by her husband.
Dessert	(sweet dish)—*Dessert* was served after dinner.
76. Dominant	(dominating)—Sohan is very *dominant* in our class.
Domineer	(to dominate)—Mothers in law try to *domineer* over their daughters in law.
77. Drought	(lack of rain)—Last year most of the areas of Uttar Pradesh suffered from a severe *drought*.
Draught	(current of wind, quantity of liquid)—A *draught* of cool wind was very refreshing.
78. Defective	(having defect)—As he met with a severe accident last year, one of his legs is *defective*.
Deficient	(lacking)—Though young he is *deficient* in common sense.
79. Diverse	(different)—The two children of one family may have *diverse* temperaments.
Divers	(several)—(i)—He has consulted *divers* doctors about his disease. (ii)—Those, who *dive* into river/sea, are divers.
80. Deduce	(infer)—It is difficult to *deduce* any conclusion from your ambiguous remarks.
Deduct	(subtract)—Two days' wages will be *deducted* from your monthly salary.
81. Deliverance	(freedom, emancipation)—Lord Buddha preached eight fold path to attain *deliverance* from sorrows of life.
Delivery	(giving letters etc.)—The *delivery* of the letter was just in time.
82. Decry	(criticize)—The foreign policy of the Congress party has always been *decried*.
Descry	(dimly seen)—We could *descry* only a traveller in the bleak evening.
83. Defy	(violate)—How dare you *defy* my orders?
Deify	(to worship)—Swami Vivekananda is *deified* by every Indian.

84. Doze	(sleep)—The teacher caught him *dozing* in the class.
Dose	(of medicine)—You should not take heavy *dose* of medicine.
85. Dam	(barrier built to reserve water)—A *dam* has been built on the river.
Damn	(condemn)—The book was *damned* by the critics.
86. Diversion	(change in direction)—There is a *diversion* on the road ahead.
Diversity	(variety)—*Diversity* is the chief feature of our civilisation.
87. Enviable	(causing envy)—All the people are jealous because of his *enviable* position in the society.
Envious	(feeling of envy)—Her friends were *envious* of her success in the medical entrance examination.
88. Exception	(objection)—There are always *exceptions* to rules in every language.
Exceptional	(rare, to a large extent)—In his own class Rohit is a boy of *exceptional* abilities.
Exceptionable	(objectionable)—I objected to her *exceptionable* remarks against my parents.
89. Eminent	(famous)—Shakespeare was an *eminent* playwright.
Imminent	(impending)—Third world war is *imminent*.
Immanent	(present everywhere)—Divine force is *immanent* in universe.
90. Eligible	(fit to be chosen)—Untrustworthy people are not *eligible* for responsible posts.
Illegible	(that cannot be read)—I can't read this letter as her handwriting is *illegible*.
91. Exceedingly	[to a great extent (good sense)] One of my cousins is an *exceedingly* rich person.
Excessively	[to a great extent (bad sense)] They spent money on the feast lavishly and *excessively*.
92. Exhausting	(tiring)—Teaching nursery classes is a very *exhausting* job.
Exhaustive	(detailed, comprehensive)—The teacher gave to the students *exhaustive* notes on English Grammar.
Exhausted	(tired)—He was *exhausted* and went to bed immediately.
93. Economical	(frugal)—A housewife should always be *economical* if she wants to run her house smoothly.
Economic	(pertaining to economy)—India is yet to cross many hurdles to overcome *economic* crisis.
Economics	(a subject)—*Economics* is an interesting subject.
94. Elude	(escape)—Sohan was so clever that he *eluded* the police and escaped from the prison.
Allude	(refer, cite)—The speaker *alluded* to many examples from the Gita.
95. Excite	(stir up feelings)—The people got very *excited* when the police refused to take any action against the culprits.
Incite	(rousing to action)—The communal speech of the leader *incited* the mob to violence.
Insight	(ability to see the truth)—India needs leaders of great *insight*.

96. Envelop	(cover, wrap)—As the dark clouds covered the sky, the whole town was *enveloped* in darkness.
Envelope	(a letter cover)—Please put the letter in the *envelope*.
97. Expeditious	(quick, prompt)—Dattu is very *expeditious* in answering letters.
Expedient	(practical, contrary to principles)—Selfish persons are always *expedient* in their approach to life.
Expedition	(a journey to unknown place)—They will go on an *expedition* to Everest.
98. Esteem	(respect)—As Mahesh is very sociable, he is held in high *esteem* by his friends.
Estimate	(calculate)—Can you give me the *estimate* of the cost of the house?
Estimation	(opinion, judgement)—In my *estimation* he is the fool of the first water.
99. Exposure	(reveal, exposed to heat or cold)—She will not attend office today as she is suffering from *exposure*.
Exposition	(explanation)—Tilak's *exposition* of the Gita is remarkable.
100. Egotist	(one who talks a lot of oneself)—It is difficult to stand the company of an *egotist*.
Egoist	(one who believes in self interest, proud)—An *egoist* is moved only by self-interest while helping others.
101. Emerge	(come out)—It is hoped that he will *emerge* successful out of these trying conditions.
Immerse	(plunge into, absorb in)—Being a man of contemplative nature, he is always *immersed* in pensive mood.
102. Eruption	(bursting)—The *eruption* of volcano caused heavy destruction on the island.
Irruption	(attack)—The *irruption* of Pakistan Army was successfully repulsed.
103. Elemental	(of nature, elements)—Inspite of *elemental* hardships Columbus discovered America.
Elementary	(beginning, introductory)—You must have *elementary* knowledge of science.
104. Excursion	(picnic)—The students will go on *excursion* tomorrow.
Incursion	(sudden attack)—*Incursions* by Pakistan and China into our borders speak of our weakness.
105. Entrance	(opening, gate)—The *entrance* to the fair by this route has been blocked up.
Entry	(coming into)—The *entry* of student leaders into college premises is banned.
106. Expensive	(costing much money)—She bought a less *expensive* dress.
Valuable	(useful)—The book provides *valuable* data for further study.
107. Fatal	(causing death)—On his way to school, he met with an accident and received a *fatal* wound in the leg.
Fateful	(very significant)—The formation of I.N.A. was a *fateful* event.
Fatalist	(believer in fate)—Indians are *fatalists* by nature.

108. Forceful	(strong and powerful)—Netaji had a *forceful* personality.
Forcible	(by force, compulsion)—He was evicted from the house *forcibly*.
109. Feign	(pretend)—In order to save himself the accused *feigned* madness in the court.
Fain	(gladly)—She would *fain* do anything for her friends.
110. Forgo	(give up)—Parents *forgo* their own comforts for the sake of their children.
Forego	(go before)—This point has been dealt with in detail in the *foregoing* passage.
111. Facility	(convenience, dexterity)—The hotel provides all kinds of *facilities* to its customers.
Felicity	(apt expression, joy)—May God bless you with *felicity* !
112. Facilitate	(make easy)—The new agreement will *facilitate* the development of the trade.
Felicitate	(to congratulate)—I *felicitated* him on his success.
113. Fair	(a show, just, colour)—Let us go to Nauchandi *fair*.
Fare	(passage money, meal)—There is a steep rise in railway *fare*.
114. Formality	(show ceremony)—True friends never observe *formality* with each other.
Formalism	(observance of rites)—Swami Dayanand taught the Hindus to shun *formalism* in religion.
115. Fiscal	(of public revenue)—Government is trying to bring down the *fiscal* deficit in the next budget.
Financial	(monetary)—He suffered huge *financial* loss in the business.
116. Gentle	(not harsh)—We should be *gentle* and polite to our elders.
Genteel	(well mannered, of the upper class)—People belonging to middle class try to maintain the style of *genteel* class of society.
117. Gamble	(to play for stake)—On the occasion of Diwali people *gamble* and are ruined.
Gambol	(to frisk)—It is a beautiful sight to see a deer *gamboling* in a forest.
118. Graceful	(beautiful)—She has a *graceful* gait.
Gracious	(kind, merciful)—God is *gracious*.
119. Gate	(door)—The dacoits entered the house through the main *gate*.
Gait	(manner of walking)—Her *gait* is graceful.
120. Gravitation	(pulling towards, attracting)—Theory of *gravitation* was invented by Newton.
Gravity	(quality of being serious)—One must observe *gravity* on solemn occasions.
121. Hoard	(amass, to store)—As he is a smuggler, he has a *hoard* of gold and silver in his house.
Horde	(a gang)—A *horde* of militants intruded into Indian territory.

122. Historic (likely to be famous in history)—Kapil Dev scored *historic* victory by winning the World Cup in 1983.

Histrionic (art of acting)—Rekha is known for her *histrionic* talents.

Historical (of history)—I visited many *historical* buildings in Delhi while I was in school.

123. Humility (politeness)—*Humility* in victory is a rare virtue.

Humiliation (insult, disgrace)—All respectable persons prefer death to *humiliation*.

124. Honorary (unpaid)—My sister taught in a college as an *honorary* tutor.

Honourable (deserving honour)—He is regarded *honourable* member of the club.

125. Human (race of man)—On account of ecological disturbances, the existence of *human* beings is endangered.

Humane (kind)—Doctors are supposed to be considerate and *humane*.

126. Hail (belong to, welcome, frozen rain)—Those *hailing* from Bangladesh are living illegally in this country.

Hale (healthy)—He is *hale* and hearty and enjoys life to his fill.

127. Healthy (having health)—Inspite of his old age he is quite *healthy*.

Healthful (promoting health)—The climate of hill stations is *healthful*.

128. Hypocritical (guilty of hypocrisy)—I do not like his *hypocritical* attitude towards his friends.

Hypercritical (too critical)—It does not pay in life to be *hypercritical* of trivial matters.

129. Humanity (mankind, quality of being kind)—One must act in the larger interest of *humanity*.

Humanism (devotion to human interest)—Act of *humanism* is always appreciated.

130. Hollow (not solid, with a hole, false)—The stick is *hollow*; nothing is inside it.

Hallow *(ed)* (sacred)—The *hallowed* shrine is visited by the devotees throughout the year.

Halo (circle of light around the head)—Holy men are painted with *halo* around their heads.

131. Industrial (pertaining to industry)—*Industrial* progress in India has not been rapid.

Industrious (hard working)—My friend is an *industrious* man and he achieved success in life.

132. Impossible (that is not possible)—If we make up our mind and work hard nothing is *impossible* in this world.

Impassable (that cannot be passed through)—Many passes in the Himalayas are *impassable* during winter.

133. **Ingenious**	(skilful, clever)—She devised an *ingenious* scheme to hoodwink the police.
Ingenuous	(frank, innocent)—Children are liked for their *ingenuous* nature.
134. **Imaginary**	(fanciful, unreal)—Don't be daunted by *imaginary* troubles.
Imaginative	(contemplative)—poets and artists are *imaginative* by temperament.
135. **Intelligible**	(understandable)—Your remarks are not *intelligible* to me.
Intelligent	(wise and sensible)—Only *intelligent* students are found to succeed in this world of stiff competition.
136. **Immoral**	(not according to morality)—An *immoral* person suffers in the long run.
Unmoral	(non-moral, amoral)—*Unmoral* persons are not concerned with morality or the immorality of an action.
137. **Incomparable**	(without equal)—She was a damsel of *incomparable* beauty.
Uncomparable	(having no similarity)—The security problems of India and Pakistan are *uncomparable*.
138. **Invert**	(to put upside down)—Put this statement in *inverted* commas.
Inert	(passive)—*Inert* gases are without active chemical properties.
139. **Inept**	(incompetent)—*Inept* handling of situation resulted in riots.
Inapt	(unsuitable)—The title of the story is *inapt*.
140. **Incidental**	(happening as natural or a part of)—The risk of loss is always *incidental* to any business.
Accidental	(by chance)—It was just an *accidental* meeting between the two school mates.
141. **Jealous**	(full of jealousy)—All his friends are *jealous* of him.
Zealous	(enthusiastic)—My brother is very *zealous* about his new appointment.
142. **Judicious**	(wise, thoughtful)—We must be *judicious* in the choice of our career.
Judicial	(pertaining to judiciary)—He was sent to *judicial* lock up by the Magistrate.
143. **Kindly**	(acts, feelings)—I shall never forget your *kindly* act.
Kind	(tender, pitiful)—He is a *kind* man who helps every body.
144. **Lightning**	(flash of light)—*Lightning* struck his house and set the whole house on fire.
Lightening	(make light)—He is always interested in *lightening* the financial burden of his father.
145. **Luxurious**	(pertaining to luxury)—As she is the daughter of a rich industrialist, she lives a very *luxurious* life.
Luxuriant	(rich in growth)—The hills of Uttarakhand are teeming with *luxuriant* forests.
146. **Loathe**	(detest)—The rich should not *loathe* the poor.
Loth (loath)	(unwilling)—She was *loth* to go with him alone.

147. Limit	(extent)—You must spend within your *limits*.
Limitation	(shortcomings)—There are many *limitations* in Parliamentary form of government in backward countries.
148. Loud	(loud sound)—Everyone was alarmed when there was a *loud* blast in the locality.
Loudly	(in a loud manner)—The teacher forbade them to speak *loudly*.
Aloud	(audible)—The students requested the teacher to speak *aloud*.
149. Learned	(erudite, educated)—He is not only rich but also *learned* and wise.
Learnt	(past of learn)—He *learnt* his lesson very well.
150. Literal	(expressed in words)—Most of the words are used in *literal* and figurative sense.
Literary	(of literature)—He is a *literary* man and reads a lot of books.
151. Maze	(winding paths)—The walled city is full of *mazes*.
Maize	(a kind of corn)—*Maize* grows in abundance in Africa.
152. Memorable	(worthy of remembering)—In the plays of Shakespeare we find a lot of *memorable* quotations.
Memorial	(statue or anything in the memory of)—We collected money to erect *memorial* in the memory of war heroes.
Immemorial	(longer than people can remember)—The religious rites of the Hindus are *immemorial* tradition.
153. Momentary	(short lived)—One should not run after the wordly pleasures as they are *momentary*.
Momentous	(very important)—Operation 'Shakti' at Pokhran was the *momentous* event in the history of independent India.
154. Morale	(the state of spirit, confidence)—The *morale* of the army should always be high.
Moral	(sense of right and wrong, lesson)—We are advised to pursue a *moral* course of life.
155. Maritime	(relating to sea, or ships)—Once Britain was a great *maritime* power.
Marine	(found in the sea/trade by sea)—India should develop *marine* trade to earn foreign exchange.
156. Manifest	(obvious, evident)—It should be *manifest* to all by now that China and Pakistan are inciting trouble on our borders.
Manifestation	(act or desire that makes obvious)—Indiscipline among the youth is just a *manifestation* of serious national evil.
157. Negligible	(unimportant)—The dacoits attacked his house yesterday night but his loss is *negligible*.
Negligent	(careless in duty)—We should not be *negligent* in our duty.
Neglectful	(careless)—He is so *neglectful* that he doesn't care for his family's interest.

158. **Notable** (creditable)—India has made a *notable* progress in the field of agriculture.

Noticeable (easy to notice)—There is *noticeable* improvement in the patient.

Notorious [famous (unfavourable)] Our political leaders are *notorious* for their apathy to public interest.

Noted (famous)—The leader is *noted* for his honesty.

159. **Observance** (compliance)—In order to remain healthy *observance* of certain simple rules is required.

Observation (notice)—Children have very keen *observation* power.

160. **Ordinance** (a government order)—The government has issued an *ordinance* against the people who do not pay the taxes on time.

Ordnance (a gun)—There is an *ordnance* factory at Kanpur.

161. **Official** (pertaining to office)—You are bound to maintain *official* secrecy.

Officious (ready to offer services, flatterer)—Beware of *officious* fellows.

162. **Organisation** (institution)—He is working in a non-government *organisation*.

Organism (living beings with parts working together)—Human *organism* is a complex system.

Organic (of an organ)—*Organic* diseases destroy the organs.

163. **Petrol** (fuel)—*Petrol* is very costly these days.

Patrol (go round)—The *patrol* van is regularly moving on the highway day and night for our protection.

164. **Providential** (divine)—My friend's *providential* escape at the critical moment saved his life.

Provident (frugal, thrifty)—She is quite *provident* and economical in household expenses.

Providence (divine force)—Trust in *Providence* for good days.

165. **Practical** (not theoretical)—The scientist gave a *practical* demonstration of his experiment.

Practicable (capable of being practised)—Only *practicable* schemes are adopted by our Managing Director.

166. **Proscribe** (ban, prohibit)—Indecent books are generally *proscribed* by the government.

Prescribe (recommend, advise)—Doctor has *prescribed* a very efficacious medicine for the treatment of the disease.

167. **Popular** (admirable)—As Mrs. Neena is a very kind teacher, she is very *popular* with her students.

Populous (thickly populated)—China is the most *populous* country in the world.

168. **Pale** (bloodless, yellowish)—Due to his prolonged sickness he looks very *pale* now.

Pail (container)—A *pail* full of milk was lying in the kitchen.

169. **Pair** (double of a thing)—I gave a *pair* of new shoes to my brother on his birthday.

Pare (trim)—Please *pare* your finger nails regularly.

170. Pane (window glass)—Our window *pane* was broken by the children who were playing Cricket outside our house.

Pain (suffering of mind or body)—She was feeling *pain* in her neck.

171. Peel (to remove the skin)—Please wash the mangoes before you *peel* them.

Peal (a loud sound)—On hearing his jokes all of us went into a *peal* of laughter.

172. Personal (private)—We were asked to express our *personal* views on this subject in the debate.

Personnel (persons employed)—The *personnel* department has issued termination notice to Sachin.

173. Punctual (at fixed time)—*Punctual* students alone deserve a splendid success.

Punctilious (very careful in duty)—We are taught to be very *punctilious* in our work in the school.

174. Prudent (wise, careful, foresight)—It is *prudent* on her part to break with selfish friends.

Prudential (of prudent actions, policy)—The *prudential* actions of my father saved the family from financial crisis.

175. Precedent (previous examples)—The lawyer cited many *precedents* in support of his case.

President (Head of Institution)—Indian *President* is only de jure head of the government.

176. Physique (physical health)—He is a smart youngman with a good *physique*.

Physic (medicine)—No *physic* has yet been discovered to cure cancer.

Physics (a subject)—*Physics* is my favourite subject.

177. Prey (hunt and kill)—As a national bird the Peacock is not a bird of *prey*.

Pray (offer prayer)—He *prays* to God daily.

178. Proceed (to move forward)—Inspite of difficulties he *proceeded* with his enterprise.

Precede (to go before)—I have mentioned every detail in the *preceding* passage.

179. Politic (prudent, wise)—It is not *politic* to flog the dead horse.

Political (of politics)—The *political* parties in India have no concern for the poor.

180. Prosecute (file a suit in the court)—You are likely to be *prosecuted* in the court for violation of rules.

Persecute (oppress)—She was mercilessly *persecuted* for not bringing a car in dowry.

181. Pitiable (deserving pity)—The condition of the family is *pitiable* on account of poverty.

Pitiful (making one feel pity)—It was a *pitiful* sight to see a beggar woman suffering from cancer.

182. **Polity** (form of government)—Indian *polity* is not in a healthy state these days.

Policy (plan of action)—Honesty is the best *policy*.

183. **Proscription** (prohibition)—The *proscription* of the newspaper was resented by the people.

Prescription (recommendation)—The *prescription* of medicine by the doctor proved very useful.

184. **Putrefy** (to rot)—Many unclaimed dead bodies lay *putrefying* in the field.

Petrify (turn into stone, stun)—We were *petrified* with terror to see the ghastly sight of the carnage.

185. **Righteous** (just, truthful)—The Principal's anger was *righteous* for he could not tolerate the indiscipline in the college.

Rightful (having right)—He is the *rightful* owner of the property.

186. **Raise** (increase)—The traders have *raised* the prices of food grains.

Raze (wipe out)—All the huts of the poor were *razed* to the ground as they needed land to build a five star hotel.

187. **Reign** (rule)—The *reign* of Gupta dynasty, is known as golden period in the history of India.

Rein (bridle of horse)—He *reined* the horse and escaped a fall.

188. **Rite** (ceremony)—The marriage was performed according to Hindu *rites*.

Wright (give a shape)—He is a great *playwright*.

Write (compose)—Please *write* in the note-book.

189. **Rout** (put to defeat)—The enemy was *routed* by Indian forces.

Route (path)—You should not go by long *route*.

190. **Respective** (belonging to each)—After the match we left for our *respective* homes.

Respectable (enjoying respect)—His father is a *respectable* man of the city.

Respectful (showing respect)—You must be *respectful* to your elders.

191. **Rapt** (fully attentive)—They listened to the speech of the Prime Minister with *rapt* attention.

Wrapt (lost in, absorbed)—She did not notice my arrival as she was *wrapt* in her thoughts.

192. **Recourse** (means of action)—I do not advise you to have *recourse* to legal action in this matter.

Resource (means, raw material)—India is a land teeming with natural *resources*.

193. **Symbol** (sign, to represent something)—Vinoba Bhave was a *symbol* of simplicity and honesty.

Cymbal (a musical instrument)—The melodious sound of the *cymbals* impressed every body.

194. **Stationery** (writing material)—His father deals in office *stationery*.

Stationary (static, fixed)—The Sun is *stationary*.

195. Soar (rise, fly)—Birds are *soaring* in the sky.
Sore (wound, painful)—People are *sore* because the prices are soaring.
Sour (bitter)—The grapes are *sour*.

196. Suspect (to think to be true)—The whole class *suspects* Rohan to have stolen Rita's money.
Doubt (to think to be untrue)—I *doubt* if she will get through the examination.

197. Sociable (fond of mixing with people)—Because of her *sociable* behaviour she is liked by all the members of her family.
Social (pertaining to society)—Man is a *social* animal.

198. Sensual (voluptuous, exciting senses)—We should not indulge in *sensual* pleasures or we will repent later on.
Sensuous (that affects the senses)—John Keats' poetry is *sensuous*.

199. Spacious (having large space)—My house contains many *spacious* rooms.
Specious (outwardly attractive)—No body was impressed with his *specious* arguments.

200. Spiritual (opposed to material, of spirit)—Indians should not give up their *spiritual* heritage.
Spirituous (containing intoxicating drink)—Excessive consumption of *spirituous* drinks is injurious to health.

201. Stimulant (that which stimulates)—Tea is a *stimulant* for a worker after a day's hard work.
Stimulus (incentive)—Man hardly acts if there is no *stimulus* before him.

202. Special (specific)—He came here on a *special* mission to bring about reconciliation between the two parties.
Especial (to a great degree)—It is *especially* hot these days.

203. Storey (upper part of a building)—He lives in the second *storey* of the house.
Story (tale)—It is a very interesting *story*.

204. Suit (a set of clothes, a lawsuit)—He presented me with a woollen *suit*.
Suite (a set of rooms)—He has booked a *suite* in the hotel.

205. Sham (pretend to be, pretence)—What he says is all *sham*.
Shame (feeling of humiliation)—He felt *shame* at having told a lie.

206. Severe (violent, rigorous)—She is suffering from *severe* headache.
Sever (separate)—You can never *sever* relations with your family.

207. Statue (figure of animal/man in stone or wood)—The *statue* of Dr. Ambedkar was unveiled by the President.
Statute (law passed by law making bodies)—The *statute* was passed by the Parliament unanimously.

208. Temperance (moderation in habits)—We should observe *temperance* in eating and drinking habits because it leads to healthy way of life.
Temperament (disposition, nature)—Always keep from persons of choleric *temperament*.

209. **Tolerable**	(bearable)—The food that was served in his daughter's marriage was *tolerable*.
Tolerant	(liberal in ideas)—Every religion teaches us to be *tolerant* of the religious views held by others.
210. **Temporal**	(worldly, physical)—We should not hanker after *temporal* glory.
Temporary	(lasting for short time)—He was given the job on the *temporary* basis only.
211. **Tamper**	(meddle with)—Please do not *tamper* with my papers.
Temper	(emotional state of mind, soften)—One must not lose one's *temper*.
212. **Teem**	(full of)—India is a country *teeming* with natural resources.
Team	(group of players)—His name has not been included in the college cricket *team*.
213. **Uninterested**	(having no interest)—Gaurav is *uninterested* in the study of science.
Disinterested	(free from personal motive)—A *disinterested* leader of the party always commands respect from his followers.
214. **Variation**	(change)—*Variation* in his blood pressure worried the doctors.
Variance	(opposite)—My views are always at *variance* with my father's.
215. **Vocation**	(profession)—Singing is both his *vocation* and avocation.
Avocation	(hobby)—Gardening is a very favourite *avocation* of my father.
216. **Virtuous**	(having virtues)—She is a *virtuous* and devoted house wife.
Virtual	(real)—Her mother is the *virtual* head of the family.
217. **Voracity**	(greed)—He is detested on account of his *voracity* for wealth.
Veracity	(truthfulness)—It is very difficult to verify the *veracity* of her statement since she is very clever.
218. **Vane**	(weather cock)—The wind *vane* points to the direction of the wind.
Vain	(proud, useless)—She is *vain* of her wealth.
Wane	(decline)—His popularity as a political leader is on the *wane*.
Vein	(a blood vein)—All the *veins* carry blood to heart.
219. **Vassal**	(a slave)—In ancient times prisoners of war were made *vassals*.
Vessel	(a small ship, utensil)—Empty *vessels* make much noise.
220. **Venal**	(corruptible)—The *venal* leaders are bane of Indian polity.
Venial	(to be forgiven)—The fault is so slight that it is thought to be *venial*.
221. **Wreak**	(take revenge)—At last he *wreaked* vengeance by killing his enemy.
Wreck	(destroy)—The fury of the storm *wrecked* many houses.
222. **Wither**	(fade)—The plants kept in the shade will *wither* for want of Sun and light.
Whither	(where)—Modern man is so much confused that he does not know *whither* he is heading for.
223. **Willing**	(ready)—We should always be *willing* to help the needy.
Wilful	(deliberate)—His marriage was a total failure on account of his *wilful* nature.

224. **Wave**	(sea or river wave)—The *waves* rose sky high when the storm blew up.
Waive	(remove, forgo)—Government has at last agreed to *waive* excise duty on cloth.
225. **Wrest**	(snatch by force)—The enemy *wrested* his gun and killed him.
Rest	(peace)—Please go and take *rest* now.
226. **Womanly**	[of woman (good sense)] My mother has *womanly* virtues.
Womanish	[of woman (bad sense)] His voice is *womanish* as it is quite shrill.
227. **Whet**	(increase interest)—Lemon will *whet* your appetite for more food.
Vet	(screening)—The candidates were *vetted* for security reasons.
Wet	(covered with water/liquid)—He got wet in the rain and is not well.

❑

Chapter

2 One Word Substitutions

One Word Substitutions (Substitutes) may be defined as single words that are used in place of a group of words to denote a person, an object, a place, a state of mind a profession etc. In common parlance they are termed as single words used to make an expression brief and pertinent. Polonius in 'Hamlet', a play by Shakespeare, aptly remarks :

"Therefore since brevity in the soul of wit.

The tediousness the limbs and outward flourishes I will be brief :"

As such the use of one word substitutions tend to obviate the repetition of unnecessary words avoiding verbosity and ambiguity. Rambling style speaks of a rambling state of mind whereas brevity conveys telling effect.

Moreover, one word substitutions are indispensable while writing a precis of a given passage. A student is required not to exceed the limit of words. They come in handy in such situations. Hence their significance cannot be gainsaid and students are advised to learn them very seriously.

A few of one word substitutes are given below for the benefit of the students.

(A) One Words Denoting Persons

1. **Agnostic** – one who is not sure about God's existence
2. **Altruist** – a lover of mankind (Syn.–Philanthropist)
3. **Amateur** – one who does a thing for pleasure and not as a profession
4. **Ambidexterous** – one who can use either hand with ease
5. **Anarchist** – one who is out to destroy all governments, peace and order
6. **Apostate** – a person who has changed his faith
7. **Arbitrator** – a person appointed by two parties to solve a dispute
8. **Ascetic** – one who leads an austere life
9. **Atheist** – a person who does not believe in God (Ant.–Theist)
10. **Bankrupt** – one who is unable to pay his debts (Syn.–Insolvent)
11. **Bigot** – one who is filled with excessive enthusiasm in religious matters (Syn.–Fanatic)
12. **Bohemian** – an uncoventional style of living
13. **Cacographist** – one who is bad in spellings
14. **Cannibal** – one who feeds on human flesh
15. **Carnivorous** – one who feeds on flesh
16. **Chauvinist** – a person who is blindly devoted to an idea

17. **Connoisseur** – a critical judge of any art and craft
18. **Contemporaries** – persons living at the same time
19. **Convalescent** – one who is recovering health after illness
20. **Coquette** – a girl woman who flirts with men
21. **Cosmopolitan** – a person who regards the whole world as his country
22. **Cynosure** – one who is a centre of attraction
23. **Cynic** – one who sneers at the beliefs of others
24. **Debonair** – suave (polished and light hearted person)
25. **Demagogue** – a leader who sways his followers by his oratory
26. **Dilettante** – a dabbler (not serious) in art, science and literature
27. **Effeminate** – a man who is womanish in his habits
28. **Egoist** – a lover of oneself, of one's advancement
29. **Egotist** – one who often talks of his achievements
30. **Emigrant** – a person who leaves his country to settle in another country (Ant.–Immigrant)
31. **Epicure** – one who is for pleasure of eating and drinking
32. **Fastidious** – one hard to please (very selective in his habits)
33. **Fatalist** – one who believes in fate
34. **Feminist** – one who works for the welfare of women (Syn.–Philogynist)
35. **Fugitive** – one who runs away from justice (Syn.–Absconding person)
36. **Gourmand** – a lover of good food
37. **Gourmet** – a connoisseur of food
38. **Henpecked** – a husband ruled by his wife
39. **Hedonist** – one who believes that sensual pleasure is the chief good
40. **Heretic** – one who acts against religion
41. **Herbivorous** – one that lives on herbs
42. **Honorary** – one who holds a post without any salary
43. **Highbrow** – a person considering himself to be superior in culture and intellect (Syn.–Snob)
44. **Hypochondriac** – one who is over anxious about his health
45. **Iconoclast** – one who is breaker of images and traditions
46. **Illiterate** – one who does not know reading or writing (Ant.–Literate)
47. **Immigrant** – a person who comes to a country from his own country for set-tling (Ant.–Emigrant)
48. **Impregnable** – that cannot be entered by force (Ant.–Pregnable)
49. **Impostor** – one who pretends to be somebody else
50. **Indefatigable** – one who does not tire easily
51. **Introvert** – one who does not express himself freely (Ant.–Extrovert)
52. **Insolvent** – a person who is unable to pay his debts (Syn.–Bankrupt)

53. **Itinerant** – one who journeys from place to place (Nomadic)
54. **Invincible** – one too strong to be defeated (Ant.–Vincible)
55. **Invulnerable** – one that cannot be harmed/wounded (Ant.–Vulnerable)
56. **Libertine** – a person who leads an immoral life (Syn.–Lecher)
57. **Martyr** – one who dies for a noble cause
58. **Mercenary** – one who does something for the sake of money (bad sense)
59. **Misanthrope** – one who hates mankind (Ant.–Philanthropist)
60. **Misogamist** – one who hates the institution of marriage
61. **Misologist** – one who hates knowledge (Ant.–Bibliologist)
62. **Namesake** – a person having the same name as another
63. **Narcissist** – Lover of self
64. **Novice** – one who is inexperienced in anything (Syn.—Tyro)
65. **Numismatist** – one who collects coins
66. **Omnivorous** – one who eats everything
67. **Optimist** – a person who looks at the bright side of things (Ant.–Pessimist)
68. **Orphan** – one who has lost one's parents
69. **Philanthropist** – one who loves mankind (Ant.–Misanthrope)
70. **Philogynist** – one who works for the welfare of women (Ant.–Misogynist)
71. **Polyglot** – one who speaks many languages (Syn.–Linguist)
72. **Pacifist** – one who hates war, loves peace
73. **Pessimist** – one who looks at the dark side of life (Ant.–Optimist)
74. **Philanderer** – one who amuses oneself by love making
75. **Philistine** – one who does not care for art and literature
76. **Posthumous** – a child born after the death of father
    Or a book published after the death of the author
    Or an award received after the death of the recepient
77. **Philatelist** – one who collects stamps
78. **Pedestrian** – one who goes on foot
79. **Recluse** – one who lives in seclusion
80. **Sadist** – a person who feels pleasure by hurting others
81. **Samaritan** – one who helps the needy and the helpless
82. **Somnambulist** – a person who walks in sleep
83. **Somniloquist** – a person who talks in sleep
84. **Stoic** – a person who is indifferent to pain and pleasures of life
85. **Swashbuckler** – a boastful fellow
86. **Teetotaller** – one who does not take any intoxicating drugs
87. **Termagant** – a noisy quarrelsome woman, a shrew
88. **Truant** – one who remains absent from duty without permission
89. **Toper/Sot** – one who is a habitual drunkard
90. **Uxorious** – one extremely fond of one's wife

01. Veteran – one who has a long experience of any occupation
02. Versatile – one who adapts oneself readily to various situations
03. Virtuoso – one who is brilliant performer on stage (specially music)
04. Volunteer – one who offers one's services
05. Verbose – a style face of difficult words. (maestro)

(B) One Words Denoting General Objects

1. **Abdication** – voluntary giving up of throne in favour of someone
2. **Almanac** – an annual calendar with position of stars
3. **Amphibian** – animal that live both on land and sea
4. **Allegory** – a story that expresses ideas through symbols
5. **Anomaly** – departure from common rule
6. **Aquatic** – animals that live in water
7. **Autobiography** – the life history of a person written by himself
8. **Axiom** – a statement accepted as true without proof
9. **Anonymous** – bearing no name
10. **Belligerent** – one that is in a war-like mood (Syn.–Bellicose)
11. **Biography** – the life history of a person (written by some other person)
12. **Biopsy** – examination of living tissue
13. **Blasphemy** – an act of speaking against religion (Heresy)
14. **Chronology** – events presented in order of occurrence
15. **Conscription** – compulsory enlistment for military service
16. **Crusade** – a religious war
17. **Drawn** – a game that results neither in victory nor in defeat
18. **Eatable** – anything to be eaten
19. **Edible** – fit to be eaten
20. **Encyclopaedia** – a book that contains information on various subjects
21. **Ephemeral** – lasting for a very short time/a day
22. **Epilogue** – a concluding speech/comment at the end of the play (Ant.–Prologue)
23. **Extempore** – a speech made without preparation (Syn.–Impromptu)
24. **Fable** – a story relating to birds/animals with a moral in the end
25. **Facsimile** – an exact copy of handwriting, printing (Syn.–Xerox)
26. **Fatal** – that causes death
27. **Fauna** – the animals of a particular region
28. **Flora** – the flowers of a particular region
29. **Fragile** – that can be easily broken
30. **Gregarious** – animals which live in a flock, used for human beings also (Syn.–Sociable)
31. **Illegible** – incapable of being read (Ant.–Legible)
32. **Inaccessible** – a person/place that cannot be easily approached (Ant.–Accessible)

33. Impracticable – incapable of being practised (Ant.–Practicable)
34. Inaudible – a sound that cannot be heard (Ant.–Audible)
35. Incorrigible – incapable of being corrected (Ant.–Corrigible)
36. Irreparable – incapable of being repaired (Ant.–Reparable)
37. Indelible – a mark that cannot be erased (Ant.–Delible)
38. Infallible – one who is free from all mistakes and failures (Ant.–Fallible)
39. Inedible – not fit to eat (Ant.–Edible)
40. Inflammable – liable to catch fire easily (Ant.–Non-inflammable)
41. Inevitable – that cannot be avoided (Ant.–Evitable)
42. Indispensable – that cannot be dispensed with, removed (Ant.–Dispensable)
43. Interregnum – a period of interval between two regimes and governments
44. Intelligible – that can be understood (Ant.–Unintelligible)
45. Lunar – of the moon.
46. Maiden – a speech or an attempt made by a person for the first time
47. Mammal – an animal that gives milk
48. Manuscript – a matter written by hand
49. Nostalgia – home sickness, memories of the past
50. Omnipresent – one who is present everywhere
51. Omnipotent – one who is all powerful
52. Omniscient – one who knows all
53. Parable – a short story with a moral
54. Parole – pledge given by a prisoner for temporary release not to escape
55. Panacea – a remedy for all ills
56. Pantheism – the belief that God pervades nature
57. Pedantic – a style meant to display one's knowledge
58. Plagiarism – literary theft or passing off an author's original work as one's own
59. Platonic – something spiritual (love)
60. Portable – that can be carried in hand
61. Potable – fit to drink
62. Plebiscite – a decision made by public voting
63. Pseudonym – an imaginary name assumed by an author
64. Quarantine – an act of separation from a person to avoid infection
65. Quadruped – an animal with four feet
66. Refrendum – general vote of the public to decide a question (Syn.–Plebiscite)
67. Red-tapism – official formality resulting in delay
68. Regalia – dress with medals, ribbons worn at official ceremonies
69. Sacrilege – violating the sanctity of religious places/objects (Syn.–Desecration)

70. Sinecure – a job with high salary but a little responsibility
71. Soliloquy – a speech made when one is alone
72. Soporific – a medicine that induces sleep
73. Souvenir – a thing kept in memory of an event
74. Swan song – the last literary work of a writer/an artist
75. Solar – of the sun
76. Transparent – that can be seen through (Ant.–Opaque)
77. Venial – a slight fault that can be forgiven
78. Verbatim – repetition of a speech or a writing word for word
79. Utopia – an imaginary land with perfect social order
80. Zodiac – a diagram showing the path of planets

(C) One Words Denoting Places

1. Abattoir – a place where animals are slaughtered for the market
2. Apiary – a place where bees are kept
3. Aquarium – a tank for fishes
4. Arena – a place for wrestling
5. Arsenal – a place for ammunition and weapons
6. Asylum – a place for lunatics, and political refugees
7. Aviary – a place where birds are kept
8. Archives – a place where government records are kept
9. Burrow – the dwelling place of an animal underground
10. Cache – a place where ammunition is hidden
11. Cage – a place for birds
12. Casino – a place with gambling tables etc.
13. Cemetery – a graveyard where the dead are burried
14. Cloakroom – a place for luggage at a railway station
15. Convent – a residence for nuns
16. Creche – a nursery where children of working parents are cared for while their parents are at work
17. Crematorium – a cremation ground where the last funeral rites are performed
18. Decanter – an ornamental glass bottle for holding wine or other alcoholic drinks
19. Dormitory – the sleeping rooms in a college or public institution
20. Drey – a squirrel's home
21. Elysium – a paradise with perfect bliss
22. Gymnasium – a place where atheletic exercises are performed
23. Granary – a place for storing grain
24. Hangar – a place for housing aeroplanes
25. Hive – a place for bees
26. Hutch – a wooden box with a front of wire for rabbits

27. Infirmary – a home for old persons
28. Kennel – a house of shelter for a dog
29. Lair/Den – the resting place of a wild animal
30. Mint – a place where money is coined
31. Menagerie – a place for wild animals and birds (Sanctuary)
32. Monastery – a residence for monks or priests
33. Morgue – a place where dead bodies are kept for identification
34. Mortuary – a place where dead bodies are kept for post-mortem
35. Orchard – a place where fruit trees are grown
36. Orphanage – a place where orphans are housed
37. Pantry – a place for provisions etc. in the house
38. Portfolio – a portable case for holding papers, drawing etc.
39. Reservoir – a place where water is collected and stored
40. Resort – a place frequented for reasons of pleasure or health
41. Stable – a house of shelter for a horse
42. Sty – a place where pigs are kept
43. Scullery – a place where plates, dishes, pots and other cooking utensils are washed up
44. Sheath, Scabbard – a case in which the blade of a sword is kept
45. Sanatorium – a place for the sick to recover health
46. Tannery – a place where leather is tanned
47. Wardrobe – a place for clothes

(D) One Words Denoting Professions

1. Anchor – a person who presents a radio/television programme
2. Anthropologist – one who studies the evolution of mankind
3. Astronaut – a person, who travels in spacecraft
4. Calligraphist – a person who writes beautiful writing
5. Cartographer – one who draws maps
6. Choreographer – one who teaches art of dancing
7. Chauffeur – one who drives a motor car
8. Compere – one who introduces performing artistes on the stage programmes
9. Curator – one who is incharge of a museum/a cricket pitch
10. Florist – one who deals in flowers
11. Invigilator – one who supervises in the examination hall
12. Laxicographer – one who compiles a dictionary
13. Radio Jockey – one who presents a radio programme
14. Psephologist – one who studies the pattern of voting in elections
15. Sculptor – one who gives shape to stone
16. Usurer – one who lends money at very high rates

(E) One Words Denoting Kinds of Governments

1. **Anarchy** – absence of Government
2. **Aristocracy** – Government by the nobles/lords
3. **Autocracy** – Government by one person (Syn.–Dictatorship)
4. **Autonomy** – the right of self-government
5. **Bureaucracy** – Govt. run by officials
6. **Democracy** – Govt. by the people
7. **Gerontocracy** – Government by old men
8. **Kekistocracy** – Government by the worst citizen
9. **Neocracy** – Government by the inexperienced persons
10. **Ochlocracy** – Government by mob (Syn.–Mobocracy)
11. **Oligarchy** – Government by a few persons
12. **Panarchy** – Government run universally
13. **Plutocracy** – Government by the rich
14. **Secular** – Government not by the laws of religion
15. **Monarchy** – Government by a King/Queen
16. **Thearchy** – Government by the Gods
17. **Theocracy** – Government by the laws of religion

(F) One Words Denoting Killings/Deaths of Persons

1. **Cemetery** – a graveyard where the dead are burried
2. **Cortege** – a funeral procession comprising a number of mourners
3. **Cremation ground/Crematorium** – a place where the last funeral rites are performed
4. **Obituary** – an account in the newspaper about the funeral of the deceased
5. **Elegy** – a poem of lamentation on the death of someone loved and admired
6. **Epitaph** – words inscribed on the grave/tomb in the memory of the one burried
7. **Filicide** – murder of one's children
8. **Foeticide** – murder of a foetus
9. **Fratricide** – murder of one's brother
10. **Genocide** – murder of race
11. **Homicide** – murder of a man/woman
12. **Infanticide** – murder of an infant
13. **Matricide** – murder of one's mother
14. **Parricide** – murder of one's parents
15. **Patricide** – murder of one's father
16. **Regicide** – murder of king or queen
17. **Suicide** – murder of oneself
18. **Uxoricide** – murder of one's wife

19. **Sororicide** – murder of one's sister
20. **Mortuary** – a place where dead bodies are kept for postmortem
21. **Morgue** – a place where bodies are kept for identification
22. **Postmortem** – Medical Examination of a dead body (Syn.–Autopsy)

(G) One Words Denoting Marriages

1. **Adultery** – the practice of having extra-marital relations
2. **Alimony** – an allowance paid to wife on divorce
3. **Bigamy** – the practice of having two wives or husbands at a time
4. **Celibacy** – a state of abstention from marriage
5. **Concubinage** – live-in relationship–a man and a woman living without being married
6. **Misogamist** – one who hates marriage
7. **Matrimony** – a state of being married
8. **Monogamy** – the practice of marrying one at a time
9. **Polygamy** – the practice of marrying more than one wife at a time
10. **Polyandry** – the practice of marrying more than one husband at a time
11. **Spinister** – an older woman who is not married

(H) One Words Denoting Time Periods

1. **Annual** – happening once in a year
2. **Biennial** – happening in two years
3. **Triennial** – happening in three years
4. **Quadrennial** – happening in four years
5. **Quinquennial** – happening in five years
6. **Decennial** – happening in ten years
7. **Semicentennial** – 50th anniversary
8. **Centennial (Centenary)** – 100th anniversary
9. **Sesquicentennial** – 150th anniversary
10. **Bicentennial (bicentenary)** – 200th anniversary
11. **Trientennial (Tercentenary)** – 300th anniversary
12. **Tetra centennial** – 400th anniversary
13. **Pentacentennial** – 500th anniversary
14. **Sexagenarian** – one who is in sixties
15. **Septuagenarian** – one who is in seventies
16. **Octagenarian** – one who is in eighties
17. **Nonagenarian** – one who is in nineties
18. **Centenarian** – one who is hundred years old
19. **Century** – a period of hundred years
20. **Millennium** – a period of 1000 years

(I) One Words Denoting Groups (People, Animals, Birds & Things)

1. **Agenda** – a list of business matters at a meeting
2. **Alliance** – a state of relationship formed between states, powers etc.
3. **Anthology** – a collection of poems
4. **Attendance Retinue** – a number of servants, persons present with a person in authority
5. **Audience** – a number of people gathered to listen
6. **Band** – a group of musicians, followers
7. **Batch** – a group of pupils
8. **Battery** – a group of heavy guns
9. **Bale** – a large quantity of cotton tied in a bundle
10. **Bench** – the office of judges or magistrates
11. **Bevy** – a large group of girls ladies
12. **Block** – a group of houses or buildings bounded by four sides
13. **Bouquet** – a bunch of flowers
14. **Brood** – a family of youngones
15. **Brace** – a pair of pigeons
16. **Board** – decision making body of directors
17. **Cache** – of arms, store house for hiding
18. **Caravan** – a group of people travelling with their vehicles or animals
19. **Catalogue** – a list of books
20. **Caucus** – of inner circle of members of government
21. **Clique** – a small group of persons belonging to a body
22. **Circle** – a group of friends
23. **Claque** – a group of applauders i.e. paid to clap
24. **Cloud** – of locusts
25. **Cluster** – a group of islands
26. **Code** – a systematic collection of laws
27. **Colony/column** – a group of people of one race moving in the same direction
28. **Constellation** – a series of stars
29. **Chest** – of drawers
30. **Congress** – a meeting of delegates
31. **Convoy** – a group of trucks/lorries travelling together under protection
32. **Cortege** – a funeral procession
33. **Course** – a series of lectures or lessons
34. **Conference** – a meeting of preachers, delegates
35. **Congregation** – a group of worshippers
36. **Crew** – of sailors manning ships
37. **Drove** – a flock of cattle (being driven)
38. **Flight** – the action of flying of birds

39. (a) Flotilla – a small fleet of boats
(b) Fleet – of ships
40. Galaxy – a system of millions of stars, beauties
41. Gallery – a room that contains pictures and statues displayed for sale
42. Grove – a small orchard of trees
43. Hamlet – a group of houses in a village
44. Haul – a number of fish (in a net) caught at one time
45. Heap – a number of ruins, stones
46. Herd – a large group of animals that live together
47. Hive – (swarm) of bees
48. Host – a large number of people, reasons, considerations
49. Horde – of people, robbers
50. Jumble – an untidy collection of things
51. Litter – of young pigs, dogs at birth
52. Lock – a section of hair
53. Order – a society of knights, monks living under the same rule
54. Panel – a small group of Inspectors, examiners for investigation
55. Poultry – of fowls, ducks etc.
56. Posse – a group of policemen
57. Rosary – a string of beads
58. School – a group of thinkers, or learned men sharing similar ideas
59. Sea – of troubles, difficulties, cares
60. Series – a number of similar events, matches, lectures
61. Shoal – a large number of fish swimming together
62. Sheaf – of corn, wheat
63. String – a sequence of similar items
64. Stream – a continuous flow of people/visitors
65. Suite – a set of followers, rooms, furniture
66. Suit – a set of clothes made of same fabric
67. Syllabus – the topics of studies
68. Swarm – of flies or locusts, bees, ants
69. Truss – a frame-work of rafters, posts and bars
70. Syndicate – a group of merchants
71. Team – a group of players, horses, oxen
72. Throng – a large crowd of people
73. Tissue – of lies or crimes
74. Troupe – a group of artists, dancers or acrobats
75. Torrent – of abusive invecties, of rain
76. Tuft – of grass, hair
77. Union – a political unit containing a number of states
78. Barrage – of questions
79. Volley – a number of arrows, stones, abuses
80. World – of cares, troubles

(J) One Words Denoting Science and Arts

1. **Acoustics** – the study of sound
2. **Aeronautics** – the science or art of flight
3. **Aesthetics** – the philosophy of fine arts
4. **Agronomy** – the science of soil management and the production of field crops
5. **Alchemy** – Chemistry in ancient times
6. **Bibliography** – the study of history of a list of books on a subject
7. **Anatomy** – the science dealing with the structure of animals, plants or human body
8. **Anthropology** – the science that deals with the origin, physical and cultural development of mankind
9. **Arboriculture** – cultivation of trees and vegetables
10. **Astrology** – the ancient art of predicting the course of human destinies with the help of indications deduced from the position and movement of the heavenly bodies
11. **Bacteriology** – the study of bacteria
12. **Botany** – the study of plants
13. **Calligraphy** – the art of beautiful handwriting
14. **Ceramics, Pottery** – the art and technology of making objects from clay etc.
15. **Chronobiology** – the study of duration of life
16. **Chronology** – the science of arranging time in periods and ascertaining the dates and historical order of the past events
17. **Chromatics** – the art of making fireworks
18. **Cosmogony** – the science of the nature of heavenly bodies
19. **Cosmography** – the science that describes and maps the main features of the universe
20. **Cosmology** – the science of the nature, origin and history of the universe
21. **Cryogenics** – the science of dealing with the production control and the application of very low temperatures
22. **Cypher** – the art of secret writings
23. **Cytology** – the study of cells, especially their formation, structure and functions
24. **Dactylography** – the study of finger prints for the purpose of identification
25. **Dactylology** – the technique of communication by signs made with the fingers. It is generally used by the deaf
26. **Demography** – the study of human population with the help of the records of the number of births and deaths
27. **Ecology** – the study of the relation of animals and plants to their surroundings, animate and inanimate
28. **Entomology** – the study of insects
29. **Epigraphy** – the study of inscriptions

30. Ethnology – the study of human races
31. Ethology – the study of animal behaviour
32. Etymology – the study of origin and history of words (Morphology)
33. Eugenics – the study of production of better offspring by the careful selection of parents
34. Ergonomy – the study of effect of environment on workers
35. Ganealogy – the study of family ancestries and histories
36. Genetics – the branch of biology dealing with the phenomenon of heredity and the laws governing it
37. Geology – the science that deals with the physical history of the earth
38. Gymnastics – the art of performing acrobatics feats
39. Heliotherapy – the sun cure
40. Histology – the study of tissues
41. Horticulture – the cultivation of flowers, fruits, vegetables and ornamental plants
42. Hydropathy – the treatment of diseases by the internal and external use of water
43. Hagiology – Study of the lives of saints.
44. Iconography – teaching with the aid of pictures and models
45. Iconology – the study of symbolic representations
46. Jurisprudence – the science of law
47. Lexicography – the writing or compiling of dictionaries
48. Numismatics – the study of coins and metals
49. Odontology – the scientific study of the teeth
50. Ornithology – the study of birds
51. Orthoepy – the study of correct pronunciation
52. Pedagogy – the art or method of teaching
53. Petrology – the study of rocks/crust
54. Philately – the collection and study of postage/revenue stamps etc.
55. Philology – the study of written records, their authenticity etc.
56. Phonetics – the study of speech sounds, and the production, transmission, reception
57. Physiognomy – the study of human face
59. Paleography – the study of ancient writings
59. Rhetoric – the art of elegant speech or writing
60. Sericulture – the raising of silk worms for the production of raw silk
61. Seismology – the study of earthquakes and the phenomenon associated with it
62. Spelelogy – the study of caves
63. Telepathy – communication between minds by some means other than sensory perception
64. Zoology – the study of animal life

(K) One Words Denoting Phobias/Mental Disorders

The word phobia comes from 'Phobus' a minor Roman God (Son of Mars and Aphrodite) who accompanied his war God Father into the battle to spread fear among the enemy. Warriors carried shields bearing Phobus to reinforce the power of this fear God.

1. **Acrophobia** – high places
2. **Aerophobia** – fear of air
3. **Aglophobia** – of pain
4. **Altiphobia** – of altitude
5. **Anorexia** – fear of getting fat makes young girls stop eating resulting in harmful effect
6. **Agorophobia** – of public/place open
7. **Androphobia** – of males
8. **Autophobia** – of solitude
9. **Bathophobia** – of depths
10. **Biblophobia** – of books
11. **Cacophobia** – of ugliness
12. **Catrophobia** – of doctors
13. **Cellophobia** – extreme fear about beauty
14. **Chronophobia** – of time
15. **Cynophobia** – of dogs
16. **Claustrophobia** – of being confined to small place
17. **Dipsophobia** – of thirst
18. **Dipsomania** – morbid compulsion to drink
19. **Demonomania** – delusion of being under evil spirits
20. **Entomophobia** – of insects
21. **Ergophobia** – of work
22. **Gamophobia** – of marriage
23. **Genophobia** – of birth
24. **Geraphobia** – of old age
25. **Gnosiophobia** – of knowledge
26. **Graphophobia** – of writing
27. **Gynaephobia** – of women
28. **Haemetophobia** – of blood
29. **Hedonophobia** – of pleasure
30. **Hodophobia** – of travel
31. **Hydrophobia** – of water
32. **Kleptophobia** – of stealing/thieves

33. Kleptomania – a compulsive desire to steal
34. Lipophobia – of getting fat
35. Logophobia – of study
36. Logomania – mania for talking
37. Maieusiophobia – of childbirth
38. Metrophobia – of motherhood
39. Menemophobia – of old memories
40. Monophobia – of loneliness, of being alone
41. Mysophobia – of filth, contamination
42. Magalomania – delusion about one's greatness
43. Nyctophobia – of darkness
44. Ophthalmophobia – of eyes
45. Ochlophobia – of crowds/mobs
46. Paedophobia – of children
47. Pathophobia – of disease/sickness
48. Peniophobia – of poverty/money problem
49. Pharmacophobia – of medicine
50. Phasmophobia – of ghosts
51. Xenophobia – of foreigners
52. Pyrophobia – of fire
53. Thanatophobia – of death
54. Scelerophobia – of burglars
55. Theophobia – of God
56. Toxicophobia – of poison
57. Triskaidekaphobia – of number thirteen
58. Theomania – a delusion that one is God

(L) One Words Denoting Young-ones

Adult	Young-one
1. Ass	Foal
2. Bird	Nestling
3. Butterfly, moth	Caterpillar
4. Cat	Kitten
5. Cock	Cockerel
6. Cow	Calf
7. Cow	Heifer
8. Deer	Fawn
9. Dog	Puppy
10. Duck	Duckling

11. Eagle	Eaglet
12. Elephant	Calf
13. Fowl	Chicken
14. Frog (toad)	Tadpole
15. Goat	Kid
16. Goose	Gosling
17. Hare	Leveret
18. Hen	Pullet
19. Horse	Foal, colt
20. Lion, Bear, Fox	Cub
21. Mare	Filly
22. Owl	Owlet
23. Pig	Piglet
24. Sheep	Lamb
25. Stallion (horse)	Colt or Foal
26. Swan	Cygnet

(M) One Words Denoting Distinctive Sounds

Animal	Sound
1. Apes	Gibber
2. Arms	Clang
3. Asses	Bray
4. A person in agony	Moan
5. Babies	Lisp
6. Bees	Hum
7. Beetles	Drone
8. Bells	Jingle/chime
9. Birds	Chirp, warble
10. Brakes	Screech
11. Cattle	Low
12. Camels	Grunt
13. Cats	Mew
14. Chains	Clank
15. Coins	Jingle/tinkle
16. Corks	Pop
17. Cocks	Crow
18. Crows	Crow, caw
19. Deer	Bell
20. Dogs	Bark
21. Doors	Creak/bang

22. Doves	Coo
23. Duck	Quack
24. Elephants	Trumpet
25. Fire	Crackle
26. Flies	Buzz
27. Frogs	Croak
28. Glasses	Tinkle
29. Goats	Bleat
30. Guns	Roar
31. Hens	Cackle
32. Hoofs	Clatter
33. Horses	Neigh
34. Silk	Rustle
35. Hyenas	Laugh
36. Jackals	Howl
37. Larks	Sing, warble
38. Leaves	Rustle
39. Lions	Roar
40. Mice	Squeak
41. Monkeys	Gibber
42. Nightingales	Sing, warble
43. Owls	Hoot
44. Oxen/cow	Low
45. Paper	Crinkle
46. Parrots	Talk
47. Pigeons	Coo
48. Pigs	Squeal
49. Ravens	Croak
50. Rain	Patter
51. Rivers	Murmur
52. Serpents	Hiss
53. Silk	Rustle
54. Teeth	Chatter
55. Tigers	Roar
56. Trees	Sigh
57. Water	Ripple
58. Whip	Crack
59. Wind	Whistle
60. Wings	Flap

(N) One Words Denoting Diminutives

'Diminutives' are the words that indicate smallness. Such words are often used as an expression, of affection or contempt. Diminutives are normally formed by the use of suffixes such as 'Let' etc. For example the diminutive of the book may be formed by the use of 'let'— Booklet.

Word	Diminutive
1. **Ankle**	Anklet
2. **Babe**	Baby
3. **Ball**	Ballet, Bullet
4. **Baron**	Baronet
5. **Book**	Booklet
6. **Brace**	Bracelet
7. **Brook**	Brooklet
8. **Car**	Chariot
9. **Cask**	Casket
10. **City**	Citadel
11. **Cigar**	Cigarette
12. **Corn**	Kernel
13. **Crown**	Coronet
14. **Dear**	Darling
15. **Grain**	Granule
16. **Hill**	Hillock
17. **Home**	Hamlet
18. **Ice**	Icicle
19. **Isle**	Islet
20. **Lady Purse**	Reticule
21. **Latch**	Latchet
22. **Leaf**	Leaflet
23. **Lock**	Locket
24. **Nest**	Nestling
25. **Nose**	Nozzle
26. **Part**	Particle
27. **Poet**	Poetaster
28. **Pouch**	Pocket
29. **Ring**	Ringlet
30. **River**	Rivulet
31. **Sack**	Satchel
32. **Star**	Starlet, Asterisk
33. **Statue**	Statuette
34. **Stream**	Streamlet
35. **Table**	Tablet
36. **Top**	Tip
37. **Tower**	Turret
38. **Umbrella**	Parasol
39. **Weak**	Weakling

(O) One Words Denoting Comparisons

1. As *blind* as a bat.
2. As *bitter* as gall, hemlock.
3. As *cheerful* as a lark.
4. As *cunning, sly, wily* as a fox.
5. As *fair* as a rose.
6. As *fast* as a hare, light, storm, eagle.
7. As *firm* as a rock.
8. As *flat* as a board, or a pancake.
9. As *free* as air.
10. As *fresh* as a daisy or a rose.
11. As *grave* as a judge.
12. As *greedy* as a dog, or a wolf.
13. As *gentle* as a lamb.
14. As *hard* as a flint, or a stone.
15. As *harmless* as a dove.
16. As *hungry* as a horse, or a hunter.
17. As *light* as a feather.
18. As *merry* as a cricket.
19. As *obstinate* as a mule.
20. As *pale* as death, or ghost.
21. As *playful* as a butterfly, or a kitten or a squirrel.
22. As *proud* as a peacock.
23. As *slippery* as an eel.
24. As *soft* as butter.
25. As *silent* as the dead, or stars.
26. As *tricky* as a monkey.
27. As *true* as steel.
28. As *wise* as a serpent or Solomon.
29. As *yieldling* as wax.
30. As *agile* as a cat, monkey.
31. As *far* apart as the poles.
32. As *black* as ebony/coal.
33. As *blithe* as May.
34. As *boisterous* as stormy sea winds.
35. As *bounteous* as nature.
36. As *brief* as time–as a dream.
37. As *brittle* as glass.
38. As *candid* as mirrors.
39. As *chaste* as Minerva.

40. As *constant* as the sun.
41. As *cool* as cucumber.
42. As *cosy* as the nest of a bird.
43. As *dangerous* as machine-guns.
44. As *deceptive* as the mirage of the desert.
45. As *docile* as a lamb.
46. As *fit* as a fiddle.
47. As *fresh* as dew, as a sea breeze, rose.
48. As *grim* as death.
49. As *haggard* as spectres, ghosts.
50. As *harsh* as truth.
51. As *heavy* as lead.
52. As *inconsistent* as the moon, as the waves.
53. As *industrious* as an ant.
54. As *inevitable* as death/fate.
55. As *mad* as a hatter, as a March hare.
56. As *mean* as a miser.
57. As *meek* as a dove, mouse.
58. As *nervous* as a mouse.
59. As *resistless* as wind.
60. As *restless* as ambition, as the sea.
61. As *secure* as the grave.
62. As *slow* as a snail.
63. As *solitary* as a tomb.
64. As *talkative* as a magpie.
65. As *transparent* as glass.
66. As *treacherous* as memory.
67. As *vain* as a peacock.
68. As *vigilant* as stars.
69. As *zig–zag* as lightning.
70. As *uncertain* as the weather.
71. As *white* as snow.
72. As hungry as church mouse.
73. As dear as life.
74. As straight as an arrow.
75. As impatient as a lover.
76. As swift as an arrow.
77. As old as hills.
78. As cold as marble.
79. As sharp as razor.
80. As busy as a bee.

Chapter

3 Words with Meanings

A

1. **Adamant** *(adj.)* (hard, inflexible)—Though she was *adamant* in the beginning, she came round in the end.
2. **Adverse** *(adj.)* (unfavourable, hostile)—One must try to overcome *adverse* circumstances.
3. **Affected** *(adj.)* (artificial, pretend, influence)—She is proud and always behaves in an *affected* manner.
4. **Allay** *(v.)* (calm, pacify)—The mother *allayed* the fears of the child.
5. **Accord** *(n.)* (agreement)—There is an *accord* among the family members over this problem.
6. **Adulterate** *(v.)* (make impure)—Those who *adulterate* milk should be severely punished.
7. **Agility** *(n.)* (nimbleness, alacrity)—The police acted with *agility* and apprehended the robbers.
8. **Admonish** *(v.)* (warn, reprove)—The officer *admonished* his subordinates for their irregular attendance.
9. **Assuage** *(v.)* (ease, lessen)—Rohon's friends *assuaged* his apprehension of injustice at the hands of the Principal.
10. **Alleviate** *(v.)* (relieve, assuage)—Saints are born to *alleviate* the pain and misery of mankind.
11. **Altruism** *(n.)* (unselfish devotion)—My friend is imbued with *altruism* and has made over his property to a charitable trust.
12. **Amass** *(v.)* (collect)—He has no time to do good to others and appears to be more interested in *amassing* wealth.
13. **Acrimonious** *(adj.)* (stinging, caustic)—There were *acrimonious* arguments between the two brothers causing loss of prestige to the family.
14. **Anomaly** *(n.)* (irregularity)—I assure you, it is an *anomaly* because he never behaves like this in an ordinary course of life.
15. **Aptitude** *(n.)* (fitness, talent)—Scientific temper calls for *aptitude* for liberal thinking.

16. Alimony *(n.)* (payment to divorced wife)—She has been fighting for *alimony* from her estranged husband for two years.

17. Atone *(v.)* (make amends)—You must *atone* for the injustice you have done to innocent people.

18. Ambiguous *(adj.)* (doubtful in meaning)—One must avoid the use of *ambiguous* language while writing on social problems.

19. Abjure *(v.)* (give up)—You must *abjure* the pursuit of sinful acts.

20. Adjure *(v.)* (request)—I *adjured* my officers to grant me leave for a day or so.

21. Allege *(v.)* (charge without proof)—It was *alleged* by her enemies that she has misappropriated the money of the trust.

22. Acme *(n.)* (top, pinnacle, apex)—Once at the *acme* of his political career, now he is at nadir.

23. Analogy *(n.)* (similarity)—The *analogy* between the security problems of India and Pakistan is uncalled for.

24. Appraise *(v.)* (estimate value of)—It is always difficult to *appraise* the efforts in true spirit if the results are not favourable.

25. Allocate *(v.)* [earmark, set aside (funds)] The Prime Minister has *allocated* a huge sum for the uplift of those living below poverty-line.

26. Adage *(n.)* (wise saying, proverb)—We have often heard the *adage* 'Pride hath a fall'.

27. Adversity *(n.)* (poverty, misfortune)—*Adversity* brings out the latent qualities in a person.

28. Affluence *(n.)* (abundance, wealth)—*Affluence* in his life made him forget the value of character.

29. Ample *(adj.)* (abundant)—There is an *ample* stock of nuclear weapons in the arsenal of super powers.

30. Absolve *(v.)* (pardon, exonerate)—At last he was *absolved* from the charge of misconduct to his officers.

31. Abscond *(v.)* (hide, run secretly)—Since he committed murder he has been *absconding*.

32. Affray *(n.)* (public brawl)—The timely action of the police averted serious mishap of the *affray* between the two communities.

33. Annihilate *(v.)* (destroy)—The use of nuclear weapons is likely to *annihilate* humanity.

34. Affable *(adj.)* (amiable, pleasing)—His *affable* manners always win him admiration in the society.

35. Amplify *(v.)* (enlarge)—The students requested the teacher to *amplify* upon the point under discussion.

36. Amalgamate *(v.)* (combine, unite in one body)—The two firms were *amalgamated* under the Chairmanship of Mr. Mukesh Ambani.

37. **Appease** *(v.)* (pacify, soothe)—Every political party tries to *appease* the minorities to create its own vote bank.

38. **Apprise** *(v.)* (inform)—The Minister was *apprised* of the dangerous situation.

39. **Arduous** *(adj.)* (hard, strenuous)—A journey to Amarnath Shrine is very *arduous*.

40. **Apprehend** *(v.)* (arrest, fear)—Everybody *apprehends* trouble in the city on account of the abduction of an industrialist.

41. **Ameliorate** *(v.)* (improve)—Unless we *ameliorate* the condition of the working class, we cannot expect the prosperity of the country.

42. **Adulation** *(n.)* (praise, flattery)—False *adulation* of the leaders by their followers is a common practice these days.

43. **Animosity** *(n.)* (active enmity)—*Animosity* between the two leaders has embittered the relations, between the two communities.

44. **Audacity** *(n.)* (boldness)—He is feared for his *audacity* and unyielding attitude.

45. **Amnesty** *(n.)* (general pardon)—On the birth day of the Prince, the King granted *amnesty* to the prisoners.

46. **Ancillary** *(adj.)* (accessory)—He is serving in the *ancillary* unit of a multinational company.

47. **Agrarian** *(adj.)* (of land, farming)—Inspite of *agrarian* reforms, Indian agriculture has not shown remarkable progress.

48. **Acumen** *(n.)* (mental keenness)—The Jews are known for their business *acumen*.

49. **Abrasive** *(adj.)* (offensive)—Nobody likes her for her *abrasive* and haughty behaviour.

50. **Amulet** *(n.)* (charm against evil)—The saint gave him an *amulet* to ward off the evil.

B

1. **Benevolent** *(adj.)* (generous, charitable)—He is noted for his *benevolent* nature.

2. **Biennial** *(adj.)* (every two years)—The meeting of the members of the Trust is held *biennially*.

3. **Belated** *(adj.)* (delayed)—He was sorry for making *belated* payment.

4. **Beguile** *(v.)* (delude, cheat)—Don't be *beguiled* by the pleasant manners of hypocrites.

5. **Behove** *(v.)* (suited to befit, become)—It does not *behove* our political leaders to berate one another for failure in the field of economy.

6. **Banal** *(adj.)* (commonplace, trite)—The stories of Ruskin Bond are not *banal* because he writes about uncommon subjects.

7. **Brazen** *(adj.)* (insolent, impudent, impertinent)—Her *brazen* behaviour at the party offended her poor relations.

8. **Bouquet** *(n.)* (bunch of flowers)—He presented a *bouquet* to his ailing mother.

9. **Brooch** *(n.)* (ornamental clasp)—She always wears a *brooch* on her pullover.

10. **Blatant** *(adj.)* (openly shameless)—His behaviour was condemned as *blatant* when he blamed his father for his own misdeeds.

11. **Bantering** *(n.)* [ridicule (good natured)] Even his *bantering* was considered offensive.

12. **Broach** *(v.)* (open up discussion)—The parents of the boy did not even *broach* the issue of marriage with Reena.

13. **Bereft** *(adj.)* (deprived of, lacking)—*Bereft* of wealth and honour, he died miserable death.

14. **Benefactor** *(n.)* (gift giver, patron)—Lord Chesterfield did not prove *benefactor* to Dr. Johnson in the long run.

15. **Benediction** *(n.)* (blessing, boon)—The *benediction* of the elders should always be valued more than anything else.

16. **Bleak** *(adj.)* (dismal, gloomy)—Khayber Pass is *bleak* throughout the year.

17. **Bonanza** *(n.)* (windfall, sudden gain)—The legacy left by his uncle proved *bonanza* for him and his family.

18. **Belittle** *(v.)* (disparage, underestimate)—Our adversaries always try to *belittle* our success.

19. **Bellicose** *(adj.)* (warlike, militant, belligerent)—India must adopt *bellicose* approach with regard to her security problems.

20. **Bereavement** *(n.)* (death of near and dear one)—On account of *bereavement* in the family, he did not attend office for days together.

21. **Bigotry** *(n.)* (fanaticism)—Indians are always shocked at the *bigotry* and narrow mindedness of other races.

22. **Berate** *(v.)* (scold strongly)—The father *berated* his son for being negligent in his study.

23. **Beneficiary** *(n.)* (person entitled to benefits)—Those living below poverty-line are the *beneficiary* of this scheme.

24. **Betroth** *(v.)* (engaged to marry)—She was *betrothed* to her fiance last month.

25. **Brochure** *(n.)* (pamphlet with information)—The *brochure* supplied by the Institute provides all the information that you need.

26. **Bestow** *(v.)* (confer, give)—Nature has *bestowed* many gifts on man.

27. **Bid** *(n.)* (effort, order, auction)—He was caught while making a *bid* on her life.

28. **Baneful** (*adj.*) (ruinous, poisonous)—Drugs have *baneful* effect on the mind of the youth.

29. **Bravado** (*n.*) (swagger, false courage)—Retired soldiers often assume the airs of *bravado*.

30. **Besmirch** (*v.*) (defile)—The opposition always tries to *besmirch* the reputation of the ruling party.

31. **Bovine** (*adj.*) (of cow)—She is *bovine* by nature while her sister is haughty.

32. **Baffle** (*v.*) (perplex, frustrate)—(i) A wrong signal was sent to *baffle* the enemy.

(ii) All his efforts were *baffled* by the adamant attitude of his father.

33. **Berserk** (*adv.*) (frenzied, amuck, amok)—The police went *berserk* and began to lathicharge the crowd demonstrating peacefully.

34. **Boutique** (*n.*) (store for fashionable clothes)—My friend runs a *boutique* in the heart of the city.

35. **Breach** (*n.*) (breaking of contract/duty, peace, rift)—Anti-social elements were rounded up for fear of *breach* of peace.

36. **Bizarre** (*adj.*) (grotesque, awkward)—The gentry present in the club were not expected to behave in a *bizarre* manner.

37. **Bode** (*v.*) (foreshadow, foretell, augur)—Frequent elections in the country do not *bode* well for democracy in India.

38. **Blasphemous** (*adj.*) (impious, irreligious)—*Blasphemous* acts always lead to communal riots.

C

1. **Chide** (*v.*) (scold)—Lata was *chided* for coming late to the meeting.

2. **Conversant** (*adj.*) (familiar)—A good citizen is supposed to be *conversant* with the rules of the road.

3. **Capricious** (*adj.*) (fickle, unstable, faithless)—*Capricious* persons change their mind frequently without any reason.

4. **Caption** (*n.*) (title)—Please give a suitable *caption* to this picture.

5. **Carnage** (*n.*) (destruction of life, massacre)—The use of atomic weapons can cause *carnage* that is impossible for human mind to foresee.

6. **Clemency** (*n.*) (leniency, mildness, kindness)—A judge should never dispense with *clemency* while dealing with criminals.

7. **Chaste** (*adj.*) (pure, virtuous)—She is known for her *chaste* character.

8. **Cogent** (*adj.*) (convincing, forceful)—He could not offer any *cogent* reasons for his absence.

9. **Compatible** (*adj.*) (harmonious, suitable)—They always had *compatible* relations because there was deep understanding between them.

10. **Collusion** *(n.)* (conspiracy, nexus)—The local M.P. was found in *collusion* with the smugglers operating in the town.

11. **Contingency** *(n.)* (emergency)—My father always maintains *contingency* fund to meet with unforeseen expenses.

12. **Condone** *(v.)* (overlook, forgive)—His fault is too serious to be *condoned*.

13. **Consensus** *(n.)* (general agreement)—A good government can be run efficiently by *consensus* among all the parties.

14. **Corroborate** *(v.)* (confirm)—I am speaking the truth and my father is sure to *corroborate* my statement.

15. **Crestfallen** *(adj.)* (dejected)—On account of heavy loss in business, he is *crestfallen* these days.

16. **Conclave** *(n.)* (private meeting)—Both the enemies agreed to hold a *conclave* without the presence of a third party.

17. **Construe** *(v.)* (interpret)—It is difficult to *construe* the working of laws of Nature.

18. **Cryptic** *(adj.)* (mysterious, hidden)—She was never forthcoming in her replies which were wholly *cryptic*.

19. **Calamity** *(n.)* (natural disaster)—Though man claims to have conquered nature, he is frequently struck by *calamities*.

20. **Commensurate** *(adj.)* (equal in proportion)—The income of Indian farmer is hardly *commensurate* with the labour he has to do.

21. **Commodious** *(adj.)* (spacious, comfortable)—He has built a *commodious* house because his sister is likely to live with him.

22. **Capitulate** *(v.)* (surrender)—After long encounter the militants had to *capitulate*.

23. **Compunction** *(n.)* (feeling of regret, remorse)—Even the hard core criminals felt *compunction* at the injustice they had done to the family of their rivals.

24. **Canine** *(adj.)* (of dog)—The flatterers follow their masters with *canine* faithfulness.

25. **Callow** *(n.)* (inexperienced)—Though he is a *callow* now, he will gain experience by and by.

26. **Chagrin** *(n.)* (annoyance, disappointment)—The defeat of our team filled us with *chagrin*.

27. **Censure** *(n.)* (blame, criticise)—*Censure* Motion in the Parliament could not be tabled for want of quorum.

28. **Calibre** *(n.)* (capacity, talent)—His *calibre* for doing work in a meticulous manner is always appreciated.

29. **Cede** *(v.)* [transfer title (land)] India should never *cede* an inch of land to any foreign country.

30. **Chauvinist** *(n.)* (blindly devoted)—A *chauvinist* is incapable of realizing his fault in his thinking.

31. **Celestial** *(adj.)* (heavenly)—The study of *celestial* bodies always interests me.

32. **Clandestine** *(adj.)* (secret)—*Clandestine* activities of the smugglers are well-known to the police.

33. **Covert** *(adj.)* (hidden, implied)—The *covert* warning he gave to me opened my eyes to the reality of the situation.

34. **Catastrophe** *(n.)* (calamity)—A *catastrophe* in the form of cyclone has struck the coastal cities of India.

35. **Condolence** *(n.)* (sympathy)—I visited my friend to offer *condolence* on the death of his uncle.

36. **Chastise** *(v.)* (punish)—Rita was *chastised* for her unruly behaviour in the presence of the guests.

37. **Connivance** *(n.)* (pretence of ignorance, overlook)—Criminals have been carrying on their nefarious activities with the *connivance* of the police.

38. **Contraband** *(adj.)* (illegal goods)—Customs Department has not been able to stop traffic in *contraband* goods.

39. **Countermand** *(v.)* (cancel, revoke)—The Election Commission has *countermanded* the election of the M.L.A. for over spending in elections.

40. **Colloquial** *(adj.)* (pertaining to conversation)—*Colloquial* language should be simple and easy.

41. **Conflagration** *(n.)* (widespread fire)—As long as the nuclear arsenal exists in the world, there is every possibility of nuclear *conflagration*.

42. **Compliant** *(adj.)* (docile, flexible)—He is admired for his *compliant* nature.

43. **Cliche** *(n.)* (stereotyped phrase(I never listen to the speeches of the leaders because they are always full of *cliches*.

44. **Condign** *(adj.)* (adequate, rigorous)—No punishment, whatsover is *condign* for a rapist.

45. **Congregation** *(n.)* (religious gathering)—The militants did not hesitate in throwing bombs at the *congregation* gathered in the religious place.

46. **Chary** *(adj.)* (cautious, watchful, wary)—We should be always *chary* of the strangers.

47. **Coerce** *(v.)* (force, repress)—She was *coerced* by her husband into bringing money from her parents.

48. **Confound** *(v.)* (confuse)—On seeing the ghastly sight of murder, everyone was *confounded*.

49. **Cache** *(n.)* (hiding place (store)—*Cache* of illegal arms was recovered by the police.

50. **Cavil** *(v.)* (find fault)—Please dont't *cavil* about unimportant matters.

51. **Charisma** *(n.)* (popular charm, spiritual grace)—Swami Vivekanand always stood out in the crowd because of *charisma* reflected on his face.

52. **Castigate** *(v.)* (punish)—The thief was *castigated* by the police.

53. **Carping** *(adj.)* (find fault(*Carping* critics were responsible for the miserable life of the English poet, John Keats.

D

1. **Dauntless** *(adj.)* (bold, brave)—Shivaji was a *dauntless* warrior.

2. **Decry** *(v.)* (disparage)—You can't gain anything by *decrying* the success of your rivals.

3. **Devoid** *(adj.)* (lacking)—I cannot trust him because he is *devoid* of sense of right and wrong.

4. **Dearth** *(n.)* (scarcity)—There is no *dearth* of talent in India but it has remained unexploited.

5. **Deference** *(n.)* (regards for another's wish)—We are advised to act in *deference* to the wishes of our parents.

6. **Dubious** *(adj.)* (not certain, doubtful, suspicious)—He is *dubious* about the scheme made by his friends.

7. **Deleterious** *(adj.)* (harmful)—We should always beware of the *deleterious* effect of overeating.

8. **Defile** *(v.)* (pollute, profane)—One should never *defile* sanctity of religious places so as not to hurt the sentiments of others.

9. **Deterrent** *(n.)* (discouraging)—India must possess nuclear weapons so that they may act as *deterrent* for her hostile neighbours.

10. **Dilapidation** *(n.)* (state of ruins)—Ancient monuments in our town are in the state of *dilapidation*.

11. **Disdain** *(v.)* (treat with scorn)—He always *disdains* what he considers dishonest.

12. **Dire** *(adj.)* (disastrous)—In the interest of National Security, we must not be intimidated by the *dire* consequences of economic sanctions.

13. **Dissipate** *(v.)* (squander, waste)—India cannot afford to *dissipate* the forest resources.

14. **Devout** *(adj.)* (religious, pious)—My mother is *devout* and God fearing.

15. **Dint** *(n.)* (means, effort)—You can attain success by *dint* of hard work.

16. **Dormant** *(adj.)* (torpid, hidden, latent)—Adversity brings out *dormant* qualities in a person to overcome the problems.

17. **Divulge** *(v.)* (reveal, unravel)—He tried to gain my favour by *divulging* the secrets of my friends.

18. **Defunct** *(adj.)* (dead, no longer in use)—On account of heavy loss, the factory of my uncle is almost *defunct*.

19. **Delusion** *(n.)* (hallucination, false)—We should never be under *delusion* about our capability.

20. **Deplete** *(v.)* (reduce, dwindle)—India has recklessly *depleted* her forest resources after Independence.

21. **Debauch** *(v.)* (corrupt)—Some of the T.V. channels have *debauched* the morals and manners of the youth of our country.

22. **Dovetail** *(v.)* (fit together)—You can be benefitted only if you *dovetail* these two schemes to cut down the cost of the material.

23. **Decoy** *(n.)* (lure, bait)—A goat is often used as a *decoy* by the hunters to catch a lion.

24. **Daunt** *(v.)* (intimidate)—One should never be *daunted* by difficulties in life.

25. **Delete** *(v.)* (erase, remove)—His name has been *deleted* from the list of successful candidates.

26. **Deride** *(v.)* (scoff at)—He is in the habit of *deriding* the achievements of his friends.

27. **Despise** *(v.)* (scorn, detest)—We should not *despise* anyone for his poverty.

28. **Debacle** *(n.)* (down fall)—The poor batting performance resulted in the *debacle* of our team.

29. **Deployment** *(n.)* (spreading out troops)—The Central Government has promised the *deployment* of additional troops during elections.

30. **Diffident** *(adj.)* (shy, timid)—A successful teacher is not expected to be *diffident*.

31. **Dynamic** *(adj.)* (energetic)—At this critical juncture, India needs *dynamic* and sagacious political leaders.

32. **Dilemma** *(n.)* (in a fix)—He is in a *dilemma* over the choice of career.

33. **Despotism** *(n.)* (tyranny, cruelty)—Germans got fed up with *despotism* of Hitler very soon.

34. **Dexterous** *(adj.)* (skilful)—The artisans of Moradabad are *dexterous* in brass work.

35. **Detrimental** *(adj.)* (harmful)—The foreign aid has proved to be *detrimental* to our economy.

36. **Desecrate** *(v.)* (violate sanctity)—The rioters *desecrated* the religious places.

37. **Diversity** *(n.)* (variety)—*Diversity* is the hallmark of Indian Civilization.

38. **Dulcet** *(adj.)* (melodious to the ear/taste)—As a singer Jagjit Singh is known for his *dulcet* voice.

39. **Demise** *(n.)* (death)—In the *demise* of Sardar Patel, India lost the most sagacious leader.

40. Demolition *(n.)* (destruction)—The Municipal Corporation has started *demolition* campaign to clear up encroachment.

41. Deranged *(adj.)* (insane, mad)—None but a *deranged* person could have behaved in such an irresponsible manner.

42. Demur *(v.)* (delay, hesitate)—A practical man would never *demur* to avail himself of every chance.

43. Demure *(adj.)* (shy, quiet)—She is both *demure* and introvert.

44. Dilatory *(adj.)* (causing delay)—Many politicians consider *dilatory* tactics as an art of politics.

45. Deteriorate *(v.)* (get worse)—The condition of the patient has *deteriorated.*

E

1. Extinct *(adj.)* (out of existence)—Many species of flora & fauna have become *extinct*.

2. Emaciated *(adj.)* (thin and wasted)—On account of poverty and starvation most of the children are *emaciated*.

3. Elucidate *(v.)* (explain, enlighten)—The Government had been asked to *elucidate* their economic policy.

4. Engross *(v.)* (fully absorbed)—She did not talk to me because she was *engrossed* in writing a letter.

5. Enormity *(n.)* (great wickedness)—He is a hardened criminal and is insensitive to the *enormity* of his crimes.

6. Extant *(n.)* (in existence)—Many of the ancient documents, still *extant* tell us about the diversity of Indian culture.

7. Ecstasy *(n.)* (rapture, joy)—On hearing of the sudden financial wind fall, the family was in *ecstasy*.

8. Effigy *(n.)* (dummy)—The *effigy* of the American President was burnt by the crowd when the unfavourable remarks against India were made by him.

9. Exorbitant *(n.)* (excessive)—It is very difficult to hire taxi because of the *exorbitant* charges.

10. Embezzlement *(n.)* (misappropriation)—Most of the politicians involved in the *embezzlement* of public money are still at large.

11. Emanate *(v.)* (issue from)—This letter *emanated* from the central office.

12. Enamoured *(v.)* (in love, fascinated)—Every member of the picnic party was *enamoured* of the scenic beauty of the landscape.

13. Exonerate *(v.)* (acquit, exculpate)—After long legal battle, he was *exonerated* of murder charges.

14. Expunge *(v.)* (delete, cancel)—I shall request the Principal to *expunge* the unfavourable remarks from your annual report.

15. **Extol** *(v.)* (praise, glorify)—Every Indian *extolled* the achievement of the Govt. in curbing the militancy in the state.

16. **Emulate** *(v.)* (imitate, follow)—We must *emulate* the ideals of Netaji to make our country strong and invincible.

17. **Enhance** *(v.)* (increase, improve)—The judicious use of cosmetics *enhance* the natural charms.

18. **Estranged** *(adj.)* (separated)—The *estranged* husband and wife are living separately.

19. **Expediency** *(n.)* (advisable, practical)—Those who hanker after material gains are often guided by *expediency* and not by moral sense.

20. **Extraneous** *(adj.)* (not essential, external)—Bigotry is *extraneous* to the basic tenets of Hinduism.

21. **Extort** *(v.)* (get money by threats)—Anti-social elements are busy in *extorting* money from the businessmen with the connivance of the police.

22. **Evasive** *(adj.)* (not frank, avoiding)—The police could not make out anything of her *evasive* replies.

23. **Ennui** *(n.)* (mental boredom)—The modern youth suffer from feeling of *ennui* since they are not engaged in any constructive work.

24. **Exquisite** *(adj.)* (beautiful)—The picture hanging on the wall is an *exquisite* work of art.

25. **Encomium** *(n.)* (praise)—Every member of the family showered *encomium* on his grand success.

26. **Erode** *(v.)* (decay)—The desire for material success has *eroded* our concern for the poor.

27. **Erudite** *(adj.)* (learned, scholarly)—His writings are not *erudite* but they are read with keen interest.

28. **Eschew** *(v.)* (avoid, give up)—We must *eschew* violence in dealing with national issues.

29. **Epoch** *(n.)* (period of time, era)—The exact duration of Indus Valley Civilization *epoch* has not been determined so far.

30. **Equanimity** *(n.)* (calmness)—We must bear the hardships with *equanimity*.

31. **Enormous** *(adj.)* (huge, immense)—On account of fire there was *enormous* loss of goods and property.

32. **Endemic** *(adj.)* (prevailing in a region)—Goitre is *endemic* in the hilly areas for want of iodine in water.

33. **Expiate** *(v.)* (atone for)—He is ready to *expiate* his sins by giving up irresponsible way of life.

34. **Embellish** *(v.)* (decorate)—The writers generally *embellish* their style by the use of unnecessary imagery.

35. **Ecology** *(n.)* (science of environment)—*Ecology* is the study of environment.

36. **Egregious** *(adj.)* [exceptional (crime)] It is difficult to reform him because he is an *egregious* criminal.

37. **Exodus** *(n.)* (departure (large scale))—The *exodus* of the Hindus from Kashmir valley is deplorable.

38. **Errant** *(adj.)* (erring from right path)—Many *errant* students were punished.

39. **Errand** *(n.)* (short visit to fetch something)—My servant has gone on *errand* to fetch rations.

40. **Erroneous** *(adj.)* (incorrect, mistaken)—It is *erroneous* idea on your part that he will return home at last.

41. **Envisage** *(v.)* (foresee in mind)—It was difficult for everyone to *envisage* the loss in such a profitable venture.

42. **Emancipate** *(v.)* (make free)—Raja Ram Mohan Roy tried to *emancipate* women from many social evils.

F

1. **Flagrant** *(adj.)* (glaring, openly wicked)—It is not easy to pardon such *flagrant* violation of the decorum of the House.

2. **Fickle** *(adj.)* (changeable, faithless)—*Fickle* minded persons cannot be relied upon.

3. **Filial** *(adj.)* (of son or daughter)—Children must fulfil their *filial* duties towards their parents.

4. **Fray** *(n.)* (brawl, contest)—The miscreants involved in the *fray* were arrested by the police.

5. **Facile** *(adj.)* (easy, expert)—India could achieve *facile* victory in the match yesterday.

6. **Fallible** *(adj.)* (liable to err)—Man is *fallible*.

7. **Fervent** *(adj.)* (ardent, warm)—My friend was accorded *fervent* welcome on his arrival.

8. **Fete** *(n.)* (outdoor entertainment, carnival)—A charity *fete* was held in our college yesterday.

9. **Fictitious** *(adj.)* (imaginary)—Don't believe his story because it is just *fictitious*.

10. **Foolhardy** *(adj.)* (rash, reckless)—Many believe that trying for impossible things is *foolhardy* attempt.

11. **Fiat** *(n.)* (command)—The Court issued a *fiat* to both the parties to maintain status quo.

12. **Finale** *(n.)* (conclusion)—The *finale* of the match was very interesting.

13. **Fitful** *(adj.)* (spasmodic, intermittent)—You are not going to achieve anything by pursuing *fitful* study.

14. **Fraught** *(adj.)* (filled, threatening)—Security problem on our borders is *fraught* with danger.

15. **Fortitude** *(n.)* (bravery, courage)—One must face the problems of life with *fortitude*.

16. **Feasible** *(adj.)* (practicable)—We must execute proposal that is *feasible*.

17. **Ferment** *(n.)* (agitation, commotion)—During Quit India Movement, the whole nation was in *ferment*.

18. **Franchise** *(n.)* (right by government to vote or trade)—The Mughals granted *franchise* to East India Company to carry on trade in India.

19. **Foible** *(adj.)* (weakness)—Man is subject to *foibles* and frailities in life.

20. **Flaunt** *(v.)* (display ostentatiously)—The rich are in the habit of *flaunting* their material achievements.

21. **Flout** *(v.)* (reject, mock)—No good citizen will *flout* the rules of the road.

22. **Foment** *(v.)* (stir up, instigate)—The decision of the Govt. is likely to *foment* disagreement among the opposition parties.

23. **Furtive** *(adj.)* (secret, stealthy)—She entered the room with *furtive* steps to avoid the attention of the teacher.

24. **Frantic** *(adj.)* (excited, wildly)—*Frantic* efforts are going on on the eve of the visit of the Prime Minister.

25. **Frigid** *(adj.)* (intensely cold)—One must not be *frigid* in one's attitude towards his near and dear ones.

26. **Flair** *(n.)* (talent)—Our Prime Minister has *flair* for glib talk.

27. **Faux pas** *(n.)* (an error in manner or behaviour)—Her thoughtless remarks in the meeting were a *faux pas* and amused everyone.

28. **Flux** *(n.)* (flowing, changing)—No foreign investor would like to invest in a country where the state of economy is in a *flux*.

29. **Fracas** *(n.)* (noisy quarrel)—The mob gathered in the street when there was *fracas* between the two neighbours.

30. **Freak** *(adj.)* (unusual, abnormal)—It is just an example of his *freak* behaviour because he normally doesn't behave in this manner.

31. **Fawning** *(adj.)* (flattering)—One must be wary of *fawning* admirers because they have always an axe to grind.

32. **Fecundity** *(n.)* (fruitfulness)—The *fecundity* of a poet's imagination makes a poem an exquisite work of art.

33. **Foray** *(n.)* (raid)—The *foray* against the enemy outpost met with an unexpected success.

G

1. **Gracious** *(adj.)* (kind, generous)—God is *gracious*.
2. **Grouse** *(n.)* (complaint)—I have no *grouse* against anyone for the misfortunes of life.
3. **Glut** *(n.)* (overstock)—As there is economic recession, there is a *glut* of luxury goods in the market.
4. **Guileless** *(adj.)* (without deceit)—She is so *guileless* that she will believe anyone.
5. **Glutton** *(n.)* (greedy for food)—Being a *glutton* he is base.
6. **Glib** *(adj.)* (fluent)—Those who have command of language are *glib* talkers.
7. **Gimmick** *(n.)* (trick)—The reservation policy is just a political *gimmick*.
8. **Gigantic** *(adj.)* (huge in size)—*Gigantic* crowd was there to listen to the speech of the Prime Minister.
9. **Glossary** *(n.)* (brief explanation)—You will find explanation of this in the *glossary* given at the end of the book.
10. **Gaol** *(n.)* (jail)—He is a hardened criminal and has often been to *gaol*.
11. **Grumble** *(v.)* (complain, protest)—We should not *grumble* when we are required to comply with the orders of our employers.
12. **Gusto** *(n.)* (enjoyment, enthusiasm)—The Independence Day was celebrated in our college with *gusto*.
13. **Gainsay** *(v.)* (deny)—Nobody can *gainsay* the truth of my statement.
14. **Gregarious** *(adj.)* (flocking together, sociable)—The lion is not *gregarious* animal.
15. **Gist** *(n.)* (essence)—Please write the *gist* of the paragraph in not more than fifty words.
16. **Garish** *(adj.)* (gaudy)—She wears *garish* clothes which don't suit her.
17. **Gait** *(n.)* (manner of walking)—Her *gait* is graceful.
18. **Ghastly** *(adj.)* (horrible, fearful)—Everybody was horrified at the sight of *ghastly* murder.
19. **Gruesome** *(adj.)* (frightful, heinous, grisly)—The children cried when they saw the *gruesome* appearance of a killer.
20. **Goad** *(v.)* (urge on)—He was *goaded* by the classmates to make fun of the teacher.
21. **Grasp** *(v.)* (understand, seize)—I think you have *grasped* the meaning of my statement.
22. **Grimace** *(n.)* (expression of pain)—When hit on the head, he cried with *grimace* on his face.
23. **Granary** *(n.)* (store house for grain)—A country can succeed in war only if its *granaries* as well as arsenals are well stocked.

24. **Gratis** *(adv.)* (free)—The company offered one silver coin *gratis* to a customer who bought two dozen of soap cakes.

25. **Gruelling** *(adj.)* (tiring, exhausting)—The police could elicit information from the gangster only after *gruelling* questioning session.

H

1. **Humdrum** *(adj.)* (dull, monotonous)—After strenuous years of service he is not able to adapt himself to *humdrum* life of retirement.

2. **Huddle** *(v.)* (crowd together)—The passengers sat *huddled* in a crowded compartment.

3. **Haggle** *(v.)* (bargain about prices)—We *haggle* with rickshaw-pullers while with doctors we cannot.

4. **Hapless** *(adj.)* (unfortunate)—The *hapless* victims of tragedy were sanctioned compensation by the Govt.

5. **Hamper** *(v.)* (obstruct, impede, a gift box)—The growth of population has *hampered* economic progress in India.

6. **Hegemony** *(n.)* (predominance)—Both America and China are trying for *hegemony* in Asia.

7. **Hustings** *(n.)* (contest, elections)—The Congress party was badly defeated at the *hustings* in 1977.

8. **Heretic** *(n.)* (holding unorthodox belief)—Joan of Arc was considered *heretic* by the Church.

9. **Hoodwink** *(v.)* (deceive)—Hypocrites cannot *hoodwink* people for long.

10. **Husband** *(v.)* (utilise)—India has a plethora of natural resources which she must *husband* for her progress.

11. **Hostile** *(adj.)* (unfriendly)—Western powers have ever been *hostile* to India for reasons best known to them.

12. **Hypothecate** *(v.)* (mortgage, pawn)—You can get loan from this bank by *hypothecating* house.

13. **Halcyon** *(adj.)* (calm, peaceful)—*Halcyon* days a few years back appear to be just a dream.

14. **Holocaust** *(n.)* (destruction by fire)—The third world war is bound to bring about nuclear *holocaust*.

15. **Hackneyed** *(adj.)* (commonplace, trite)—Now-a-days no one is interested in the *hackneyed* speeches of the politicians.

16. **Hazy** *(adj.)* (slightly obscure)—I have just a *hazy* idea of my mother because she died when I was just five years old.

17. **Hypocrite** *(n.)* (pretending virtue)—Those who praise themselves are generally *hypocrites*.

18. Hoax *(n.)* (trick, practical joke)—The information that a bomb had been planted in the aeroplane just proved a *hoax*.

19. Haggard *(adj.)* (lean, gaunt)—A *haggard* and pale looking old man begged for some money.

20. Heinous *(adj.)* (atrocious, odious)—The *heinous* crimes by the Nazis are against every norm of civilization.

21. Humane *(adj.)* (kind)—Every religion preaches to be *humane* and considerate.

22. Haphazard *(adj.)* (random, by chance)—He had no time and bought the clothes *haphazardly*.

23. Hazardous *(adj.)* (dangerous)—A journey to Amarnath shrine is *hazardous*.

24. Hearsay *(n.)* (rumour)—One must not believe in *hearsay*.

25. Homily *(n.)* (moral discourse)—A person should not deliver *homily* unless he himself follows.

26. Harbinger *(n.)* (forerunner)—Autumn is the *harbinger* of spring.

27. Harangue *(n.)* (loud and scolding talk)—In his *harangue* the commander reproved the soldiers for their unruly conduct.

I

1. Impasse *(n.)* (dead lock)—At present there is *impasse* in the talks between India and Pakistan.

2. Ignoble *(adj.)* (unworthy)—His *ignoble* motives were exposed by his wicked actions.

3. Imbroglio *(n.)* (complicated situation)—Kashmir problem has become national *imbroglio* which has eluded solution.

4. Indolent *(adj.)* (lazy, lethargic)—She was feeling *indolent* because of the sweltering weather in the afternoon.

5. Imbued *(v.)* (filled with)—It is a pity that our political leaders are not *imbued* with the spirit of nationalism.

6. Intrinsic *(adj.)* (of value within, real quality)—The *intrinsic* value of the Indian rupee is on decline.

7. Itinerary *(n.)* (plan of a journey)—Delhi has been included in the *itinerary* of the American President's visit to Asia.

8. Impeccable *(adj.)* (faultless)—There is no person in the world who can claim to have *impeccable* character.

9. Impede *(v.)* (to hinder, hamper)—Economic crisis in the country will *impede* the industrial progress.

10. Incite *(v.)* (arouse to action)—The visit of the religious leader *incited* the communal riots in the city.

11. **Inept** *(adj.)* (incompetent)—*Inept* handling of the foreign policy by the Congress party has created many complicated situations for the country.

12. **Inertia** *(n.)* (passivity)—The modern youth is suffering from *inertia* because they are not optimistic about their future.

13. **Indigenous** *(adj.)* (native)—India must not depend on foreign technology for there is no lack of *indigenous* talent in the country.

14. **Innate** *(adj.)* (inborn)—Poets are born with *innate* talent for writing poetry.

15. **Insular** *(adj.)* (narrow minded)—Fanatics have *insular* views about men and matters.

16. **Indict** *(v.)* (accuse, charge)—The officials of the department were *indicted* by the court for financial irregularities.

17. **Intrude** *(v.)* (interfere, tresspass)—I don't like if anyone tries to *intrude* on my privacy.

18. **Inkling** *(n.)* (clue, hint)—I had no *inkling* that she would break with her friends so soon.

19. **Impervious** *(adj.)* (unaffected)—He never listens to his parents and is always *impervious* to their advice.

20. **Ingenuous** *(adj.)* (naive, artless, credulous)—Children are *ingenuous* by nature.

21. **Inapt** *(adj.)* (unsuitable)—The remarks she made at the party annoyed many because they were *inapt*.

22. **Inscrutable** *(adj.)* (incomprehensible)—The laws of nature are *inscrutable*.

23. **Instance** *(n.)* (example)—There are a number of *instances* of his misbehaviour but I have always overlooked them.

24. **Ingrained** *(adj.)* (deeply fixed in mind)—Dishonesty appears to be *ingrained* in his character.

25. **Innocuous** *(adj.)* (harmless)—It is now proved that soft drinks are not *innocuous*.

26. **Inordinate** *(adj.)* (excessive)—I don't understand the reason for his *inordinate* delay in replying to my letter.

27. **Irksome** *(adj.)* (tedious)—I don't like to do any *irksome* job, however profitable it may be.

28. **Imbibe** *(v.)* (drink, take in ideas)—Every Indian must *imbibe* the spirit of nationalism.

29. **Impertinent** *(adj.)* (insolent, impudent)—She was reprimanded for her *impertinent* behaviour.

30. **Intermittent** *(adj.)* (irregular, continual)—Heavy damage has been caused to the buildings on account of *intermittent* rains for the last two months.

31. **Immaculate** *(adj.)* (pure, spotless)—She is often dressed in *immaculately* white dress.

32. **Integrity** *(n.)* (wholeness, uprightness)—The *integrity* of my brother is not to be questioned.

33. **Incessant** *(adj.)* (uninterrupted, continuous)—We had to cancel our visit to Agra because of *incessant* rains.

34. **Indigent** *(adj.)* (poor)—He could not continue his study because his parents were *indigent*.

35. **Inundate** *(v.)* (overflow, flood)—The whole village was *inundated* with flood water.

36. **Inveterate** *(adj.)* (deep rooted, habitual)—He is an *inveterate* liar.

37. **Inimical** *(adj.)* (unfriendly, hostile)—I feel my friends have turned *inimical* and are working against my interests.

38. **Innovation** *(n.)* (introduce new thing)—We cannot keep up with progress unless we introduce *innovations* in our technology.

39. **Impute** *(v.)* (attribute, ascribe)—You can *impute* his failure in life to his fickle mindedness.

40. **Instigate** *(v.)* (urge, incite)—China is *instigating* trouble on our borders.

41. **Infinitesimal** *(adj.)* (very small)—They found *infinitesimal* traces of poison in the drink.

42. **Irritate** *(v.)* (annoy)—His insolent behaviour always *irritates* us.

43. **Impending** *(adj.)* (imminent, approaching)—Some persons have intuition about *impending* calamity.

44. **Insipid** *(adj.)* (tasteless)—All felt bored by his *insipid* jokes.

J

1. **Jovial** *(adj.)* (merry, happy)—He is a much sought after person because of his *jovial* nature.

2. **Jinx** *(n.)* (that brings bad luck)—Superstitious persons consider number thirteen a *jinx*.

3. **Jaded** *(adj.)* (tired, exhausted)—He felt *jaded* after his return from journey.

4. **Jargon** *(n.)* (language difficult to understand)—It is difficult to understand the *jargon* of tribal people.

5. **Jumble** *(n.)* (mixed up)—She tried to put in order everything lying *jumbled*.

6. **Jot** *(v.)* (write hurriedly)—The journalists were *jotting* down the speech of the Prime Minister in haste.

7. **Junk** *(n.)* (discarded things)—He is a *junk* dealer.

8. **Judicious** *(adj.)* (wise)—He has been successful in life because of his *judicious* planning in business.

9. **Jubilant** *(adj.)* (happy)—The crowd was *jubilant* when Indian team achieved facile victory over English Team.

10. **Jolt** *(v.)* (give a jerk)—All his hopes were *jolted* when his son could not qualify the competition.

11. **Juvenile** *(adj.)* (of young person)—*Juvenile* delinquency is on the increase.

12. **Jiffy** *(n.)* (few moments)—He completed the work in a *jiffy*.

13. **Jeer** *(v.)* (jest, mock)—We should not *jeer* at the shortcomings of our friends.

14. **Jaunt** *(n.)* (short journey for pleasure)—He is on a *jaunt* to Mumbai.

15. **Jejune** *(adj.)* (dull, boring)—He left for Mumbai because he got tired of *jejune* life in his home town.

16. **Jingoism** *(n.)* (blind patriotism)—The *jingoism* of the Germans resulted in the Second World War.

17. **Juncture** *(n.)* (critical moment)—At this *juncture* of life you must be wary of strangers.

18. **Jeopardy** *(n.)* (danger)—His reputation as a doctor is in *jeopardy* because of his unethical practice.

19. **Jocund** *(adj.)* (cheerful, merry)—Inspite of reeling under heavy debt Mr. Micawber was a *jocund* character.

20. **Jubilation** *(n.)* (rejoicing)—The victory of Indian Hockey team was celebrated with *jubilation*.

K

1. **Knell** *(n.)* (death knell, last blow)—The Second World War proved to be a *knell* for British imperialism.

2. **Kiln** *(n.)* (brick furnace)—He is running a brick *kiln* these days.

3. **Kinship** *(n.)* (affinity)—There is *kinship* between a tiger and a cat.

4. **Kickback** *(n.)* (bribe)—He was charged with taking *kickback*.

5. **Kindred** *(adj.)* (having common features)—Most of the European languages are *kindred* because they have a common source.

6. **Knack** *(n.)* (cleverness, art)—Politicians know the *knack* of putting the people off.

7. **Kleptomania** *(n.)* (obsession to steal)—*Kleptomania* is a psychological urge to steal.

8. **Kinetic** *(adj.)* (motion)—The dust particles in air are in *kinetic* motion.

9. **Knave** *(n.)* (dishonest person)—Don't believe him because he is a *knave* and scoundrel.

10. **Knotty** *(adj.)* (complicated)—Since Independence India has not been able to solve a single *knotty* problem facing the country.

11. **Kindle** *(v.)* (arouse feeling)—The timely arrival of my friend *kindled* in me a hope of getting proper medical treatment.

12. **Kiosk** *(n.)* (small booth)—He is running his business in a *kiosk* because he can't afford a shop right now.

13. **Kernel** *(n.)* (inner part of fruit)—The *kernel* of the fruit is always tasty.

14. **Keepsake** *(n.)* (memento, reminder)—She gave him a ring as a *keepsake*.

15. **Kudos** *(n.)* (honour, credit)—Kapil Dev won *kudos* when he brought home the World Cup in 1983.

L

1. **Longevity** *(n.)* (length of life)—His mother prayed for his *longevity* when he fell ill.

2. **Lieu** *(n.)* (instead of)—I shall give you money in *lieu* of the lost book.

3. **Lavish** *(adj.)* (liberal, wasteful)—He came to a grief because of his *lavish* spending habits.

4. **Lucid** *(adj.)* (easily understood)—He gave a *lucid* lecture on the causes of inflation.

5. **Ludicrous** *(adj.)* (laughable, ridiculous)—Everybody condemned her *ludicrous* remarks against her friends.

6. **Lunar** *(adj.)* (pertaining to moon)—*Lunar* eclipse is caused when the earth comes between the sun and the moon.

7. **Levity** *(n.)* (light heartedness)—His staff always treats his orders with *levity*.

8. **Languor** *(n.)* (lassitude, depression)—On summer afternoons we generally feel *languor*.

9. **Laconic** *(adj.)* (brief)—Though her speech was *laconic*, yet it was lucid.

10. **Lethargic** *(adj.)* (lazy)—After busy schedule during the day he felt languid and *lethargic*.

11. **Laudable** *(adj.)* (commendable)—The success achieved by him in such a short period is really *laudable*.

12. **Loathe** *(v.)* (detest, hate)—He always *loathes* dishonest means.

13. **Lair** *(n.)* (den, resting place)—The tiger was in the *lair* when hunter arrived.

14. **Lascivious** *(adj.)* (lustful)—The market is flooded with *lascivious* books.

15. **Lethal** *(adj.)* (deadly)—The proliferation of *lethal* weapons do not bode well for the future of mankind.

M

1. **Mammoth** *(adj.)* (huge, gigantic)—A *mammoth* rally was held to protest against the increase in the cases of kidnappings and murders.
2. **Menace** *(n.)* (danger, threat)—Terrorism is a potential *menace* to the integrity of the country.
3. **Mascot** *(n.)* (object likely to be lucky)—Appu was the *mascot* of the Asian Games held in India in 1982.
4. **Magnate** *(n.)* (person of prominence)—Jamshedji Tata was a steel *magnate* of India.
5. **Malign** *(v.)* (speak evil of, defame)—We *malign* others because we are jealous of them.
6. **Menial** *(adj.)* (suitable for servants, servile)—Many men consider women suitable only for *menial* jobs.
7. **Manipulate** *(v.)* (manage with skill)—Many persons are expert in *manipulating* excuses for their failure in life.
8. **Manifesto** *(n.)* (declaration of policy)—Most of the political parties are unable to fulfil the promises made in their election *manifestos*.
9. **Marital** *(adj.)* (pertaining to marriage)—*Marital* happiness depends on the compatibility of the partners.
10. **Morose** *(adj.)* (sullen, gloomy)—After his failure in the exams, he is often *morose* and depressed.
11. **Mitigate** *(v.)* (lessen, ease)—It is the duty of every person to *mitigate* the sufferings of humanity.
12. **Momentum** *(n.)* (speed)—Indian economy is yet to gain the *momentum* to progress in right direction.
13. **Malicious** *(adj.)* (full of malice)—He is *malicious* by nature and always tries to belittle the efforts of his friends.
14. **Miscreant** *(n.)* (rowdy element)—He was kind to the *miscreants* even though he suffered at their hands.
15. **Mundane** *(adj.)* (worldly, dull)—Wordly people are often concerned with *mundane* matters.
16. **Melee** *(n.)* (confused struggle, stampede)—In the Kumbh Fair many pilgrims were injured in the *melee*.
17. **Myopic** *(adj.)* (short sighted, narrowminded)—Orthodox men and women are victims of *myopic* views about life.
18. **Mollify** *(v.)* (appease)—After exchange of hot words the shop-keeper tried to *mollify* the customer.
19. **Martinet** *(n.)* (strict disciplinarian)—Our Principal is a *martinet* who expects everybody to carry out his orders.
20. **Mincing** *(adj.)* (affected manner, pretentious)—She was walking with *mincing* steps and appeared ridiculous.

21. Mettle *(n.)*	(courage, spirit)—During fight he showed *mettle* in the teeth of strong opposition.
22. Malinger *(v.)*	(pretend to be ill)—Whenever he is asked to work, he always *malingers* and shirks work.
23. Malignant *(adj.)*	(malicious)—AIDS is a *malignant* and incurable disease.
24. Mentor *(n.)*	(teacher)—In Mr. Kapoor he found a considerate and sympathetic *mentor*.
25. Macabre *(adj.)*	(gruesome, grisly)—This novel deals with *macabre* sight of carnage.
26. Malevolent *(adj.)*	(wishing evil, spiteful)—Both China and Pakistan nurse *malevolent* designs against India.
27. Mediocre *(adj.)*	(ordinary, commonplace)—Even *mediocre* students are known to have made a mark in life.
28. Mandatory *(adj.)*	(obligatory, compulsory)—The limit of expenses to be made on elections has been made *mandatory* for the contestants.
29. Meticulous *(adj.)*	(over attentive)—One must be *meticulous* in conduct while dealing with strangers.
30. Migratory *(adj.)*	(wandering)—The *migratory* birds cover thousands of miles to reach warmer countries.
31. Mishap *(n.)*	(accident)—This *mishap* could have been averted if you had been just careful.
32. Mandate *(n.)*	[order (of the people)] During the last elections no single party was able to secure the *mandate* of the majority.
33. Manifold *(adj.)*	(numerous, varied)—There are *manifold* advantages of discipline in schools and colleges.
3 .. ..oot *(adj.)*	(debatable)—Whether reservation for women is justified or not is a *moot* question.
35. Magnitude *(n.)*	(greatness, extent)—Indians are unable to comprehend the *magnitude* of population problem in India.
36. Monotony *(n.)*	(dullness, boredom)—Anonymous life in the urban areas generate *monotony* for the residents.
37. Meddlesome *(adj.)*	(interfering)—Many marriages are ruined because of *meddlesome* mothers-in-law.
38. Militate *(v.)*	(work against)—The policy of appeasing everybody in life *militates* against one's own interests.
39. Modicum *(n.)*	(small amount)—There is no *modicum* of truth in her statement.
40. Memento *(n.)*	(token, reminder, keepsake)—I gave him a book as a *memento* on his birthday.
41. Manifest *(adj.)*	(understandable, clear)—His evil intentions were *manifest* when he mentioned the question of dowry.
42. Myriad *(adj.)*	(large number)—*Myriad* stars twinkle in the sky.

N

1. **Noxious** *(adj.)* (harmful, offensive)—Emission of *noxious* gases causes air pollution.
2. **Nadir** *(n.)* (lowest point)—Now-a-days he is disgusted with life because he is at the *nadir* of his hopes.
3. **Nostalgia** *(n.)* (home sickness, longing for the past)—Soldiers often suffer from *nostalgia* when they are away from their homes.
4. **Naive** *(adj.)* (artless)—Being *naive* she believes in all that her friends tell her.
5. **Novice** *(n.)* (beginner, tyro)—We should not expect much from him because he is just a *novice* in the field of marketing.
6. **Nonchalant** *(adj.)* (unconcerned)—It is disgusting to note that even doctors behave *nonchalantly* towards the patients.
7. **Nocturnal** *(adj.)* (of night)—On account of disturbance during day time the students in our hostel are accustomed to *nocturnal* study.
8. **Nefarious** *(adj.)* (very wicked, unlawful)—The criminals should be brought to book for their *nefarious* activities.
9. **Nepotism** *(n.)* (favour to relatives)—Meritorious candidates always suffer on account of *nepotism* and favouritism prevading in the selection procedure.
10. **Narcissism** *(n.)* (Self love & admiration)—*Narcissism* leads to selfishness in character.
11. **Nonplus** *(v.)* (confuse)—I was *nonplussed* when my best friends refused to stand by me in my financial crises.
12. **Nascent** *(adj.)* (incipient, beginning)—The rapid growth of this commercial organisation in its *nascent* stage is commendable.
13. **Nexus** *(n.)* (bond, link)—The *nexus* among criminals and politicians has brought about general erosion of moral values in our political system.
14. **Nomadic** *(adj.)* (wandering)—*Nomadic* tribes of Rajasthan are found in every major Indian city.
15. **Non-entity** *(n.)* (a person of no importance)—A few years back he was a *non-entity* in politics; today he is a national leader.
16. **Neophyte** *(n.)* (beginner, a recent convert)—Though a *neophyte* in politics, he has tremendous hold over the principles of state craft.
17. **Nebulous** *(adj.)* (hazy)—Your ideas are too *nebulous* to be understood easily.
18. **Nullify** *(v.)* (cancel)—The agreement made by the previous government has been *nullified* by the new government.
19. **Nauseous** *(adj.)* (abominable, loathsome)—The sight of cruel and heartless treatment with animals is always unbearable and *nauseous*.
20. **Nourishing** *(adj.)* (nutritious)—After her long illness, she must take *nourishing* diet.

O

1. **Overt** *(adj.)* (open)—The trampling of national flag is an *overt* act of treason.
2. **Obnoxious** *(adj.)* (harmful, nasty)—She behaved *obnoxiously* with her daughter-in-law.
3. **Opulence** *(n.)* (luxury, wealth)—The foreign travellers to America admire the *opulence* of that country.
4. **Obsession** *(n.)* (fixed idea)—His *obsession* with amassing wealth has made him miserly and greedy.
5. **Ostensible** *(adj.)* (apparent, obvious)—The *ostensible* purpose of her visit was to borrow money, though she came to see me.
6. **Ornate** *(adj.)* (decorated)—*Ornate* style of his essay appears to be artificial.
7. **Outskirts** *(n.)* (outlying)—The cantonment is situated just on the *outskirts* of the city.
8. **Officious** *(adj.)* (trying to please)—Beware of *officious* subordinates because they are parasites.
9. **Opportune** *(adj.)* (timely, well chosen)—One should wait for the *opportune* moment to strike a bargain.
10. **Obliterate** *(v.)* (wipe out)—The whole village was *obliterated* by continued shelling of Pakistani troops.
11. **Odious** *(adj.)* (repulsive, contemptible)—Leaving my friends in the lurch is quite *odious* for me.
12. **Overture** *(n.)* (first move)—The *overture* on the part of her husband for reconciliation met with no response from her.
13. **Obsolete** *(adj.)* (out moded)—Snobs are never interested in *obsolete* fashion.
14. **Ostracize** *(v.)* (ex-communicate)—He was *ostracized* by the elders of the village for marrying the girl of the other community.
15. **Oblivion** *(n.)* (forgetfulness)—The famous film-personalities of the past are forced to lead a life of *oblivion* in their old age.
16. **Obviate** *(v.)* (make unnecessary)—The use of computers in offices will *obviate* the need for further recruitment of the staff in the banks.
17. **Obese** *(adj.)* (fat)—*Obese* persons are generally prone to heart attack.
18. **Onerous** *(adj.)* (burdensome)—The work allotted to him was so *onerous* that he needed an assistant.
19. **Ostentatious** *(adj.)* (fond of displaying)—She is disliked for her *ostentatious* behaviour towards her friends and colleagues.
20. **Oscillate** *(v.)* (waver)—Persons with *oscillating* nature never stick to one option.

P

1. **Penchant** *(n.)* (strong inclination)—She has strong *penchant* for singing and dancing.
2. **Pithy** *(adj.)* (concise, meaningful)—The essays of Francis Bacon are read all over the world because they are *pithy* and profound in their meaning.
3. **Paltry** *(adj.)* (insignificant, petty)—Strangely enough, the two friends quarrelled over *paltry* amount.
4. **Pecuniary** *(adj.)* (pertaining to money)—Besides *pecuniary* loss in business he had to suffer humiliation in society.
5. **Perpetual** *(adj.)* (everlasting)—Neither joys nor sorrows are *perpetual* in life.
6. **Plaintive** *(adj.)* (mournful)—The *plaintive* notes of Nightingale were heard in the forest.
7. **Pragmatic** *(adj.)* (practical)—India should adopt *pragmatic* foreign policy to suit the need of the country.
8. **Pedantic** *(adj.)* (showing off learning)—The scholars try to show off their learning by using *pedantic* ideas.
9. **Perjury** *(n.)* (false testimony)—American President was indicted for *perjury*.
10. **Pre-requisite** *(n.)* (pre-condition)—Hard work is *pre-requisite* to success in life.
11. **Paradox** *(n.)* (contradictory)—That the virtuous don't prosper materially is a *paradox* of life.
12. **Parsimonious** *(adj.)* (mean, frugal)—He is extravagant but his wife is *parsimonious*.
13. **Perusal** *(n.)* (careful study)—I am sending a copy of the agreement for your *perusal*.
14. **Prodigal** *(adj.)* (wasteful)—The sons of the rich are generally *prodigal* and waste money on luxuries of life.
15. **Prolific** *(adj.)* (fruitful, productive)—Shakespeare was a *prolific* playwright.
16. **Pamper** *(v.)* (spoil by flattering)—In Indian families the only son is *pampered* and spoiled by his mother.
17. **Promulgate** *(v.)* (official proclamation)—The ordinance for the reservation of women in legislature will be *promulgated* soon.
18. **Penury** *(n.)* (extreme poverty)—More than half of population in India is forced to lead a life of *penury* resulting in untold sufferings.
19. **Purview** *(n.)* (scope, extent)—The reasons for the murder of the gangster are not within the *purview* of the inquiry committee.
20. **Profane** *(v.)* (desecrate)—We must respect every religion and never try to *profane* the sanctity of holy places.
21. **Pseudonym** *(n.)* (assumed name)—Charles Lamb wrote his essays under the *pseudonym* of Elia.

22. Precocious *(adj.)* (mature before time)—The *precocious* children need careful bringing up by their parents.

23. Placid *(adj.)* (calm, peaceful)—The *placid* atmosphere of the hill station had salutary effect on his mind and body.

24. Plagiarism *(n.)* (theft of ideas or writing)—The Indian film directors are notorious for indulging in *plagiarism*.

25. Posterity *(n.)* (future generations)—The *posterity* will not pardon the present politicians for their acts of omission and commission.

26. Paragon *(n.)* (model of perfection)—Sita is always depicted as a *paragon* of ideal and virtuous woman.

27. Provident *(adj.)* (providing for future)—We should spend in *provident* manner so as to lay by something for future emergency.

28. Perquisite *(n.)* (perks, gain above stipulated salary)—Though the salary offered by the company is not high, the *perquisites* are quite handsome.

29. Prone *(adj.)* [inclined to (disorder)] Indian farming is *prone* to uncertainty because of the fickleness of Monsoons.

30. Pandemonium *(n.)* (wild disorder)—There was *pandemonium* in Parliament over the objectionable remarks made by a member of the opposition party.

31. Parasite *(n.)* (living on another)—Flatterers are considered to be *parasites* because their existence depends on sycophancy.

32. Patrimony *(n.)* (inheritance from father)—Though his father left huge *patrimony*, he squandered it within a year or so.

33. Perennial *(adj.)* (lasting)—The rivers originating in the Himalayas are *perennial*.

34. Poignant *(adj.)* (touching, sharp)—The *poignant* cries of the orphaned children moved everybody present at the funeral.

35. Pungent *(adj.)* (stinging, strong)—The cigarettes of inferior brands have *pungent* smell.

36. Paucity *(n.)* (scarcity, dearth)—Many schemes have fallen through because of the *paucity* of funds.

37. Pinnacle *(n.)* (peak, summit)—As he reached the *pinnacle* of his career he parted from all those who stood by him in difficulties.

38. Pernicious *(adj.)* (destructive, injurious)—Obscene magazines have *pernicious* effect on the impressionable minds of the youth.

39. Prerogative *(n.)* (privilege, unquestionable)—It is the *prerogative* of the Prime Minister to constitute his cabinet.

40. Parochial *(adj.)* (narrow in view point)—All the political parties rise above *parochial* considerations when the security of the country is threatened.

41. **Precedent** *(n.)* (earlier example)—The speaker cited many *precedents* for not allowing the opposition member to raise a question of that nature.

42. **Piquant** *(adj.)* (pleasantly tasting)—The *piquant* sauce makes food always enjoyable.

43. **Preposterous** *(adj.)* (absurd, ridiculous)—He always offers such *preposterous* excuses that nobody believes him.

44. **Precarious** *(adj.)* (uncertain, risky)—The patient is in a *precarious* condition because so far he has not recovered consciousness.

45. **Predilection** *(n.)* (partiality for)—He is a good player but his *predilection* for scoring fast has not proved good for him.

46. **Proclivity** *(n.)* (inclination)—Some employees are never satisfied because they have *proclivity* to complain.

47. **Pertinent** *(adj.)* (suitable, to the point)—Please don't beat about the bush, come to *pertinent* point.

48. **Precursor** *(n.)* (forerunner, pioneer)—Surendra Nath Bannerjee was *precursor* of Indian National Movement.

49. **Pariah** *(n.)* (social outcast)—When he married a girl of his own choice, he came to be considered a *pariah* by his family.

50. **Perverse** *(adj.)* (stubborn, intractable)—She could not pull well with her husband because of her *perverse* nature.

51. **Ponder** *(v.)* (think)—Before taking hasty step you must *ponder* over the consequences of your action.

52. **Passing** *(adj.)* (transitory)—Don't be proud of your beauty because it is *passing* in nature.

53. **Plebeian** *(n.)* (of low rank)—Shakespeare treated *plebeians* with contempt in his plays.

54. **Pensive** *(adj.)* (thoughtful)—She was in a *pensive* mood and looked intently at the placid water of the lake.

55. **Puerile** *(adj.)* (silly, childish)—Though she has grown up, her *puerile* behaviour always irritates her friends.

Q

1. **Quip** *(n.)* (a clever remark)—She is quite intelligent and is in the habit of making *quips*.

2. **Query** *(n.)* (question)—He raised a *query* to find out the veracity of her statement.

3. **Quisling** *(n.)* (traitor)—The Mughals and the English always depended on *quislings* to defeat their indomitable enemies.

4. **Quack** *(n.)* (untrained doctor)—A person who dishonestly claims to have knowledge of a subject is called a *quack*.

5. **Quadruped** *(n.)* (having four feet)—A cow is a useful *quadruped*.

6. **Quasi** *(n.)* (to a certain extent)—Indian Constitution is *quasi-federal*.

7. **Quandary** *(n.)* (in a fix, dilemma)—Most of the students are in a *quandary* about their future plans after they have completed their education.

8. **Quest** *(n.)* (search)—He left home at a very early age in *quest* of a job.

9. **Quell** *(n.)* (suppress, crush)—India must deal with the militants with an iron hand to *quell* anti-national activities.

10. **Quintessence** *(n.)* (perfect example, paragon)—Everybody admires her because she is the *quintessence* of benevolence.

11. **Quarantine** *(adj.)* (period of separation)—She was admitted to *quarantine* ward to avoid the danger of spreading of viral fever in the hospital.

12. **Quash** *(v.)* (set aside, strike down)—The High Court *quashed* the verdict of the lower court.

13. **Quench** *(v.)* (satisfy)—She needed water urgently to *quench* her thirst when she returned from college.

14. **Queer** *(adj.)* (strange)—As she has a *queer* way of talking, everybody makes fun of her.

15. **Qualms** *(n.)* [feeling of doubt (right or wrong)] The hardened criminals are the last to feel *qualms* while committing cruel deeds.

16. **Quietude** *(n.)* (peace)—Once the haven of *quietude* Kashmir Valley is now a place haunted by terrorism.

17. **Quirk** *(n.)* (a strange act)—One can call his misfortune just a *quirk* of fate.

18. **Quixotic** *(adj.)* (generous)—He has not been successful in life because of his *quixotic* ideas.

19. **Quizzical** *(adj.)* (questioning)—The *quizzical* remarks often made by Rohit are appreciated by his friends.

20. **Querrulous** *(adj.)* (fretful)—His *querrulous* behaviour has made him unpopular with his friends.

R

1. **Reprieve** *(n.)* (temporary stay)—The lawyers got him *reprieve* when he was granted bail and released from jail.

2. **Requisite** *(n.)* (necessary requirement)—Hard work and honesty are *requisite* to success in life.

3. **Rampart** *(n.)* (defensive wall)—The Prime Minister declared from the *ramparts* of the Red Fort that sovereignty of India is inviolable.

4. **Reciprocate** *(v.)* (repay in kind)—It is our duty to *reciprocate* the love and regards of our children.

5. **Rendezvous** *(n.)* (meeting place)—Once Coffee House in Connaught Place was a famous *rendezvous* for the writers and journalists.

6. **Realm** *(n.)* (kingdom)—In recent years India has made tremendous progress in the *realm* of nuclear weapons.

7. **Refurbish** *(v.)* (make clean)—A person can *refurbish* his image by leading life dedicated to his vocation.

8. **Robust** *(adj.)* (vigorous, strong)—Only *robust* players can withstand the stress and strain of sports in modern times.

9. **Renounce** *(v.)* (abandon, give up)—Lord Buddha *renounced* material life in search of freedom from sufferings of life.

10. **Rudimentary** *(adj.)* (not developed, elementary)—If one wishes to learn the art of conversation, one must be aware of the *rudimentary* rules of grammar.

11. **Remonstrate** *(v.)* (protest)—The players *remonstrated* with the umpire about the run-out decision.

12. **Repudiate** *(v.)* (disown)—The Finance Minister *repudiated* his remarks by saying that he was quoted out of context.

13. **Rapprochement** *(n.)* (reconciliation)—There is hardly any possibility of *rapprochement* between India and China as long as boundary dispute between them exists.

14. **Raze** *(v.)* (destroy completely)—The whole village was *razed* to ground by constant shelling from across the border.

15. **Recrimination** *(n.)* (counter charges)—When her husband advised her not to neglect her domestic obligations, there were offensive *recriminations* from her.

16. **Repercussion** *(n.)* (reaction)—Every Indian is afraid that Kashmir problem will have serious *repercussions* both on Indian polity and economy.

17. **Rectify** *(v.)* (correct)—The accountant was able to find out the mistake and *rectified* it in time.

18. **Relinquish** *(v.)* (abandon)—Neither of the two brothers is ready to *relinquish* his claims to the paternal property.

19. **Retrograde** *(v.)* (going backward)—Although we claim to have progressed in every field, in fact we have *retrograded* in upholding human values.

20. **Retrospective** *(adj.)* [looking back on the past (from past effect)]—(i) When he is in *restrospective* mood, he speaks high of halcyon days of his youth.

(ii) You will get bonus with *retrospective* effect.

21. Retaliate *(v.)* (hit back)—The Defence Minister warned that India would *retaliate*, if attacked.

22. Retinue *(n.)* (number of attendants)—The Prime Minister arrived in the town with a *retinue* of officials.

23. Ruthless *(adj.)* (pitiless)—The landlady was not only robbed but also beaten *ruthlessly*.

24. Ramification *(n.)* (far reaching effect)—The interference of the President in the affairs of Central Govt is fraught with dire *ramifications*.

25. Relegate *(v.)* (put to lower position)—After the defeat of Indian Cricket team in the semifinals in the World Cup it has been *relegated* to seventh position in ranking.

26. Recant *(v.)* (repudiate)—Inspite of the advice of the party high command he did not *recant* his observation about the leader of the party.

27. Restive *(adj.)* (restless, unmanageable)—The labourers working in this factory are *restive* on account of non-payment of bonus this year.

28. Rampage *(n.)* (rush in sudden violent behaviour)—The demonstrators went on the *rampage* when the Superintendent of Police refused to listen to their grievances.

29. Rapt *(adj.)* (fully attentive)—The speech of the Prime Minister was listened to with *rapt* attention by the audience.

30. Renegade *(n.)* (turn coat in politics, religion)—Inspite of anti-defection law *renegades* in Indian politics are having a field day.

31. Retard *(v.)* (hinder, check)—Population problem has *retarded* economic progress in every field.

32. Reprisal *(n.)* (retaliation)—Inspite of provocative policy of militancy pursued by Pakistan, India has done nothing by way of *reprisal*.

33. Rancour *(n.)* (bitterness)—Though they had planned to marry, now there is feeling of *rancour* between them.

34. Ravage *(n.)* (plunder, destroy)—The floods this year have *ravaged* the crops severely.

35. Regime *(n.)* (system of govt.)—Every *regime* in Pakistan has survived only by arousing animosity against India.

36. Render *(v.)* (deliver, give)—He is always prepared to *render* help to the needy.

37. Recipient *(n.)* (receiver)—The *recipients* of gallantry awards will be honoured on the Republic day.

38. Repartee *(n.)* (clever retort)—The discussion in the Parliament on the reservation issue was replete with *repartees*.

39. **Reiterate** *(v.)* (repeat)—The Principal has *reiterated* that those students who are irregular will not be allowed to take examination.

40. **Rusticate** *(v.)* (expel)—He was caught copying in the examination hall and was *rusticated* from the university for two years.

41. **Replenish** *(v.)* (fill up again)—When the food ran out, it was *replenished* by the rescue team promptly.

42. **Replete** *(adj.)* (filled to capacity)—There is no peace in the family though the home is *replete* with every modern comfort.

43. **Rowdy** *(adj.)* (disorderly, disobedient)—On the eve of the visit of the Chief Minister the *rowdy* elements in the city were rounded up by the police.

44. **Redundant** *(adj.)* (superfluous, surplus)—The use of computers in the govt. offices has made thousands of workers *redundant*.

45. **Rift** *(n.)* (opening, breach)—The *rift* between two friends has become irreconcilable.

46. **Renunciation** *(n.)* (giving up, renouncing)—Life of *renunciation* contributes to both moral and physical health.

47. **Ruse** *(n.)* (trick, strategy)—Heavy shelling by Pakistan Army was a *ruse* to help the militants enter Indian territory.

48. **Rampant** *(adj.)* (unrestrained, growth beyond control)—Corruption is *rampant* in every section of Indian society.

49. **Replica** *(n.)* (a copy, miniature)—*Replicas* of world famous paintings are available these days.

50. **Rife** *(adj.)* (widespread, current)—The city is *rife* with rumours of communal riots.

51. **Redress** *(n.)* (remedy, compensation)—The victim of the police injustice sought legal *redress*.

52. **Retrieve** *(v.)* (recover, bring back)—The govt. is trying to *retrieve* economy from recession.

53. **Redoubtable** *(adj.)* (formidable)—India needs *redoubtable* politicians to build India strong.

54. **Resume** *(n./v.)* (restart, summary)—She narrated the *resume* of the day's events and I was shocked.

55. **Reticence** *(n.)* (reserve, talking little)—Her *reticence* makes her look mysterious.

S

1. **Slovenly** *(adj.)* (untidy, careless in work)—She is often reprimanded for her *slovenly* habits.
2. **Supple** *(adj.)* (flexible, pliant)—The *supple* limbs of the athletes impressed everybody.
3. **Sacrilegious** *(adj.)* (desecrating, profane)—The communal riots in the city broke out as a result of *sacrilegious* act of one community.
4. **Sangfroid** *(n.)* (coolness, courage)—The *sangfroid* of the Army Commander saved the check post from being recaptured by the enemy.
5. **Scourge** *(n.)* (severe punishment)—The Plague broke out in the province and people thought it to be a divine *scourge*.
6. **Salvage** *(v.)* (rescue from loss)—The army swung into action to *salvage* the havoc caused by the earth quake.
7. **Sultry** *(adj.)* (sweltering)—September and October are *sultry* months because of excessive humidity.
8. **Surmise** *(v.)* (guess)—I *surmised* that he would not succeed in his attempt to exploit his wife.
9. **Spurious** *(adj.)* (false, counterfeit, fake)—There is glut of *spurious* drugs in the market.
10. **Stamina** *(n.)* (strength)—She has a lot of *stamina* and works for hours together.
11. **Supersede** *(v.)* (take the place of)—When the Marketing Manager was *superseded* by his junior, the former resigned.
12. **Saga** *(n.)* (a traditional story of heroic deeds)—The *saga* of Indian soldiers on the war front is beyond description.
13. **Salutary** *(adj.)* (beneficial)—*Salutary* working conditions tend to improve the efficiency of the workers.
14. **Slander** *(n.)* (defamation)—The editor of the newspaper was charged with *slander.*
15. **Serenity** *(n.)* (calmness, tranquility)—The *serenity* of the valley in the evening overwhelmed the visitors.
16. **Sumptuous** *(adj.)* [lavish (feast)] *Sumptuous* feast was served on the occasion of the wedding.
17. **Stagnant** *(adj.)* (motionless)—*Stagnant* water emits foul smell.
18. **Substantiate** *(v.)* (verify, support)—It is difficult to *substantiate* his statement for want of solid proof.
19. **Sedition** *(n.)* (rebellion)—The Prime Minister of the state was charged with *sedition* by the king and was executed.

20. **Stint** *(n.)* (assigned work)—Our servant performs his daily *stint* without grumbling.

21. **Span** *(n.)* (distance (of time)—Within a short *span* of ten years he made remarkable progress in business.

22. **Supercilious** *(adj.)* (haughty)—Everybody resents the *supercilious* treatment of the Manager.

23. **Savage** *(adj.)* (uncivilized, primitive)—Sati system is definitely a *savage* custom.

24. **Sporadic** *(adj.)* (occuring irregularly)—*Sporadic* firing from across the borders continues throughout the year.

25. **Status quo** *(n.)* (existing position)—India and Pakistan have agreed to maintain *status quo* in respect of Line of Control in Kashmir.

26. **Superannuated** *(v.)* (retired on pension)—The *superannuated* army personnel are not satisfied with their pension grades.

27. **Sophistication** *(n.)* (artificiality, refined)—*Sophistication* implies the loss of natural simplicity in a character.

28. **Scion** *(n.)* (off spring)—A number of *scions* of the former rulers have joined politics to maintain their status.

29. **Sinister** *(adj.)* (suggesting evil)—India has to be always vigilant to foil the *sinister* designs of Pakistan on Kashmir.

30. **Salient** *(adj.)* (prominent)—The passive nature of the foreign policy of India has been its *salient* feature which has not paid dividends.

31. **Sagacious** *(adj.)* (having insight)—My father is quite *sagacious* and is seldom taken in by the hypocrisy of his friends.

32. **Schism** *(n.)* (split, division into two parts)—The *schism* in the Congress party has led to polarisation of political forces on economic basis.

33. **Savour** *(v.)* (have a distinct flavour, smell or quality)—The assurance of the opposition leaders to flood victims *savours* of sheer hypocrisy.

34. **Senility** *(n.)* (old age, feeble mindedness of old age)—Because of *senility* he has lost hold over family business.

35. **Subsequent** *(adj.)* (following, later)—*Subsequent* event have proved our apprehension correct about our business partner's treachery.

36. **Sartorial** *(adj.)* (pertaining to dress)—In the modern era there are rapid changes in *sartorial* fashions.

37. **Scrupulous** *(adj.)* (conscientious)—India is woefully lacking *scrupulous* politicians who are concerned with public welfare.

38. **Subsidy** *(n.)* (financial aid)—Government is thinking of providing *subsidy* on import of edible oils.

39. Subjugate *(v.)* (conquer)—The king was overthrown as he was unable to *subjugate* the traitors.

40. Succour *(n.)* (aid, relief)—The government has provided ample *succour* to the farmers affected by flood in the form of financial subsidy.

41. Sycophant *(n.)* (flatterer) One must be wary of a *sycophant* who is just like a snake in the grass.

42. Surruptitious *(adj.)* (secret)—The *surruptitious* visit of Henry Kissinger to China brought about revolutionary transformation in the relations between America and China.

43. Solar *(adj.)* (of the sun)—*Solar* eclipse will be visible in India at 2 p.m. tomorrow.

44. Stringent *(adj.)* (strict, severe)—*Stringent* laws to curb terrorism in India must be enforced.

45. Scruple *(n.)* (sense of right and wrong)—He has no *scruple* in letting down his parents by his wanton behaviour.

46. Shambles *(n.)* (scene of destruction)—The house where murder was committed was a *shambles*.

47. Sacrosanct *(adj.)* (most sacred)—The President of India should not regard his privileges as *sacrosanct* and immune from public criticism.

48. Spiteful *(adj.)* (contemptuous)—The *spiteful* behaviour of our neighbours is the result of their jealousy.

49. Stigma *(adj.)* (mark of disgrace)—The *stigma* of having been sentenced to imprisonment always rankles in his mind.

50. Succumb *(v.)* (die, yield)—The wounded soldier *succumbed* to his injuries later on.

51. Sluggish *(adj.)* (slow)—The production activities in the factory have become *sluggish* on account of the apathy of the management.

52. Sedentary *(adj.)* (requiring sitting)—Those engaged in *sedentary* jobs need physical exercise.

T

1. Tantamount *(adj.)* (equal in effect)—Your action is obviously *tantamount* to insult.

2. Tacit *(adj.)* (understood)—There seems to be a *tacit* understanding between China and Pakistan about destabilising India.

3. Tirade *(n.)* (extended scolding)—It is a common practice of the opposition parties to indulge in *tirade* about the policies of the government.

4. Tenacity *(n.)* (firmness, determination)—*Tenacity* of purpose alone can lead you to your goal of life.

5. Tenure *(n.)* (duration, period)—The pension benefits are granted to an employee in proportion to the *tenure* of service.

6. **Tranquil** *(adj.)* (calm, peaceful)—The *tranquil* atmosphere in the hills proves salutary to one's jaded spirits.

7. **Temporal** *(adj.)* (not lasting forever)—Everything in the world is *temporal* and mortal.

8. **Tyro** *(n.)* (beginner, novice)—Though he is just a *tyro* in business, he works like a veteran.

9. **Tepid** *(adj.)* (luke warm)—Please take the medicine with *tepid* water.

10. **Tortuous** *(adj.)* (winding, full of curves)—The journey on the *tortuous* roads in the valley was arduous.

11. **Tryst** *(n.)* (meeting, private meeting)—The villagers got wind of the *tryst* between the lovers and hacked them to death.

12. **Tentative** *(adj.)* (provisional, experimental)—Nothing is yet final, only *tentative* programme has been announced.

13. **Terminus** *(n.)* (last stop of rail, road)—Mumbai is the *terminus* of the Western Railways.

14. **Thwart** *(v.)* (baffle, frustrate)—The vigilant soldiers on the borders *thwarted* the intrusion of the militants into Kashmir.

15. **Trauma** *(n.)* (injury, shock)—The *trauma* of physical injury in war has made him suffer from neurosis.

16. **Travesty** *(n.)* (mockery, parody)—The trial of patriots like Bhagat Singh was a sheer *travesty* of justice.

17. **Throttle** *(v.)* (strangle)—The old woman was *throttled* to death by the decoits.

18. **Trite** *(adj.)* (hackneyed, commonplace)—Such *trite* remarks as made by the opposition about Indian Army lowers the prestige of the country.

19. **Tempo** *(n.)* (speed of music)—The *tempo* of economic progress in India has been woefully slow resulting in unmanageable unemployment problem.

20. **Tenet** *(n.)* (doctrine, dogma)—The *tenets* of Buddhism emphasise the need of simple lift.

21. **Tribulation** *(n.)* (sufferings)—She went through *tribulation* in life with fortitude.

22. **Taciturn** *(adj.)* (habitually silent)—*Taciturn* persons don't commit themselves at random.

23. **Tenuous** *(adj.)* (fragile, delicate)—The constituents of the present government are held by *tenuous* ties.

24. **Terminology** *(n.)* (terms used in a subject)—Science *terminology* is Greek and Latin to a Sanskrit scholar.

25. **Terse** *(adj.)* (concise, pithy)—Dr. Johnson is admired for his *terse* style of writing.

26. **Travail** *(n.)* (painful labour, hard work)—He has gone through *travail* and sufferings in life manfully.

27. **Threshold** *(n.)* (entrance)—India is on the *threshold* of economic revolution.

28. **Tainted** *(adj.)* (infected, corrupt)—Ice cream sold by street hawkers is generally *tainted* and inedible.

29. **Talisman** *(n.)* (a magical object bringing good luck)—The mother made her son wear *talisman* to ward off evil.

30. **Transcend** *(v.)* (surpass)—Peace of mind in one's life *transcends* all material achievements.

U

1. **Untenable** *(adj.)* (unsupportable)—Your arguments are *untenable* because they have no bearing on the subject.

2. **Unbridled** *(adj.)* (unchecked)—The city is torn with *unbridled* violence because of communal riots.

3. **Ubiquitous** *(adj.)* (present everywhere, omnipresent)—Dogs are *ubiquitous* in every Indian street.

4. **Upbraid** *(v.)* (scold, reproach)—She was *upbraided* for her impertinence.

5. **Uxorious** *(adj.)* (devoted to one's wife)—*Uxorious* husbands are not acceptable in the world of men.

6. **Utopia** *(n.)* (imaginary land)—Those who think of the world free from violence are living in *utopia*.

7. **Usurpation** *(n.)* (act of seizing power)—The military leader was charged with the *usurpation* of the throne.

8. **Umbrage** *(n.)* (resentment, anger)—She considered his remarks exceptionable and took *umbrage* at them.

9. **Ulterior** *(adj.)* (hidden, unstated)—She could not see through *ulterior* motives of her mother-in-law and came to grief.

10. **Unearth** *(v.)* (dig up)—The police were able to *unearth* the cause of murder only after sustained interrogation.

11. **Unkempt** *(adj.)* (dishevelled, untidy)—When he came out of the police station he looked shaken and *unkempt*.

12. **Unilateral** *(adj.)* (one sided)—He objected to the *unilateral* decision of his partner to enter into an agreement with a third party.

13. **Unequivocal** *(adj.)* (obvious, plain)—India has declared in *unequivocal* terms that she would not like third party mediation on Kashmir issue.

14. **Unsavoury** *(adj.)* (nasty, disgusting)—Her *unsavoury* remarks about the host broke up the party suddenly.

15. **Unruly** *(adj.)* (unmanageable)—Her *unruly* behaviour in the class annoyed the teacher.

V

1. **Vivacious** *(adj.)* (animated, gay)—*Vivacious* children are loved by everybody.
2. **Vacillation** *(n.)* (fluctuation, wavering)—My friend's *vacillation* between fear and hope made all of us nervous.
3. **Vindicate** *(v.)* (justify, clear of charge)—His innocence was *vindicated* and the judge acquitted him.
4. **Versatile** *(adj.)* (having many talents)—India needs *versatile* players like Kapil Dev.
5. **Verity** *(n.)* (truth, reality)—The *verity* of his statement has been vindicated by the subsequent events.
6. **Vociferous** *(adj.)* (clamorous, noisy)—The traders had planned a peaceful march but the mob grew *vociferous* in excitement.
7. **Vie** *(v.)* (contend, compete)—The middle class should not *vie* with the rich.
8. **Venerable** *(adj.)* (deserving high respect)—*Venerable* persons are always respected in society.
9. **Vent** *(v.)* (express, utter)—The writer seems to have *vented* his anger at the injustice done to him in his latest novel.
10. **Veer** *(v.)* (change, turn)—When he was attacked he *veered* round and retaliated.
11. **Vehement** *(adj.)* (with vigour, strong)—The teachers made *vehement* protest against the promotion policy of the University.
12. **Vagary** *(n.)* (strange and sudden change)—The crop was destroyed because of the *vagary* of the nature.
13. **Vogue** *(n.)* (popular fashion)—Jeans are in *vogue* these days.
14. **Vantage** *(n.)* (position giving an advantage)—The militants occupied the position of *vantage* and started firing across the valley.
15. **Venal** *(adj.)* (capable of being bribed)—The *venal* police men did not take any action against the smuggler and set him free.
16. **Vitiate** *(v.)* (spoil the effect of)—The reservation policy has *vitiated* Indian society giving rise to castist politics.
17. **Vendetta** *(n.)* (family feud)—The abduction of Mr. Rastogi is attributed to *vendetta* between the two families.
18. **Viable** *(adj.)* (able to exist)—Your argument is not *viable* because it has no bearing on the subject.
19. **Vilify** *(v.)* (slander, malign)—Election is a period when politicians try to *vilify* the reputation of others.
20. **Vernal** *(adj.)* (pertaining to spring)—*Vernal* rain in England is a common phenomenon.

21. Vintage *(n.)* (rare, grape harvesting season)—*Vintage* car rally was held in India last year.

22. Vindictive *(adj.)* (revengeful)—The elephant is *vindictive*.

23. Vandalism *(n.)* (destruction of public property)—The unruly crowd was dispersed by the police when it indulged in *vandalism*.

24. Vituperative *(adj.)* (disparaging)—It is a pity that modern politicians indulge in *vituperative* criticism in election campaigns.

W

1. Waive *(v.)* (remove)—Government is thinking of *waiving* of import duty on life saving drugs.

2. Wanton *(adj.)* (playful, immoral)—Her *wanton* conduct cost her loss of reputation in society.

3. Withhold *(v.)* (keep back)—The university is forced to *withhold* the results of many students on account of non-receipt of answer-books from the teachers.

4. Wreck *(v.)* (destroy)—The ship was *wrecked* when it collided with an invisible rock in the sea.

5. Wont *(n.)* (habit)—Everybody was surprised at the manner of his behaviour because he acted differently from his *wont*.

6. Wary *(adj.)* (chary, cautious)—You must be *wary* of strangers while travelling.

7. Wean *(v.)* (separate)—The opposition is trying to woo the voters belonging to the minority by *weaning* them from the party in power.

8. Warrant *(v.)* (justify)—His impudent behaviour towards the teacher was not at all *warranted*.

9. Way-ward *(adj.)* (unruly, rowdy)—She is fickle minded and is accused of *way-ward* disposition by her friends.

10. Wane *(v.)* (decline)—The popularity of the Congress party is certainly on the *wane*.

11. Wilful *(adj.)* (obstinate)—The child is *wilful* and impervious to the advice of his parents.

12. Wan *(adj.)* (pale looking, weak)—She looked *wan* and weak after long illness.

13. Way-lay *(v.)* (rob)—The ladies were *way-laid* when they were returning from picnic.

14. Wrath *(n.)* (anger)—The natural calamities are manifestation of divine *wrath* and scourge.

15. **Wilt** *(v.)* (wither)—The plants *wilted* in the scorching heat of the sun.

16. **Wield** *(v.)* [use (power)] Dictators are accustomed to *wielding* power against their opponents ruthlessly.

17. **Wreak** *(v.)* (give expression to)—Hamlet *wreaked* vengeance for the murder of his father.

18. **Wrest** *(v.)* (take violently)—In elections every party tries to *wrest* initiative from opposite parties by hook or by crook.

19. **Whip** *(v./n.)* (lash, flog)—The rapist was *whipped* publically by the residents.

20. **Wangle** *(v.)* (manage by unfair means)—The employees always try to *wangle* extra benefits from their employers.

X

1. **Xenophobia** *(n.)* (fear of foreigners, yellow peril)—The white races are obsessed with *xenophobia* and are afraid of losing hegemony.

Y

1. **Yawn** *(v.)* (deep breath with mouth open)—She *yawned* and fell asleep soon.

2. **Yearn** *(v.)* (long for, keen desire)—She *yearns* to meet her daughter who is in the States.

3. **Yeoman** *(n.)* (a working farmer on his own land)—Bal Gangadhar Tilak did *yeoman* service to the cause of Indian freedom.

4. **Yoke** *(n.)* (used for oxen for pulling carts)– India was able to get rid of the *yoke* of the English after World War II.

5. **Yolk** *(n.)* (yellow part of an egg)—The *yolk* of an egg is quite nutritious.

Z

1. **Zest** *(n.)* (enthusiasm, gusto)—She lost *zest* in life after the death of her only son.

2. **Zealot** *(n.)* (fanatic)—The *zealots* are offensive to those who believe in humanitarian service.

3. **Zealous** *(adj.)* (enthusiastic)—We must guard our freedom *zealously*.

4. **Zig-zag** *(n.)* (winding with unequal bends)—The rash driving on *zig-zag* roads is quite dangerous.

5. **Zoom** *(n.)* (rise, move upwards)—Prices of medicines *zoomed* when their imports were banned.

6. **Zenith** *(n.)* (summit, peak)—Today he is at the *zenith* of his career. ❑

Additional Words for Practice

Word		Meaning
1. **Annuity** *(n.)*	–	fixed income paid yearly
2. **Arboreal** *(adj.)*	–	living or connected with trees
3. **Asperity** *(n.)*	–	harshness
4. **Aberration** *(n.)*	–	departure from usual/normal
5. **Approbation** *(n.)*	–	approval
6. **Amenable** *(adj.)*	–	responsive, responsible to
7. **Abstinence** *(n.)*	–	restraint in drinking or eating
8. **Ambivalent** *(adj.)*	–	with conflicting emotions, wishes
9. **Abector** *(n.)*	–	cattle thief
10. **Apiarian** *(adj.)*	–	of bees (working habits)
11. **Abash** *(v.)*	–	embarrass
12. **Abdicate** *(v.)*	–	give up right to throne
13. **Abortive** *(adj.)*	–	fruitless
14. **Abstemious** *(adj.)*	–	moderate in eating and drinking
15. **Aquiline** *(adj.)*	–	of eagle, curved, hooked
16. **Agnostic** *(n.)*	–	sceptical about the existence of God
17. **Adventitious** *(adj.)*	–	accidental
18. **Accolade** *(n.)*	–	award
19. **Abrogate** *(v.)*	–	annul, abolish
20. **Amnesia** *(n.)*	–	loss of memory
21. **Apex** *(n.)*	–	summit, peak
22. **Awry** *(adj.)*	–	go wrong, distorted, haywire
23. **Avuncular** *(adj.)*	–	of uncle
24. **Axiomatic** *(adj.)*	–	needing no proof, evident
25. **Anathema** *(n.)*	–	curse, dested thing
26. **Accomplice** *(n.)*	–	partner in crime
27. **Abettor** *(n.)*	–	one who incites, encourage
28. **Aplomb** *(n.)*	–	poise
29. **Annals** *(n.)*	–	historical records
30. **Avid** *(adj.)*	–	voracious, enthusiastic
31. **Apostate** *(n.)*	–	one who gives up religious/political faith
32. **Ambience** *(n.)*	–	surrounding, environment
33. **Avow** *(v.)*	–	declare
34. **Asinine** *(adj.)*	–	of ass

35. Austere *(adj.)* – stern, severe
36. Assiduous *(adj.)* – diligent
37. Auctorial *(adj.)* – of author (Pen Power)
38. Arraign *(v.)* – bring a criminal charge against a person
39. Animus *(n.)* – hostile intent
40. Apropos *(adv.)* – properly, concerning
41. Abate *(adv.)* – lessen intensity
42. Assimilate *(v.)* – absorb
43. Apocalypse *(n.)* – revelation about future
44. Apocryphal *(adj.)* – of doubtful author
45. Archetype *(n.)* – important example, ideal form
46. Abnegation *(n.)* – self-sacrifice, repudiation
47. Abysmal *(adj.)* – bottomless, dismal
48. Advent *(n.)* – arrival
49. Advertent *(adj.)* – intentional
50. Aegis *(n.)* – sponsorship, patronage
51. Aphasia *(n.)* – loss of speech
52. Abject *(adj.)* – miserable, low
53. Ablution *(n.)* – purification, cleansing
54. Acquiesce *(v.)* – accept unwillingly
55. Ambush *(n./v.)* – surprised attack
56. Artefacts *(n.)* – objects of primitive culture
57. Augury *(n.)* – prophecy, omen
58. Aver *(v.)* – state confidently
60. Abeyance *(adv.)* – in a suspended state
61. Appellation *(n.)* – title
62. Accrue *(n.)* – increase by addition
63. Arrant *(adj.)* – thorough, sheer
64. Attrition *(n.)* – gradual wearing down
65. Assail *(v.)* – assault, criticise
66. Aspersion *(n.)* – slanderous remarks
67. Acronym *(n.)* – a word formed with the first letters
68. Alias *(n.)* – assumed name
69. Asylum *(n.)* – refuge, place for mentally ill
70. Ambit *(n.)* – bound, extent of power
71. Affinity *(n.)* – similarity, liking
72. Adumberate *(n.)* – fore shadow
73. Apt *(adj.)* – suitable, apt to (likely)
74. Auspices *(n.)* – help, favour of somebody
75. Allegiance *(n.)* – loyalty, faithfulness
76. Adaptation *(n.)* – of something (play, novel)

77. **Assailant** *(n.)* – one who attacks
78. **Auricular** *(adj.)* – of ear, confession in ear
79. **Auspicious** *(adj.)* – favourable, prosperous
80. **Augment** *(v.)* – increase
81. **Alexia** *(n.)* – word blindness (brain disorder)
82. **Asphyxia** *(n.)* – suffocation caused by lack of air
83. **Albeit** *(conj.)* – although, though
84. **Attenuate** *(v.)* – make thin or weak
85. **Archaic** *(adj.)* – old fashioned
86. **Avian** *(adj.)* – concerning birds
87. **Aura** *(n.)* – quality surrounding a person

B

1. **Besotted** *(adj.)* – stupified with wine/drink, attract
2. **Beautitude** *(n.)* – happiness, beatific state
3. **Bibulous** *(adj.)* – fond of drinking
4. **Bergeon** *(v.)* – grow forth, sprout
5. **Bonhomie** *(n.)* – pleasantness of manners
6. **Bathos** *(n.)* – anticlimax, (from sublime to foolish)
7. **Belabour** *(v.)* – beat soundly
8. **Baroque** *(adj./n.)* – florid, extravagance in architecture and art
9. **Beleaguer** *(v.)* – surround, besiege
10. **Bucolic** *(adj.)* – uncivilised, rustic
11. **Blithe** *(adj.)* – gay, joyous
12. **Bare** *(adj.)* – naked, scanty
13. **Bland** *(adj.)* – mild, soothing
14. **Buttress** *(n.)* – support with a prop
15. **Baleful** *(adj.)* – threatening, harming
16. **Boisterous** *(adj.)* – noisy, violent
17. **Bullwark** *(n.)* – strong defence
18. **Bicameral** *(adj.)* – having two chambers
19. **Blandishment** *(n.)* – flattery to pursuade
20. **Bountiful** *(adj.)* – generous, liberal
21. **Bristle** *(v.)* – rise like bristle, irritate
22. **Balmy** *(adj.)* – fragrant, mild, soothing
23. **Benign** *(adj.)* – kind, charitable
24. **Beholden** *(adj.)* – obliged, indebted
25. **Balk** *(v.)* – foil, frustrate
26. **Buxom** *(adj.)* – fat, healthy looking

27. **Bludgeon** *(v.)* – club with heavy weapon
28. **Brace** *(n.)* – support to strengthen, pair, stimulating
29. **Behest** *(n.)* – orders of somebody else
30. **Barge** *(v.)* – rush into
31. **Brook** *(v.)* – tolerate, *(n.)* a stream
32. **Belligerent** *(adj.)* – nation waging war, bellicose
33. **Bilateral** *(adj.)* – between two parties
34. **Brigand** *(n.)* – a robber (highway, forest)
35. **Blaze** *(v.)* – burn with flames

C

1. **Convivial** *(adj.)* – friendly
2. **Connubial** *(adj.)* – of marriage (husband and wife)
3. **Craven** *(adj.)* – cowardly, of crow
4. **Cajole** *(v.)* – coax, wheedle
5. **Callous** *(adj.)* – heartless, unfeeling
6. **Conjugal** *(adj.)* – pertaining to marriage
7. **Curtail** *(v.)* – cut down, reduce
8. **Complicity** *(n.)* – involvement, participation
9. **Connoisseur** *(n.)* – person with good judgement of taste and quality
10. **Conspicuous** *(adj.)* – prominently visible
11. **Credentials** *(n.)* – reliability, genuineness of testimonials
12. **Candour** *(n.)* – frankness
13. **Criterion** *(n.)* – standard of judging
14. **Cursory** *(adj.)* – hasty, casual
15. **Contiguous** *(adj.)* – adjacent to
16. **Chequered/**
17. **Checkered** *(adj.)* – marked by ups and downs
18. **Canard** *(n.)* – unfounded rumour
19. **Carnal** *(adj.)* – fleshly
20. **Chicanery** *(n.)* – trickery, false argument
21. **Circumvent** *(v.)* – baffle, outwit
22. **Circumscribe** *(v.)* – confine, limit
23. **Cessation** *(n.)* – stopping
24. **Clairvoyant** *(n.)* – fortune teller
25. **Circumspect** *(adj.)* – cautious, prudent
26. **Confiscate** *(v.)* – seize, commandeer
27. **Cognizance** *(n.)* – knowledge
28. **Charade** *(n.)* – guessing the word from action (a game), pretence

29. **Crazy** *(adj.)* – wildly excited, foolish
30. **Chivalry** *(n.)* – courage marked with honour, courtesy
31. **Charlatan** *(n.)* – fraud, quack
32. **Chubby** *(adj.)* – round faced, plump
33. **Conjure** *(v.)* – to make happen by magic
34. **Choleric** *(adj.)* – easily made angry
35. **Contravene** *(v.)* – violate, conflict with
36. **Catchword** *(n.)* – slogan
37. **Chimerical** *(adj.)* – mythical, fanciful (bird, story, hope)
38. **Catalysm** *(n.)* – sudden violent change
39. **Compassionate** *(adj.)* – kind, benevolent
40. **Conjecture** *(n.)* – guess
41. **Crux** *(n.)* – central/cruical part of a problem
42. **Covet** *(v.)* – desire eagerly
43. **Caveat** *(v.)* – process to suspend proceedings (legal)
44. **Cupidity** *(n.)* – greed for something
45. **Consort** *(n.)* – the husband or the wife of the ruler
46. **Consanguine** *(adj.)* – related by birth (same family)
47. **Congenital** *(adj.)* – occuring since birth
48. **Crusade** *(n.)* – a struggle or movement (religious)
49. **Coffers** *(n.)* – treasury for valuables, money
50. **Castigate** *(v.)* – punish, criticize severely
51. **Concoct** *(v.)* – invent excuse, prepare by mixing
52. **Capitalise** *(v.)* – use to one's advantage
53. **Culminate** *(v.)* – reach the highest point
54. **Checkmate** *(n.)* – obstruct, defeat
55. **Cordial** *(adj.)* – warm, heartfelt
56. **Carousal** *(n.)* – noisy revelry, feast
57. **Curb** *(v.)* – check, control
58. **Cinderella** *(n.)* – (a) something long neglected
    (b) a girl/woman whose merits have not been recognised
59. **Colossal** *(adj.)* – huge, immense
60. **Cavalier** *(adj.)* – without being serious, discourteous
61. **Convalescent** *(n.)* – a person recovering from illness
62. **Celebrity** *(n.)* – a famous person
63. **Coeval** *(adj.)* – of the same origin/age
64. **Crunch** *(n.)* – important & unpleasant situation, shortage

D

1. **Descry** *(v.)* – seen from distance, dimly seen
2. **Delirium** *(n.)* – violent excitement
3. **Disseminate** *(v.)* – spread widely
4. **Duress** *(n.)* – forcible restraint, threat
5. **Decrepit** *(adj.)* – worn out by age
6. **Desultory** *(adj.)* – aimless, jumping around
7. **Devious** *(adj.)* – go astray, erratic
8. **Diabolical** *(adj.)* – devilish
9. **Debility** *(n.)* – weakness, feebleness
10. **Debonair** *(adj.)* – friendly, pleasing
11. **Derelict** *(adj.)* – abandoned (uncared for), negligent (duty)
12. **Destitute** *(adj.)* – extremely poor
13. **Dipsomaniac** *(n.)* – having strong craving for liquor
14. **Debut** *(n.)* – first appearance
15. **Debutant** *(n.)* – a person making first appearance
16. **Discerning** *(adj.)* – having insight
17. **Dissolute** *(adj.)* – loose in morals
18. **Denigrate** *(v.)* – blacken, disparage
19. **Doleful** *(adj.)* – sorrowful
20. **Disconsolate** *(adj.)* – sad, grieving
21. **Distraught** *(adj.)* – distracted by anxiety
22. **Diatribe** *(n.)* – bitter scolding, invective
23. **Discursive** *(adj.)* – rambling, tortuous
24. **Delectable** *(adj.)* – delightful
25. **Disparate** *(adj.)* – different, unrelated
26. **Denizens** *(n.)* – inhabitants
27. **Dispassionate** *(adj.)* – calm, impartial
28. **Deviate** *(v.)* – go away from
29. **Detente** *(n.)* – easing of strained relations
30. **Doyen** *(n.)* – a person of repute in his field
31. **Drudgery** *(n.)* – unpleasant work
32. **Deteriorate** *(v.)* – worsen, become less in quality
33. **Defalcation** *(n.)* – misappropriation, embezzlement
34. **Dementia** *(n.)* – weakness (memory, mind)
35. **Diaspora** *(n.)* – dispersal of the Jews (358 B.C.)
36. **Diversion** *(n.)* – turning of road, amusement
37. **Dilettante** *(n.)* – one who studies not seriously
38. **Decamp** *(with)* *(v.)* – run away with
39. **Decorum** *(n.)* – proper behaviour as desirable

40. **Dispel** *(v.)* – remove doubt, fear
41. **Disperse** *(v.)* – scatter here and there
42. **Docile** *(adj.)* – easily manageable, flexible
43. **Delinquent** *(n.)* – one who does misdeeds
44. **Dismal** *(adj.)* – bleak, gloomy
45. **Disinter** *(v.)* – dig up from grave, exhume
46. **Discrepancy** *(n.)* – mistake, difference
47. **Deviant** *(n.)* – a person different from customary character
48. **Delirious** *(adj.)* – excited with (joy)
49. **Diligent** *(adj.)* – hard working

E

1. **Erratic** *(adj.)* – irregular in behaviour, movement
2. **Elephantine** *(adj.)* – like an elephant
3. **Excerpt** *(n.)* – an extract from a book or writing
4. **Etiquette** *(n.)* – polite manners and behaviour
5. **Elite** *(n.)* – considered to be superior in knowledge, wealth
6. **Epitome** *(n.)* – concise, one that displays the quality of the other
7. **Escapade** *(n.)* – reckless act causing trouble, daring
8. **Expedite** *(v.)* – hasten, speed up
9. **Emeritus** *(adj.)* – retired but retained in honorary capacity
10. **Extrovert** *(n.)* – person interested in outward things, cheerful
11. **Enjoin** *(v.)* – command, order
12. **Explicit** *(adj.)* – definite, expressed
13. **Evince** *(v.)* – show, exhibit clearly
14. **Epicure** *(n.)* – one devoted to sensuous pleasures
15. **Exotic** *(adj.)* – foreign, not native, strange
16. **Exuberant** *(adj.)* – luxuriant, overflowing, spirited
17. **Exude** *(v.)* – emit, ooze out
18. **Eerie** *(adj.)* – causing feeling of fear and mystery
19. **Effete** *(adj.)* – tired, worn out
20. **Egalitarian** *(n.)* – person believing in equal rights and benefits
21. **Effervescent** *(adj.)* – enthusiastic, bubbly
22. **Eulogy** *(n.)* – praise
23. **Exasperate** *(v.)* – vex, irritate
24. **Eclat** *(n.)* – brilliant, applause
25. **Entail** *(v.)* – make necessary, impose (expense)
26. **Ebb** *(v.)* – flow back, grow weak
27. **Exigent** *(adj.)* – urgent, pressing
28. **Espouse** *(v.)* – support a cause

29. **Evolve** *(v.)* – develop gradually
30. **Erstwhile** *(adj.)* – former
31. **Exhort** *(v.)* – advise earnestly
32. **Empathy** *(n.)* – sharing and understanding
33. **Encore** *(Int.)* – repeat (a song, poem), once more
34. **Exculpate** *(v.)* – to free from charge
35. **Exhume** *(v.)* – disinter, to dig up from grave
36. **Exacerbate** *(v.)* – aggravate, worsen
37. **Exorcist** *(n.)* – one who drives out evil spirits
38. **Elevate** *(n.)* – to raise, promote
39. **Echelon** *(n.)* – step like formation, hierarchy (of ranks)
40. **Empirical** *(adj.)* – based on observation and experiment
41. **Ensconce** *(v.)* – establish oneself safely
42. **Euphoria** *(v.)* – state of well being, elation
43. **Esoteric** *(adj.)* – group of small circle of disciples
44. **Euphemism** *(n.)* – use mild and vague words for what is actual
45. **Euphuism** *(n.)* – artificial and ornate style
46. **Eavesdrop** *(v.)* – listen secretly
47. **Ebullient** *(adj.)* – enthusiastic, energetic
48. **Exaggerate** *(v.)* – describe beyond truth
49. **Enervated** *(adj.)* – exhausted, feeling weak
50. **Enigma** *(n.)* – puzzle, riddle

F

1. **Fumble** *(v.)* – to grope, to find
2. **Flamboyant** *(adj.)* – florid, showy, ostentatious
3. **Facetious** *(adj.)* – amusingly mocking, teasing
4. **Flay** *(v.)* – criticise, strip off skin
5. **Fritter** *(v.)* – waste, squander, sap
6. **Fanfare** *(n.)* – loud exciting (music)
7. **Flourish** *(v.)* – prosper, wave about, thrive
8. **Fluke** *(n.)* – stroke of luck, fortunate accident
9. **Fiasco** *(n.)* – failure
10. **Forte** *(n.)* – strong or special talent
11. **Foster** *(v.)* – encourage, rear
12. **Factuous** *(adj.)* – belonging to a faction
13. **Flinch** *(v.)* – hesitate, shrink
14. **Frolicsome** *(adj.)* – prankish, gay
15. **Fester** *(v.)* – generate pus
16. **Fortuitous** *(adj.)* – happening by lucky chance

17. **Felony** *(n.)* – serious crime
18. **Frailities** *(n.)* – fault, moral weakness
19. **Fissiparous** *(adj.)* – dividing, splitting
20. **Fraudulent** *(adj.)* – deceitful
21. **Fugitive** *(n.)* – a person running from justice, forces
22. **Fulmination** *(n.)* – loud protest
23. **Flabbergasted** *(adj.)* – amazed, surprised
24. **Fervid** *(adj.)* – fervent, earnest feeling
25. **Flip** *(adj.)* – reverse, on the flip side
26. **Fervour** *(n.)* – warmth of feeling
27. **Fillip** *(n.)* – incentive, encouragement
28. **Fetish** *(n.)* – obsession about something
29. **Flippant** *(adj.)* – disrespectful
30. **Furbish** *(v.)* – polish, improve
31. **Fetter** *(n.)* – chain
32. **Finesse** *(n.)* – delicate way of dealing with people
33. **Forbearance** *(n.)* – patience, self-control
34. **Forthright** *(adj.)* – outspoken, candid
35. **Fraternity** *(n.)* – fraternal (brotherly) feeling
36. **Furore** *(n.)* – general uproar
37. **Feline** *(adj.)* – like cat
38. **Facade** *(n.)* – false appearance
39. **Fatuous** *(adj.)* – foolish, stupid
40. **Foe** *(n.)* – enemy
41. **Frisk** *(v.)* – search a person, gambol

G

1. **Gastronomy** *(n.)* – science of preparing and serving food
2. **Gamut** *(n.)* – entire range
3. **Grudge** *(v.)* – unwilling to allow, resent
4. **Gambol** *(v.)* – playful jumping
5. **Gambit** *(n.)* – opening in chess, first step
6. **Genial** *(adj.)* – kindly, sociable
7. **Gullible** *(adj.)* – credulous, easily deceived
8. **Garbled** *(adj.)* – mixed up
9. **Generic** *(adj.)* – common feature of a class
10. **Gruff** *(adj.)* – rough
11. **Garrulous** *(adj.)* – talkative, loquacious
12. **Gauche** *(adj.)* – clumsy, awkward
13. **Gabble** *(v.)* – talk fast

14. **Germane** *(adj.)* – pertinent, relevant
15. **Gadfly** *(n.)* – a fly that stings horses/cattle
16. **Gadget** *(n.)* – device, contrivance
17. **Gaffe** *(n.)* – blunder, unwise act/remark
18. **Galore** *(adj.)* – in plenty
19. **Goof** *(n.)* – stupid, silly
20. **Gorgeous** *(adj.)* – beautiful and attractive
21. **Gratuitous** *(adj.)* – done without reason or purpose, unnecessary
22. **Gaunt** *(adj.)* – lean and thin
23. **Grill** *(v.)* – close, severe interrogation
24. **Gallows** *(n.)* – site for hanging criminals
25. **Genesis** *(n.)* – beginning, starting point
26. **Gloss** *(n.)* – smooth, bright, gloss over (cover-up)
27. **Gory** *(adj.)* – bloody violent (details, incidents)
28. **Grievous** *(adj.)* – causing grief, pain

H

1. **Handy** *(adj.)* – useful, available
2. **Husbandry** *(n.)* – agriculture, frugality
3. **Hectic** *(adj.)* – exciting, without rest
4. **Hiccup** *(n.)* – sudden stopping of breath with cough
5. **Hibernation** *(n.)* – torpid state in winter
6. **Hiatus** *(n.)* – break in continuity
7. **Heresy** *(n.)* – contrary to religious concept
8. **Hideous** *(adj.)* – ugly, horrible
9. **Hunch** *(n.)* – intuition, feeling (likely to happen)
10. **Hortative** *(n.)* – exhorting, encouraging
11. **Hirsute** *(adj.)* – hairy, shaggy
12. **Hagiology** *(n.)* – literature about the lives of the saints
13. **Hallow** *(v.)* – make holy, sanctify
14. **Hallmark** *(n.)* – mark of quality, distinguishing feature
15. **Hanky-panky** *(n.)* – underhand dealing
16. **Heirloom** *(n.)* – something handed down for generations
17. **Hassle** *(v.)* – wrangle, argue
18. **Headstrong** *(adj.)* – obstinate, stubborn
19. **Haul** *(n.)* – something gained with effort
20. **Hearse** *(n.)* – carriage for coffin
21. **Hedonism** *(n.)* – belief that pleasure is the chief good
22. **Hollow** *(adj.)* – empty with a space inside
23. **Heist** *(n.)* – a robbery

24. **Hierarchy** *(n.)* – organisation with grades/ranks
25. **Hue** *(n.)* – a shade of colour
26. **Horrendous** *(adj.)* – horrid, terrible
27. **Haunt** *(v.)* – visit, return to mind frequently
28. **Hobnob** *(v.)* – to have social relations
29. **Hamper** *(n.)* – gift-pack
30. **Hitchhike** *(v.)* – travel on free ride
31. **Haywire** *(adj.)* – go astray, out of control

I

1. **Impair** *(v.)* – worsen, damage
2. **Impetuous** *(adj.)* – hasty, thoughtless
3. **Impetus** *(n.)* – fillip, moving force
4. **Improvise** *(v.)* – compose at the nick of time
5. **Impromptu** *(Adv.)* – without preparation, arranged hastily, extempore
6. **Impunity** *(n.)* – freedom from punishment, risk
7. **Impugn** *(v.)* – challenge, doubtful statement
8. **Inhibition** *(n.)* – habitual shrinking from action/impulse
9. **Imbecility** *(n.)* – weakness, feebleness of mind
10. **Inadvertent** *(adj.)* – oversight, done not on purpose
11. **Incriminate** *(v.)* – involve, accuse
12. **Inculcate** *(v.)* – teach
13. **Inured** *(adj.)* – hardened, accustomed
14. **Invidious** *(adj.)* – trying to create ill-will
15. **Insinuate** *(v.)* – hint, imply
16. **Insomnia** *(n.)* – inability to sleep, wakefulness
17. **Inarticulate** *(adj.)* – cannot be heard clearly
18. **Internecine** *(adj.)* – mutually destructive
19. **Infringe** *(v.)* – violate, encroach
20. **Insidious** *(adj.)* – treacherous
21. **Infer** *(v.)* – deduce, conclude
22. **Iota** *(n.)* – small quantity
23. **Ineffable** *(adj.)* – Indiscribeable
24. **Implicit** *(adj.)* – implied, not expressed
25. **Incantation** *(n.)* – words chanted in magic or spell
26. **Innuendo** *(n.)* – unfavourable reference to a person
27. **Inebriation** *(n.)* – state of being drunk
28. **Ilk***(n.)* – of family, type
29. **Idiosyncrasy** *(n.)* – peculiar thinking of a person, eccentricity
30. **Iveigle** *(v.)* – to trick somebody into
31. **Infidel** *(n.)* – unbelieving in religion

32. Incest *(n.)* – immoral relations with near relations
33. Infernal *(adj.)* – of hell, devilish
34. Inferno *(n.)* – hell
35. Iriscible *(adj.)* – easily irritable
36. Immolation *(n.)* – to kill by burning

J

1. Junket *(n.)* – excursion, feast, sweet pudding
2. Jacose *(adj.)* – disposed to jesting
3. Juxtapose *(v.)* – place side by side
4. Jurisdiction *(n.)* – extent of authority
5. Jocular *(adj.)* – said in jest
6. Jarring *(adj.)* – causing disharmony
7. Jaunty *(adj.)* – showing self-confidence
8. Jettison *(v.)* – throw over board to lighten
9. Jitters *(n.)* – nervousness
10. Jostle *(v.)* – push against someone
11. Juggernut *(n.)* – a belief for which one sacrifices oneself, large vehicle
12. Juggle *(v.)* – to play tricks
13. Jabber *(v.)* – speak rapidly, chatter

K

1. Kaleidoscope *(n.)* – frequent changing pattern of bright scenes
2. Ken *(n.)* – range of knowledge
3. Kinky *(adj.)* – eccentric, perverted
4. Knead *(v.)* – make dough with flour
5. Knuckle *(n.)* – joint of a finger
6. Kow tow *(v.)* – be obsequious

L

1. Lupine *(adj.)* – of wolf
2. Leonine *(adj.)* – of lion
3. Loquacious *(adj.)* – talkative, garrulous
4. Libellous *(adj.)* – defamatory
5. Legitimate *(adj.)* – reasonable, lawful
6. Lewd *(adj.)* – lustful
7. Licentious *(adj.)* – wanton, dissolute
8. Languid *(adj.)* – listless, effortless
9. Latent *(adj.)* – dormant, hidden

10. **Legion** *(n.)* – numerous, numberless
11. **Largesse** *(n.)* – generous financial help
12. **Lackey** *(n.)* – one who obeys without question
13. **Lecherous** *(adj.)* – lustful
14. **Locale** *(n.)* – scene of an event
15. **Lustre** *(n.)* – brightness
16. **Lusty** *(adj.)* – healthy, strong
17. **Languish** *(v.)* – suffer & become weak
18. **Leeway** *(n.)* – freedom to act and change
19. **Live-wire** *(adj.)* – a person full of energy

M

1. **Maltreat** *(v.)* – ill-treat
2. **Mercurial** *(v.)* – fickle, changing
3. **Mayhem** *(n.)* – state of violent disorder, havoc
4. **Magnanimous** *(adj.)* – generous, liberal
5. **Medley** *(n.)* – mixture of things, persons of different sorts
6. **Mirage** *(n.)* – unreal reflection
7. **Misapprehension** *(n.)* – misunderstanding, error
8. **Mete** *(v.)* – distribute, deal out
9. **Misgiving** *(n.)* – distrust, suspicion
10. **Mendicant** *(n.)* – beggar
11. **Moribund** *(adj.)* – at the point of death
12. **Mortify** *(v.)* – to be humiliated, ashamed
13. **Milieu** *(n.)* – social surroundings, environment
14. **Moratoriun** *(n.)* – deferment, delay
15. **Millennium** *(n.)* – period of one thousand years
16. **Mealy mouthed** *(adj.)* – insincere, evasive
17. **Muzzle** *(n.)* – nose and mouth of an animal
18. **Mutilate** *(v.)* – cut off, disfigure (limb of a body)
19. **Munificent** *(adj.)* – generous, liberal
20. **Multitude** *(n.)* – large number of people, masses
21. **Muddle** *(v.)* – confuse, perplex
22. **Motley** *(adj.)* – of various colours
23. **Malaise** *(n.)* – feeling of physical discomfort
24. **Malediction** *(n.)* – curse, bane
25. **Manicure** *(n.)* – care of hands and nails
26. **Manoeuvre** *(n.)* – planned movement (armed forces) to deceive
27. **Maroon** *(v.)* – deserted on uninhabited land
28. **Massacre** *(n.)* – carnage, murder on large scale
29. **Materialise** *(v.)* – bring about result

30. **Miniature** *(n.)* – small-scale copy, model
31. **Misdemeanour** *(n.)* – offence
32. **Metamorphosis** *(n.)* – natural change in form
33. **Melifluous** *(adj.)* – sweet sounding
34. **Mongrel** *(n.)* – mixed breed (of dog, plant, animal)
35. **Monarch** *(n.)* – supreme ruler (king or queen)
36. **Maverick** *(n.)* – dissenting, unorthodox
37. **Meliorist** *(n.)* – one who believes in the betterment of mankind
38. **Matinee** *(n.)* – afternoon show
39. **Mandlin** *(n.)* – self pitying, sentimental
40. **Malice** *(n.)* – ill-will

N

1. **Niggardly** *(adj.)* – stingy, miserly
2. **Nuance** *(n.)* – delicate difference in meaning
3. **Nostrum** *(n.)* – not real but quack remedy
4. **Niche** *(n.)* – suitable situation, recess in a wall
5. **Nee** *(adj.)* – name used after the name of married woman and before her father's family name
6. **Nitty gritty** *(n.)* – basic facts of a matter
7. **Naiveti** *(n.)* – naivety, artlessness

O

1. **Olfactory** *(adj.)* – relating to the sense of smell
2. **Obdurate** *(adj.)* – stubborn, unpertinent
3. **Obeisance** *(n.)* – respectful homage
4. **Onus** *(n.)* – burden, responsibility
5. **Orifice** *(n.)* – opening into cavity
6. **Obsolescent** *(adj.)* – discarded, absolete
7. **Ominous** *(adj.)* – of bad omen, threatening
8. **Obsequious** *(adj.)* – servile, excessively respectful
9. **Opprobrious** *(adj.)* – expressing scorn, abusive
10. **Officious** *(adj.)* – meddlesome, trying to please
11. **Orgy** *(n.)* – wild merry making, licentous, drunken
12. **Ocular** *(adj.)* – of eye
13. **Obscene** *(adj.)* – indecent, immoral, depraved
14. **Ombudsman** *(n.)* – an authority to look into public grievances
15. **Onslaught** *(n.)* – furious attack
16. **Ovation** *(n.)* – enthusiastic welcome/approval
17. **Over-ride** *(v.)* – prevail over decision

P

1. **Porcine** *(adj.)* – relating to pig
2. **Piscinine** *(adj.)* – relating to fish
3. **Peristeronic** *(adj.)* – relating to pigeon
4. **Pre-empt** *(v.)* – prevent before hand
5. **Proselytize** *(v.)* – convert to a religion or belief
6. **Panegyric** *(n.)* – a discourse in praise
7. **Peculate** *(v.)* – embezzle, misappropriate
8. **Permeable** *(adj.)* – through which substance can pass
9. **Pontificate** *(v.)* – speak like a priest
10. **Puissant** *(adj.)* – powerful
11. **Precipitate** *(v.)* – hasten, head long rush
12. **Plausible** *(adj.)* – open to doubt but appearing to be truthful
13. **Polemic** *(n.)* – controversy, argument in support
14. **Paean** *(n.)* – song of praise
15. **Platitude** *(n.)* – trite remark
16. **Peevish** *(adj.)* – fretful
17. **Periphery** *(n.)* – external boundary
18. **Profligate** *(adj.)* – immortal
19. **Prodigious** *(adj.)* – large
20. **Pornography** *(n.)* – obscenity in writing/art
21. **Probity** *(n.)* – honesty, uprightness
22. **Presentiment** *(n.)* – premonition, foreboding
23. **Progeny** *(n.)* – children, offspring
24. **Propensity** *(n.)* – natural inclination
25. **Procrastinate** *(v.)* – postpone, delay
26. **Promiscuous** *(adj.)* – mix indiscriminately, immoral
27. **Punctilious** *(adj.)* – stress on nicety of form/conduct
28. **Plethora** *(n.)* – excess, abundance
29. **Politic** *(adj.)* – prudent, expedient
30. **Portent** *(n.)* – forewarning, omens
31. **Precept** *(n.)* – practical rule guiding conduct
32. **Punitive** *(adj.)* – punishing
33. **Puny** *(adj.)* – insignificant, tiny
34. **Palliate** *(v.)* – lessen the gravity
35. **Prostrate** *(v.)* – stretch fully on ground
36. **Parley** *(n.)* – conference
37. **Proponent** *(n.)* – One who supports an idea
38. **Perfidy** *(n.)* – violation of a trust
39. **Parlance** *(n.)* – language, terminology

40. **Pelf** *(n.)* – money, wealth
41. **Prefunctory** *(adj.)* – not thorough, superficial
42. **Parry** *(v.)* – ward off a blow
43. **Patent** *(adj.)* – obvious, open
44. **Panorama** *(n.)* – comprehensive view
45. **Placebo** *(n.)* – medicine given to soothe, not to cure
46. **Pilfer** *(v.)* – steal in small quantity
47. **Pillion** *(n.)* – seat behind a rider/driver
48. **Paronoid** *(adj.)* – extremely worried about being harmed
49. **Profile** *(n.)* – image, side view, brief biography
50. **Partisan** *(n./adj.)* – a person uncritically devoted to a party or group
51. **Peremptory** *(adj.)* – obligatory, mandatory
52. **Pejorative** *(adj.)* – disparaging, belittling
53. **Petulant** *(adj.)* – impatient, irritable
54. **Palpable** *(adj.)* – obvious, that can be felt or touched
55. **Penultimate** *(adj.)* – the one before the last
56. **Pretext** *(n.)* – excuse, false reason
57. **Panache** *(n.)* – confident manner
58. **Ploy** *(n.)* – manoeuvre to take advantage
59. **Precincts** *(n.)* – space enclosed by wall
60. **Paroxysm** *(n.)* – sudden outburst of pain, anger
61. **Perpetrate** *(v.)* – to commit crime
62. **Pedigree** *(n.)* – line of ancestors
63. **Presage** *(n.)* – presentiment, sign of impending event
64. **Passe** *(adj.)* – obsolete, not in vogue
65. **Prowess** *(n.)* – valour, bravery
66. **Pertain** *(v.)* – belong as a part
67. **Peccadillo** *(n.)* – small sin, fault
68. **Pedlar** *(n.)* – peddler, one who travels about selling
69. **Plummet** *(v.)* – fall, plunge steepily
70. **Prognosis** *(n.)* – forecast of disease, trouble
71. **Profilerate** *(v.)* – grow, multiply
72. **Prevaricate** *(v.)* – to waver to tell the truth
73. **Petrify** *(v.)* – to turn into stone, stun
74. **Parole** *(n.)* – free a prisoner on undertaking not to escape
75. **Propitious** *(adj.)* – favourable, good omen
76. **Postulate** *(v.)* – to demand, taken for granted
77. **Paradigm** *(n.)* – pattern, example
78. **Providence** *(n.)* – working of divine, thrift
79. **Perseverance** *(n.)* – constant, steadfast efforts
80. **Pandemic** *(n.)* – a disease that spreads all over
81. **Propinquity** *(n.)* – State of being near

Q

1. **Quagmire** *(n.)* – soft, wet, marshy land
2. **Quail** *(v.)* – show fear, tremble
3. **Quibble** *(v.)* – avoid an answer, equivocate
4. **Quietus** *(v.)* – final settlement of debt, release from life
5. **Quake** *(v.)* – shake, tremble
6. **Quaint** *(adj.)* – attractive (for being old-fashioned)
7. **Quantum** *(n.)* – amount desired
8. **Quaff** *(v.)* – drink, enjoy drinking

R

1. **Reminiscence** *(n.)* – recollection
2. **Revulsion** *(n.)* – sudden change/reaction of feelings
3. **Renovate** *(n.)* – renew, restore to new condition
4. **Retribution** *(n.)* – vengeance, punishment
5. **Revelry** *(n.)* – boisterous merry making
6. **Recourse** *(n.)* – resort to as means
7. **Reimbursement** *(n.)* – repayment of expenses
8. **Rejuvenate** *(v.)* – make young and strong again
9. **Respite** *(n.)* – interval of relief
10. **Revamp** *(v.)* – construct, change
11. **Resurgent** *(adj.)* – rising again after defeat
12. **Rote** *(n.)* – repetition
13. **Rummage** *(v.)* – ransack, search thoroughly
14. **Residue** *(n.)* – remainder, balance
15. **Rabble** *(n.)* – group of vulgar people
16. **Raillery** *(n.)* – sarcasm, act of finding fault
17. **Recalcitrant** *(adj.)* – stubborn, disobedient
18. **Resilient** *(adj.)* – elastic buoyant nature
19. **Rabid** *(adj.)* – furious, rabid dog
20. **Rendition** *(n.)* – translation, artistic interpretation
21. **Resort** *(v.)* – turn for help, frequent visit
    (n.) – a place for pleasure making
22. **Resonant** *(adj.)* – resounding, re-echo
23. **Rectitude** *(n.)* – moral uprightness, righteousness
24. **Redolent** *(adj.)* – reminiscent of past (smell, taste)
25. **Reconnaissance** *(n.)* – act of surveying enemy positions
26. **Rumpus** *(n.)* – uproar, noise
27. **Repast** *(n.)* – meal, food

28. **Relish** *(n.)* – liking, taste for food
29. **Refute** *(v.)* – counter, prove wrong
30. **Relentless** *(adj.)* – unyielding, pitiless
31. **Recede** *(v.)* – to go back
32. **Reprehensible** *(adj.)* – deserving condemnation
33. **Refulgent** *(adj.)* – shining, brilliant
34. **Resplendent** *(adj.)* – splendidly bright
35. **Renege** *(on)* *(v.)* – fail to keep word
36. **Resuscitate** *(v.)* – regain consciousness
37. **Rigorous** *(adj.)* – severe, harsh
38. **Ruckus** *(n.)* – exchange of angry words, protest
39. **Ravenous** *(adj.)* – very hungry, greedy
40. **Recipe** *(n.)* – direction, formula for preparing food
41. **Recapitulate** *(v.)* – to repeat, go through again
42. **Restitution** *(n.)* – restoring right, property
43. **Retrench** *(v.)* – cut down expenses, staff
44. **Resurrection** *(n.)* – coming to life again
45. **Rigmarole** *(n.)* – wandering story, confusing procedure
46. **Rue** *(v.)* – repent of, regret
47. **Reciprocal** *(adj.)* – mutual
48. **Rave** *(about)* *(v.)* – write enthusiastically
    (n.) – party (with drugs)

S

1. **Simian** *(adj.)* – of monkey, ape
2. **Serpentine** *(adj.)* – of serpent
3. **Servile** *(menial)* *(adj.)* – of servant
4. **Sacredotal** *(adj.)* – of priest
5. **Salacious** *(adj.)* – anything obscene, indecent
6. **Sardonic** *(adj.)* – disdainful, sarcastic
7. **Scuttle** *(v.)* – subvert, sink
8. **Sedate** *(adj.)* – calm, composed
9. **Sojourn** *(n.)* – temporary stay
10. **Sceptic** *(n.)* – one who doubts the truth, claim, theory
11. **Seduce** *(v.)* – lure to do wrong, tempt
12. **Scurrilous** *(adj.)* – taunting, abusive
13. **Sundry** *(adj.)* – various, several
14. **Sedition** *(n.)* – rebellion against government
15. **Spate** *(n.)* – sudden flood, rise in business

16. **Stalemate** *(n.)* – deadlock, impasse
17. **Stalwart** *(n.)* – strong, steadfast
18. **Secession** *(n.)* – act of seceding, withdrawal
19. **Stoic** *(n.)* – one who is indifferent to pain or pleasure
20. **Squalid** *(adj.)* – dirty, neglected condition
21. **Solace** *(n.)* – comfort in trouble
22. **Synchronise** *(v.)* – simultaneous with
23. **Shirk** *(v.)* – avoid doing duty
24. **Swelter** *(v.)* – oppressed with heat
25. **Solicit** *(v.)* – ask for, request earnestly
26. **Solicitous** *(adj.)* – concerned, worried about
27. **Skullduggery** *(n.)* – cheating, deception
28. **Savant** – a person of great learning
29. **Savvy** *(n.)* – understanding, having common sense
30. **Syndrome** *(n.)* – collective number of symptoms
31. **Sleuth** *(n.)* – detective, a dog following a scent
32. **Sanguine** *(adj.)* – cheerful, hopeful
33. **Simulate** *(v.)* – pretend
34. **Suave** *(adj.)* – smooth, gracious
35. **Strident** *(n.)* – (of sound) shrill, harsh
36. **Segregation** *(n.)* – isolate, separate
37. **Sleazy** *(adj.)* – uncared for, dirty
38. **Safari** *(n.)* – hunting expedition
39. **Sabotage** *(v.)* – act of saboteur, to damage
40. **Souvenir** *(n.)* – something as gift, taken in memory of
41. **Shoddy** *(v.)* – rough, poor quality
42. **Succinct** *(adj.)* – brief, terse but clear
43. **Sabbatical** *(adj.)* – of sabbath, holiday (Sunday)
44. **Sibling** *(adj.)* – having same parents, sister, brother
45. **Spurt** *(v.)* – sudden outburst
46. **Serenade** *(music) (n.)* – to sing to somebody
47. **Serendipty** *(n.)* – fortunate, unexpected, discovery
48. **Spree** *(n.)* – merrytime, lively
49. **Spendthrift** *(n.)* – an extravagant person
50. **Snub** *(v.)* – treat with contempt
51. **Susceptible** *(adj.)* – easily influenced, affected
52. **Snide** *(adj.)* – slyly critical, sneering
53. **Snob** *(n.)* – one who is obsessed with social position
54. **Squabble** *(n.)* – noisy petty quarrel
55. **Squall** *(n.)* – sudden violent storm

56. **Salubrious** *(adj.)* – salutary, healthful
57. **Strand** *(v.)* – to be left without means of transport, money
58. **Sobriquet** *(n.)* – nickname
59. **Sachet** *(n.)* – a small packet
60. **Shibboleth** *(n.)* – an old idea or custom, distinguishing
61. **Saturate** *(v.)* – filled completely with no scope for addition

T

1. **Tonsorial** *(adj.)* – of barber
2. **Tenable** *(adj.)* – defensible by argument
3. **Transpire** *(v.)* – become known, happen
4. **Tandem** *(n.)* – one behind the other, in pair
5. **Tawdry** *(adj.)* – showing, bright (in bad taste)
6. **Tentative** *(adj.)* – done as a trial, experimental
7. **Tautological** *(adj.)* – needless repetition
8. **Tamper** *(v.)* – meddle with
9. **Tardy** *(adj.)* – slow, sluggish
10. **Tarnish** *(v.)* – make dull, spoil
11. **Temerity** *(adj.)* – boldness, audacity
12. **Transulent** *(adj.)* – transparent but partly
13. **Tantalise** *(v.)* – raise hope but with obstacle
14. **Throes** *(n.)* – violent pain (middle of activity)
15. **Tangible** *(adj.)* – real, perceivable by touch
16. **Torpid** *(adj.)* – lethargic, dormant
17. **Tantrum** *(n.)* – fit of bad temper, petulance
18. **Transient** *(adj.)* – short lived, fleeting
19. **Tendentious** *(adj.)* – partial with a purpose
20. **Tenor** *(n.)* – general routine
21. **Thespian** *(n.)* – actor/actress
22. **Trenchant** *(adj.)* – sharp, incisive
23. **Truculant** *(adj.)* – savage, aggressive
24. **Trice** *(n.)* – instant
25. **Turgid** *(adj.)* – overflowing, swollen
26. **Truant** *(n.)* – wandering, shirker, absence
27. **Tripartite** *(adj.)* – of three parties
28. **Tyranny** *(n.)* – unjust, cruel use of power
29. **Trove** *(n.)* – treasure
30. **Twinge** *(n.)* – sudden sharp pain
31. **Tussle** *(n.)* – struggle, conflict
32. **Turbid** *(adj.)* – muddy, not clear

33. **Trounce** *(v.)* – thrash, defeat
34. **Turbulent** *(adj.)* – violent, uncontrolled
35. **Thrive** *(v.)* – prosper, flourish
36. **Turmoil** *(n.)* – trouble, violent agitation
37. **Turpitude** *(n.)* – wickedness, depravity
38. **Tumult** *(n.)* – uproar, disturbance
39. **Tumble** *(v.)* – fall suddenly, collapse
40. **Trudge** *(v.)* – walk wearily
41. **Temperance** *(n.)* – moderation (eating and drinking)
42. **Temporise** *(v.)* – delay in making a decision
43. **Thorough-bred** *(adj.)* – thoroughly trained, of pure breed
44. **Tinsel** *(adj.)* – glitter, superficial
45. **Topple** *(v.)* – overturn
46. **Topsy turvy** *(adj.)* – confusion, upside down
47. **Torrid** *(adj.)* – hot, tropical
48. **Treason** *(n.)* – betrayal of one's country
49. **Thesaurus** *(n.)* – treasury of similar words, grouped together
50. **Tango** *(n.)* – American dance with marked rhythm
51. **Traverse** *(v.)* – travel across
52. **Termagant** *(n.)* – a shrew, a quarrelsome woman

U

1. **Untoward** *(adj.)* – unfortunate, unfavourable
2. **Usher** *(n.)* – herald, announce
3. **Umpteen** *(adj.)* – many times
4. **Unassuming** *(adj.)* – shy, modest
5. **Unbecoming** *(adj.)* – not suited to, not befitting
6. **Unctuous** *(adj.)* – insincere, flattering
7. **Undaunted** *(adj.)* – not daunted, fearless
8. **Under-hand** *(adj.)* – sly, deceitful
9. **Undermine** *(v.)* – weaken, lessen
10. **Under-dog** *(n.)* – poor and helpless
11. **Undertake** *(v.)* – agree, start, promise
12. **Unerring** *(adj.)* – accurate faultless
13. **Unflagging** *(v.)* – uninterrupted, untiring
14. **Unflinching** *(adj.)* – fearless, resolute
15. **Unleash** *(v.)* – release, set into action
16. **Unobtrusive** *(adj.)* – not easily visible or noticeable
17. **Unravel** *(v.)* – expose, clarify
18. **Unrelenting** *(adj.)* – relentless, unyielding

19. **Unrequited** *(adj.)* – unrewarded, not returned
20. **Unreservedly** *(adj.)* – without restrictions/reservation
21. **Unruffled** *(adj.)* – unperturbed, not upset
22. **Unscathed** *(adj.)* – unharmed, unhurt
23. **Unswerving** *(adj.)* – not changing
24. **Unwieldy** *(adj.)* – awkward due to shape or size
25. **Unwind** *(n.)* – relax after tension
26. **Unsparing** *(adj.)* – liberal, not withholding
27. **Unfazed** *(adj.)* – unperturbed
28. **Uproar** *(n.)* – outburst of excitement, noise
29. **Uprising** *(n.)* – rebellion, revolt
30. **Upshot** *(n.)* – conclusion, outcome
31. **Upheaval** *(n.)* – sudden change on large scale
32. **Unflappable** *(adj.)* – unperturbed, calm
33. **Unmitigated** *(adj.)* – thorough, complete
34. **Uncanny** *(adj.)* – mysterious, surpernatural
35. **Upstage** *(adv./adj.)* – divert attention/direction
36. **Urchin** *(n.)* – mischievous street boy
37. **Urbane** *(adj.)* – polished, refined in manners

V

1. **Vigilant** *(adj.)* – watchful, cautious
2. **Vicissitude** *(n.)* – change of fortune, ups and downs
3. **Valetudinarian** *(adj.)* – obsession about health
4. **Vanquish** *(v.)* – defeat, subjugate
5. **Valiant** *(adj.)* – brave, dauntless
6. **Vainglorious** *(adj.)* – proud, conceited
7. **Valour** *(n.)* – bravery, fortitude
8. **Valedictory** *(adj.)* – of farewell
9. **Vapid** *(adj.)* – dull, boring
10. **Vicarious** *(adj.)* – feel pleasure from the acts of others
11. **Vibes** *(n.)* – (vibrating) a mood or an atmosphere produced by a person or a thing.
12. **Variegated** *(adj.)* – multicoloured
13. **Vanguard** *(n.)* – pioneer, forerunner
14. **Vaunt** *(v.)* – boast, show off
15. **Versimilitude** *(n.)* – semblance of truth, appearing to be true
16. **Veneer** *(n.)* – thin layer, outward appearance
17. **Voluble** *(adj.)* – glib, fluent (speaker)
18. **Voluptuous** *(adj.)* – sensual, of exciting senses

19. **Volatile** *(adj.)* – of changing, unstable disposition
20. **Vulpine** *(adj.)* – of fox, crafty
21. **Vouchsafe** *(v.)* – guarantee, kind to give
22. **Void** *(adj.)* – vacant, empty
23. **Verve** *(n.)* – zest, spirit
24. **Virile** *(adj.)* – of manly strength and energy
25. **Verdant** *(adj.)* – green, fresh
26. **Virtuoso** *(n.)* – highly skilled artist, musician
27. **Veritable** *(adj.)* – real, rightly called
28. **Virulent** *(adj.)* – bitter, poisonous
29. **Version** *(n.)* – account of; interpretation of an event
30. **Vis-a-vis** *(adv.)* – opposite, compared with
31. **Virago** *(n.)* – shrew, ill-tempered woman
32. **Vestige** *(n.)* – remains, traces
33. **Visage** *(n.)* – appearance, face
34. **Vertigo** *(n.)* – giddiness
35. **Vituperative** *(adj.)* – abusive, scolding
36. **Volition** *(n.)* – power of using of will, choice
37. **Votary** *(n.)* – follower, devoted to a cause
38. **Vista** *(n.)* – series of scenes, a view from distance
39. **Vestal** *(adj.)* – pure, chaste, virginal
40. **Valediction** *(n.)* – farewell, parting
41. **Valentine** *(n.)* – letter/card sent to a sweetheart (anonymously)
    (St. Valentine Day—14th February)
42. **Vignettes** *(n.)* – short sketch of a person, character, ornamental, design of title of the book
43. **Vitriolic** *(adj.)* – biting, full of invective
44. **Vibrant** *(adj.)* – thrilling, lively
45. **Voyeuristic** *(adj.)* – pertaining to looking at lustful objects
46. **Vigorous** *(n.)* – strong, full of vigour
47. **Vamp** *(n.)* – female villain
48. **Vicinity** *(adj.)* – neighbourhood, nearness in relations
49. **Vague** *(adj.)* – not clearly expressed
50. **Vandalism** *(n.)* – an act of destroying public property

W

1. **Wheedle** *(v.)* – coax, cajole
2. **Wade** *(v.)* – walk through water or mud
3. **Wizard** *(n.)* – magician, one having amazing ability
4. **Wager** *(v.)* – bet

5. **Wily** *(adj.)* – cunning
6. **Wanderlust** *(n.)* – strong desire to travel
7. **Weird** *(adj.)* – unnatural, unearthly
8. **Wretched** *(adj.)* – poor, miserable
9. **Whereabouts** *(n.)* – place of residence, staying place
10. **Whittle** *(v.)* – reduce, dwindle
11. **Whet** *(v.)* – sharpen as knife
12. **Withstand** *(v.)* – resist, hold out
13. **Wrangle** *(v.)* – argue angrily
14. **Wince** *(v.)* – show physical or mental pain
15. **Winsome** *(adj.)* – attractive, pleasing
16. **Woo** *(v.)* – court a woman, try to win
17. **Winnow** *(v.)* – separate grain from husk
18. **Wistful** *(adj.)* – sad and longing.
19. **Wry** *(adj.)* – forced, disappointed (smile)
20. **Woeful** *(adj.)* – miserable, distressful
21. **Woebegone** *(adj.)* – dismal, showing distress
22. **Wreath** *(n.)* – garland of flowers
23. **Waif** *(n.)* – homeless child
24. **Wherewithal** *(n.)* – money needed for a person
25. **Wholesome** *(adj.)* – promoting good health
26. **Ware** *(n.)* – manufactured goods

X

1. **X-Mas** *(n.)* – observation of Christmas

Y

1. **Yokel** *(n.)* – naive countryman
2. **Yearling** *(n.)* – young animal

Z

1. **Zany** *(n.)* – clown
2. **Zippy** *(adj.)* – lively, brisk

Chapter

4 Synonyms and Antonyms

Against each KEYWORD are given the lists of Synonyms and Antonyms separately. A student is required to study the words given in the list carefully. These words will add to the Theasurus comprising words and phrases that they have already learnt. If need be, they may look up a word in the dictionary for correct reference.

A

AWKWARD

Syn: clumsy, ungainly, ponderous, rough
Ant: clever, dexterous, apt, skilful

APPARENT

Syn: evident, obvious, perceptible, distinct
Ant: masked, obscure, indistinct, doubtful

ALLURE

Syn: entice, fascinate, tempt, seduce
Ant: repulse, repel, deter, distaste

ABORTIVE

Syn: vain, useless, fruitless, unproductive
Ant: effectual, productive, successful, progressive

ABOMINABLE

Syn: odious, detestable, repugnant, aversion
Ant: likeable, pleasant, affectionate, enjoyable

ALLAY

Syn: pacify, soothe, lighten, assuage
Ant: aggravate, heighten, agitate, excite

AXIOM

Syn: maxim, saying, dictum, truth
Ant: absurdity, blunder, ridiculousness, irrelevant

ASSIDUOUS

Syn: constant, diligent, attentive, persevering
Ant: indifference, careless, indolent, lethargic

ABJURE
Syn: forsake, renounce, retract, revoke
Ant: approve, sanction, patronise, adopt

ABJECT
Syn: despicable, servile, base, contemptible
Ant: exalted, commendable, praiseworthy, imposing

AVERSION
Syn: dislike, hatred, indifferent, apathy
Ant: affection, fondness, niceness, liking

AUTHENTIC
Syn: genuine, reliable, valid, guaranteed
Ant: fictitious, counterfeit, unreal, false

AUDACITY
Syn: boldness, arrogance, insolence, haughtiness
Ant: mildness, humility, cowardice, submission

ASTUTE
Syn: clever, intelligent, wise, brilliant
Ant: dull, unintelligent, shallow, solid

ABETTOR
Syn: assistant, accomplice, colleague, associate
Ant: opponent, adversary, antagonist, rival

ABATE
Syn: moderate, mitigate, lessen, decrease
Ant: aggravate, intensify, augment, supplement

ARRAIGN
Syn: charge, blame, accuse, complain
Ant: exculpate, pardon, condone, exonerate

APATHY
Syn: unconcern, indifference, insensitivity, aloofness
Ant: concern, care, anxiety, eagerness

ALIEN
Syn: foreigner, outsider, stranger, emigrant
Ant: native, citizen resident, occupant

ALACRITY
Syn: swiftness, briskness, promptness, speed
Ant: laziness, sluggishness, indolence, lethargy

AFFRONT
Syn: provoke, exasperate, indignity, irreverence
Ant: conciliate, appease, mollify, assuage

ADVERSITY

Syn: misfortune, calamity, misery, affliction
Ant: prosperity, fortune, assistance, favour

ANTIQUE

Syn: ancient, old fashioned, primitive, of past
Ant: modern, recent, novelty, vogue

ANTIPATHY

Syn: hostility, aversion disillusion, dislike
Ant: admiration, approval, fascination, devotion

AMPLIFY

Syn: enlarge, extend, dialation, elevate
Ant: curtail, lessen, diminution, contraction

AMASS

Syn: gather, accumulate, store, collect
Ant: disperse, dissipate, spend, scatter

ALLEVIATE

Syn: abate, relieve, mitigate, lessen
Ant: intensify, augment, aggravate, enhance

ADMONISH

Syn: counsel, reprove, warn, chastise
Ant: approve, applaud, praise, flattery

ADJACENT

Syn: adjoining, beside, proximity, closeness
Ant: distant, separate, remoteness, aloofness

ADHERENT

Syn: follower, disciple dependent, supporter
Ant: rival, adversary, opponent, antagonist

ACCOMPLISH

Syn: attain, succeed triumph, exploit
Ant: forsake, deter, disappoint, collapse

ABSOLVE

Syn: pardon, forgive, reprieve, relent
Ant: compel, accuse, charge, bind

ACRIMONY

Syn: harshness, bitterness, inhumanity, enmity
Ant: sweetness, courtesy, humanity, benevolence

ACCUMULATION

Syn: store, amass, preservation, conservation
Ant: scattering, dissipation, separation, division

ACCORD

Syn: agreement, harmony, consonance, unison
Ant: disagreement, denial, controversy, discord

ABOUND

Syn: flourish, swell, teem, plentiful
Ant: deficient, destitute, want, scarce

ADAMANT

Syn: stubborn, obdurate, inflexible, rigid
Ant: flexible, soft, suppleness, tender

ABASH

Syn: discourage, confound, embarass, discompose
Ant: encourage, uphold, embolden, hearten

ADJUNCT

Syn: appendage, complement, addition, joining
Ant: lessening, separation, subtraction, removal

ADROIT

Syn: proficient, expert, skilful, adept
Ant: inept, clumsy, unskilled, awkward

B

BUSTLE

Syn: haste, tumult, stir, flurry
Ant: slowness, sluggishness, quiet, inertness

BRITTLE

Syn: frail, fragile, delicate, breakable
Ant: tough, enduring, unbreakable, strong

BLEMISH

Syn: fault, smirch, stigma, stain
Ant: purity, impeccable, spotless, stainless

BLEAK

Syn: dismal, gloomy, chilly, dreary
Ant: bright, pleasant, balmy, cheerful

BLAME

Syn: reprove, upbraid, censure, reproach
Ant: commend, applaud, laud, praise

BENEVOLENCE

Syn: humanity, generosity, charity, liberality
Ant: malevolence, inhumanity, malignity, unkindness

BARBAROUS
Syn: uncivilized, savage, untamed, brutal
Ant: cultured, humane, refined, gentle

BAFFLE
Syn: confound, elude, frustrate, perplex
Ant: poise, composure, facilitate, co-operate

BEWITCHING
Syn: magical, fascinating, tantalising, spell binding
Ant: repulsive, repugnant, nauseating, disgusting

C

CRITERION
Syn: measurement, test, standard, touchstone
Ant: fancy, probability haphazard, conjecture

COVETOUS
Syn: cupidity, avarice, greed, voracity
Ant: liberality, benevolence, selfless, magnanimous

CORPULENT
Syn: obese, ugly, fat, awkward
Ant: thin, lean, slim, delicate

CONVERT
Syn: change, transform, transmute, proselytise
Ant: persist, maintain, enduring, perpetual

CONVENIENT
Syn: handy, suited, comfortable, advantageous
Ant: unsuitable, tedious, unpractical, fatiguing

CONTRARY
Syn: dissimilar, conflicting, contradictory, opposite
Ant: similar, alike, homogeneous, resembling

CONTRADICT
Syn: impugn, deny, oppose, confront
Ant: approve, confirm, sanction, endorse

CONTEMPT
Syn: scorn, disregard, disdain, despicable
Ant: regard, approval, praise, recommend

CONSTERNATION
Syn: fear, disappointment, dismay, hopelessness
Ant: peace, repose, calm, fearless

CONSPICUOUS

Syn: distinguished, prominent, obvious, visible
Ant: concealed, obscure, hidden, unapparent

CONSOLIDATE

Syn: combine, condense, compact, strong
Ant: separate, sever, weak, scattering

CONSEQUENCE

Syn: effect, outcome, repercussion, result
Ant: origin, start, beginning, incipient

CONSENT

Syn: agree, permit, accede, assent
Ant: object, disagree, dissent, differ

CONSCIOUS

Syn: aware, apprised, knowledge, informed
Ant: unaware, ignorant, unfeeling, faint

CONCEDE

Syn: yield, assent, permit, sanction
Ant: deny, reject, dissent, disallow

COMPRISE

Syn: include, contain, consist, compose
Ant: reject, lack, exclude, except

COMPASSION

Syn: kindness, sympathy, clemency, commiseration
Ant: cruelty, barbarity, persecution, apathy

CONCUR

Syn: approve, agree, consent, endorse
Ant: differ, disagree, dissent, oppose

COMMODIOUS

Syn: convenient, suitable, roomy, comfortable
Ant: inconvenient, unsuitable, uncomfortable, confined

COLLISION

Syn: encounter, clash, conflict, dissenting
Ant: agreement, harmony, compatible, union

CHERISH

Syn: nurture, treasure, foster, encourage
Ant: abandon, forsake, renounce, discard

CHASTISE

Syn: punish, admonish, scold, reprove
Ant: cheer, comfort, encourage, stimulate

CHASTE
Syn: virtuous, pure, honourable, immaculate
Ant: defiled, licentious, sullied, lustful

CESSATION
Syn: intermission, pause, discontinuity hindrance
Ant: continuity, perpetuation, unceasing, prolongation

CATASTROPHE
Syn: disaster, calamity, misfortune, mishap
Ant: prosperity, blessing, restoration, resurgence

CARICATURE
Syn: exaggeration, imitation, ridicule, parody
Ant: exactness, precision, reality, truth

CARESS
Syn: fondle, embrace, hug, snuggle
Ant: repulse, spurn, displease, repel

CAPTIVITY
Syn: imprisonment, confinement, apprehend, restrain
Ant: freedom, liberty, liberation, release

CAPTIVATE
Syn: charm, fascinate, enchant, lure
Ant: disillusion, offend, scorn, despise

CAPTIOUS
Syn: irritate, fretful, critical, carping
Ant: appreciative, considerate, laudatory, thoughtful

CAPABLE
Syn: competent, suitable, qualified, able
Ant: incompetent, inefficient, imbecile, inept

CALUMNY
Syn: defamation, aspersion, accusation, libel
Ant: commendation, praise, vindication, goodwill

CALLOUS
Syn: obdurate, unfeeling, heartless, indifferent
Ant: compassionate, tender, kind, sympathetic

CALCULATE
Syn: enumerate, estimate, evaluate, consider
Ant: miscalculate, blunder, predetermine, misconceive

CALAMITY
Syn: adversity, misfortune, misery, mishap
Ant: happiness, benefit, prosperity, fortune

CAVITY
Syn: depth, depression, hole, aperture
Ant: elevation, projection, mound, height

CEASE
Syn: terminate, pause, desist, discontinue
Ant: commence, continue, initiate, originate

CIRCUMLOCUTION
Syn: redundancy, verbosity, tediousness, verbiage
Ant: terseness, compression, directness, brevity

COMMOTION
Syn: turmoil, disturbance, agitation, excitement
Ant: tranquility, stillness, quietness, calm

D

DISASTER
Syn: misfortune, calamity, mishap, catastrophe
Ant: prosperity, boon, happiness, auspicious

DESPICABLE
Syn: contemptible, worthless, shameless, base
Ant: worthy, decent, honourable, respectable

DISDAIN
Syn: detest, despise, loathe, scorn
Ant: approve, praise, love, laud

DERIDE
Syn: mock, taunt, ridicule, jeer
Ant: inspire, encourage, stimulate, comfort

DEPRIVE
Syn: despoil, divest, dispossess, disinherit
Ant: restore, renew, invest, endow

DEPLORE
Syn: lament, bemoan, complain, regret
Ant: rejoice, cheer, applaud, celebrate

DENOUNCE
Syn: indict, condemn, censure, reprimand
Ant: praise, commend, vindicate, laud

DEMOLISH
Syn: ruin, devastate, dismantle, raze
Ant: repair, construct, create, erect

DELUSION
Syn: deception, hallucination, illusion, fallacy
Ant: reality, certainty, veracity, fact

DELICIOUS
Syn: palatable, tasteful, appetising, dainty
Ant: distasteful, unsavoury, tolerable, inedible

DELIBERATE
Syn: ponder, intentional, meditate, consider
Ant: rash, sudden, indifferent, random

DEGRADATION
Syn: disgrace, dishonour, humiliation, debase
Ant: exaltation, praise, triumphant, honour

DEFRAY
Syn: meet, bear, spend, pay
Ant: declaim, decline, refuse, abjure

DEFILE
Syn: contaminate, pollute, profane, desecrate
Ant: purify, sanctity, cleanse, disinfect

DEFICIENT
Syn: scanty, inadequate, lacking, wanting
Ant: adequate, ample, sufficient, abundant

DEFER
Syn: prolong, suspend, postpone, delay
Ant: accelerate, expedite, stimulate, hasten

DEFAULT
Syn: failure, omission, negligence, lapse
Ant: perfection, vigilance, attentive, observance

DEDICATE
Syn: devote, consecrate, loyal, surrender
Ant: refuse, negate, prohibit, reject

DECIPHER
Syn: interpret, reveal, decode, transcribe
Ant: misinterpret, distort, confuse, pervert

DECEIT
Syn: deception, artifice, treachery, duplicity
Ant: veracity, sincerity, truth, honesty

DECAY
Syn: collapse, decomposition, deteriorate, putrefication
Ant: flourish, progress, growth, development

DAUNT
Syn: discourage, frighten, agitate, intimidate
Ant: encourage, animate, embolden, inspire

DAINTY
Syn: elegant, delicate, refined, exquisite
Ant: clumsy, coarse, unpleasant, insipid

E

EXULT
Syn: brag, rejoice, applaud, triumph
Ant: deplore, lament, bemoan, grieve

EXPLICIT
Syn: definite, intelligible, obvious, apparent
Ant: hidden, vague, doubtful, implicit

EXEMPT
Syn: release, excuse, exclude, absolve
Ant: confine, hold, retard, enforce

EXALT
Syn: extol, dignify, glorify, elevate
Ant: dishonour, disgrace, degrade, denounce

EVIDENT
Syn: obvious, apparent, distinct, conspicuous
Ant: obscure, concealed, hidden, invisible

EVADE
Syn: avoid, elude, dodge, shun
Ant: acknowledge, confront, verify, confirm

ETERNAL
Syn: perpetual, endless, imperishable, immortal
Ant: temporary, momentary, transient, fleeting

ESTEEM
Syn: respect, regards, honour, reverence
Ant: ridicule, spurn, despise, humilitate

ERADICATE
Syn: destroy, exterminate, abolish, remove
Ant: secure, plant, restore, revive

EQUIVOCAL
Syn: uncertain, hazy, ambiguous, vague
Ant: obvious, lucid, clear, plain

EPITOME
Syn: precise, example, miniature, summary
Ant: increment, expansion, lengthen, enlargement

ENORMOUS
Syn: colossal, mammoth, immense, spacious
Ant: insignificant, diminutive, trivial, negligible

ENLIGHTEN
Syn: elucidate, educate, illumine, inculcate
Ant: ignorance, distortion, delude, obscure

ENJOIN
Syn: direct, counsel, exhort, command
Ant: prohibit, forbid, revolt, dissuade

ENDURANCE
Syn: submission, forbearance, tolerance, patience
Ant: break down, despair, volatile, agitating

ENDOWMENT
Syn: grant, benefit, bequest, gift
Ant: draw back, damage, loss, disinherit

ENDEAVOUR
Syn: undertake, aspire, venture, struggle
Ant: cease, quit, shun, idle

ENCUMBRANCE
Syn: hindrance, obstacle, burden, impediment
Ant: incentive, stimulant, patronize, vantage

ENCROACH
Syn: infringe, intrude, tresspass, violate
Ant: avoid, evade, shun, abide

EMBRACE
Syn: cling, hug, adopt, caress
Ant: reject, neglect, shun, slight

EMBEZZLE
Syn: forge, swindle, defraud, peculate
Ant: redeem, restitute, reimburse, compensate

ELUCIDATE
Syn: enlighten, clarify expound, illustrate
Ant: equivocate, confuse distort, confound

ELOQUENCE
Syn: expression, fluency, peroration, oration
Ant: halting, stammering, indistinct, inarticulate

ELIMINATE
Syn: expel, oust exclude, remove
Ant: restore, accept, retain, include

ELEVATE
Syn: dignify, heighten, promote, raise
Ant: deprecate, denounce, lower, decline

ELEGANT
Syn: graceful, distinguished, refined, polished
Ant: obnoxious, unrefined, ridiculous, coarse

ELATION
Syn: joy, exaltation, delight, enthusiasm
Ant: gloom, despair, depression, melancholy

EFFACE
Syn: destroy, obliterate, annihilate, abolish
Ant: retain, maintain, regenerate, resurrect

ECSTASY
Syn: delight, exultation, overjoy, rapture
Ant: despair, calamity, doldrums, depression

ECCENTRIC
Syn: strange, abnormal, cranky, odd
Ant: natural, conventional, uniform, methodical

EARNEST
Syn: ardent, sincere, resolute, determined
Ant: unheeding, frivolous, negligent, careless

EVASION
Syn: prevaricate, avoid, neglect, pretext
Ant: response, defence, compliance, action

F

FABRICATE
Syn: construct, produce, manipulate, build
Ant: destroy, dismantle, wreck, demolish

FRUGALITY
Syn: economical, providence, thrift, parsimony
Ant: lavishness, extravagance, prodigality, improvidence

FRIVOLOUS
Syn: petty, worthless, capricious, volatile
Ant: solemn, significant, essential, pertinent

FRANTIC
Syn: violent, agitated, frenzied, wild
Ant: subdued, gentle, lucid, coherent

FRANCHISE
Syn: suffrage, right, privilege, patronise
Ant: bondage, oppression, serfdom, irresolute

FRAGMENTS
Syn: scraps, residue, segment, section
Ant: total, entire, gross, aggregate

FRAGILE
Syn: weak, infirm, brittle, frail
Ant: enduring, tough, robust, tenacious

FORSAKE
Syn: desert, renounce, relinquish, disown
Ant: hold, maintain, retain, claim

FORMIDABLE
Syn: dangerous, invincible, redoubtable, dreadful
Ant: harmless, insignificant, weak, feeble

FORERUNNER
Syn: precursor, predecessor, ancestor, pioneer
Ant: descendant, follower, heir, successor

FOE
Syn: opponent, antagonist, adversary, contender
Ant: comrade, helper, friend, fellow

FLUENT
Syn: fast, smooth, voluble, glib
Ant: hesitant, slow, sluggish, halting

FLUCTUATE
Syn: deflect, vacillate, vary, deviate
Ant: stable, resolute, constant, inalterable

FLOURISH
Syn: Prosper, triumph, thrive, blossom
Ant: decay, collapse, wither, deteriorate

FLIMSY
Syn: trifling, transparent, brittle, unsubstantial
Ant: firm, tenacious, durable, retentive

FLEETING
Syn: transient, temporary, ephemeral, transitory
Ant: enduring, eternal, perpetual, unceasing

FIDELITY
Syn: loyalty, trustworthiness, obedience, devotion
Ant: treachery, unfaithfulness, chicanery, defiance

FICKLE
Syn: wavering, unreliable, unsteady, volatile
Ant: resolute, determined, inalterable, invariable

FEUD
Syn: strife, quarrel, row, contention
Ant: fraternity, harmony, reconciliation, recompose

FEROCIOUS
Syn: untamed, barbarous, fierce, dangerous
Ant: gentle, innocent, benevolent, symapthetic

FEEBLE
Syn: weak, frail, impotent, defenceless
Ant: strong, robust, vigorous, resolute

FATIGUE
Syn: weariness, exhaustion, exertion, tiredness
Ant: vigour, liveliness, vivacity, briskness

FANTASY
Syn: imagination, vision, image, visualization
Ant: reality, substantiality, actuality, existence

FANTASTIC
Syn: fanciful, uncommon, imaginary, marvellous
Ant: ordinary, normal, customary, common

FANATICAL
Syn: narrow minded, stubborn, orthodox, biased
Ant: liberal, tolerant, unprejudiced, generous

FALTER
Syn: fluctuate, demur, dither, waver
Ant: persist, endure, stable, unerring

FALLACY
Syn: delusion, mistake, deception, illusion
Ant: veracity, truth, honesty, certainty

FACSIMILE
Syn: miniature, reproduction, copy, replica
Ant: distinction, dissimilarity, novelty, originality

FABULOUS
Syn: legendry, amazing, remarkable, marvellous
Ant: historical, common, medicore, substantial

FACILE
Syn: dexterous, quick, skilful, effortless
Ant: clumsy, slow, laborious, arduous

G

GUILE
Syn: cunning, deceit, duplicity, chicanery
Ant: honesty, frankness, sincerity, integrity

GRUDGE
Syn: hatred, aversion, unwilling, objection
Ant: benevolence, affection, goodwill, kindness

GRISLY
Syn: disgusting, atrocious, monstrous, loathsome
Ant: pleasing, attractive, beautiful, alluring

GRACIOUS
Syn: courteous, beneficent, magnificent, dignified
Ant: rude, unforgiving, discourteous, uncourtly

GORGEOUS
Syn: magnificient, dazzling, brilliant, grand
Ant: dull, unpretentious, modest, plain

GLUT
Syn: stuff, satiate, overflow, cram
Ant: reduce, abstain, moderate, restrain

GLOOM
Syn: obscurity, darkness, dejection, disillusion
Ant: delight, mirth, joviality, bright

GIGANTIC
Syn: huge, enormous, immense, monstrous
Ant: small, diminutive, miniature, slight

GENUINE
Syn: real, authentic, creative, original
Ant: deceptive, spurious, imitative, derivative

GENIAL
Syn: cheerful, pleasant, joyful, affable
Ant: sullen, dismal, morose, melancholy

GENEROUS
Syn: liberal, unselfish, benevolent, hospitable
Ant: miserly, stingy, covetous, greedy

GARRULOUS
Syn: loquacious, talkative, communicative, informative
Ant: reserved, quiet, taciturn, reticent

GALLANT
Syn: heroic, intrepid, valorous, chivalrous
Ant: coward, timid, craven, base

GAUDY
Syn: garish, brilliant, glittering, tawdry
Ant: faded, dull, sobre, solemn

H

HUSTLE
Syn: hurry, haste, bustle, activity
Ant: lull, quiet, idle, motionless

HYPOCRISY
Syn: deception, affectation, trickery, illusion
Ant: sincerity, integrity, honesty, ingenuousness

HIDEOUS
Syn: frightful, shocking, abominable, monstrous
Ant: attractive, alluring, splendid, appealing

HERETIC
Syn: nonconformist, secularist, dissident, offender
Ant: conformable, adaptable, religious, believer

HAZARD
Syn: presumption, danger, peril, risk, presume
Ant: conviction, security, assurance, certainty

HAUGHTY
Syn: arrogant, pompous, obstinate, imperious
Ant: humble, submissive, modest, inoffensive

HARASS
Syn: irritable, molest, suppress, tyranny
Ant: assist, comfort, tolerant, connive

HAPLESS
Syn: unfortunate, ill-fated, hostile, doomed
Ant: fortunate, lucky, favoured, satisfied

HAPHAZARD
Syn: random, sudden, unsorted, reckless
Ant: deliberate, considered, thoughtful, discerning

HAMPER
Syn: retard, prevent, hinder, obstruct
Ant: promote, facilitate, foster, assist

HAGGARD
Syn: exhausted, lean, emaciated, gaunt
Ant: exuberant, active, lively, robust

HOMELY
Syn: plain, coarse, unadorned, simple
Ant: sauve, polished, dignified, refined

HAIL
Syn: greet, welcome, acclaim, honour
Ant: disregard, belittle, avoid, despise

HEINOUS
Syn: outrageous, vile, awful, wicked
Ant: righteous, pleasing, exquisite, appealing

I

IRREPRESSIBLE
Syn: irresistible, unconfined, unhindered, unshackled
Ant: composed, hesitant, submissive, grave

INVINCIBLE
Syn: unconquerable, impregnable, unsubdued, unbeatable
Ant: effeminate, languid, crippled, fragile

INTIMIDATE
Syn: frighten, dictate, hopeless, irresolute
Ant: console, encourage, appease, hearten

INTREPID
Syn: brave, courageous, valorous, chivalrous
Ant: scared, frightened, timid, cowardly

INTRICATE
Syn: tangled, complicated, formidable, arduous
Ant: regulated, orderly, manageable, ductile

INTRIGUE
Syn: scheme, conspiracy, manipulation counterplot
Ant: candour, sincerity, bluntness, honesty

INTRINSIC
Syn: genuine, fundamental, inherent, congenital
Ant: extraneous, incidental, extrinsic, derived

INVECTIVE
Syn: accusation, censure, malediction denunciation
Ant: approval, acclamation, admiration, approbation

INSTIL
Syn: Inculcate, inject, infuse, implant
Ant: eradicate, extract, eliminate, expel

INSOLVENT
Syn: indigent, destitute, bankrupt, defaulter
Ant: wealthy, solvent, affluent, substantial

INSIPID
Syn: tasteless, vapid, savourless, unflavoured
Ant: delicious, luscious, pungent, piquant

INSINUATE
Syn: communicate, allude, hint, suggest
Ant: conceal, camouflage, suppress, mask

INQUISITIVE
Syn: inquiring, curious, searching, studious
Ant: distracted, negligent, indifferent, impassive

INNOCUOUS
Syn: salutary, wholesome, innocent, harmless
Ant: deleterious, baneful, insanitary, injurious

INGENUOUS
Syn: undisguised, naive, candid, guileless
Ant: wily, crafty, perfidious, treacherous

INFRINGE
Syn: violate, encroach, transgress, tresspass
Ant: comply, concur, conform, observe

INEVITABLE
Syn: unavoidable, ascertained, imminent, substantial
Ant: unlikely, doubtful, indefinite, uncertain

INGENIOUS
Syn: deft, proficient, dexterous, adroit
Ant: unskilled, incompetent, immature, unqualified

INDULGE
Syn: gratify, pamper, comfort, satisfy
Ant: annoy, trouble, torment, displease

INDOLENT
Syn: lazy, listless, languid, sluggish
Ant: energetic, vivacious, prompt, agile

INDISPENSABLE
Syn: essential, expedient, requisite, unavoidable
Ant: superfluous, redundant, needless, tranquility

INDIGNATION
Syn: resentment, ire, wrath, rage
Ant: modesty, tranquility, forbearance, equanimity

INDIGENCE
Syn: privation, destitution, insolvency, penury
Ant: affluence, abundance, opulence, luxury

INCONGRUOUS
Syn: inappropriate, absurd, ridiculous, awkward
Ant: compatible, harmonious, homogeneous, consistent

INCOMPETENT
Syn: inefficient, unskilled, immature, unqualified
Ant: dexterous, skilled, ingenious, competent

INCLINATION
Syn: disposition, affection, proneness, propensity
Ant: neutrality, indifference, apathy, unresponsive

INCITE
Syn: instigate, provoke, motivate, arouse
Ant: deter, discourage, restrain, dissuade

INCENTIVE
Syn: motivation, allurement, inducement, spur
Ant: dissuasion, reluctance, deterrent, discouragement

IMPUTE
Syn: attribute, ascribe, charge, indict
Ant: exculpate, support, vindicate, excuse

IMPUDENCE
Syn: sauciness, impertinence, insolence, arrogance
Ant: submissiveness, modesty, humility, meekness

IMPIOUS
Syn: irreligious, unholy, irreverent, hypocritical
Ant: pious, devout, spiritual, venerate

IMPETUOUS
Syn: violent, impulsive, imprudence, indiscretion
Ant: considerate, composed, discretion, prudence

IMPEDIMENT
Syn: hurdle, obstruction, hindrance, retardation
Ant: assistance, concurrence, deliverance, aid

IMPARTIAL
Syn: just, unbiased, equitable, evenhanded
Ant: prejudiced, biased, unjust, inequitable

IMPART

Syn: divulge, bestow, inform, convey

Ant: withhold, conceal, suppress, deny

IMPAIR

Syn: diminish, deteriorate, decompose, worsen

Ant: restore, revive, resurrect, repair

IMMUNITY

Syn: prerogative, privilege, exemption, non-liability

Ant: blame, censure, prescription, interdiction

IMMINENT

Syn: impending, brewing, overhanging, approaching

Ant: distant, receding, retreating, withdrawing

IMMERSE

Syn: submerge, involve, descend, drown

Ant: emerge, uncover, restore, recover

IMMENSE

Syn: huge, enormous, gigantic, colossal

Ant: puny, insignificant, paltry, trifling

IMMACULATE

Syn: unsullied, spotless, untarnished, untainted

Ant: defiled, tarnished, obscene, profane

IMBECILE

Syn: weak, senile, feeble, unsound

Ant: sane, sagacious, astute, wise

IMAGINARY

Syn: illusory, visionary, insubstantial, subjective

Ant: factual, tangible, genuine, evident

IGNORANCE

Syn: illiteracy, darkness, unawareness, unconsciousness

Ant: knowledge, enlightenment, apprehension, recognition

IGNOMINIOUS

Syn: disgraceful, shameful, dishonourable, scandulous

Ant: dignified, distinguished, creditable, stately

J

JUVENILE
Syn: young, tender, youthful, adolescent
Ant: dotage, antiquated, senile, old

JUSTIFY
Syn: defend, exculpate, warrant, vindicate
Ant: impute, arraigne, accuse, incriminate

JUST
Syn: honest, impartial, righteous, upright
Ant: unequal, unfair, discriminatory, unseasonable

JUDICIOUS
Syn: thoughtful, prudent, discerning, discriminating
Ant: irrational, foolish, misconception, fatuous

JUBILANT
Syn: rejoicing, triumphant, gay, cheerful
Ant: melancholy, depressing, gloomy, despondent

JOVIAL
Syn: frolicsome, cheerful, merry, exultant
Ant: solemn, morose, malcontent, sad

JADED
Syn: tired, exhausted, fatigued, languish
Ant: renewal, recreation, restorative, refreshed

JEJUNE
Syn: dull, boring, uninteresting, monotonous
Ant: interesting, exciting, piquant, thrilling

K

KINDRED
Syn: relation, species, relative, affinity
Ant: unrelated, dissimilar, hetrogeneous, disparate

KEEN
Syn: sharp, poignant, eager, acute
Ant: vapid, insipid, blunt, undesiring

KNAVE
Syn: dishonest, scoundrel, vagabond, rogue
Ant: paragon, innocent, benefactor, idealist

KNELL
Syn: death knell, last blow, demolish, suppress
Ant: reconstruction, rediscovery, procreation, resurrection

KNOTTY
Syn: complicated, difficult, arduous, onerous
Ant: simple, manageable, tractable, flexible

L

LUXURIANT
Syn: profuse, abundant, dense, plentiful
Ant: scanty, meagre, inadequate, deficient

LUSCIOUS
Syn: palatable, delicious, delectable, delightful
Ant: unsavoury, tart, sharp, sour

LURE
Syn: attract, entice, tempt, induce
Ant: repel, dissuade, confute, threaten

LUNACY
Syn: delusion, insanity, madness, imbecility
Ant: normalcy, sanity, sagacity, shrewdness

LUDICROUS
Syn: absurd, bizarre, preposterous, grotesque
Ant: balanced, congruous, consistent, solemn

LUCID
Syn: sound, rational, coherent, sane
Ant: obscure, hidden, incomprehensible, unintelligible

LISTLESS
Syn: lazy, inattentive spiritless, incurious
Ant: brisk, attentive, diligent, agile

LINGER
Syn: loiter, prolong, hesitate, delay
Ant: hasten, quicken, dart, hurry

LIBERATE
Syn: emancipate, rescue, unshackle, absolve
Ant: suppress, menacle, obstruct, detain

LIBERAL
Syn: magnanimous, hospitality, generous, benevolence
Ant: stingy, niggardly, malevolent, malicious

LIABLE
Syn: accountable, bound, responsible, likely
Ant: unaccountable, apt to, irresponsible, exempt

LENIENT
Syn: compassionate, merciful, moderate, tolerant
Ant: cruel, severe, violent, vehement

LAX
Syn: slack, careless, negligence, indifferent
Ant: firm, reliable, meticulous, scruplous

LAVISH
Syn: abundant, excessive, profuse, extravagant
Ant: scarce, deficient, frugal, conserve

LASSITUDE
Syn: languor, tiredness, weariness, lethargy
Ant: vivacity, agility, animate, lively

LAUDABLE
Syn: deserving, honourable, praiseworthy, acceptable
Ant: vicious, blame worthy, venomous, condemnable

LANGUID
Syn: pensive, lethargic, exhausted, fatigued
Ant: lively, animated, refreshed, restored

LAMENT
Syn: grieve, deplore, regret, bemoan
Ant: amuse, entertain, enliven, solace

LAG
Syn: retard, falter, linger, dawdle
Ant: quicken, accelerate, expedite, spurt

LACONIC
Syn: brief, condensed, concise, compact
Ant: dilated, profused, diffuse, wordy

M

MUTUAL
Syn: joint, identical, correlative, reciprocal
Ant: separate, distinct, divergent, individual

MUTINOUS
Syn: recalcitrant, insurgent, unruly, revolutionary
Ant: submissive, faithful, compliant, loyal

MURKY
Syn: dusky, dreary, dismal, bleak
Ant: bright, shining, luminous, radiant

MUNIFICENT
Syn: liberal, hospitable, benevolent, kind
Ant: frugal, penurious, moderate, economical

MULTITUDE
Syn: crowd, throng, mass, swarm
Ant: minority, handful, paucity, scarcity

MOROSE
Syn: surly, sulky, sullen, depressed
Ant: sprightly, animated, buoyant, blithe

MONOTONOUS
Syn: irksome, tedious, humdrum, insipid
Ant: varied, pleasant, appealing, captivating

MOMENTOUS
Syn: notable, eventful, consequential, stirring
Ant: trivial, insignificant, commonplace, immaterial

MOLLIFY
Syn: appease, assuage, relieve, mitigate
Ant: irritate, infuriate, aggravate, exasperate

MOLEST
Syn: pester, harass, vex, misbehave
Ant: console, soothe, comfort, cheer

MODEST
Syn: reserved, unpretentious, humble, courteous
Ant: audacious, arrogant, pompous, vain

MODERATE
Syn: limited, reasonable, lenient, temperate
Ant: excessive, extravagant, violent, vehement

MITIGATE
Syn: alleviate, relieve, lessen, assuage
Ant: augment, enhance, intensify, aggravate

MIRACULOUS
Syn: marvellous, extraordinary, astounding, amazing
Ant: ordinary, trivial, familiar, natural

MINUTE
Syn: diminutive, miniature, small, microscopic
Ant: large, colossal, stupendous, immense

METTLE
Syn: courage, determination, stamina, spirit
Ant: timidity, fear, cowardice, diffident

MERITORIOUS
Syn: commendable, admirable, deserving, praiseworthy
Ant: unworthy, infamous, disreputable, culpable

MERCURIAL
Syn: variable, changeable, unstable, erratic
Ant: stable, constant, steady, steadfast

MENDACITY
Syn: falsehood, deception, perjury, perfidious
Ant: probity, honesty, veracity, candour

MELODIOUS
Syn: dulcet, musical, harmonious, sweet
Ant: grating, dissonant, discordant, rancour

N

NUMEROUS
Syn: profuse, various, multitude, plenteous
Ant: scarce, deficient, paucity, sparse

NULLIFY
Syn: cancel, annul, obliterate, invalidate
Ant: confirm, uphold, empower, endorse

NOXIOUS
Syn: baneful, injurious, pernicious, disastrous
Ant: healing, profitable, innocuous, salubrious

NOVICE
Syn: tyro, beginner, debutant, apprentice
Ant: veteran, ingenious, experienced, mentor

NOURISH
Syn: sustain, nurture, tend, foster
Ant: exhaust, starve, weaken, enervate

NONCHALANT
Syn: indifferent, negligent, uncaring, heedless
Ant: attentive, considerate, vigilant, scrupulous

NIMBLE
Syn: prompt, brisk, lively, agile
Ant: sluggish, languid, weary, tardy

NIGGARDLY
Syn: miserly, covetous, inadequacy, deficiency
Ant: generous, profuse, redundant, excessive

NEGLIGENT
Syn: inattentive, careless, heedless, perfunctory
Ant: vigilant, careful, considerate, alert

NEFARIOUS
Syn: detestable, atrocious, heinous, unlawful
Ant: commendable, worthy, upright, inoffensive

NAUSEOUS
Syn: unsavoury, loathsome, abominable, repellent
Ant: commendable, worthy, benevolent, inoffensive

NATIVE
Syn: original, vernacular, indigenous, aboriginal
Ant: alien, extraneous, exotic, foreign

NASTY
Syn: offensive, defiled, malevolent, malignant
Ant: pleasing, gratifying, benevolent, attractive

NOMINAL
Syn: trifling, insubstantial, bare, negligible
Ant: substantial, considerable, excessive, exorbitant

O

OVERWROUGHT
Syn: excited, agitated, fervent, intense
Ant: quiet, tranquil, composed, cool

OVERWHELM
Syn: triumph, subjugate, overpower, vanquish
Ant: flounder, falter, restore, impotent

OVERSIGHT
Syn: omission, error, fault, slip
Ant: precision, observance, circumspection, caution

OVERBEARING
Syn: oppressive, domineering, intimidating, despotic
Ant: submissive, humble, lenient, forbearing

OUTRAGE
Syn: offence, maltreatment, assault, irreverent
Ant: praise, favour, esteem, reverence

OUTBREAK
Syn: eruption, insurrection, explosion, outburst
Ant: compliance, subjection, passivity, harmony

OSTENTATION
Syn: display, pretension, vaunt, pomposity
Ant: modesty, constraint, diffidence, economy

OSTENSIBLE
Syn: apparent, evident, obvious, overt
Ant: concealed, covert, obscure, vague

ORNAMENTAL
Syn: decorative, adorned, glamorous, picturesque
Ant: nseemly, plain, blemished, disfigured

ORDAIN
Syn: order, impose, prescribe, proclaim
Ant: revoke, abolish, violate, abrogate

ORACULAR
Syn: cryptic, vague, enigmatic, profound
Ant: lucid, distinct, intelligible, unambiguous

OPAQUE
Syn: filmy, dim, obscure, shady
Ant: transparent, bright, translucent, revealing

ONEROUS
Syn: arduous, troublesome, inconvenient, formidable
Ant: facile, agreeable, uncomlicated, flexible

OMINOUS
Syn: threatening, inauspicious, forebode, menacing
Ant: consoling, auspicious, propitious, comforting

OFFSPRING
Syn: descendants, siblings, posterity, progeny
Ant: ancestors, forefathers, pedigree, progenitors

OFFENSIVE
Syn: abhorrent, arrogant, insolent, impudent
Ant: docile, compliant, courteous, captivating

ODIOUS
Syn: abhorrent, obnoxious, prejudice, malevolent
Ant: engaging, fascinating, endearing, captivating

OCCULT
Syn: latent, ambiguous, esoteric, elusive
Ant: intelligible, transparent, fathomable, scrutable

OBVIOUS
Syn: evident, apparent, distinct, conspicuous
Ant: obscure, ambiguous, indiscernible, confusing

OBSTRUCT
Syn: impede, prevent, restrain, retard
Ant: hasten, encourage, expedite, promote

OBSTINATE
Syn: stubborn, resolute, unyielding, obdurate
Ant: submissive, obedient, amenable, pliable

OBSOLETE
Syn: outworn, archaic, antiquated, obsolescent
Ant: modern, novel, vogue, contemporary

OBSEQUIOUS
Syn: slavish, servile, sycophantic, subservient
Ant: insolent, arrogant, defiant, assertive

OBNOXIOUS
Syn: pernicious, detestable, abhorrent, offensive
Ant: attractive, gratifying, beneficial, desirable

OBJECTIVE
Syn: goal, purpose, intention, resolve
Ant: origin, inception, deviating, subjective

P

PUNGENT
Syn: acute, penetrating, sharp, strong
Ant: mild, soothing, pleasant, palatable

PUERILE
Syn: shallow, immature, childish, trivial
Ant: wise, farsighted, profound, sensible

PRUDENT
Syn: cautious, discreet, judicious, circumspect
Ant: impetuous, unwise, reckless, rash

PROVOKE
Syn: inflame, incite, agitate, aggravate
Ant: pacify, comfort, dissuade, placate

PROTRACT
Syn: prolong, delay, stretch, procrastinate
Ant: abbreviate, curtail, abridge, compress

PROSCRIBE
Syn: prohibit, exclude, ban, forbid
Ant: solicit, include, permit, sanction

PROPITIATE
Syn: appease, soothe, pacify, placate
Ant: aggravate, annoy, scorn, displease

PROMULGATE
Syn: declare, proclaim, notify, announce
Ant: reserve, suppress, disguise, withhold

PROMISCUOUS
Syn: confused, indiscriminate, casual, random
Ant: regular, discriminate, orderly, select

PROFUSE
Syn: lavish, abundant, generous, plentiful
Ant: scarce, scanty, meagre, paucity

PROFLIGATE
Syn: dissolute, degenerate, immoral, flagitious
Ant: virtuous, upright, moral, ethical

PRODIGY
Syn: miracle, marvel, wonder, extraordinary
Ant: normal, average, medicore, common

PRODIGIOUS
Syn: vast, enormous, immense, huge
Ant: unimpressive, diminutive, slight, puny

PRESUMPTUOUS
Syn: presuming, arrogant, affected, insolent
Ant: unassuming, modest, bashful, unobtrusive

PREMATURE
Syn: precious, untimely, mistimed, inopportune
Ant: belated, opportune, timely, mellow

PREDICAMENT
Syn: plight, dilemma, fix, quandary
Ant: resolution, confidence, firmness, certainty

PRECARIOUS
Syn: doubtful, insecure, unreliable, uncertain
Ant: assured, undeniable, reliable, substantial

POMPOUS
Syn: haughty, arrogant, flamboyant, florid
Ant: unpretentious, humble, coy, modest

POISE

Syn: equanimity, composure, equilibrium, patience
Ant: excitement, vehemence, frenzy, outburst

PLIGHT

Syn: predicament, perplexity, adversity, difficulty
Ant: facility, confidence, certainty, assurance

PLIANT

Syn: docile, amenable, pliable, submissive
Ant: defiant, adamant, rigid, obdurate

PIQUE

Syn: offence, resentment, indignation, displeasure
Ant: joy, rejoice, gratification, pleasure

PIQUANT

Syn: interesting, charming, tasteful, exciting
Ant: insipid, nauseating, unpalatable, unsavoury

PILLAGE

Syn: ransack, ravage, despoil, plunder
Ant: recompense, recover, redeem, restoration

PERVERSE

Syn: petulant, obstinate, stubborn, unyielding
Ant: complacent, docile, willing, consenting

PERTNESS

Syn: flippancy, impudence, impertinence, petulance
Ant: modesty, diffidence, subservient, obedient

PERSPICUITY

Syn: transparency, discernment, lucidity, intelligiblity
Ant: perplexity, intricacy, obscurity, vagueness

PERSEVERANCE

Syn: persistence, endurance, tenacity, steadfastness
Ant: indolence, lethargy, stupor, sloth

PERSECUTE

Syn: torment, harass, intimidate, domineer
Ant: recompense, redress, comfort, console

PERPLEX

Syn: puzzle, confound, frustrate, baffle
Ant: convince, ascertain, confident, assure

PERPETUAL
Syn: uninterrupted, lasting, perennial, incessant
Ant: passing, transient, ephemeral, fleeting

PERIL
Syn: hazard, danger, jeopardy, compulsory
Ant: caution, security, safety, assurance

PEREMPTORY
Syn: overbearing, absolute, arbitrary, compulsory
Ant: tolerant, indecisive, optional, indulgent

PENETRATE
Syn: pierce, perforate, insert, infiltrate
Ant: discharge, leak, seep, emerge

PEEVISH
Syn: perverse, sullen, irritable, fretful
Ant: suave, amiable, polite, pleasant

PEERLESS
Syn: matchless, unrivalled, unique, surpassing
Ant: mediocre, commonplace, inferior, imperfect

PARAMOUNT
Syn: foremost, eminent, supreme, unrivalled
Ant: trivial, inferior, subsidiary, ordinary

PANIC
Syn: apprehension, dismay, alarm, dread
Ant: calm, confidence, security, tranquility

PAMPER
Syn: spoil, indulge, flatter, please
Ant: chasten, correct, deny, disparage

PALPABLE
Syn: distinct, prominent, plain, concrete
Ant: concealed, obscure, intangible, covert

PALLIATE
Syn: extenuate, moderate, alleviate, soften
Ant: denounce, condemn, reproach, reprehend

PLACID
Syn: tranquil, calm, compose, unruffled
Ant: turbulent, hostile, agitated, volatile

Q

QUESTIONABLE
Syn: uncertain, disputable, dubious, unverifiable
Ant: positive, authentic, reliable, substantial

QUELL
Syn: subdue, reduce, supress, extinguish
Ant: exacerbate, agitate, foment, instigate

QUAINT
Syn: queer, strange, odd, ridiculous
Ant: familiar, usual, common, normal

QUACK
Syn: impostor, deceiver, dissembler, knave
Ant: upright, unfeigned, trained, genuine

QUIBBLE
Syn: equivocate, prevaricate, evade, dissemble
Ant: unfeign, plain, scrupulous, conscientious

QUASH
Syn: abrogate, annul, cancel, revoke
Ant: uphold, empower, authorise, permit

QUARANTINE
Syn: isolate, separate, seclude, screened
Ant: gregarious, amiable, sociable, companionable

R

RUTHLESS
Syn: remorseless, inhuman, savage, unrelenting
Ant: compassionate, lenient, benevolent, humanitarian

RUSTIC
Syn: pastoral, bucolic, rural, uncivilised
Ant: cultured, refined, urban, urbane

ROUT
Syn: defeat, overthrow, vanquish, subjugate
Ant: succumb, withdraw, retreat, consolidate

RIGHTEOUS
Syn: virtuous, honest, upright, just
Ant: unjust, immortal, unprincipled, unfair

REVERENCE
Syn: respect, esteem, regards, veneration
Ant: disrespect, dishonour, affront, offence

REVEAL
Syn: disclose, expose, unfold, divulge
Ant: hide, conceal, confine, cover

RETRACT
Syn: recant, repudiate, revoke, withdraw
Ant: confirm, assert, declare, affirm

REMOTE
Syn: inaccessible, farther, distant, slight
Ant: adjoining, adjacent, proximate, contiguous

REMORSE
Syn: regret, penitence, deplore, lament
Ant: ruthless, obduracy, pitiless, relentless

RESENTMENT
Syn: displeasure, wrath, ire, bitterness
Ant: content, cheer, pleasure, agreement

RESCIND
Syn: annul, abrogate, revoke, repeal
Ant: delegate, permit, authorize, propose

REPULSIVE
Syn: repellent, forbidding, hideous, detestable
Ant: agreeable, enticing, attractive, alluring

REPUGNANT
Syn: hostile, offensive, disagreeable, distasteful
Ant: agreeable, pleasant, friendly, tasteful

REMONSTRATE
Syn: censure, protest, argue, expostulate
Ant: agree, laud, endorse, commend

REMNANT
Syn: residue, piece, part, remainder
Ant: entire, whole, complete, unbroken

RELINQUISH
Syn: forsake, abandon, surrender, abdicate
Ant: persist, continue, occupy, hold

REDRESS
Syn: relief, restoration, remedy, repair
Ant: retribution, forfeiture, harm, degenerate

REDEEM
Syn: recover, liberate, fulfil, rescue
Ant: lose, barter, neglect, conserve

RAZE
Syn: demolish, destroy, annihilate, dismantle
Ant: restore, construct, repair, build

RAVISH
Syn: captivate, enchant, seize, charm
Ant: disgust, annoy, displease, oppress

RAVAGE
Syn: devastate, destroy, ruin, despoil
Ant: restore, organize, reconstruct, renovate

RATIFY
Syn: consent, approve, endorse, corroborate
Ant: deny, contradict, dissent, oppose

RAPTURE
Syn: bliss, delight, pleasure, ecstasy
Ant: melancholy, distress, sorrow, agonize

RAPID
Syn: swift, fast, speedy, accelerate
Ant: sluggish, lethargic, languid, listless

RANCOUR
Syn: hatred, malice, resentment, bitterness
Ant: love, regards, respect, friendliness

RADIANCE
Syn: glow, brilliance, splendour, gleaming
Ant: dullness, shady, overcast, dusky

S

SYCOPHANT
Syn: parasite, flatterer, cringing, servile
Ant: devoted, loyal, truthful, faithful

SWAY
Syn: influence, control, command, power
Ant: impotence, futility, disability, incapacity

SUPERFLUOUS
Syn: excessive, surplus, redundant, unnecessary
Ant: scanty, inadequate, dearth, scarce

SUPERFICIAL
Syn: partial, shallow, cursory, flimsy
Ant: profound, discerning, substantial, deep

SUBVERT
Syn: overthrow, suppress, demolish, sabotage
Ant: accomplish, sustain, generate, organise

SUBSTANTIAL
Syn: durable, lasting, concrete, tangible
Ant: tenuous, abstract, fragile, immaterial

SUBSEQUENT
Syn: consequent, following, later, afterwards
Ant: preceding, previous, prior, earlier

STUPOR
Syn: lethargy, insensibility, unconsciousness, coma
Ant: consciousness, sensibility, sensitive, feeling

STERN
Syn: harsh, severe, austere, rigorous
Ant: lenient, considerate, benevolent, generous

STAIN
Syn: blemish, tarnish, disgrace, stigma
Ant: honour, purify, virtuous, noble

STABLE
Syn: abiding, lasting, steadfast, constant
Ant: erratic, wavering, unsteady, restless

SQUALID
Syn: dirty, soiled, filthy, odious
Ant: attractive, tidy, polished, spruce

SPURIOUS
Syn: counterfeit, adulterated, fake, frandulent
Ant: genuine, positive, original, sincere

SPORADIC
Syn: intermittent, scattered, isolated, infrequent
Ant: incessant, frequent, constant, regular

SPONTANEOUS
Syn: unforced, instinctive, sudden, unintentional
Ant: intended, devised, premeditated, intentional

SOLICIT
Syn: entreat, implore, approach, accost
Ant: protest, oppose, prohibit, disapprove

SNEER
Syn: mock, scorn, despise, spurn
Ant: flatter, praise, encourage, laud

SLANDER
Syn: defame, malign, detract, despise
Ant: applaud, approve, commend, exalt

SINISTER
Syn: woeful, disastrous evil, ruinous
Ant: auspicious, fortunate propitious, harmless

SHREWD
Syn: running, observant, crafty, artful
Ant: thoughtless, rash, simple, imbecile

SHALLOW
Syn: trivial, slight, superficial, insubstantial
Ant: profound, wise, substantial, deep

SHABBY
Syn: miserable, impoverished, deteriorated, impaired
Ant: prosperous, thriving, restoring, flourishing

SCANTY
Syn: scarce, insufficient paucity, sparseness
Ant: lavish, luxuriant, multitude, several

SCANDAL
Syn: disgrace, disrepute, indignity, defamation
Ant: praise, admiration, flattery, adulation

SAUCY
Syn: impudent, insolent, brazen, impertinent
Ant: modest, humble, esteem, meek

SARCASTIC
Syn: derisive, ironical, sardonic, invective
Ant: courteous, complaisant, gracious, polite

SANGUINE
Syn: hopeful, optimistic, buoyant, confident
Ant: despondent, pessimistic, depressed, despairing

SALUTARY
Syn: wholesome, salubrious, healthful, beneficial
Ant: harmful, deleterious, pernicious, ruinous

T

TYRO
Syn: beginner, learner novice, debutant
Ant: proficient, veteran, adept, connoisseur

TUMULTUOUS
Syn: uproarious, violent, disorderly, riotous
Ant: peaceful, passive, orderly, harmonious

TRIVIAL
Syn: trifling, insignificant, frivolous, worthless
Ant: significant, important, consequential, essential

TRITE
Syn: ordinary, commonplace, stale, hackneyed
Ant: interesting, extraordinary, becoming, proper

TRENCHANT
Syn: assertive, forceful, sharp, spirited
Ant: feeble, ambiguous, shallow, vacillating

TREACHEROUS
Syn: faithless, deceitful, disloyal, unreliable
Ant: faithful, reliable, dependable, trustworthy

TRANSIENT
Syn: temporal, transitory, fleeting, passing
Ant: lasting, enduring, perpetual, immortal

TRANQUIL
Syn: peaceful, composed, calm, placid
Ant: violent, furious, restless, distracting

TORTURE
Syn: torment, agony pang, oppress
Ant: comfort, consolation pleasure, delight

TIMID
Syn: modest, humble, diffident, apprehensive
Ant: bold, intrepid, undaunted, courageous

THRONG
Syn: assembly, gathering, congregation, crowd
Ant: dispersion, scattering, handful, sparsity

TENACIOUS
Syn: resolved, resolute, determined, dogged
Ant: vacillating, timid, wavering, unstable

TEMPERATE
Syn: cool, moderate, reasonable, lenient
Ant: boisterous, vehement, violent, excessive

TEMERITY
Syn: boldness, audacity, imprudence, indiscretion
Ant: discretion, prudence, caution, wisdom

TEDIOUS
Syn: wearisome, irksome, tiring, monotonous
Ant: exhilarating, lively, delightful, diverting

TAINTED
Syn: contaminated, corrupt, vitiated, polluted
Ant: unblemished, wholesome, restorative, pure

TACITURN
Syn: reserved, uncommunicative, silent, reticent
Ant: talkative, loquacious, garrulous, extrovert

TABOO
Syn: prohibit, prevent, forbid, ban
Ant: permit, sanction, consent, license

U

UTTERLY
Syn: completely, entirely, extremely, wholly
Ant: deficient, incomplete, insufficient, partial

USURP
Syn: seize, wrest, encroach, coup
Ant: restore, compensate, grant, reinstate

UNSEEMLY
Syn: undesirable, inappropriate, uncouth awkward
Ant: becoming, acceptable, decorous, admirable

UNGAINLY
Syn: clumsy, unskilled, immature, slovenly
Ant: active, expert, skilful, dexterous

UNCOUTH
Syn: awkward, ungraceful, inelegant, vulgar
Ant: elegant, graceful, distinguished, shapely

UMBRAGE
Syn: resentment, bitterness, dissatisfaction, offence
Ant: sympathy, goodwill, amity, esteem

V

VULGAR
Syn: inelegant, offensive, nasty, ungraceful
Ant: refined, graceful, elegant, civil

VOUCH
Syn: confirm, consent, approve, endorse
Ant: repudiate, prohibit, recant, retract

VOLATILE
Syn: light, changing, transient, temporal
Ant: heavy, ponderous, perpetual, stable

VIGILANT
Syn: cautious, alert, wary, circumspect
Ant: careless, negligent, inattentive, casual

VICIOUS
Syn: corrupt, obnoxious, degraded, demoralized
Ant: noble, virtuous, innocent, underfiled

VIBRATE
Syn: swing, oscillate, fluctuate, undulate
Ant: cease, pause, rest, discontinue

VENOM
Syn: poison, resentment, malevolence, rancour
Ant: antidote, remedy, benevolent, sympathetic

VENERABLE
Syn: esteemed, honoured, respectable, worthy
Ant: unworthy, immature, degrade, degenerate

VANITY
Syn: conceit, pretension, immodesty, pride
Ant: modesty, humility, meek, bashful

VALOUR
Syn: bravery, prowess, heroism, chivalry
Ant: fear, cowardice, unmanliness

VALID
Syn: sound, authentic, genuine, reliable
Ant: fallacious, deceptive, dubious, uncertain

VALIANT
Syn: brave, gallant, courageous, chivalrous
Ant: fearful, afraid, coward, dastardly

VAGRANT
Syn: idle, roaming, wanderer, roving
Ant: steady, settled, stationary, stable

W

WAIVE

Syn: relinquish, remove, abjure, renounce

Ant: impose, clamp, grasp, retain

WARY

Syn: cautious, circumspect, prudent, chary

Ant: heedless, negligent, impulsive, reckless

WICKED

Syn: immoral, dissolute, vicious, nefarious

Ant: virtuous, ethical, innocent, noble

WITHHOLD

Syn: reserve, restrain, hamper, retard

Ant: emancipate, liberate, dispense, release

WANE

Syn: decline, dwindle, decrease, deteriorate

Ant: ameliorate, rise, revive, wax

WAYWARD

Syn: volatile, capricious, unstable, inconstant

Ant: stable, determined, resolute, straight

WILT

Syn: wither, perish, deteriorate, smother

Ant: revive, bloom, refresh, restore

WIELD

Syn: use, exercise, exert, employ

Ant: abstain, avoid, forbear, forgo

WAN

Syn: pale, fade, discolour, feeble

Ant: bright, healthy, colourful, gaudy

WILFUL

Syn: stubborn, obstinate, obdurate, inexorable

Ant: amenable, irresolute, pliable, yielding

Y

YOKE
Syn: connect, harness, hitch, shackle
Ant: liberate, release, detach, disconnect

YIELD
Syn: surrender, abdicate, succumb, consent
Ant: resist, protest, prohibit, forbid

YELL
Syn: shout, shriek, exclaim, gesticulate
Ant: suppress, whisper, muffled, muted

YEARN
Syn: languish, crave, require, pine
Ant: content, unwanted, satisfied, gratified

YAWN
Syn: gape, sleepy, slumber, doze
Ant: close, active, brisk, wakeful

Z

ZIGZAG
Syn: oblique, crooked, winding, wayward
Ant: straight, even, direct, unbent

ZEST
Syn: delight, enthusiasm, various, energetic
Ant: disgust, passive, detriment, languid

ZENITH
Syn: summit, apex, maximum, pinnacle
Ant: nadir, base, bottom, floor

ZEALOT
Syn: fanatic, partisan, bigot, chauvinist
Ant: tolerant, liberal, blasphemy, impious

ZEAL
Syn: eagerness, fervour, enthusiasm, ardour
Ant: apathy, lethargy, indifference, reluctant

(Based on Synonyms)

Directions : *In the following sentences a word or phrase is written in italicised letters. For each italicised part four words/phrases are listed below each sentence. Choose the word nearest in meaning to italicised part.*

Exercise (A)

1. The inspector was a *vigilant* young man.
   (a) smart (b) watchful
   (c) ambitious (d) intelligent
2. Man has to *encounter* many hardships in life.
   (a) solve (b) face
   (c) bear (d) overcome
3. Few teachers have been spared the problem of an *obstreperous* pupil in the class.
   (a) awkward (b) lazy
   (c) unruly (d) sullen
4. Ritu asked Rashmi not to *meddle* in her affairs.
   (a) intercede (b) impose
   (c) cross (d) interfere
5. *Incensed* by his rude behaviour the manager suspended the work.
   (a) enthused (b) enraged
   (c) inflamed (d) excited
6. The Collector has yet not *relinquished* his charge.
   (a) give up (b) abdicate
   (c) leave (d) renounce
7. Don't entertain any *misgivings* about his conduct.
   (a) distrust (b) doubt
   (c) suspicion (d) impression
8. Her views are not in *consonance* with her husband's.
   (a) in disagreement (b) in conflict
   (c) in agreement (d) contradictory
9. The maidservant left the police station *contrite*.
   (a) penitent (b) sore
   (c) angry (d) remorseless
10. Being a sociable bird she was *conspicuous* by her absence in the club last evening.
    (a) important (b) prominent
    (c) ignorant (d) apparent
11. The villagers offered us an excellent *repast*.
    (a) pass time (b) as good meal
    (c) entertainment (d) fate

12. Our Prime Minister is young and *dynamic*.
(a) belligerent (b) explosive
(c) energetic (d) intelligent

13. He soon got fed up with his *sedentary* job.
(a) involving sitting (b) routine
(c) roving (d) drab

14. The treaty was later *ratified*.
(a) charged (b) confirmed
(c) reformed (d) updated

15. The communal politics has done *imponderable* loss to the unity of India.
(a) incalculable (b) invaluable
(c) irreparable (d) invulnerable

16. India has not yet been able to *harness* her domestic resources in full.
(a) complete (b) utilize
(c) produce (d) bridle

17. One must not be *callous* to womenfolk.
(a) kind (b) hard hearted
(c) arrogant (d) proud

18. As a speaker he was an *utter* failure.
(a) total (b) partial
(c) completely (d) relative

19. In *exasperation* she railed at the shopkeeper.
(a) irritation (b) fear
(c) astonishment (d) disappointment

20. No one expects a *facile* solution to the Punjab problem.
(a) satisficatory (b) easy
(c) satisfying (d) difficult

21. *Furtive* glances were exchanged between the lovers at the feast.
(a) unknown (b) secret
(c) unsuspecting (d) clandestine

22. The early monsoon have brought *respite* to the people.
(a) despite (b) inspite of
(c) interval of relief (d) rest

23. One of the *salient* features of your proposal is a stress on self employment.
(a) prominent (b) silent
(c) loud (d) important

24. Factory workers are *restive* as the company has not declared any bonus this year.
(a) restful (b) restless
(c) resting (d) satisfied

25. English conversation means the learning of many *catchy* phrases.
(a) easily remembered (b) easily spoken
(c) easily understood (d) lucid

Exercise (B)

1. The newspapers are *clamouring* against the injustice to the landless labourers.
   (a) protesting (b) noising
   (c) complaining (d) demonstrating
2. Honest officers find it difficult to *attune* themselves to corrupt bureaucracy.
   (a) tune (b) adapt
   (c) harmony (d) accusation
3. The five day week in Government Offices is bound to benefit the *jaded* office goers.
   (a) refreshed (b) routined
   (c) fatigued (d) vigorous
4. The *deployment* of para-military forces in Punjab has helped the provincial government a lot.
   (a) activated (b) employment
   (c) use (d) spreading out
5. Indian cricketers were *brimming* over with confidence after their English tour.
   (a) overflow (b) blow over
   (c) flow over (d) overspill
6. The resignation of the Chief Minister is *intriguing*.
   (a) curious (b) interesting
   (c) secret (d) diplomatic
7. There seems to be *perpetual* war going on between the rich and the poor.
   (a) never ending (b) regular
   (c) always (d) intermittent
8. There was no *ostensible* reason for her being angry at her husband's remarks.
   (a) hidden (b) covert
   (c) apparent (d) secret
9. Poonam is ever ready to *lend a hand*.
   (a) assist (b) obstruct
   (c) praise (d) hand over
10. Though long, your essay is *vague* on the point.
    (a) doubtful (b) eloquent
    (c) indistinct (d) lucid
11. She *upbraided* the little girl who got frightened.
    (a) make tails (b) make up
    (c) scolded (d) handed
12. She is not seen even smiling these days; she is rather *pensive*.
    (a) sad (b) thoughtful
    (c) gloomy (d) black

13. There was a major *split* in the Congress party in 1969.
(a) breach (b) division
(c) break (d) unity

14. The *honesty* of the king's minister was above board and the king was fond of him.
(a) propensity (b) polarity
(c) probity (d) posterity

15. Wealth acquired through *dishonourable* means lead to moral downfall.
(a) incredulous (b) discreditable
(c) incredible (d) disgraceful

16. What meaning have you *drawn* from her tongue in cheek remarks.
(a) deduced (b) induced
(c) conduced (d) deduct

17. There is a *tacit* agreement between the super powers not to engage themselves in armed conflict.
(a) unspoken (b) speechless
(c) silent (d) introvert

18. The millions of the poor *hapless* Indians' future does not hold any promise.
(a) unhappy (b) unfortunate
(c) helpless (d) adverse

19. Mohinder Amarnath had *penchant* for hook shots.
(a) art (b) inclination
(c) strength (d) desire

20. On account of the *paucity* of the funds plan remained incomplete.
(a) lack (b) scarcity
(c) abundance (d) excess

21. In the existing circumstances her success is *out of the question*.
(a) impossible (b) possible
(c) unquestionable (d) certain

22. The *unlawful* activities of the terrorists need to be dealt with iron hand.
(a) lugubrious (b) salubrious
(c) nefarious (d) deleterious

23. The man lives long through his *good deeds* after he had died.
(a) beneficial (b) benevolent
(c) beneficent (d) benediction

24. The poets are known to *fly* in their thoughts more than a practical man.
(a) sore (b) soar
(c) sour (d) soare

25. The field was *even* enough for the joggers to have their practice.
(a) plane (b) plain
(c) plan (d) plaine

Exercise (C)

1. India has made *spectacular* progress in science and technology. (IES 2001)
   (a) remarkable (b) great
   (c) formidable (d) super
2. The opposition criticised the ruling party for the *deteriorating* law and order situation in the state.
   (a) disrupting (b) worsening
   (c) crumbling (d) eroding
3. The flat has been *refurbished* recently.
   (a) white-washed (b) painted
   (c) renovated (d) repaired
4. Even the most careful researcher cannot predict the possible future *ramifications* of his findings.
   (a) uses (b) developments
   (c) consequences (d) conclusions
5. He ended his speech on a *supercilious* note which was quite unexpected of a person of balanced and stable temperament.
   (a) defamatory (b) contemptuous
   (c) superfluous (d) irrelevant
6. Graduation day is *momentous* day for most students. (CDS 2002)
   (a) memorable (b) melancholy
   (c) important (d) hectic
7. The two opposing parties have reached a *stalemate*.
   (a) dilemma (b) deadlock
   (c) exhaustion (d) settlement
8. The Prime Minister delivered an *impromptu* speech to the students.
   (a) important (b) impressive
   (c) inspiring (d) off hand
9. This is a *lucrative* business.
   (a) profitable (b) dangerous
   (c) challenging (d) questionable
10. *Forthrightness* in speech may not always be a desirable quality.
    (a) outspokenness (b) obliqueness
    (c) mendacity (d) equivocation
11. Such conduct deserves *reprimand*.
    (a) praise (b) punishment
    (c) rebuke (d) reward
12. On public occassions, she was very *punctilious* about forms and manners.
    (a) serious (b) careful
    (c) artificial (d) casual

13. She is very *discreet*.
(a) mannered (b) mild
(c) proud (d) prudent

14. After he came back from his evening walk, he felt *famished*.
(a) exhausted (b) hungry
(c) peevish (d) relaxed

15. She purchased *gimcrack* ornaments from the market.
(a) expensive (b) worthless
(c) rare (d) smuggled

16. He is a good looking but *insipid* young man. (NDA 2002)
(a) arrogant (b) unscrupulous
(c) sick (d) lacking in spirit

17. He had *insidiously* wormed his way into her affections.
(a) in a polite manner (b) in a secret manner
(c) in ugly way (d) in a forceful manner

18. His boss' criticism left him feeling rather *abashed*.
(a) annoyed (b) arrogant
(c) embarrassed (d) awakened

19. The *inexorable* demands of the workers brought the company to a closure.
(a) unreasonable (b) relentless
(c) monetary (d) violent

20. The *acerbic* remarks of the manager were unwarranted.
(a) bitter (b) furious
(c) arrogant (d) childish

21. It was an *astute* move to sell the property at that stage. (CDS 2003)
(a) shrewd (b) unwise
(c) dishonest (d) inexplicable

22. The five experiments gave *disparate* results.
(a) similar (b) encouraging
(c) strange (d) different

23. The young girl appeared *self-possessed* in front of TV cameras.
(a) shy (b) confident
(c) introvert (d) extrovert

24. The chairman conducted the meeting with *aplomb*.
(a) arrogance (b) annoyance
(c) poise (d) authority

25. The officer gave a *lucid* explanation of the company's course of action.
(a) vague (b) unconvincing
(c) long (d) clear

Exercise (D)

1. We will carry out the enquiry as *expeditiously* as possible.
   (a) fairly (b) speedily
   (c) timely (d) justifiably
2. The coach followed a *devious* course to its destination.
   (a) difficult (b) short-cut
   (c) straight (d) winding
3. It would be *impertinent* to suggest that he was generally wrong.
   (a) fair (b) correct
   (c) rude (d) impartial
4. We have witnessed an *inexorable* march of progress by the organization.
   (a) inexhaustible (b) relentless
   (c) comprehensive (d) sluggish
5. Our fates seemed *intertwined*.
   (a) complicated (b) destined
   (c) complex (d) linked
6. He displayed a distinct tendency to *long-winded* speeches when asked how he was.
   (a) boring (b) repetitive
   (c) circumlocutory (d) hyperbolic
7. The data is *misleading*.
   (a) illusory (b) deceptive
   (c) misplaced (d) misinformative
8. This library was built with donations from the *munificent* citizens of the city.
   (a) well-to-do (b) generous
   (c) respectable (d) learned
9. Some satirists are knwon for their *trenchant* style.
   (a) sharp (b) critical
   (c) aggressive (d) incisive
10. Many educationists think that the classroom instruction should be made more *vigorous*.
    (a) serious (b) brisk
    (c) lively (d) active
11. Medical science is yet to come out with a *panacea* for cancer.
    (a) remedy (b) medicine
    (c) treatment (d) drug
12. The navy gave *tactical* support to the marines.
    (a) sensitive (b) strategic
    (c) expedient (d) expert
13. Businessmen who lack *acumen* cannot be expected to be very successful.
    (a) smartness (b) sharpness
    (c) keenness (d) cleverness

14. In modern hospitals, computers *check* the patients before they see the doctor.
(a) stop (b) protect
(c) cover (d) screen

15. A genius tends to *deviate* from the routine way of thinking.
(a) dispute (b) differ
(c) disagree (d) distinguish

16. We are happy that the two countries are trying to find an *amicable* solution to their disputes. **(CDS 2000)**
(a) a just (b) an appropriate
(c) a durable (d) a friendly

17. Leaders of some political parties make *fiery* speeches.
(a) fantastic (b) bombastic
(c) passionate (d) eloquent

18. The judge asked the contending parties to state their position *unequivocally*.
(a) adequately (b) completely
(c) effectively (d) plainly

19. The new volume provides substantial critical *excerpts* and biographical information on eight to ten major poets from all eras.
(a) sources (b) explanation
(c) extracts (d) substances

20. It is *exasperating* to listen to the suggestions of the minister about the educational reforms of which he knows nothing.
(a) irritating (b) amusing
(c) disappointing (d) boring

21. The *disgruntled* members of a party are a constant source of tension to the party leader.
(a) disloyal (b) dishonest
(c) discontented (d) dispirited

22. He is so *garrulous* that all sober persons avoid his company.
(a) quarrelsome (b) talkative
(c) domineering (d) foolish

23. *Temperance* in eating is conductive to health.
(a) discipline (b) caution
(c) moderation (d) care

24. His close friend, who was senior to him in the office, did not hesitate to *reprimand* him when he misplaced one important file.
(a) demote (b) rebuke
(c) suspend (d) penalise

25. I am filled with *remorse* for my failure to help the young man.
(a) despair (b) regret
(c) anger (d) hatred

Exercise (E)

1. He could rise to this stature because of his *invincible* courage. (CDS 2000)
   (a) inviolable (b) unmanageable
   (c) unbeatable (d) immeasurable
2. Though he is a teacher, his speech lacks *distinctness*.
   (a) clarity (b) precision
   (c) distinction (d) fluency
3. The judge was both a *judicious* and impartial man.
   (a) judicial (b) wise
   (c) intelligent (d) kind
4. Reading fiction is an *absorbing*, creative and entertaining hobby.
   (a) a concentrating (b) an engrossing
   (c) a fascinating (d) an enriching
5. The *perspicuity* of the lawyer's arguments was remarkable.
   (a) logic (b) precision
   (c) lucidity (d) profundity
6. A man of unsound mind, he was *exonerated* from all responsibility for his actions.
   (a) exculpated (b) prevented
   (c) excused (d) liberated
7. He is known to be a *prolific* writer.
   (a) versatile (b) productive
   (c) great (d) powerful
8. He tried to *alleviate* the sufferings of his neighbours.
   (a) abate (b) dissipate
   (c) remove (d) relieve
9. Her evidence totally *refuted* the charges.
   (a) refused (b) denied
   (c) disproved (d) repelled
10. If a leader wants to be popular he should master the art of being *civil* to everyone.
    (a) polite (b) civilized
    (c) friendly (d) obedient
11. The *surreptitious* movements of a long figure among the dunes filled the villagers with curiosity and awe.
    (a) invisible (b) nocturnal
    (c) secret (d) concealed
12. One's *remonstration* against social ills has to be consistent to be fruitful.
    (a) outrage (b) demonstration
    (c) protest (d) criticism

13. You should consider the matter in an *impartial* manner.
(a) optimistic (b) enthusiastic
(c) realistic (d) dispassionate

14. Mumbai is the *terminus* of the Western Railways.
(a) last stop (b) termination
(c) junction (d) tenure

15. The journey to Siliguri is quite *tedious*.
(a) diverting (b) wearisome
(c) lively (d) resolute

Exercise (F)

Directions *: Each of the following questions containing main word in capital letters followed by four words. Select the word that is* ***most similar in meaning*** *to the main word in capital letters.*

(CDS 2004)

1. SOLITUDE
(a) musical composition (b) aloneness
(c) true statement (d) single mindedness

2. PROPITIOUS
(a) favourable (b) clean
(c) nearby (d) patriotic

3. RECTITUDE
(a) Duplication (b) Integrity
(c) Rectification (d) Recovery

4. VALOUR
(a) wandering (b) brightness
(c) bravery (d) affluence

5. INCONGRUOUS
(a) inconceivable (b) inevitable
(c) inconsistent (d) incontrovertible

(PF Commissioner 2004)

6. COMMISERATION
(a) commission (b) vastness
(c) sympathy (d) commendation

7. SLIPSHOD
(a) vulgar (b) careless
(c) common place (d) retaliatory

8. MOSQUERADE
(a) to provide support (b) to go in disguise
(c) to mesmerise (d) marathon race

(NDA 2004)

9. PREPOSTEROUS
(a) careful (b) casual
(c) absurd (d) deterrent

10. SLOTH
(a) laziness (b) anger
(c) sludge (d) malady

11. PARSIMONIOUS
(a) thrifty (b) cunning
(c) extravagant (d) upright

(SCRA 2005)

12. CONUNDRUM
(a) riddle (b) dampness
(c) impudence (d) servility

13. PROSAIC
(a) uninspiring (b) poetic
(c) exotic (d) imaginative

(CAGA 2005)

14. RAVAGE
(a) destroy (b) break
(c) irrational (d) sacred

15. MENTOR
(a) genius (b) guide
(c) stylist (d) philosopher

16. GARNISH
(a) paint (b) adorn
(c) garner (d) banish

17. GRUFF
(a) rough (b) hard
(c) tough (d) cheerless

(Tax Assistant 2005)

18. SURMOUNT
(a) overcome (b) discount
(c) surround (d) capture

19. TORPID
(a) insipid (b) stupid
(c) sensitive (d) inactive

20. ITINERANT
(a) frequent use of 'it' (b) anything involving repetition
(c) plan for proposed journey (d) travelling from place to place

21. OSTENTATIOUS
(a) pomp (b) pretence
(c) abundance (d) plenty

(Commercial Auditor 2005)

22. OBSESSION
(a) pre-occupation (b) suspicion
(c) frustration (d) dejection

23. DILATE
(a) spin (b) weaken
(c) widen (d) push

24. FLUTTER
(a) soar (b) agitate
(c) change (d) float

25. PRIORITY
(a) urgency (b) protocol
(c) precedence (d) necessity

(Investigator 2005)

26. ESTRANGED
(a) jealous (b) angry
(c) separated (d) suspicious

27. RESTIVE
(a) rested (b) restless
(c) limited (d) limitless

28. PREMONITION
(a) insight (b) uncertainty
(c) forewarning (d) scope

29. NOMADIC
(a) fighting (b) rare
(c) strange (d) wandering

30. DEROGATORY
(a) infurious (b) shattering
(c) disparaging (d) destructive

(Tax Assistant 2006)

31. DECREPITUDE
(a) disease (b) coolness
(c) crowd (d) feebleness

32. BECKONED
(a) accused (b) called
(c) sent (d) acquitted

33. SUPERANNUATED
(a) experienced (b) accepted
(c) retired (d) senile

34. AUDACITY
(a) strength (b) boldness
(c) asperity (d) fear

35. TRANSITION
(a) position (b) translation
(c) change (d) movement

36. DECIMATED
(a) denounced (b) destroyed
(c) successful (d) depressed

37. AVARICE
(a) generosity (b) envy
(c) greed (d) hatred

38. AUGUST
(a) majestic (b) important
(c) difficult (d) huge

39. RARE
(a) common (b) usual
(c) scarce (d) few

40. CRAVEN (NDA 2006)
(a) greedy (b) cowardly
(c) flattering (d) restless

41. VICARIOUS
(a) ambitious (b) not experienced personally
(c) nostalgic (d) vindictive

42. DEBONAIR
(a) bedridden (b) candid
(c) elegant (d) thrifty

43. BROWBEAT
(a) to bully (b) to chase
(c) to give a hint (d) to revive

44. MENIAL (CDS 2006)
(a) unskilled (b) tall
(c) affluent (d) sick

45. RECLUSE
(a) hospitable (b) humorous
(c) withdrawn (d) effective

46. EXTOL (CDS 2006)
(a) steal (b) praise
(c) exterior (d) excess

47. CELERITY
(a) quickness (b) bachelorhood
(c) lineage (d) backwardness

48. VIRTUOSO
(a) futuristic (b) stubborn
(c) prompt (d) exceptionally skilled

49. CONTRAPTION
(a) device (b) valley
(c) forest (d) window

50. THRONG
(a) excitement (b) crowded mass of people
(c) danger (d) suspense

51. COUNTERVAILING (CDS 2007)
(a) compensating (b) argumentative
(c) crying (d) complaining

52. FERRET
(a) steal (b) search
(c) forget (d) fight

53. EVINCE
(a) to learn (b) to exhibit
(c) to resist (d) to become infirm

54. REPRISAL
(a) loneliness (b) retaliation
(c) remuneration (d) pleasure

55. PECUNIARY
(a) pertaining to money (b) pertaining to politics
(c) pertaining to history (d) pertaining to geography

56. ILLICIT
(a) immoral (b) illegal
(c) ineligible (d) illegible

57. FLAIR
(a) talent (b) tendency
(c) bias (d) need

58. CONGREGATION
(a) concentrtion (b) meeting
(c) discussion (d) judgement

59. SALIENT
(a) valiant (b) variant
(c) prudent (d) prominent

60. DECAMP
(a) move (b) encamp
(c) flee (d) hide

61. COUNTERFEIT (SSC 2009)
(a) constant (b) unknown
(c) biased (d) fake

62. NOVICE
(a) expert (b) specialist
(c) generalist (d) beginner

63. BARREN
(a) insane (b) rough
(c) infertile (d) lush

64. SAGE (Delhi Police-2009)
(a) wiseman (b) tale
(c) era (d) fool

65. RUSE
(a) break (b) strategerm
(c) maudlin (d) guru

66. FETID
(a) comical (b) ornament
(c) stinking (d) regular

67. ADMONISH
(a) warn (b) escape
(c) wroship (d) distribute warm

68. GRANDIOSE
(a) imposing (b) unpretentious
(c) boring (d) lanky

69. KNAVE (Tax Assistant-2009)
(a) emperor (b) enchanter
(c) soldier (d) scoundrel

70. IMPOST
(a) fertilizer (b) coarse
(c) dispatch (d) tax

71. FORGO
(a) renounce (b) disown
(c) leave (d) accumulate

72. ROUT
(a) death (b) defeat
(c) loss (d) crash

73. INDICTMENT
(a) arraignment
(b) entrapment
(c) indoctrination
(d) inducement

74. ABSTEMIOUS
(a) resistant
(b) temperate
(c) superstitions
(d) careful

75. PROBITY
(a) courtesy
(b) promptness
(c) efficiency
(d) uprightness

76. GARISH
(a) beautifully decorated
(b) boldly arranged
(c) unpleasantly gaudy
(d) carefully prepared

Revision Exercises

(Based on Antonyms)

Directions : *The following sentences consist of a word or a phrase which is written in italicised letters. Each of them is followed by four words or phrases. Select the word or the phrase which is closest to the opposite in meaning of the italicised word or phrase.*

Exercise (A)

1. The plane lay burnt in *fragments*.
   (a) whole (b) parts
   (c) scraps (d) pieces
2. He was charged with *abetting* the murder of an innocent child.
   (a) baffle (b) instigate
   (c) promote (d) support
3. Her *candid* confession of the crime earned her reprieve.
   (a) frank (b) crafty
   (c) simple (d) ambiguous
4. His health has been *deteriorating* since he returned from trekking expedition.
   (a) ameliorating (b) amending
   (c) undertaking (d) worsening
5. Twenty point programme is aimed at *alleviating* the sufferings of the poor.
   (a) aggravating (b) mitigating
   (c) eradicating (d) appeasing
6. The visit of the Vice Chancellor has been *deferred* indefinitely.
   (a) expedited (b) dissolved
   (c) postponed (d) put off
7. How dare you *desecrate* an idol of this temple.
   (a) defile (b) pollute
   (c) deify (d) impious
8. She is known for her *frugality* in household expenditure.
   (a) economy (b) extragavance
   (c) miserliness (d) niggariness
9. He *endeavoured* hard to reach the top of his career.
   (a) shirked (b) strove
   (c) undertake (d) laboured

10. *Formidable* obstacles have to be overcome before success is achieved.
(a) indomitable (b) facile
(c) dangerous (d) invicible

11. Though generous and *benevolent*, he did not meet with success in his career.
(a) beneficent (b) malevolent
(c) goodwill (d) liberal

12. *Apathy* for the poor is common to officials of every cadre.
(a) indifference (b) sympathy
(c) eagerness (d) antipathy

13. There exists *rancour* between the two brothers.
(a) animosity (b) harmony
(c) devotion (d) enmity

14. Born in *squalid* surroundings of the slums she rose to stardom overnight.
(a) dirty (b) clean
(c) disorderly (d) mean

15. Though *novice* in art she shows great promise.
(a) tyro (b) inexperienced
(c) veteran (d) green horn.

16. You will have to learn to gloss over the *trivial* mistakes of the youngsters.
(a) important (b) pardonable
(c) insignificant (d) futile

17. India will have to cultivate all her *barren* land to meet with her food requirements.
(a) arid (b) simple
(c) sterile (d) productive

18. An honest person need not *hesitate* to take bold steps.
(a) shirk (b) demur
(c) act willingly (d) malinger

19. *Hectic* arrangements are on for the coming visit of the Minister.
(a) unhurried (b) unhindered
(c) feverish (d) fast

20. The outgoing Chairman has a number of *laudable* achievements to his credit.
(a) noble (b) disreputable
(c) glorious (d) praiseworthy

21. The *fetters* of slavery are hard to shake off.
(a) bondage (b) shackles
(c) freedom (d) irons

22. Their family *feud* has taken ugly turn lately.
(a) brotherhood (b) dispute
(c) fraternal (d) quarrel

23. Indian economy is basically dependent on *fickle* monsoons.
(a) usteady (b) benign
(c) stable (d) capricious

24. Mrs. Nisha made *fervent* appeal to the members of the club to maintain unity.
(a) active (b) impassive
(c) cold (d) passionate

25. His failure in this venture may be attributed to his *lackadaisical* approach.
(a) enthusiastic (b) insufficient
(c) indifferent (d) reckless

Exercise (B)

1. The *feebleness* of mind is the greatest hurdle to success in life.
(a) sound (b) infirm
(c) imbecility (d) strength

2. None but his *sycophants* were impressed by his haughtiness.
(a) detractors (b) flatterers
(c) benefactors (d) officious

3. You are advised to show *clemency* to the defeated enemy.
(a) callousness (b) mercy
(c) leniency (d) kindness

4. After a day's toil he was feeling *fatigue*.
(a) energy (b) listlessness
(c) extertion (d) tiredness

5. The Board of Directors showered *encomium* on the Chairman for his liberal policies.
(a) denunciation (b) generosity
(c) tribute (d) praise

6. A lady of a few words she is given to *laconic* answers.
(a) copious (b) lingering
(c) terse (d) brief

7. One usually feels *languid* on summer noons.
(a) brisk (b) fussy
(c) drowsy (d) listless

8. The mountains present a bleak sight at night.
(a) warm (b) desolate
(c) dense (d) deserted

9. A character without a *blemish* is a virtue of a leader.
(a) stigma (b) adornment
(c) strength (d) blot

10. Sometimes it is necessary to *retreat* in a battle.
(a) retrograde (b) march
(c) advance (d) go back

11. I was *disgusted* at the manner he was flattering the party leader.
(a) revolting (b) pleased
(c) sickening (d) irritated

12. Strangely the honour Napolean brought to France ultimately brought no *credit* to the country.
(a) disgrace (b) elevation
(c) applause (d) victory

13. Even a *lunatic* person sometimes talk intelligently.
(a) sane (b) insane
(c) insensible (d) mad

14. There was *dismal* atmosphere in the dressing room of the defeated team.
(a) cheerful (b) dreadful
(c) gloomy (d) jovial

15. Those in *distress* should not be laughed at because they deserve our sympathy.
(a) trouble (b) prosperity
(c) affluence (d) adversity

16. Some have the habit of *disparaging* the success of their friend because of jealousy.
(a) belittling (b) esteeming
(c) lauding (d) castigating

17. You are advised not to *dessipate* your energy on impracticable schemes.
(a) conserve (b) deform
(c) waste (d) utilise

18. You must put up the facts *straight* before me and don't try to befool me.
(a) distort (b) candid
(c) soften (d) direct.

19. *Modesty* is a virtue but it must not be allowed to be exploited.
(a) reserve (b) boldness
(c) mildness (d) humility

20. At his success in the examination he felt *elated*.
(a) exultant (b) dejected
(c) resting (d) jubilant

21. *Reunion* was overwhelming as he returned home after long time.
(a) meeting (b) parting
(c) division (d) home coming

22. *Counterfeit* coins are in circulation because of negligence on the part of police authorities.
(a) spurious (b) genuine
(c) truthful (d) fake

23. Professors are generally *serious* about what they say.
(a) jolly (b) thoughtful
(c) smug (d) insincere

24. What he tells me *confirms* my ideas.
(a) verifies (b) contradicts
(c) opposes (d) strengthens.

25. The minister was accused of indulging in *nepotism*.
(a) impartiality (b) hatred
(c) condemnation (d) indifference

Exercise (C)

1. The facts of the case were *obscured* by the speech of the defence counsel. **(IES 2000)**
(a) reflected (b) illustrated
(c) clarified (d) exhibited

2. Due to his excessive *craftiness* he achieved success but lost friends.
(a) simplicity (b) sincerity
(c) straightforwardness (d) innocence

3. He made several attempts to *placate* his opponents.
(a) infuriate (b) defeat
(c) discourage (d) deceive

4. Guerillas *infiltrated* into the region during the severe winter of 1997.
(a) entered (b) expelled
(c) penetrated (d) filtered

5. He has always been *fastidious* while examining answer scripts.
(a) amiable (b) discriminating
(c) critical (d) judicious

6. The professor had to share a hotel room with a *garrulous* tax collector. **(CDS 2000)**
(a) dumb (b) speechless
(c) tongue-tied (d) silent

7. It was *fortuitous* that I met her in that party.
(a) unlucky (b) bad
(c) distressing (d) abominable

8. He is *zealous* only in the initial stages of a project.
(a) absent-minded (b) distraught
(c) inattentive (d) indifferent

9. The climate in the north of Europe is really *dreadful*.
(a) pleasant (b) amiable
(c) comfortable (d) gratifying

10. He glanced through the letter *perfunctorily*.
(a) nicely (b) ceremoniously
(c) carefully (d) particularly

11. It is not difficult to take note of his *immaculate* style of writing.
(a) stained (b) uneven
(c) impure (d) flawed

12. He is very *fastidious* about his choice of food.
(a) sloppy (b) thoughtless
(c) careless (d) indiscreet

13. However hard you may try to *mitigate* his problems; you will not succeed.
(a) augment (b) increase
(c) expand (d) enlarge

14. *Genuine* jewellery is available only in this shop.
(a) false (b) cheap
(c) imitation (d) duplicate

15. His speech was full of frequent *facetious* remarks.
(a) stupid (b) grave
(c) dull (d) sarcastic

16. The research showed that the drug has *pernicious* effect on the health of patients. **(IES 2001)**
(a) fair (b) advantageous
(c) beneficial (d) satisfactory

17. I am in a rather *precarious* position in my place of work.
(a) comfortable (b) senior
(c) privileged (d) secure

18. Some people always drive their cars *recklessly*.
(a) slowly (b) regularly
(c) carefully (d) patiently

19. There are no permanent *adversaries* in politics.
(a) associates (b) allies
(c) collaborators (d) partners

20. He produced *cogent* reasons for the change of policy.
(a) flimsy (b) unconvincing
(c) improper (d) simple

21. This officer is noted for his *zeal*.
(a) intolerance (b) ineffciency
(c) insensibility (d) indifference

22. The speaker recalled the deceased leader's *benevolent* deeds.
(a) unpopular (b) unkind
(c) unbecoming (d) unplanned

23. Their arrival *defiled* the atmosphere.
(a) purified (b) polluted
(c) disturbed (d) glorified

24. The Prime Minister's radio broadcast *glavanized* the people's spirit.
(a) frightened (b) pacified
(c) dampened (d) distracted

25. A *fortuitious* combination of circumstances led to the discovery of his lineage.
(a) unfortunate (b) accidental
(c) planned (d) ludicrous

Exercise (D)

1. The young business executive was very *perspicacious*. **(CDS 2002)**
(a) banal (b) clever
(c) humble (d) unreliable

2. The speaker made some very *cogent* remarks.
(a) flattering (b) unconvincing
(c) superfluous (d) vociferous

3. There are many anecdotes about his sister who is an *imperious* personality.
(a) characterless (b) pious
(c) arrogant (d) submissive

4. Though aware of his crimes, he remained *impenitent* throughout.
(a) repentant (b) sorrowful
(c) hot-headed (d) pertinent

5. In facing adverse situations, he was very *stoical*.
(a) tactless (b) flinching
(c) awkward (d) assured

6. While facing that situation he turned out to be *dauntless*. **(NDA 2002)**
(a) tactful (b) stoical
(c) bashful (d) cowardly

7. We went to the first floor through the *rickety* wooden stairs.
(a) stable (b) old
(c) narrow (d) uncomfortable

8. They made a *profligate* use of scarce resources.
(a) proper (b) extravagant
(c) effective (d) thrifty

9. The consultant analysed the proposal carefully before he decided to *jettison* it.
(a) abandon (b) strengthen
(c) accept (d) modify

10. The politician was *flummoxed* by the questions put to him.
(a) comfortable (b) annoyed
(c) delighted (d) disconcerted

11. Throughout the evening, Rahul looked very *doleful*. (CDS 2003)
(a) aggressive (b) cheerful
(c) tired (d) involved

12. He is showing signs of *senility*.
(a) virility (b) laziness
(c) maturity (d) exhaustion

13. He gave the reply written in a *terse* style.
(a) pleasant (b) verbose
(c) rude (d) concise

14. He walked in *ungainly* strides.
(a) quick (b) short
(c) awkward (d) graceful

15. There is not a trace of *vanity* in her behaviour.
(a) humility (b) selflessness
(c) modesty (d) dignity

16. They approached the stranger *warily*.
(a) suspiciously (b) cautiously
(c) carefully (d) carelessly

17. The forwards of their football team made *sporadic* raids into the opponent's territory.
(a) rare (b) frequent
(c) sharp (d) co-ordinated

18. She was *overstrung* before the performance.
(a) excited (b) calm
(c) enthusiastic (d) cheerful

19. The speaker had a *superficial* knowledge of the subject.
(a) artificial (b) deep
(c) fictitious (d) overt

20. The booking-clerk looked very *grumpy*.
(a) surly (b) pleasant
(c) efficient (d) honest

21. A culturally *diverse* country has customers with unique needs.
(a) singular (b) unanimous
(c) uniform (d) comfortable

22. She paid special attention to those women who had *succumbed* to adversity.
(a) surrendered (b) given up
(c) overcome (d) demanded

23. Arrangements were made to handle the *mammoth* gathering tactfully.
(a) quiet (b) significant
(c) huge (d) small

24. He *despises* classical music.
(a) appreciates (b) respects
(c) comprehends (d) endures

25. He is very *callous* to the suffering of others.
(a) indifferent (b) sensitive
(c) kind (d) positive

Exercise (E)

1. The signature tune of this serial is a *harmonious* blend of notes.
(a) haphazard (b) discordant
(c) unmusical (d) crude

2. He has translated the play into English with *fidelity*.
(a) difficulty (b) insincerity
(c) carelessness (d) inaccuracy

3. Her dress was too *slovenly* for that kind of interview.
(a) gaudy (b) tidy
(c) formal (d) old fashioned

4. I was deeply affected by his *urbane* behaviour.
(a) rural (b) indifferent
(c) rude (d) unsympathetic

5. The fact was discovered only on reaching the *summit*.
(a) base (b) ground
(c) tunnel (d) surface

6. The judge thought that the offence was *deliberate*. **(CDS 2000)**
(a) negligible (b) casual
(c) unintentional (d) legitimate

7. His face bore *a blank* look all the time while I was telling him about that exciting incident.
(a) a passive (b) an expressive
(c) a passionate (d) a mysterious

8. The state government for its part can identify *vulnerable* villages where these forces can be stationed.
(a) important (b) famous
(c) remote (d) invincible

9. All the employees of this organization want to have an officer who is *lenient*.
(a) capable (b) strict
(c) strong (d) conservative

10. Some of the needs of a modern man are surely *dispensable*.
(a) desirable (b) acceptable
(c) relevant (d) essential

11. The officer had issued *explicit* instructions to his staff.
(a) inadequate (b) elusive
(c) ambiguous (d) queer

12. Some democratic countries believe in racial *segregation*.
(a) subordination (b) integration
(c) inferiority (d) domination

13. The task assigned to him was *arduous*.
(a) absorbing (b) good
(c) plain (d) easy

14. His *magnanimous* gesture came to his employees as a surprise.
(a) small (b) cruel
(c) thoughtless (d) mean

15. He received the news *coldly*.
(a) angrily (b) enthusiastically
(c) gratefully (d) bravely.

Exercise (F)

Directions : *Each of the following main words in capital letters are followed by four words. Select the word that is* ***furthest*** *(opposite) in meaning to the main word.*

1. RELENTLESS **(CDS 2004)**
(a) merciless (b) yielding
(c) monotonous (d) incisive

2. FORBEARANCE
(a) patience (b) self-control
(c) intolerance (d) preference

3. OVERBEARING
(a) thrifty (b) timid
(c) cautious (d) futuristic

4. SYNCHRONOUS
(a) not in working order (b) not in phase
(c) without problems (d) without permission

5. PALTRY
(a) obsolete (b) cautious
(c) random (d) plentiful

6. RECTITUDE **(PF Commissioner 2004)**
(a) self condemnation (b) decietfulness
(c) reprisal (d) punctuality

7. PROPENSITY
(a) disinclination (b) forecast
(c) stagnation (d) restlessness

8. SCANTY
(a) arrogant (b) plentiful
(c) painful (d) handsome

(NDA 2004)

9. PROLIFIC
(a) controversial (b) barren
(c) wise (d) unfocussed

10. IMPROMPTU
(a) rehearsed (b) foolish
(c) appropriate (d) vast

(SCRA 2005)

11. ENCOMIUM
(a) meagre (b) unethical
(c) diffidence (d) hypercriticism

12. CHIMERICAL
(a) fearful (b) breathtaking
(c) serene (d) practical idea

13. PETULANT
(a) fearless (b) scrupulous
(c) industrious (d) calm

14. LACONIC
(a) uncivilised (b) talkative
(c) erudite (d) livid

(CAGA 2005)

15. EXODUS
(a) influx (b) return
(c) home coming (d) restoration

16. INQUISITIVE
(a) insincere (b) indifferent
(c) insensitive (d) insulting

17. NADIR
(a) modernity (b) zenith
(c) liberty (d) progress

18. CANDID
(a) out spoken (b) devious
(c) frank (d) disguised

(Tax Assistant 2005)

19. AFFLUENCE
(a) poverty (b) misery
(c) stagnation (d) neglect

20. RETICENT
(a) forward (b) developed
(c) communicative (d) sophisticated

21. PRUDENT
(a) silly (b) unwise
(c) idiotic (d) poor

22. AGONY
(a) pleasure (b) laughter
(c) bliss (d) ecstasy

(Commercial Auditor 2005)

23. GENTLEMAN
(a) boor (b) clown
(c) dud (d) buffoon

24. PANICKY
(a) confident (b) sober
(c) quiet (d) calm

25. MYOPIC
(a) near sighted (b) feeble minded
(c) foresighted (d) farsighted

26. MOURNFUL
(a) playful (b) joyous
(c) laughable (d) humorous

(Investigator 2005)

27. TIMOROUS
(a) trembling (b) cowardly
(c) bright (d) bold

28. SUBLIME
(a) amusing (b) ludicrous
(c) hilarious (d) mean

29. DEMENTED
(a) sensible (b) sensitive
(c) sensual (d) inordinate

30. SURVIVAL
(a) evolution (b) development
(c) creation (d) extinction

(Tax Assistant 2006)

31. CUMBERSOME
(a) heavy (b) convenient
(c) smooth (d) automatic

32. INTELLIGIBLE
(a) dull (b) foolish
(c) garbled (d) confused

33. LOQUACIOUS
(a) talkative (b) taciturn
(c) diffident (d) bashful

34. PHILANTHROPIST
(a) philistine (b) moralist
(c) spendthrift (d) miser

35. CURTAIL (AOS 2006)
(a) detail (b) enlarge
(c) promote (d) exaggerate

36. ARID
(a) cloudy (b) juicy
(c) marshy (d) wet

37. CONVICTED
(a) acquitted (b) pardoned
(c) exempted (d) liberated

38. SENILE (NDA 2006)
(a) suspicious (b) mentally alert
(c) corrupt (d) affluent

39. BLITHESOME
(a) graceful (b) sullen
(c) adventurous (d) mammoth

40. CONSANGUINE
(a) of different kind (b) invisible
(c) urbane (d) untenanted

41. REDOUBTABLE
(a) truthful (b) crafty
(c) widely travelled (d) ordinary

42. INORDINATE
(a) distant (b) facile
(c) moderate (d) attractive

43. MODICUM (CDS 2006)
(a) surfeit (b) decent
(c) adulation (d) modern

44. ACCOLADE
(a) contenance (b) vulgar
(c) reprimand (d) virtue

45. OVERBEARING
(a) dishonest (b) modest
(c) partisan (d) sluggish

46. SPECIOUS
(a) narrow (b) introspective
(c) true (d) courageous

47. NAIVE
(a) sophisticated (b) brave
(c) tireless (d) magnanimous

48. SALUBRIOUS
(a) perfect (b) anonymous
(c) clean (d) unwholesome

49. LUCID (CDS 2007)
(a) lacking resources (b) lacking vitality
(c) lacking clarity (d) lacking comfort

50. CHOLERIC
(a) affluent (b) brave
(c) pleasant (d) tired

51. SPASMODIC
(a) ill-humoured (b) ancient
(c) regular (d) tireless

52. TERSE
(a) detailed (b) nasty
(c) advanced (d) impure

53. INTREPID
(a) honest (b) sick
(c) timid (d) ugly

54. PUERILE
(a) inquisitive (b) matured
(c) impure (d) original

55. EXCRUCIATING
(a) mild (b) noisy
(c) sophisticating (d) modern

56. SUPPRESS
(a) stirup (b) rouse
(c) urge (d) incite

57. LOOSEN
(a) fasten (b) accelerate
(c) delay (d) paste

58. REBELLION
(a) forgiveness (b) retribution
(c) submission (d) domination

59. IDIOSYNCRASY
(a) insanity (b) sanity
(c) generality (d) signularity

60. SOBRIETY
(a) moderation (b) drunkenness
(c) dizziness (d) stupidity

61. EXTINCT
(a) recent (b) distinct
(c) alive (d) ancient

62. ZEAL **(Tax Assistant 2009)**
(a) disinterest (b) apathy
(c) carelessness (d) hatred

63. NIGGARDLY
(a) hastily (b) lavishly
(c) likely (d) gorgeously

64. COMPLY **(SSC-2009)**
(a) challenge (b) complain
(c) Conform (d) compete

65. INQUISITIVE
(a) inadequate (b) immature
(c) uncomfortable (d) unconcerned

66. HAUGHTINESS **(Delhi Police-2009)**
(a) unskilled (b) affability
(c) adduce (d) adject

67. AMNESTY
(a) loyalty (b) punishment
(c) depth (d) dearth

68. RETREAT
(a) heaven (b) shelter
(c) advance (d) egress

69. ANTI DOTE
(a) medicine (b) west
(c) depth (d) dearth

70. PHILISTINE **(SSC Graduate 2010)**
(a) cultured (b) libertine
(c) sober (d) educated

71. HERETICAL
(a) contradictory (b) doubtful
(c) impious (d) orthodox

72. INGEST
(a) disrupt (b) disgorge
(c) dismiss (d) display

73. LACERATION
(a) convalescence (b) recuperation
(c) healing (d) palpitation

74. DESPONDENT **(CDS-2010)**
(a) pleased (b) satisfied
(c) infuriated (d) elated

75. DENIGRATE
(a) belittle (b) believe
(c) doubt (d) praise

❑

Chapter 5 Foreign Words and Expressions (Often Used in English)

1. a' la mode	in the fashion, in vogue.
2. albeit	although.
3. avant garde	pioneer in movement of art/literature.
4. ab initio	from very beginning.
5. ad hoc	arranged for special purpose.
6. au revoir	until we meet again.
7. ad interim	meanwhile.
8. alma mater	mother institution a person attended.
9. ad valorem	according to value.
10. annus mirabilis	a wonderful year in which great events take place.
11. a'propos	to the point, with reference to.
12. alibi	false plea of absence.
13. ad nauseam	to offensive limit.
14. alter ego	a bosom friend, one's other self.
15. alumni	ex students of an institution (alumnus–singular)
16. ante meridiem	time between midnight and moon (a.m.).
17. animus	bad intention.
18. a priori	deductive, to infer fact from cause
19. amicus curiae	friend of the court in any judicial proceeding
20. ad infinitum	for indefinite period, for even.
21. alpha and omega	from beginning to end.
22. alias	otherwise, nick name.
23. amour propre	self love, vanity
24. Anno Domini	in the Christian era (AD) after the death of
25. agent provocateur	a secret agent employed to find the suspected criminals.
26. blitzkreig	lightning attack.
27. bona fide	in a good faith, sincere.
28. bon voyage	pleasant journey to you.
29. bourgeoisie	middle class.
30. bete noire	an object of dislike.
31. bonhomie	pleasantness of manners.
32. carte blanche	full freedom of action.

33. communique	official intimation or note.
34. casus belli	act/event leading to war.
35. coup d' etat	violent or unconstitutional change in government.
36. circa	about (born circa 150 BC).
37. chaperon	a person (usually elderly lady) who accompanies a young girl.
38. commune bonum	the common good.
39. coiffeur	hair dresser.
40. charge d' affairs	one who acts as an ambassador.
41. coup de grace	the final blow.
42. coiffure	style of hair dressing.
43. couturier	man dress designer.
44. couturiere	woman dress designer.
45. canard	a rumour, a hoax.
46. cuisine	the brand of cooked food.
47. cause celebre	a very notable trial.
48. detenu	a prisoner.
49. de tour	indirect way.
50. de novo	afresh.
51. debut	first appearance on stage or in any event.
52. debutant	one making first appearance (male).
53. debutante	one making first appearance (female).
54. detente	easing of strained relations.
55. de jure	according to law, by right.
56. de facto	in fact, real.
57. demarche	a political step/presentation.
58. deja vu	a feeling that something has happened before.
59. denoument	final conclusion in a play.
60. dramatis personae	characters in a play.
61. emeritus	retired but retaining honorary title on merit.
62. elite	select, choice.
63. en bloc	in a group, collectively.
64. entrenous	between ourselves.
65. en masse	in a mass.
66. ex gratia	as a matter of grace, favour.
67. ex post facto	by subsequent act.
68. en route	on the way to.
69. esprit de corps	spirit of belonging to one organisation.
70. ex officio	by virtue of one's post.
71. ennui	boredome.
72. ex parte	done not in the presence of other.

73. elan	dashing spirit.
74. et al	and other people.
75. exempli gratia	e.g., for example.
76. enfant terrible	one who is a source of trouble.
77. entente	understanding between the two states.
78. entourage	a person's subordinates.
79. forte	a person's special talent.
80. fait accompli	an accomplished fact.
81. fiance	a man to whom one is engaged to marry.
82. fiancee	a woman to whom one is engaged to marry.
83. gratis	free of charge.
84. genre	a style, a particular kind.
85. hauteur	haughtiness.
86. hors de combat	out of combat, disabled.
87. homo sapiens	men as thinking people.
88. ipso facto	really, by that very fact.
89. ibid	in the same book/chapter.
90. impasse	deadlock.
91. id est	i.e. (that is to say).
92. infra dig	below one's dignity.
93. inter alia	among other things.
94. in camera	not open to public.
95. instant	of this month.
96. joie de vivre	joy of living.
97. laissez faire	free from government control/interference.
98. locus standi	right to be heard, to interfere.
99. lingua franca	common language spoken by people.
100. literatur	literary person.
101. literati	literary persons.
102. lacuna	shortcoming, gap.
103. leitmolif	a recurring theme.
104. melange	mixture, blending, medley.
105. mutatis mutandis	with necessary changes.
106. menage	household, domestic.
107. mala fide	in bad faith.
108. modus vivandi	way of living.
109. modus operandi	method of dealing with work.
110. magnum opus	a great book, a work of art.
111. melee	mixed fight, stampede.
112. matinee	morning (after noon).
113. nouveaux riches	people who are newly rich.

114. Nota Bene	take note.
115. nom de plume	pen name, assumed name.
116. nexus	bond, link, connection.
117. non pareil	incomparable, unparallel.
118. nee	name used after the name of married woman to indicate father's family name.
119. outre	exaggerated.
120. obiter dictum	passing remark.
121. persona non grata	a person not acceptable.
122. persona grata	a person acceptable.
123. pro rata	in proportion.
124. per se	by itself.
125. par excellence	excellent, superb.
126. pot pourri	mixture, musical, medley.
127. post meridiem	afternoon (p.m.).
128. prima facie	based on the first impression.
129. proletarian	a member of poor class.
130. pari passu	at an equal rate/pace.
131. parole	prisoner's word of honour.
132. protege	one who is patronised by others.
133. quid pro quo	something given or returned as an equivalent of something (tit for tat).
134. raison d'etre	reason for existence, real purpose.
135. rendezvous	private meeting place.
136. reposte	repartee, retort.
137. R.S.V.P.	respondez's ilvous plait (reply, if you please).
138. religio loci	the religious feeling of a place.
139. resume	a summary, an abstract.
140. sang froid	coolness in trying condition.
141. status quo	the same position.
142. sine die	for an indefinite period.
143. sub judice	under consideration.
144. sobriquet	pseudonym.
145. summum bonum	chief good.
146. sans	without, deprived of.
147. sine qua non	indispensable condition to achieve something.
148. sanctum sanctorum	the holy of holies
149. son et lu miere	a historical play staged with sound and light.
150. suo moto	on one's own.
151. tour de force	a feat of strength or skill.
152. tete o tete	a private conversation, face to face.

153. ultra vires	beyond one's authority.
154. via	through.
155. versus	against.
156. viva voce	an oral test.
157. viz	namely, that is to say.
158. vice versa	in opposite ways.
159. vide	see, refer.
160. via media	middle course.
161. vox populi von dei	voice of the people is the voice of god.
162. vox populi	voice of the people.
163. vendetta	family feud.
164. vis-a-vis	directly opposite to.
165. volte face	a complete turn about, reversal of policy.
166. xerox	a photocopy.
167. zeitgeist	contemporary spirit.

❑

Chapter

6 The Sentence Completion

Fill in the Blanks with Suitable Words

Sentence Completion questions are designed to test the comprehension ability as well as the knowledge of the meaning of the words required to be filled in. The candidate is asked to select the best of the alternatives given below a sentence.

A word of caution may be put in here for the benefit of the students. Before attempting this section they must go through the preceding chapters in this book that contains plethora of words to guide them in choice of selecting the best of the alternatives.

Revision Exercise (A)

Directions : *Four alternatives a, b, c and d are given under each sentence, you are required to select the most suitable alternative to fill in the blank/blanks in the sentence to make it meaningful.*

1. The salt spray has gradually ..... the bridge.
   (a) spoilt (b) ravaged
   (c) demolished (d) eroded
2. The volcanic ..... was the cause of great devastation.
   (a) outburst (b) eruption
   (c) erosion (d) movement
3. It was impossible to recover the victims' bodies as the place of the accident was .....
   (a) inaccessible (b) marshy
   (c) distant (d) rocky
4. In order to maintain good health one should eat a ..... diet.
   (a) rich (b) spicy
   (c) balanced (d) salty
5. As a result of ..... many unsuitable candidates were selected for the posts.
   (a) tolerence (b) favouritism
   (c) humility (d) weakness
6. There are several ways of ..... the price at which a product can be marketed.
   (a) arriving (b) thinking
   (c) determining (d) noticing
7. Although they are not rich, they always wear ..... clothes.
   (a) respectful (b) respective
   (c) respectable (d) respected

8. After a recent mild paralytic attack his movements are ..... restricted, otherwise he is still very active.
(a) entirely (b) nowhere
(c) not (d) slightly

9. The prisoner was released on ..... for good behaviour.
(a) probation (b) bail
(c) parole (d) guarantee

10. Rajeev is too ..... as far as his food habits are concerned.
(a) enjoyable (b) fastidious
(c) curious (d) interesting

11. My father keeps all his ..... papers in a lock and key.
(a) required (b) necessary
(c) useful (d) confidential

12. I ..... you to keep quiet.
(a) beg of (b) beg from
(c) beg (d) beg for

13. The splendour of the Himalayas .....
(a) beggars description (b) needs no description
(c) is so charming (d) inspires awe

14. Every candidate has to poll a minimum number of votes in order to avoid ..... of his security.
(a) penalty (b) cancellation
(c) forefeiture (d) loss

15. He stood ..... as a rock and faced the challenge.
(a) quiet (b) strong
(c) solid (d) firm

16. Having lived a ..... life for forty years he is not able to take any independent decisions.
(a) happy (b) successful
(c) safe (d) cloistered

17. The brilliant students will be ..... scholarships.
(a) honoured (b) awarded
(c) rewarded (d) forwarded

18. Several of our players were injured so our losing the match was almost .....
(a) necessary (b) indispensable
(c) inevitable (d) inexcusable

19. My friend says that he drinks tea because it is the best ..... in the world.
(a) fluid (b) drink
(c) beverage (d) liquid

20. Life is to death as pleasure is to ..... .
(a) suffering (b) pain
(c) poverty (d) anguish

Revision Exercise (B)

1. My mother upset the kettle of boiling water and ..... her right hand badly.
   (a) wounded (b) sizzled
   (c) scorched (d) scalded
2. Please do not ..... an offer made by the Chairman.
   (a) refrain (b) refute
   (c) refuse (d) refuge
3. The government is confident that the standard of living will begin to ..... again soon.
   (a) revive (b) lift
   (c) flourish (d) rise
4. Sharing heavy responsibilities with colleagues does not involve loss of prestige, or ..... of the authority of an institute's Head.
   (a) deterioration (b) decrease
   (c) diminution (d) loss
5. The problem of proliferation of nuclear arms is never going to be solved unless the two super powers agree to ..... .
   (a) a solution (b) understand each other
   (c) sit together (d) meet half-way
6. Your case is so unique that I am not getting any ..... to support it.
   (a) reason (b) help
   (c) happening (d) precedent
7. Take possession of the records immediately lest they should be ..... with.
   (a) tampered (b) destroyed
   (c) manhandled (d) mishandled
8. Let us take him upon his word. I see no room for any ..... in the matter.
   (a) duplicity (b) deviation
   (c) cynicism (d) difference
9. The ..... arguments put forth for not disclosing the facts did not impress anybody.
   (a) intemperate (b) spurious
   (c) specious (d) convincing
10. Director, he said, would ..... the matter at once.
    (a) invigilate (b) explore
    (c) investigate (d) survey
11. Everyone was ..... by surprise when she announced her plan to marry that boy.
    (a) moved (b) shaken
    (c) taken (d) prevailed
12. On second reading his poems strike us as singularly ..... of sublime emotions.
    (a) attributive (b) significative
    (c) symptomatic (d) evocative
13. It is becoming more and more ..... that the Principal is losing the confidence of his staff.
    (a) prominent (b) conspicuous
    (c) manifest (d) apparent

14. Health is too important to be .....
(a) neglected (b) detested
(c) despised (d) discarded

15. Even a ..... glance will reveal the mystery.
(a) crude (b) cursory
(c) critical (d) curious

16. Like any other country India has its ..... share of superstitions.
(a) peculiar (b) fair
(c) proper (d) abundant

17. Hindus believe that ..... from the cycle of birth and rebirth can be attained only by good deeds.
(a) bondage (b) deliverance
(c) delivery (d) retirement

18. It is very ..... to miss one's train by half a minute.
(a) annoying (b) exhausting
(c) exciting (d) exasperating

19. The officer was ..... with immediate effect.
(a) prosecuted (b) charge-sheeted
(c) suspended (d) debarred

20. For more than a decade now, Indian villages have been ..... to television programmes.
(a) accustomed (b) exposed
(c) open (d) attracted

Revision Exercise (C)

1. The pilot was ..... injured, he died within half an hour.
(a) seriously (b) fatally
(c) fatefully (d) vitally

2. His ..... directions misled us; we did not know which road to take.
(a) complex (b) obscure
(d) mingled (d) vague

3. He was very friendly with the press and it really ..... him even for what he did not achieve.
(a) praised (b) lionised
(c) appreciated (d) highlighted

4. The police ..... the mob.
(a) scattered (b) disbanded
(c) drove (d) dispersed

5. I cannot ..... to know much about it.
(a) imagine (b) conceive
(c) pretend (d) contemplate

6. We ..... trouble on our borders.
(a) comprehend (b) supplement
(c) complement (d) apprehend

7. If you drink too much, it will ..... your judgement.
(a) impede (b) impair
(c) impose (d) impel

8. The punch made the boxer ..... with pain.
(a) wince (b) gap
(c) grumble (d) fumble

9. These essays are intellectually ..... and represent various levels of complexity.
(a) revealing (b) modern
(c) superior (d) demanding

10. The soldiers were instructed to ..... restraint and handle the situation peacefully.
(a) exercise (b) control
(c) prevent (d) enforce

11. Since one cannot read every book, one should be content with making a ..... selection.
(a) normal (b) standard
(c) moderate (d) judicious

12. He is too ..... to be deceived easily.
(a) strong (b) modern
(c) intelligent (d) kind

13. There has been a ..... lack of efficiency in all the crucial areas of the working of Public Sector Undertakings.
(a) positive (b) surprising
(c) conspicuous (d) stimulative

14. The shepherd was looking after the ..... of sheep.
(a) crew (b) gang
(c) fleet (d) flock

15. The Managing Director treated the employees to a ..... lunch at an expensive hotel.
(a) precious (b) thriving
(c) stupendous (d) sumptuous

16. Satish was ..... with a natural talent for music.
(a) given (b) found
(c) endowed (d) entrusted

17. She always insisted on the need to ..... between ends and means.
(a) analyse (b) define
(c) distribute (d) distinguish

18. If greater security measures had been taken the tragedy might have been .....
(a) removed (b) repeated
(c) restrained (d) averted

19. The students were asked to ..... the words given in the two columns.
(a) fill (b) correspond
(c) match (d) equal

20. We need an unusually gifted person to solve this ..... problem.
(a) sensitive (b) sensuous
(c) sensible (d) spurious

Revision Exercise (D)

1. A politician's speech must be read ..... the lines, it may have a double ..... .
(a) behind; edge (b) between; meaning
(c) among; ends (d) beyond; face

2. Those who live in ..... houses should not throw ..... at others.
(a) big; abuse (b) own; challenges
(c) stone; bricks (d) glass; stones

3. I write a letter to you ..... tentatively the dates of the programme.
(a) involving (b) urging
(c) guiding (d) indicating

4. Contemporary economic development differs ..... from the Industrial Revolution of the 19th century.
(a) naturally (b) usually
(c) literally (d) markedly

5. Ravi had to drop his plan of going to picnic as he had certain ..... to meet during that period.
(a) preparations (b) observations
(c) urgencies (d) commitments

6. It was ..... hot that day and the cable suffered the brunt of the heat.
(a) treacherously (b) acceptably
(c) unfailingly (d) unbelievably

7. ..... eye-witness, the news reporter gave a graphic description of how fire broke out.
(a) reporting (b) observing
(c) seeing (d) quoting

8. ..... my knowledge, Mr. Ashok has a prejudice ..... foreigners.
(a) in; for (b) as; towards
(c) for; at (d) to; against

9. He gave me an additional ..... of Rs. 100 a month by the ..... of the commissioner.
(a) allowance; permission (b) pay; allowance
(c) payment; agreement (d) salary; admittance

10. There is no glory in war ..... the blood it ..... .
(a) considering; sheds (b) comparing; spills
(c) worth; costs (d) thinking; demands

11. The Director has ..... me to ..... a speech for him.
(a) notified; do (b) demanded; prepare
(c) entrusted; write (d) commissioned; draft

12. I will come tomorrow ..... I hear to the ..... .
(a) unless; contrary (b) until; contradictory
(c) except; oppose (d) despite; otherwise

13. The children are so ..... , their parents are thinking of sending them to a ..... school.
(a) small; high (b) naughty; neighbouring
(c) misruled; lodging (d) unruly; boarding

14. Only ..... people are ..... after death.
(a) vicious; condemned
(b) virile; forgotten
(c) virtuous; remembered
(d) virulent; glorified

15. The Secretary ..... the society's funds, ... he was dismissed.
(a) robbed; thus
(b) pirated; therefore
(c) misplaced; and
(d) embezzled; therefore

16. His life consists of ..... of drinking punctuated by periods of drunken sleep.
(a) barrels
(b) bouts
(c) bowls
(d) pints

17. When the morning ..... the murder was discovered.
(a) occured
(b) came
(c) arrived
(d) happened

18. He lives in the world of ..... .
(a) allusions
(b) illusions
(c) conclusions
(d) delusions

19. There was a serious ..... between the two brothers.
(a) altieration
(b) alteration
(c) altercation
(d) aberration

20. He lost the match easily becuase he had played a ..... five set match in the earlier round.
(a) sensational
(b) gruelling
(c) wonderful
(d) controversial

Revision Exercise (E)

1. In one election after another, officers have been guilty of serious ..... of duty.
(a) dereliction
(b) carelessness
(c) lapses
(d) abandoning

2. Being extremely ..... he examines every detail of the case before forming his opinion.
(a) cautious
(b) meticulous
(c) eccentric
(d) suspicious

3. It is very unfortunate that the two communities which were so friendly till recently are now .....
(a) unfriendly
(b) at daggers drawn
(c) hostile
(d) unhappy

4. ..... by repeated failures he presisted with his research and finally succeeded is isolating the mosquito responsible for carrying malaria.
(a) unaffected
(b) unmoved
(c) uninfluenced
(d) undaunted

5. Because of the bitter experiences of the past he ..... everywhere.
(a) disbelieves
(b) smells a rat
(c) sees a danger
(d) suspects foul

6. On seeing the police approach, the miscreants .....
(a) cooled their heels
(b) wore at their heels
(c) took to their heels
(d) took upon their heels

7. The committee's appeal to the people for money ..... little response.
(a) evoked (b) provoked
(c) gained (d) provided

8. Colgate has also got an ambitious aim of ..... an eight per cent value share of the tooth-paste market by the end of the first year.
(a) keeping (b) distributing
(c) cornering (d) soliciting

9. He is very ..... on meeting foreigners and befriending them.
(a) anxious (b) find
(c) insistent (d) keen

10. If a speech is full of pompous words, it is .....
(a) verbose (b) bombastic
(c) grandiose (d) grandiloquent

11. We don't know what ..... him to commit this crime.
(a) excited (b) roused
(c) prompted (d) attracted

12. He is like a body without a soul, an eye without light or a flower without .....
(a) smell (b) fragrance
(c) petal (d) oclour

13. This is the ..... chosen for the hospital complex to be built next year.
(a) area (b) locality
(c) site (d) sight

14. The photographs in the papers bore no ..... at all to the original.
(a) nearness (b) comparison
(c) identity (d) resemblance

15. Oh! such a pretty girl. Whom has she ..... ?
(a) taken after (b) took after
(c) taken by (d) took by

16. It is difficult to believe what he tells us because his account of any event is always full of ..... of all sorts.
(a) discrepancies (b) differences
(c) discretions (d) distinction

17. The country needs a ..... government to tackle the challenges it faces today.
(a) sustained (b) stable
(c) stationary (d) stagnant

18. ..... an accident the train will arrive in time.
(a) besides (b) accepting
(c) despite (d) barring

19. It has now been ..... that fifty-two people died in the crash.
(a) assured (b) confirmed
(c) counted (d) ensured

20. A certain sailor was on a voyage in his ship when a ..... arose.
(a) storm (b) tempest
(c) gale (d) wave

Revision Exercise (F)

1. The Deputy Manager ..... to resign because all his proposals were ..... down by his superiors.
   (a) offered; thrown
   (b) gave; held
   (c) began; kept
   (d) willing; knocked
   (e) threatened; turned

2. The counter clerk was very busy and ..... not pay ..... to Sameer's request.
   (a) can; help
   (b) could; respect
   (c) had; cash
   (d) did; attention
   (e) certainly; acceptance

3. He was initially ..... at the suggestion but was soon ..... it himself.
   (a) frowning; rejecting
   (b) shocked; advocating
   (c) impressed; negating
   (d) thrilled; propagating
   (e) suspicious; trusting

4. Shalini was not ..... by the criticism and paid no ..... even when her best friend talked against her.
   (a) bothered; attention
   (b) troubled; mind
   (c) threatened; warning
   (d) deterred; heed

5. She was ..... because all her plan had gone ..... .
   (a) elated; wild
   (b) dejected; splendidly
   (c) distraught; awry
   (d) frustrated; magnificently

6. He preaches liberal views but in practice, he is not ..... and is ..... narrow-minded than almost any other person.
   (a) hard; openly
   (b) tolerant; more
   (c) ambitious; hardly
   (d) acceptable; genuinely

7. Shakti is a ..... and he always does what is ..... and fruitful.
   (a) optimist; hopeful
   (b) pragmatist; practical
   (c) erudite; educative
   (d) idealist; theoretical

8. The birth of a daughter is no more a/an ..... occasion because education has ..... the people.
   (a) magnificent; liberalised
   (b) benign; esteemed
   (c) ominous; enlightened
   (d) propitous; blinded

9. He is always ..... to his uncle because he considers him a ..... fellow.
   (a) disrespectful; venerable
   (b) respectful; dishonourable
   (c) respectful; venerable
   (d) impudent; respectable

10. When she explained truthfully all that had happened my ..... were ..... .
    (a) story; true
    (b) doubts; dispelled
    (c) doubts; discouraged
    (d) suspicion; arouse

11. The police was at last able to ..... the ..... of her disappearance from her husband's home.
    (a) reveal; secret
    (b) expose; mystery
    (c) confirm; doubt
    (d) solve; mystery

12. The relations between two friends are ever so ..... that a slight misunderstanding can ..... them.
(a) tenuous; embitter
(b) fragile; cement
(c) tanacious; break
(d) strong; sweeten

13. Ravi ..... a bit ..... he was not invited by his friend to attend the party.
(a) took; before
(b) angered; since
(c) expressed; than
(d) grumbled; when

14. He is ..... to ..... any kind of work with due sincerity.
(a) fond; perform
(b) reluctant; entrust
(c) determined; undertake
(d) eager; avoid

15. Children are more ..... than adults, it is ..... their quickness in learning a new language.
(a) intelligent; disproved by
(b) adaptable; reflected in
(c) conservative; seen in
(d) susceptible; demonstrated in

16. ..... of crops was due to continuous ..... .
(a) destruction; draught
(b) ruin; draft
(c) failure; drought
(d) depreciation; drift

17. Though she is ..... by nature but she does not like that any stranger should ..... on her privacy.
(a) salubrious; interfere
(b) garrulose; meddle
(c) gregarious; intrude
(d) lagubrious; lonely

18. The ..... writers still believe in the ..... of grammatical rules.
(a) conventional; observance
(b) original; observation
(c) classical; copying
(d) romantic; ignoring

19. She was declared heretic and charged with ..... by ..... court.
(a) crime; judicial
(b) murder; district
(c) blasphemy; eccliastical
(d) defamation; church

20. She is admired for her ..... and always avoids those who are ..... .
(a) candour; hypocrites
(b) plain; hypocrisy
(c) optimism; proud
(d) strength; weak

Revision Exercise (G)

1. ..... politicians alone can survive in politics where ..... rules the roost.
(a) clever; practical
(b) wily; treacherous
(c) wily; treachery
(d) ideal; prestigious

2. I am not ..... about your success because your ..... approach to study is disappointing.
(a) despaired; irresolute
(b) hopeful; regular
(c) optimistic; perfunctory
(d) happy; reckless

3. Prabha's ..... in athetics yielded rich ..... as she got a scholarship.
(a) performance; money
(b) defeat; results
(c) behaviour; appreciation
(d) excellence; dividends

4. The police ..... any attempt of arson by ..... at the trouble spot quite in time.
(a) squashed; surrounding
(b) made; encircling
(c) pre-empted; arriving
(d) thwarted; presenting

5. The war ..... immediately after the cease-fire proposal was ..... bilaterally.
(a) receded; exchanged
(b) started; prepared
(c) ended; accepted
(d) extended; mitigated

6. The ..... imposed for non-payment was too ..... for it to bring in improvement in collection.
(a) fine; severe
(b) toll; simple
(c) penalty; low
(d) damage; cruel

7. Somesh ..... me coming to his table, he smiled and ..... me a chair.
(a) found; signalled
(b) met; sat
(c) looked; gave
(d) saw; offered

8. The leaders were ..... needed by those to ..... they addressed.
(a) angrily; who
(b) readily; which
(c) scarcely; whom
(d) rarely; where

9. Neena's plea for ..... fell on deaf ears as her husband was not ..... enough to overlook her minor omission.
(a) clemency; gracious
(b) mercy; unkind
(c) forgiveness; pardonable
(d) apology; forgivable

10. The attempt of the robbers was ..... because the travellers showed enough ..... .
(a) foiled; fortitude
(b) encouraged; cowardice
(c) averted; farsight
(d) checked; foresight

11. Now-a-days progress in life depends more on ..... rather than on ..... .
(a) favouritism; ability
(b) consideration; capability
(c) utility; sincerity
(d) pragmatism; ideal

12. The reasons why syllabi are ..... in India because U.G.C. has failed to live upto the ..... of the people.
(a) outdated; expectations
(b) outmoded; ambition
(c) practical; hopes
(d) obsolete; desires

13. The Indian Railways have yet to ..... an effective mechanism to avert a series of ..... leading to horrifying tragedy.
(a) evolve; lapses
(b) develope; mistake
(c) improve; omissions
(d) contrive; errors

14. I am not ..... to sell you my house unless you offer a more ..... price.
(a) conform; true
(b) prepared; realistic
(c) ready; correct
(d) having; actual

15. Due to ..... rainfall this year, there will be ..... cut in water supply.
(a) enough; substantial
(b) meagre; least
(c) sufficient; no
(d) surplus; abundant

16. In a changing and ..... unstructured business environment, creativity and innovation are being ..... demanded of executives.
(a) excessively; rapidly
(b) highly; extremely
(c) increasingly; moderately
(d) progressively; increasingly

17. We are ..... to have him ..... here to make his function a great success.
(a) proud; have (b) happy; arrive
(c) sure; come (d) pleased; over

18. If you behave in such a ..... manner, you may ..... the few friends you have.
(a) haughty; make (b) haughty; alienate
(c) pleasing; lose (d) belligerent; win

19. Wordly persons are motivated by ..... rather than ..... considerations.
(a) expediency; ethical (b) prudent; expensive
(c) ethical; practical (d) ideal; pragmatist

20. The ..... thinkers are not interested in propagating ..... ideas among the masses.
(a) practical; ideal (b) original; hackneyed
(c) religious; spiritual (d) secular; political

Revision Exercise (H)

1. She is ..... and simple in looks though her husband is ..... .
(a) plain; flamboyant (b) garrulous; talkative
(c) taciturn; silent (d) credulous; gullible

2. To ..... yourself from ..... wear warm clothes.
(a) prohibit; heat (b) protect; cold
(c) save; heat (d) suffer; cold

3. We ..... him with many promises, but nothing would ..... him.
(a) tempted; influence (b) provoked; move
(c) attracted; fascinate (d) gave; deprive

4. In his ....., he followed the ..... course.
(a) agony; funny (b) ignorance; wrong
(c) hurry; diversified (d) predicament; proper

5. The construction of the hall has been ..... because of the ..... of cement in the market.
(a) held; non-availability (b) denied; restrictions
(c) hampered; shortage (d) prevented; supply

6. Only when ..... failed, the police restored to ..... .
(a) efforts; power (b) arrests; imprisonment
(c) persuasions; force (d) power; punishment

7. The partners broke off as they found each other ..... of ..... breach of promise.
(a) faulty; severe (b) responsible; serious
(c) guilty; flagrant (d) accused; rigid

8. They wanted to ..... all these books, but they could not find ..... time to do so.
(a) cover; almost (b) pursue; necessary
(c) dispose; some (d) read; sufficient

9. Though he is reputed for his technical ....., his books were sadly ..... of the work of others as he lacked originality.
(a) advice; unconscious (b) skill; independent
(c) knowledge; ignorant (d) expertise; derivative

10. He had managed to ..... several times, but was finally ..... by the police.
(a) deceive; cheated
(b) defend; acquitted
(c) escape; arrested
(d) cheat; robbed

11. The candidate's ..... at the polls was ..... as he won with a striking margin.
(a) claim; unrealistic
(b) victory; overwhelming
(c) image; real
(d) strategy; unsuccessful

12. In ..... of international matters, there is always an element of risk in ..... one might to do.
(a) view; whichever
(b) many; doing
(c) defence; wrong
(d) case; whatever

13. We must prevent endangered wild animal species from becoming ..... in order that our future generation may ..... the great diversity of animal life.
(a) rare; escape
(b) outdated; know
(c) extinct; enjoy
(d) powerful; protect

14. We cannot ..... such a/an ..... act of violence.
(a) tolerate; insipid
(b) consider; important
(c) commit; magnificent
(d) pardon; egregious

15. The secretary ..... the society's funds, ... he was dismissed.
(a) misplaced; soon
(b) rolled; thus
(c) pirated; therefore
(d) misappropriated; so

16. The ..... words of the mother comforted the ..... child.
(a) harsh; naughty
(b) sweet; happy
(c) soft; energetic
(d) melodious; playful

17. Moreover, a fact-finding mission ..... by BSN to India in January this year strongly recommended that the French group should go it alone, and not hand over ..... to an Indian partner.
(a) constituted; authority
(b) organised; papers
(c) dispatched; control
(d) sponsored; power

18. It is indeed ..... that fifty years after independence, we have failed to ..... a suitable education or examination system.
(a) bad; produce
(b) improper; create
(c) sad; evolve
(d) objectionable; present

19. The bandit ..... the traveller of his purse of gold and ..... him grievously.
(a) snatched; hurt
(b) stole; injured
(c) demanded; beat
(d) robbed; wounded

20. Santosh looked very happy and ..... when he heard that his proposed scheme was ..... by the committee.
(a) energetic; rejected
(b) elated; accepted
(c) satisfied; stalled
(d) disconsolate; approved

Revision Exercise (I)

1. It is ..... for every tax payer to ..... the tax returns to the Income Tax Department.
(a) necessary; lodge
(b) binding; pay
(c) obligatory; submit
(d) possible; remit

2. The ..... of glory lead but to the ..... .
(a) ways; happiness
(b) acts; prosperity
(c) paths; grave
(d) achievements; suffering

3. Cholestrol has long been identified as a silent killer because the patient has no ..... of the danger freely ..... his system.
(a) idea; infecting
(b) thought; attacks
(c) information; invading
(d) inkling; traversing

4. Synthetic milk ..... real milk in all ..... except taste and nutritional qualities.
(a) resembles; respects
(b) exempted; respect
(c) copies; manners
(d) marks; qualities

5. If we do not take ..... care in our industry, we will have to ..... a grave problem.
(a) normal; experience
(b) proper; face
(c) adequate; catch
(d) intensive; aggravate

6. He shifted to his late parents' house not because of the ..... it provided but for purely ..... reasons.
(a) convenience; sentimental
(b) grace; aesthetic
(c) value; monetary
(d) comforts; personal

7. Some people have the ..... for learning foreign languages but they have no ..... in speaking.
(a) mania; urge
(b) aptitude; interest
(c) stamina; fondness
(d) capacity; ability

8. The increasing revival of dramatic classics is, to one critic, ...; it seems to him a sign of the ..... of the modern theatre.
(a) auspicious; resurgence
(b) deplorable; anaemia
(c) incomprehensible; paradox
(d) astounding; vitality

9. We must explore ..... sources of energy as our supply of fossil fuel has been ..... .
(a) alternate; depleted
(b) guaranteed; over
(c) natural; exhausted
(d) sufficient; increased

10. This partly explains how the Mehra family has been able to ..... its lavish life-style in recent times, despite the fact that all its assets have been ..... .
(a) keep up; destroyed
(b) develop; liquidated
(c) afford; attached
(d) keep; removed

11. The activities of the association have ..... from the ..... objectives set for it in the initial years.
(a) grown; simple
(b) deviated; original
(c) details; grand
(d) emerged; total

12. Those suffering from glaucoma find that their ..... vision is ..... and that they can no longer see objects not directly in front of them.
(a) optical; distorted
(b) peripheral; impaired
(c) prephrastic; demurred
(d) peripatetic; diminished

13. ..... the broker had warned him that the stock was a ..... investment, he insisted on buying a thousand shares.
(a) because; prudent
(b) since; negligible
(c) although; precarious
(d) as; vulnerable

14. Due to ..... rainfall this year, they had to ..... cut in water supply.
(a) scantly; lift
(b) heavy; regulate
(c) inadequate; impose
(d) sufficient; enforce

15. He is so ..... that everyone is always ..... to help in his work.
(a) helpful; reluctant
(b) aloof; co-operative
(c) magnanimous; eager
(d) miserly; ignorant

16. Instead of ....., prove your worth by ..... something.
(a) begging; demanding
(b) talking; doing
(c) worrying; paying
(d) writing; reading

17. The great scientist ..... himself with ability and moderation all ..... the conference.
(a) felt; about
(b) displayed; in
(c) disclosed; besides
(d) conducted; through

18. The speech ..... with subtle threats has resulted in ..... tension in the sensitive areas of the city.
(a) started; reduced
(b) replete; increased
(c) full; escalating
(d) forced; dissolving

19. The minister felt that the ..... made by the committee was ..... even though similar schemes had worked earlier.
(a) decision; gainful
(b) choice; profitable
(c) recommendation; infeasible
(d) election; acceptable

20. We can ..... to travel by air, but we ..... train journey.
(a) plan; enjoy
(b) aspire; commute
(c) afford; prefer
(d) decide; undertook

Revision Exercise (J)

1. He was so convinced that people were driven by ..... motives that he believed there was no such thing as a purely ..... act.
(a) personal; anti-social
(b) personal; eternal
(c) altruistic; praiseworthy
(d) ulterior; selfless

2. Any system is likely to ..... for ..... of support from the public.
(a) survive; lack
(b) succeed; reason
(c) fail; want
(d) finish; failure

3. Since we ..... read every book, we ..... only the famous ones.
(a) have; sold
(b) should; buy
(c) cannot; select
(d) can; purchase

4. The education minister emphasised the need to discover and ..... each student's ..... talents.
(a) enlarge; dormant
(b) belittle; concealed
(c) develop; intrinsic
(d) flourish; hidden

5. The mill workers were not ..... with their low wages and non-payment of wages for last three months ..... fuel to the flames.
(a) good; put
(b) satisfied; added
(c) joyful; poured
(d) pleased; directed
(e) unhappy; meant

6. He is usually ....., but today he appears rather ..... .
(a) strict; unwell
(b) tense; restless
(c) calm; disturbed
(d) happy; humorous

7. The changes made in the system were so ..... that they did'nt require any ..... .
(a) big; time
(b) genuine; intelligence
(c) obvious; modifications
(d) certain; expertise

8. He was ..... of playing ..... and loose with the sentiments of his dearest friends.
(a) complained; thick
(b) accused; tight
(c) innocent; false
(d) guilty; fast

9. He granted the request because he was ..... to ..... his friend.
(a) bound; hurt
(b) destined; agonise
(c) reluctant; disappoint
(d) unwilling; please

10. I would like to ..... your attention to the second paragraph of my letter ..... to the terms of sale of the machinery.
(a) invite; according
(b) withdraw; regarding
(c) react; mainly
(d) draw; pertaining

11. I don't ..... I shall be ..... to go.
(a) know; wanting
(b) consider; desirous
(c) think; able
(d) believe; liking

12. After several ..... attempts to ..... the rebels, Army was deployed to rout them.
(a) successful; control
(b) abortive; subjugate
(c) futile; control
(d) fruitless; down

13. It is pity that masses are often ..... by the ..... arguments of the politicians.
(a) beguiled; specious
(b) pleased; false
(c) deluded; illusory
(d) deceived; desulting

14. The ..... attitude of the Government in tackling the problem of the Army personnel has made them ..... .
(a) haughty; pathetic
(b) adamant; afraid
(c) arbitrary; restive
(d) uncared; restless

15. Every member of the team showered ..... on Arnav for his ..... performance.
(a) praise; exceptionable
(b) appreciation; remarkable
(c) encomium; exceptional
(d) approval; unique

16. Speaker after speaker ..... the ..... behaviour of the Minister with the Air Hostess.
(a) blamed; unsuitable
(b) censured; unbecoming
(c) criticised; graceless
(d) reproached; unmoral

17. The ..... behaviour of Principal is ..... to callousness towards the bereaved family of the teacher.
(a) cruel; equal
(b) apathetic; tantamount
(c) heartless; like
(d) antipathetic; compared

18. The ..... is the nickname given to any object or place according to its ..... characteristics.
(a) title; clear
(b) sobriquet; unique
(c) caption; special
(d) psuedonym; poetical

19. The ..... to judge the ability of a candidate is ..... laid down by Government.
(a) criterion; specifically
(b) criteria; clearly
(c) measurement; ably
(d) system; specially

20. The oblique ..... implied in her talk wounded the ..... of the family.
(a) sarcasm; pride
(b) meaning; respect
(c) significance; feelings
(d) suspicion; sentiments

❑

Chapter

7

Cloze Test

Cloze Test is primarily meant to test a candidate's knowledge of comprehension with regard to grammar, usage and vocabulary. The examinees are required to make a choice from multiple alternatives for each word to be filled in the blank, not in a sentence but in a passage. The blanks are numbered which are to be filled in with the most suitable alternative.

Directions : *In the following passages there are blanks each of which has been numbered. The suitable word for the blank has been mentioned against the number below every passage. A student is required to fill the blank choosing the appropriate word in the context of the whole passage.*

Passage 1

The .....1..... to marriage in urban India is turning turtle. The financial imperatives of modern, urban living demand that both .....2..... should have a career. The crunch comes when the career woman demands an entity distinct from her husband and a measure of financial independence.

The woman's .....3..... is that the man as the bread-winner should be .....4..... the household expenses, while what she earns is the jam over the bread and butter. And, she gets to choose the brand of jam.

Mrinalini Singh, a manager with a high .....5..... company, says, "My husband earns enough to keep the home .....6..... burning. When I take on the responsibility of home as well as office, it is not just to sink in all the money I earn into the home kitty. I definitely want a .....7..... in where my money goes. As a high profile executive, I need to keep up a certain .....8..... personally as well as of my husband and children. I also need to .....9..... the image of my home because of the people who visit me. Where .....10..... would the money for all this come from ?"

1.	(a) demands	(b) economics	(c) attitude
2.	(a) partners	(b) pairs	(c) couples
3.	(a) example	(b) idea	(c) stance
4.	(a) shouldering	(b) bearing	(c) sharing
5.	(a) powered	(b) profile	(c) income
6.	(a) cooking	(b) stove	(c) fires
7.	(a) say	(b) answer	(c) statement
8.	(a) reputation	(b) image	(c) face
9.	(a) keep up	(b) keep on	(c) keep for
10.	(a) from	(b) else	(c) for

Passage 2

Broadcasting of which we have begun to .....1..... so much now-a-days is an invention of recent .....2..... and development. Half a century ago no one could ever .....3..... how important it would become in the life of the people of the twentieth century. Now-a-days its value in the sphere of education, entertainment and state administration is .....4..... recognized and accepted.

To Marconi falls the credit for the .....5..... of the wireless. He is the Edison of the wireless world. It was in 1896. that Marconi first took out a patent for it. He soon succeeded in sending messages .....6..... the Atlantic ocean to America.

From Marconi's first .....7..... to broadcasting as we know it is a long road. But scientists travelled along it .....8..... by difficulties and obstacles on the way.

Wireless service was .....9..... between India and England in 1927. Later, a broadcasting service was maintained by an Indian Broadcasting Company. The company failed and the Government of India stepped into the .....10.....

1.	(a) hear	(b) listen	(c) admire
2.	(a) period	(b) age	(c) origin
3.	(a) imagine	(b) know	(c) think
4.	(a) well	(b) universally	(c) rightly
5.	(a) invention	(b) finding	(c) discovery
6.	(a) to	(b) across	(c) over
7.	(a) step	(b) achievement	(c) success
8.	(a) unafraid	(b) undeterred	(c) unchecked
9.	(a) introduced	(b) originated	(c) started
10.	(a) feet	(b) shoes	(c) foot prints

Passage 3

One of the major causes of the failure of .....1..... countries on economic front is their .....2..... to evolve a judicious mixture of .....3..... substitution and export promotion. Zambia which .....4..... on imports after its independence twenty years .....5..... has depleted 50% of its national .....6....., whereas South Korea, which started its .....7..... development from a war ravaged status .....8..... the fifties by equalizing high exports .....9..... high imports, is one of the .....10..... nations today.

1.	(a) developed	(b) developing
	(c) advanced	(d) advancing
2.	(a) inability	(b) disadvantage
	(c) incapacity	(d) handicap
3.	(a) scientific	(b) invention
	(c) export	(d) import
4.	(a) expected	(b) traded
	(c) banked	(d) carried
5.	(a) later	(b) ago
	(c) earlier	(d) since

6. (a) capital (b) deposit
   (c) income (d) credit
7. (a) financial (b) fiscal
   (c) economic (d) economical
8. (a) upto (b) over
   (c) on (d) in
9. (a) over (b) with
   (c) and (d) into
10. (a) richest (b) innovative
    (c) prolific (d) advancing

Passage 4

Many of us believe that science is something modern .....1..... the truth is that .....2..... has been using science for .....3..... very long time. However, it has .....4..... a greater effect on human lives in the last twenty-five .....5..... thirty years than in the hundreds of years .....6..... the invention of the plough. The .....7..... gifts of science have made modern life .....8..... and comfortable. But science has .....9..... the same time created new problems. One of these, which may become .....10..... in the years to come, is that of 'jet-lag'.

1. (a) if (b) though (c) unless
2. (a) men (b) people (c) man
3. (a) the (b) a (c) that
4. (a) even (b) have (c) had
5. (a) and (b) or (c) either
6. (a) from (b) for (c) since
7. (a) marvellous (b) costly (c) inexpensive
8. (a) dull (b) exciting (c) aimless
9. (a) at (b) in (c) within
10. (a) bad (b) worse (c) good

Passage 5

Come October and you are burnt by the mid-day Sun. The storm and the sizzle is particularly .....1..... as it comes after the relatively cool monsoon months. Though it is hot and muggy, that does not .....2..... people from coming out on the streets to .....3..... the traditional festivals. And it must be shopping time also, colourfully decorated showrooms are .....4..... the passerby to let his hair down, splurge and take a .....5..... of gifts home for the family. After all, the New year's just .....6..... the corner.

1. (a) traumatic (b) sultry
   (c) pleasant (d) fantastic
2. (a) oppose (b) deny
   (c) prevent (d) reject
3. (a) boycott (b) moot
   (c) herald (d) invite

4. (a) drawing (b) fascinating
   (c) pursuing (d) exhorting
5. (a) token (b) list
   (c) bagful (d) placement
6. (a) round (b) at
   (c) near (d) along

Passage 6

Ancestors and dead relations were believed to punish their living .....1..... for sins, both of commission and .....2..... The ancestors were the guardians of .....3..... society's morality and they chastised those .....4..... failed in their duty. The explanation .....5..... heard was "He told lies about the .....6..... and the ancestors killed him", or .....7..... uncle's ghost killed him because he .....8..... to look after his children or his .....9..... felt disgraced by his conduct .....10..... killed him.

1. (a) people (b) descendants
   (c) acquaintances (d) friends
2. (a) remission (b) permission
   (c) omission (d) mission
3. (a) a (b) the
   (c) any (d) some
4. (a) which (b) what
   (c) have (d) who
5. (a) often (b) always
   (c) inevitably (d) seldom
6. (a) riches (b) property
   (c) wealth (d) land
7. (a) the (b) that
   (c) his (d) their
8. (a) failed (b) rejected
   (c) tried (d) objected
9. (a) friends (b) ancestors
   (c) tribesmen (d) someone
10. (a) enemies (b) someone
    (c) ghosts (d) they

Passage 7

The .....1..... of today is a huge financial undertaking with the same outlook as any other limited company. The .....2..... staff have to make circulation and if they do not, they will soon be .....3..... by those who can. Their independence, therefore, suffers a grave limitation. It is further .....4..... by the fact that a newspaper is as much an advertising medium as a vehicle for .....5..... It is said that the .....6..... which the public pays for its newspaper covers no more than a third of the .....7..... of production, the other two-thirds is accounted .....8..... by advertisement revenue.

1. (a) newspaper (b) hospital (c) school
(d) theatre (e) library
2. (a) medical (b) performing (c) teaching
(d) editorial (e) company
3. (a) sustained (b) treated (c) cured
(d) covered (e) supplanted
4. (a) destroyed (b) deepened (c) curtailed
(d) failed (e) aggravated
5. (a) news (b) epidemics (c) training
(d) business (e) patients
6. (a) value (b) tax (c) price
(d) cost (e) fee
7. (a) expenses (b) sale (c) amount
(d) price (e) cost
8. (a) into (b) in (c) from
(d) for (e) with

Passage 8

There is a reader who displays the utmost enthusiasm on meeting you. He appears so warm and gratified that you think that here, after all, you have met your ideal reader. It has always been your .....1..... that you would come across this .....2..... person some day, a man who by his very .....3..... would make you feel that you .....4..... some important work, vital .....5..... human welfare. But it .....6..... to be a very short lived .....7..... . Disillusionment is actually round .....8..... corner. While you are hoping .....9..... you are about to have the .....10..... of listening to his .....11..... to your latest weekly effort he .....12..... suddenly. "I am proud to meet you .....13..... may I know what you .....14..... write about?" This is an answerable .....15..... .

1. (a) idea (b) feeling (c) hope
2. (a) wonderful (b) ideal (c) good
3. (a) warmth (b) enthusiasm (c) contact
4. (a) did (b) were (c) have been doing
5. (a) to (b) for (c) on
6. (a) turns out (b) turns on (c) turns over
7. (a) satisfaction (b) gratification (c) experience
8. (a) a (b) the (c) this
9. (a) that (b) for (c) because
10. (a) joy (b) happiness (c) pleasure
11. (a) behaviour (b) reaction (c) view
12. (a) asks (b) says (c) tells
13. (a) yet (b) still (c) but
14. (a) generally (b) invariably (c) usually
15. (a) statement (b) pronouncement (c) question

Passage 9

Everyone considers food, shelter, clothing and medical care to be the basic needs for a comfortable living. Even the government accepts this and .....1..... to provide all these. But very .....2..... people know that energy required for .....3..... and heating is also one of .....4..... basic needs. We are all aware .....5..... our country has achieved self-sufficiency in .....6..... but we have to go a .....7..... way yet in order to achieve .....8..... in the field of energy. Man .....9..... always been in search of more .....10..... in order to free himself from the burden of manual labour. He has invented machines to do his work.

1. (a) lies (b) loves (c) hates (d) promises
2. (a) little (b) some (c) few (d) any
3. (a) cooking (b) living (c) eating (d) slept
4. (a) their (b) such (c) a (d) our
5. (a) this (b) that (c) of (d) in
6. (a) food (b) resources (c) weapons (d) heating
7. (a) some (b) all (c) long (d) hard
8. (a) pleasure (b) joy (c) much (d) self-sufficiency
9. (a) have (b) had (c) has (d) was
10. (a) machines (b) oil (c) heat (d) labour

Passage 10

Democracy has its dangers, the greatest of which is that it may be the rule of ignorance. Citizens who are not .....1..... intelligent and educated are .....2..... to commit errors of judgement in the casting of votes. The best men may thus .....3..... to get elected. Elections are usually a .....4..... of propaganda. Another criticism of democracy is that it is wanting .....5..... efficiency. For prompt and effective action, unity of action is .....6..... . In a multitude of minds, much .....7..... discussion takes place, whereas unity of control is needed for vigorous national life. This criticism, however, is not very .....8..... because in times of war the British Prime Minister usually .....9..... the power of a dictator. Another criticism of democracy in times of war is that secrecy in military affairs becomes difficult, if not .....10....., and that the opposition usually lowers the morale of the people by its condemnation of the actions of the cabinet.

1. (a) barely (b) sufficiently (c) highly (d) perfectly
2. (a) sure (b) deliberately (c) unlikely (d) likely

3. (a) fail (b) succeed
   (c) try (d) desire
4. (a) kind (b) process
   (c) matter (d) result
5. (a) of (b) for
   (c) at (d) in
6. (a) enough (b) dispensable
   (c) essential (d) superfluous
7. (a) profitable (b) unprofitable
   (c) detailed (d) exhaustive
8. (a) unfair (b) absurd
   (c) strong (d) convincing
9. (a) gains (b) wields
   (c) demands (d) misuses
10. (a) easy (b) probable
    (c) impossible (d) obscure

Passage 11

The human mind seems to have built in .....1..... against original thought; for instance, we .....2..... equipped with a wonderful .....3..... for accepting evidence which agrees with our .....4..... . Almost unconsciously we allow our thinking to be .....5..... on what we first thought, or were .....6..... when we approached the subject. If .....7..... man could be freed from the yoke .....8..... his age-old assumptions, prejudices, traditional imagery and .....9..... about what is right and what is wrong .....10..... might wake up one day to find that even the greatest and gentlest of his aspirations was possible.

1. (a) interests (b) safeguards
   (c) prejudices (d) ideas
2. (a) have (b) had
   (c) may have (d) have been
3. (a) capacity (b) sense
   (c) sensibility (d) capability
4. (a) views (b) thoughts
   (c) conceptions (d) preconceptions
5. (a) based (b) biased
   (c) rooted (d) fixed
6. (a) spoke (b) told
   (c) expressed (d) said
7. (a) sometimes (b) only
   (c) frequently (d) when
8. (a) on (b) in
   (c) under (d) of
9. (a) negation (b) certainly
   (c) doubt (d) positively
10. (a) he (b) man
    (c) men (d) they

Passage 12

One cold winter afternoon, the postman, was slowly pushing his bicycle up the hill that led out to the village. He was walking very carefully, because there was a lot of ice on the ground. He had only one more letter to deliver; this was for an .....1..... lady who lived at the .....2..... of the hill. Everyone called .....3..... 'grandmother'. She had lived alone .....4..... since her daughter had emigrated to Australia many years before. She .....5..... used to invite the postman for a cup of tea whenever he took her a letter and .....6..... him about her two grand children in Australia, whom she had never seen.

1. (a) ancient (b) important (c) old
2. (a) foot (b) top (c) end
3. (a) her (b) the woman (c) the lady
4. (a) even (b) ever (c) about
5. (a) always (b) rarely (c) frequently
6. (a) tell (b) suggest (c) inform

Passage 13

One's body can be kept healthy by adopting breathing programmes that use the respiratory system to its maximum potential, letting in .....1..... oxygen .....2..... the body as possible while removing as much .....3..... carbon dioxide as possible. The most effective is the total Breath Control. Practice it .....4..... it becomes second nature. .....5..... that happens, you .....6..... find that you are less tired.

1. (a) as much (b) as little as (c) into
2. (a) in (b) through (c) into
3. (a) useful (b) necessary (c) waste
4. (a) as soon as (b) until (c) after
5. (a) then (b) when (c) where
6. (a) can (b) should (c) must

Passage 14

One day while I was discussing a new strategy to locate the wild dogs, a forest guard at Sariska informed me that about 15-16 metres to the right of Pandupole Road, a chital lay killed apparently by wild dogs. This was difficult to .....1..... because wild dogs usually do not leave .....2..... any kill. They finish it .....3..... to the bone. Still an examination would .....4..... interesting information and vital clues about the .....5....., so I proceeded in the direction pointed .....6..... by the guard. Scanning the area I .....7..... across the dead chital. The .....8..... had been opened but not .....9..... eaten. Its owner had .....10..... dressed the dinner ready for eating. I looked about for marks and .....11..... I found them, the marks .....12..... indicated the presence of a canine. But .....13..... Jackals or wild dogs ? Since jackals were active in Sariska independently .....14..... chital kills, the actual presence .....15..... the wild dog still remained doubtful.

1. (a) believe (b) presume (c) know
2. (a) away (b) behind (c) after

3. (a) up (b) over (c) off
4. (a) prove (b) reveal (c) involve
5. (a) predator (b) chital (c) man-eater
6. (a) out (b) to (c) at
7. (a) found (b) located (c) came
8. (a) body (b) corpse (c) carcass
9. (a) now (b) yet (c) at all
10. (a) probably (b) surely (c) really
11. (a) when (b) where (c) which
12. (a) frankly (b) openly (c) clearly
13. (a) what (b) which (d) who
14. (a) having (b) hunting (c) making
15. (a) of (b) about (c) regarding

Passage 15

For generations man has .....1..... against the wilds to create a world where only he .....2..... whether animals and plants survive or are .....3..... out. Earlier we accepted as self-evident that any .....4..... in our environment brought about by science and technology must be improvements .....5..... the world of our .....6..... However, many people all over the world have begun to feel that .....7..... are going too far, and that we should try to .....8..... some of the world's original life before we find it .....9..... too late. The same science which had led us away from nature is now .....10..... the miracle of creation.

1. (a) faced (b) stood
   (c) struggled (d) challenged
2. (a) decides (b) thinks
   (c) advises (d) observes
3. (a) taken (b) wiped
   (c) put (d) thrown
4. (a) differences (b) increments
   (c) changes (d) replacements
5. (a) in (b) at
   (c) over (d) for
6. (a) aborigins (b) ancients
   (c) successors (d) ancestors
7. (a) ourselves (b) we
   (c) us (d) some
8. (a) demolish (b) cherish
   (c) save (d) renovate
9. (a) occurs (b) sounds
   (c) seems (d) gets
10. (a) unfolding (b) discussing
    (c) arguing (d) narrating

Passage 16

We are citizens of no mean country and we are .....1..... of the land of our birth, of our people, our culture and our .....2..... That pride should not be for a romanticised past to which we have to .....3....., nor should it encourage exclusiveness or a want of .....4..... of other ways than our own. it must never allow us to .....5..... our many weaknesses and failing or .....6..... our longing to be rid of them. We have a long way to go and much leeway to make .....7..... before we take our proper .....8..... with others in the van of human civilization and progress. And we have to .....9..... for the time at our disposal is .....10.....

1. (a) aware (b) proud (c) reminded (d) fond
2. (a) customs (b) ceremonies (c) traditions (d) festivals
3. (a) return (b) glorify (c) sing (d) cling
4. (a) appreciation (b) enthusiasm (c) criticism (d) condemnation
5. (a) reject (b) forget (c) avoid (d) remember
6. (a) blunt (b) demolish (c) disappear (d) spur
7. (a) out (b) for (c) up (d) of
8. (a) role (b) site (c) equation (d) station
9. (a) tarry (b) hurry (c) ponder (d) debate
10. (a) scarce (b) sufficient (c) plenty (d) limited

Passage 17

Something has happened in the last twenty years that surely must .....1..... anything that has happened before. Some historians are already saying that thrust .....2..... space represents a vital turning point in history. Moon flights are considered .....3..... less than steps in human evolution .....4..... to the time when life on earth emerged from the sea and established itself on land. Of course, not everyone .....5..... enraptured by space. Critics have often said that space flight has been an .....6..... use of resources that should have .....7..... to feeding, clothing and housing people. There is, however, no proof that if we had .....8..... been working on space we would have done anything of great human value. In fact, research and exploration have a .....9..... spin-offs, quite apart from the fact that they demonstrate that .....10..... is alive and insatiably curious.

1. (a) terminate (b) transcend (c) precede (d) recede

2. (a) on (b) upon
   (c) in (d) into
3. (a) nothing (b) certainly
   (c) sufficiently (d) probably
4. (a) exceeding (b) contrasting
   (c) comparable (d) matching
5. (a) was (b) has been
   (c) had been (d) being
6. (a) economical (b) extravagant
   (c) appropriate (d) benevolent
7. (a) devoted (b) allotted
   (c) reserved (d) gone
8. (a) not (b) occasionally
   (c) seldom (d) possibly
9. (a) renowned (b) renounced
   (c) remarkable (d) relevant
10. (a) one (b) man
    (c) human (d) individual

Passage 18

Tea prices in the domestic .....1..... continue to rule high in the .....2..... year despite the expectation of a .....3..... production as compared to the previous year. According to a preliminary assessment .....4..... on the weather .....5..... in recent months, tea output in 1990 may reach 740 million kg. as.....6.....700 million kg. last year. During the past three months, tea prices have generally shown an .....7..... Unlike last year, when tea prices rose dramatically, this year, prices seem to have .....8..... at a rather high level. In the subsequent four months, the .....9..... average price showed a downtrend but in September the prices have .....10..... hardened to a considerable extent.

1. (a) sector (b) production
   (c) area (d) market
2. (a) current (b) first
   (c) second (d) last
3. (a) large (b) maximum
   (c) optimum (d) higher
   (e) lower
4. (a) conducted (b) based
   (c) shared (d) strategy
   (e) carried
5. (a) outbursts (b) outbreak
   (c) conditions (d) forecast
   (e) pattern
6. (a) above (b) per
   (c) to (d) compared
   (e) against

7. (a) downtrend (b) increment
(c) reduction (d) uptrend
(e) upgrade
8. (a) increased (b) surfaced
(c) synchronised (d) moderated
(e) stabilised
9. (a) monthly (b) weekly
(c) daily (d) annual
(e) quarterly
10. (a) then (b) never
(c) again (d) since
(e) now

Passage 19

Our scientific spirit must be shocked not only by the .....1..... of fabulous .....2..... and .....3..... poverty, but also by those of intense holiness and .....4..... superstition. In our relations with one another, we have .....5..... to apply scientific and social wisdom. The failure is .....6..... large .....7..... our society. Some social .....8..... like untouchability are .....9..... simply because the spirit in us is oppressed by the force of .....10..... These are practised by .....11..... kindly persons, who have ceased to feel and whose understanding is .....12..... by tradition. There are millions in our country today who use scientific .....13..... and yet .....14..... superstition as mystical revelation and adhere to absurd social customs .....15..... the name of tradition.

1. (a) phenomenon (b) contrasts
(c) existence (d) comparison
2. (a) property (b) prosperity
(c) resources (d) wealth
3. (a) common (b) rampant
(c) grovelling (d) growing
4. (a) religious (b) blind
(c) popular (d) prevailing
5. (a) attempted (b) refused
(c) succeeded (d) failed
6. (a) writ (b) written
(c) wrought (d) wrapped
7. (a) in (b) on
(c) among (d) for
8. (a) abuses (b) ceremonies
(c) function (d) obligations
9. (a) allowed (b) approved
(c) tolerated (d) resisted
10. (a) opinion (b) habit
(c) society (d) custom

11. (a) fairly (b) very
(c) otherwise (d) somewhat
12. (a) stupefied (b) sanctified
(c) subsidized (b) substantiated
13. (a) discoveries (b) devices
(c) apparatus (d) machines
14. (a) consider (b) decry
(c) declare (d) revere
15. (a) on (b) for
(c) in (d) with

Passage 20

Books give us all the information .....1..... a man. They show .....2..... interest. They are the .....3..... to his mind. All the riches of the world .....4..... their importance in the face of books. A man, with money and .....5..... books is a poor man. Books have become so cheap that a liberary can .....6..... be made. Money spent on good books is never .....7..... It is a .....8..... to read good books. Thus man gains both .....9..... and wisdom. You can .....10..... your library with the expenditure of only a few hundred rupees.

1. (a) about (b) for
(c) through (d) from
2. (a) their (b) his
(c) that (d) personal
3. (a) road (b) access
(c) index (d) approach
4. (a) lose (b) loose
(c) fade (d) vanish
5. (a) some (b) with
(c) few (d) without
6. (a) easily (b) scarcely
(c) hardly (d) frequently
7. (a) recovered (b) wasted
(c) justified (d) withdrawn
8. (a) pleasure (b) blessing
(c) addiction (d) obsession
9. (a) efficiency (b) skill
(c) cunning (d) knowledge
10. (a) form (b) gather
(c) begin (d) constitute

ANSWERS

PART-B

VERBAL ABILITY

4. Synonyms and Antonyms

Revision Exercises

(Based on Synonyms)

Exercise (A)

1. (b) **2.** (b) **3.** (c) **4.** (d) **5.** (b) **6.** (a) **7.** (b) **8.** (c) **9.** (a) **10.** (b)
11. (b) **12.** (c) **13.** (a) **14.** (b) **15.** (a) **16.** (b) **17.** (b) **18.** (a) **19.** (a) **20.** (b)
21. (b) **22.** (c) **23.** (a) **24.** (b) **25.** (a)

Exercise (B)

1. (a) **2.** (b) **3.** (c) **4.** (d) **5.** (a) **6.** (a) **7.** (a) **8.** (c) **9.** (a) **10.** (c)
11. (c) **12.** (b) **13.** (b) **14.** (c) **15.** (b) **16.** (a) **17.** (a) **18.** (b) **19.** (b) **20.** (b)
21. (a) **22.** (c) **23.** (b) **24.** (b) **25.** (a)

Exercise (C)

1. (a) **2.** (b) **3.** (c) **4.** (c) **5.** (b) **6.** (c) **7.** (b) **8.** (d) **9.** (a) **10.** (a)
11. (b) **12.** (b) **13.** (d) **14.** (b) **15.** (b) **16.** (d) **17.** (b) **18.** (c) **19.** (b) **20.** (a)
21. (a) **22.** (d) **23.** (b) **24.** (c) **25.** (d)

Exercise (D)

1. (b) **2.** (d) **3.** (c) **4.** (b) **5.** (d) **6.** (c) **7.** (b) **8.** (b) **9.** (d) **10.** (c)
11. (b) **12.** (b) **13.** (b) **14.** (d) **15.** (c) **16.** (d) **17.** (c) **18.** (d) **19.** (c) **20.** (a)
21. (c) **22.** (b) **23.** (c) **24.** (b) **25.** (b)

Exercise (E)

1. (c) **2.** (a) **3.** (b) **4.** (b) **5.** (b) **6.** (a) **7.** (b) **8.** (a) **9.** (c) **10.** (a)
11. (c) **12.** (c) **13.** (d) **14.** (a) **15.** (b)

Exercise (F)

1. (b) **2.** (a) **3.** (b) **4.** (c) **5.** (c) **6.** (c) **7.** (b) **8.** (b) **9.** (c) **10.** (a)
11. (a) **12.** (a) **13.** (a) **14.** (a) **15.** (b) **16.** (b) **17.** (a) **18.** (a) **19.** (d) **20.** (d)
21. (a) **22.** (a) **23.** (c) **24.** (b) **25.** (c) **26.** (c) **27.** (b) **28.** (c) **29.** (d) **30.** (c)
31. (d) **32.** (b) **33.** (c) **34.** (b) **35.** (c) **36.** (b) **37.** (c) **38.** (a) **39.** (c) **40.** (b)
41. (b) **42.** (c) **43.** (a) **44.** (a) **45.** (c) **46.** (b) **47.** (a) **48.** (d) **49.** (a) **50.** (b)
51. (a) **52.** (b) **53.** (b) **54.** (b) **55.** (a) **56.** (a) **57.** (a) **58.** (b) **59.** (d) **60.** (c)
61. (d) **62.** (d) **63.** (c) **64.** (a) **65.** (b) **66.** (c) **67.** (a) **68.** (a) **69.** (d) **70.** (c)
71. (a) **72.** (b) **73.** (a) **74.** (b) **75.** (d) **76.** (c)

Revision Exercises
(Based on Antonyms)

Exercise (A)

1. (a) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (a) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (b) 9. (a) 10. (b)
11. (b) 12. (b) 13. (b) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (a) 17. (d) 18. (c) 19. (a) 20. (b)
21. (c) 22. (a) 23. (c) 24. (b) 25. (a)

Exercise (B)

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (a) 4. (a) 5. (a) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (c)
11. (b) 12. (a) 13. (a) 14. (a) 15. (b) 16. (c) 17. (a) 18. (a) 19. (b) 20. (b)
21. (b) 22. (b) 23. (d) 24. (b) 25. (a)

Exercise (C)

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (c)
11. (d) 12. (b) 13. (a) 14. (c) 15. (b) 16. (c) 17. (d) 18. (c) 19. (b) 20. (b)
21. (d) 22. (b) 23. (a) 24. (c) 25. (a)

Exercise (D)

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (a)
11. (b) 12. (a) 13. (b) 14. (d) 15. (a) 16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (b) 19. (b) 20. (b)
21. (c) 22. (c) 23. (d) 24. (a) 25. (b)

Exercise (E)

1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (b) 10. (d)
11. (c) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (d) 15. (b)

Exercise (F)

1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (b) 5. (d) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (b) 10. (a)
11. (d) 12. (d) 13. (d) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (b) 19. (a) 20. (c)
21. (b) 22. (d) 23. (a) 24. (d) 25. (d) 26. (b) 27. (d) 28. (b) 29. (a) 30. (d)
31. (b) 32. (c) 33. (b) 34. (d) 35. (b) 36. (b) 37. (a) 38. (b) 39. (b) 40. (a)
41. (d) 42. (c) 43. (a) 44. (c) 45. (b) 46. (c) 47. (a) 48. (d) 49. (c) 50. (c)
51. (c) 52. (a) 53. (c) 54. (b) 55. (a) 56. (b) 57. (a) 58. (c) 59. (d) 60. (b)
61. (c) 62. (a) 63. (b) 64. (a) 65. (d) 66. (b) 67. (b) 68. (c) 69. (a) 70. (a)
71. (d) 72. (b) 73. (c) 74. (d) 75. (d)

6. The Sentence Completion

Revision Exercise (A)

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (b) 6. (c) 7. (c) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (b)
11. (d) 12. (a) 13. (a) 14. (c) 15. (d) 16. (d) 17. (b) 18. (c) 19. (c) 20. (b)

Revision Exercise (B)

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (c) 5. (d) 6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (c)
11. (c) 12. (d) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (b) 16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (d) 19. (c) 20. (b)

Revision Exercise (C)

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (d) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (a)
11. (d) 12. (c) 13. (c) 14. (d) 15. (d) 16. (c) 17. (d) 18. (d) 19. (c) 20. (a)

Revision Exercise (D)

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (d) 6. (d) 7. (d) 8. (d) 9. (a) 10. (a)
11. (d) 12. (a) 13. (d) 14. (c) 15. (d) 16. (b) 17. (c) 18. (b) 19. (c) 20. (b)

Revision Exercise (E)

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (b) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (c) 9. (d) 10. (d)
11. (c) 12. (b) 13. (c) 14. (d) 15. (a) 16. (a) 17. (b) 18. (c) 19. (b) 20. (b)

Revision Exercise (F)

1. (e) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (b) 8. (c) 9. (c) 10. (b)
11. (d) 12. (a) 13. (d) 14. (c) 15. (b) 16. (c) 17. (c) 18. (a) 19. (c) 20. (a)

Revision Exercise (G)

1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (c) 5. (c) 6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (c) 9. (a) 10. (a)
11. (a) 12. (a) 13. (a) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (d) 17. (d) 18. (b) 19. (a) 20. (b)

Revision Exercise (H)

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (c) 6. (c) 7. (c) 8. (d) 9. (d) 10. (c)
11. (b) 12. (d) 13. (c) 14. (d) 15. (d) 16. (d) 17. (c) 18. (c) 19. (d) 20. (b)

Revision Exercise (I)

1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (a)
11. (b) 12. (b) 13. (c) 14. (c) 15. (c) 16. (b) 17. (d) 18. (b) 19. (c) 20. (c)

Revision Exercise (J)

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (b) 6. (c) 7. (c) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (d)
11. (c) 12. (b) 13. (a) 14. (c) 15. (c) 16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (b) 19. (a) 20. (a)

7. Cloze Test

Passage 1

1. (c)	2. (a)	3. (b)	4. (b)	5. (b)
6. (c)	7. (a)	8. (b)	9. (a)	10. (b)

Passage 2

1. (a)	2. (c)	3. (a)	4. (b)	5. (a)
6. (b)	7. (a)	8. (b)	9. (c)	10. (b)

Passage 3

1. (b)	2. (a)	3. (d)	4. (c)	5. (b)
6. (a)	7. (c)	8. (d)	9. (b)	10. (a)

Passage 4

1. (b)	2. (c)	3. (b)	4. (c)	5. (b)
6. (c)	7. (a)	8. (b)	9. (a)	10. (b)

Passage 5

1. (b)	2. (c)	3. (c)	4. (d)	5. (c)
6. (a)				

Passage 6

1. (b)	2. (c)	3. (b)	4. (d)	5. (a)
6. (a)	7. (c)	8. (a)	9. (b)	10. (d)

Passage 7

1. (a)	2. (d)	3. (e)	4. (c)	5. (a)
6. (c)	7. (e)	8. (d)		

Passage 8

1. (c)	2. (b)	3. (b)	4. (c)	5. (b)
6. (a)	7. (a)	8. (b)	9. (a)	10. (a)
11.(b)	12. (b)	13. (c)	14. (a)	15. (c)

Passage 9

1. (d)	2. (c)	3. (a)	4. (a)	5. (b)
6. (a)	7. (c)	8. (d)	9. (c)	10. (a)

Passage 10

1. (b)	2. (d)	3. (a)	4. (c)	5. (d)
6. (c)	7. (b)	8. (d)	9. (b)	10. (c)

Passage 11

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (a)
6. (b) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (b) 10. (a)

Passage 12

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (a)
6. (a)

Passage 13

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (b) 5. (b)
6. (a)

Passage 14

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (a)
6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (c) 9. (c) 10. (a)
11.(a) 12. (c) 13. (b) 14. (c) 15. (a)

Passage 15

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (a)
6. (d) 7. (b) 8. (c) 9. (d) 10. (a)

Passage 16

1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (b)
6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (d)

Passage 17

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (a)
6. (b) 7. (d) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (b)

Passage 18

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (b) 5. (c)
6. (e) 7. (d) 8. (e) 9. (a) 10. (c)

Passage 19

1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (d)
6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (b)
11.(a) 12. (b) 13. (b) 14. (a) 15. (c)

Passage 20

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (d)
6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (d) 10. (c)

PART-C

Chapter

1 Sequence of Sentences

Sequence of Sentences and Paragraphs

One of the questions set in the objective test in English relates to Sequence of Sentences. A student is required to rearrange the parts of a sentence into a meaningful paragraph. Infact there are no hard and fast rules for this kind of test. Only sound knowledge of English language and constant practice may enable a student to grasp the meaning of the rearranged sentences or reconstructed paragraphs. This section of the book in your hand equips the students with the essentials of this kind of test.

Type I : Reconstruction of a sentence

In this type of rearrangement of sentences six parts of a **sentence** are given. The positions of sentences 1 and 6 are fixed. The rest of the four parts are numbered as PQRS which are jumbled. A student is expected to arrange these four parts in a meaningful sequence and mark the correct order from among the alternatives provided. *e.g.*

1 : It is well-known that
P : youngesters in the cities and the villages
Q : The effect
R : of the cinema
S : on the school and college going
6 : is very bad

(a) Q S P R (b) Q R S P
(c) R S P Q (d) R Q P S

The correct sequence is (b) Q R S P.

Type II : Reconstruction of a paragraph

In this type of questions six sentences are given. The first and the sixth sentences of the paragraph are labelled as S_1 and S_6 respectively. The middle four sentences are jumbled up. A candidate is required to find the proper order for the four sentences to make a meaningful paragraph. Consider S_1 as the first sentence and S_6 as the last one. *e.g.*:

(a) S_1 : But how does a new word get into the dictionary?
S_6 : He sorts them according to their grammatical function, and carefully writes a definition.
P : When a new dictionary is being edited, a lexicographer collects all the alphabetically arranged citation slips for a particular word.

Q : The dictonary makes a note of it on a citation slip.
R : The moment a new word is coined, it usually enters the spoken language.
S : The word then passes from the realm of hearing to the realm of writing.

(a) P Q R S (b) P R Q S
(c) R Q P S (d) R S Q P

The correct sequence is (d) R S Q P.

(b) Sometimes the jumbled up sentences are given with Roman Numbers e.g.;

I : He tried the door
II : The room was neat and clean
III : Then he stepped into the room
IV : he waited for a minute or two
V : it opened easily and he peaked in

(a) IV, I, III, II, V (b) I, V, II, IV, III
(c) II, III, V, I, IV (d) I, V, III, II, IV

The correct sequence is (b) I, V, II, IV, III.

Type III

In this type of reconstruction of paragraph, a paragraph comprising five or six sentences in a jumbled order is given to a candidate so as to arrange the given sentences to form a meaningful paragraph. Then the student is asked to answer the questions based on the sequence so formed. *e.g.*

A. Absence of other parental figures in the family has worsened the situation.
B. Drug abuse among youngsters seems to be on the increase.
C. The need for many mothers to work has put an additional claim on the time available for the children.
D. Breakdown of the exstended family has put a lot of burden on the parents.
E. Psychologists attribute this to the growing alienation of the new generation from their parents.

1. Which sentence should come first in the paragraph?
(a) D (b) E (c) B (d) A (e) C
The correct answer is (c).

2. Which sentence should come last in the paragraph?
(a) C (b) B (c) D (d) A (e) E
The correct answer is (d).

3. Which sentence should come third in the paragraph?
(a) E (b) D (c) B (d) C (e) A
The correct answer is (b).

4. Which sentence should come second in the paragraph?
(a) B (b) E (c) D (d) A (e) C
The correct answer is (b).

5. Which sentence should come fourth in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) D (c) E (d) B (e) C
The correct answer is (e).

Work book Exercise (A) : Jumbled parts of a Sentence

Directions : *In the following questions the first and the last parts of the sentence are numbered as 1 and 6. The rest of the sentence is split into four parts and are named as P, Q, R and S. These four parts are not given in their proper order. Read the jumbled parts of the sentence and find out which of the four combinations is correct. Then find the correct answer.*

1. 1 : I have not come
   P : even if it means some humiliation
   Q : but the boy must learn
   R : to complain, he said
   S : to be honest
   6 : and admit he broke our window pane.
   (a) S P R Q (b) Q S P R (c) R Q S P (d) P R Q S

2. 1 : India has been a land
   P : but in the sense that learning has always been very highly valued
   Q : not indeed in the sense that education has been universal
   R : and the learned man has been held in higher esteem
   S : of learning throughout the ages
   6 : than the warrior or the administrator.
   (a) P Q S R (b) R Q P S (c) R S Q P (d) S Q P R

3. 1 : It was obvious
   P : made by him
   Q : submitted at the meeting
   R : from the comments
   S : on the draft proposals
   6 : that he was not satisfied with them.
   (a) Q R S P (b) S Q R P (c) R P S Q (d) P S R Q

4. 1 : Lakhs of students
   P : on all India basis
   Q : from all over India
   R : which are held
   S : appear in the examinations
   6 : by different recruiting organisations.
   (a) P Q S R (b) S R Q P (c) Q S R P (d) Q S P R

5. 1 : There is a fashion now-a-days
   P : as an evil
   Q : who is born with a silver spoon
   R : to bewail poverty
   S : and to pity the yougman
   6 : in his mouth.
   (a) P S Q R (b) R S Q P (c) R P S Q (d) S Q P R

6. 1 : Those that have seen the Hindus
P : have naturally no more doubt
Q : of the existence of other persons
R : among them in their own country
S : of their existence than they have
6 : whom they have met.
(a) P S Q R (b) R Q P S (c) P S R Q (d) R P S Q

7. 1 : I wasn't sure
P : to hear his voice
Q : in my heart of hearts
R : through that window once more
S : what I really wished
6 : or never to see him there again.
(a) Q P R S (b) S Q P R (c) P R S Q (d) R S Q P

8. 1 : Yet so few of us have
P : walls of daily routine
Q : the time or the means
R : that enclose our lives
S : to break through the narrow
6 : to get to know this land.
(a) S R Q P (b) R P S Q (c) Q S P R (d) P Q R S

9. 1 : Religion has been used
P : both as a weapon of isolation
Q : to dull awareness
R : about real problems
S : and as morphia
6 : like education, health and employment.
(a) P Q R S (b) P S Q R (c) Q P S R (d) R P Q S

10. 1 : When all the members were seated
P : during the previous year
Q : the secretary came to the dias
R : and read out the report
S : detailing the activities of the organisation
6 : and plans for the coming year.
(a) P Q R S (b) S P Q R (c) R S P Q (d) Q R S P

11. 1 : Inspite of an unprecedented boom in the market
P : and had to remain content
Q : the paper-dealer could not
R : push up his sales
S : with a volume of sale lower than
6 : what he had sold the previous year.
(a) Q R P S (b) S P R Q (c) P R Q S (d) R P S Q

12. 1 : Ashoka was successful
P : by the cruelty and horrors of war
Q : he was so disgusted
R : in his military operations
S : and alone among conquerors
6 : that he renounced it.
(a) R S Q P (b) P S Q R (c) S Q P R (d) Q P R S

13. 1 : She had understood
P : so she withdrew herself from the ordinary people
Q : like a curse to her father's house
R : that God sent her
S : from her earliest childhood
6 : and tried to live apart.
(a) S R Q P (b) P R Q S (c) Q S P R (d) S P Q R

14. 1 : There are people
P : to be able to say
Q : not because they enjoy the book
R : who read a book
S : but because they want
6 : that they have read it.
(a) P S Q R (b) S Q P R (c) R S P Q (d) R Q S P

15. 1 : They tell us
P : in some places
Q : there must have been
R : that when the great glaciers melted
S : vast steppes or wide tireless plains
6 : inaccessible to man
(a) R Q P S (b) R Q S P (c) Q R P S (d) Q R S P

16. S_1 : For some people patriotism
S_6 : as much as to any one country.
P : today man belongs to the whole world
Q : it should be condemned because
R : type of patriotism is an evil and
S : means hatred for other countries, but this
(a) S R Q P (b) P Q S R (c) R S P Q (d) Q P S R

17. S_1 : A connection had long been suspected
S_6 : of this connection had not been understood.
P : since both were at their worst in the
Q : same regions and seasons, but the nature
R : between the abundance of mosquitoes
S : and the occurrence of malaria
(a) Q S P R (b) R S P Q (c) P S Q R (d) S P R Q

18. S_1 : Science does not merely add new truths
S_6 : men's thinking and their lives.
P : destroy some old truths, and
Q : discovers new truths that
R : thereby upsets the way of
S : to old ones, it also
(a) Q S R P (b) R P S Q (c) P S R Q (d) S Q P R

19. S_1 : An outstanding feature of this century has been
S_6 : has meant greater political power.
P : living conditions of the
Q : the improvement of the income and
R : greater security and education which
S : working man leading to
(a) P S Q R (b) R S P Q (c) Q P S R (d) S R Q P

20. S_1 : Hobbies can fill our spare
S_6 : do not hinder our regular work.
P : physical fatigue, and
Q : moments with enjoyment
R : and pleasure, they also relieve
S : mental tiredness and
(a) R Q P S (b) Q R S P (c) S Q P R (d) P Q S R

21. S_1 : Moisture is continuously lost
S_6 : lifeless complexion.
P : and as result of the stresses
Q : as part of a natural process
R : and strains of daily life
S : leading to a dull, dry and
(a) S Q P R (b) P R S Q (c) R S Q P (d) Q P R S

22. S_1 : But some people young and old alike
S_6 : be life-saving
P : death suddenly presents itself
Q : remain calm when,
R : on occassion
S : and this calmness may
(a) R Q P S (b) Q P S R (c) P S R Q (d) S R Q P

23. S_1 : Ask any man or woman
S_6 : they will answer '1992'.
P : and the chances are
Q : what is the single most important issue
R : in the streets of Zurich
S : facing Switzerland today
(a) R S Q P (b) P R Q S (c) R Q S P (d) Q S R P

Work book Exercise (B)

Directions : *In the following items, some parts of the sentence have been jumbled up. You are required to re-arrange these parts which are labelled as P, Q, R and S to produce the correct sentence. Choose the proper sequence and mark in your answersheet accordingly.*

1. So, now India can lose out at first base because it's too busy chasing an (P) ephemeral dream either put aside its hopes of getting the veto power and (Q) first concentrate on ensuring that (R) the Security Council is enlarged, or (S)

   Which one of the following sequences is correct?
   (a) Q P S R (b) S R Q P (c) Q R S P (d) S P Q R

2. But Nelson Mandela modern country in a modern way (P) and could run a new, (Q) shifted the beliefs of the people (R) so they could heal the racial confict (S)

   Which one of the following sequences is correct?
   (a) R S Q P (b) Q P R S (c) R S P Q (d) Q S R P

3. But, Kuala Lumpur where modern Malay executives (P) but will never miss Friday prayers (Q) might have a cellular phone in hand, (R) is a city firmly rooted in tradition. (S)

   Which one of the following sequences is correct?
   (a) R Q S P (b) S P R Q (c) R P S Q (d) S Q R P

4. If farming, life is not to collapse, there is need for (P) as a profession and as a way of (Q) attention today to farmers' needs in the areas (R) of water, credit, technology, market and land and agrarian reforms (S)

   Which one of the following sequences is correct?
   (a) Q P R S (b) R S Q P (c) Q S R P (d) R P Q S

5. The Union Cabinet's recent approval of the Bill against (P) assaults on women's most basic fundamental right, (Q) Domestic Violence is a step against (R) that is, the right to life (S)

   Which one of the following sequences is correct?
   (a) P S Q R (b) Q R P S (c) P R Q S (d) Q S P R

6. The President hard-won freedom and become a front-rank nation
P
self-reliant and self-dependent called upon the people to be
Q R
if they want to preserve their
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) R Q S P (b) S P R Q (c) R P S Q (d) S Q R P

7. No amount poor countries if they do of direct aid will help
P Q
not develop the capacity to generate wealth for themselves
R S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) Q P R S (b) R S Q P (c) Q S R P (d) R P Q S

8. Having achieved success to ride the next big outsourcing wave
P
in software exports and information technology areas,
Q
–this time in manufacturing from the U.S.
R
Indian manufacturers-exporters are well equipped.
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) P S Q R (b) Q R P S (c) P R Q S (d) Q S P R

9. The majority of Britons believe that there if the increasing problem
P Q
must be restrictions on cheap air travel of global warming is going to be tackled.
R S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S R Q P (b) P Q R S (c) S Q R P (d) P R Q S

10. Various leading a productive disabilities stand in and personally satisfying life
P Q R
the way of millions of Indians.
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) Q R P S (b) P S Q R (c) Q S P R (d) P R Q S

11. Farmers whether or not water will be available land use plans only
P Q
can prepare alternative if they know in advance.
R S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) R S Q P (b) P Q S R (c) R Q S P (d) P S Q R

12. It shows it is also conscious of its (P) India means business; (Q)
sovereignty and elements that threaten it (R)
while it is for transparent and open ties. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) Q S P R (b) P R Q S (c) Q R P S (d) P S Q R

13. Hidden is an important cause for (P) hunger in the soil (Q)
caused by micro-nutrient deficiencies (R) the rapid decline in factor productivity. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) P S Q R (b) Q R P S (c) P R Q S (d) Q S P R

14. Travel to where you don't know the local language, (P) and see how your (Q)
a foreign country, even a region of India (R) hands and expressions do the talking (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) S Q P R (b) R P Q S (c) S P Q R (d) R Q P S

15. The delay led to a rapid escalation (P) in the onset of the monsoon (Q)
over Kerala and its subsequent weakness (R) of the national rainfall deficit (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) S R P Q (b) Q P R S (c) S P R Q (d) Q R P S

16. If fair play fair trade and the protection of the planet, (P) is going to encompass (Q)
in sport's many codes of conduct (R) these should be enshrined. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) Q S P R (b) R P S Q (c) Q P S R (d) R S P Q

17. While the recent century show that the June rainfall is (P)
of a drought, India's rainfall data for over a (Q) rain may have soothed concerns (R)
no predictor of the monsoon's outcome (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) P S R Q (b) R Q P S (c) P Q R S (d) R S P Q

18. On the contrary, in countries like China and the other Pacific countries, (P) permission for shooting but also (Q) film-makers not only obtain quick (R) get subsidies to undertake the job. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) P R Q S (b) Q S P R (c) P S Q R (d) Q R P S

19. There are from different walks of life as human rights (P) so much is written by so many persons (Q) very few subjects in (R) contemporary times on which. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) Q S R P (b) R P Q S (c) Q P R S (d) R S Q P

20. No international albeit at times, for wrong reasons (P) institution has indeed (Q) engaged the attention of the people (R) across the globe the way WTO has done. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) Q R S P (b) P S R Q (c) Q S R P (d) P R S Q

21. Scientists carrying glacier feeding the Ganga may melt before the end of the 21st (P) century because of climatic changes (Q) caused by man-made carbon dioxide emissions (R) out a study have warned that an ancient. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) S R Q P (b) Q P S R (c) S P Q R (d) Q R S P

22. Newspapers also highlighted the apparent lack (P) received limited media attention (Q) of interest in the event in America (R) where it reportedly. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) Q S R P (b) P R S Q (c) Q R S P (d) P S R Q

23. It is stressful or joyful (P) with the belief in the evanescence of life itself (Q) necessary to rise above the situations, (R) and in the philosophical quest of the purpose of life. (S)

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) R P Q S (b) Q S R P (c) R S Q P (d) Q P R S

24. The difference and development on the other affects
P
in the relationship between death and birth-rates on the one hand
Q
but the age structure of the population
R
not just the rate of population growth.
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) S R Q P (b) Q P S R (c) S P Q R (d) Q R S P

25. As a maestro appeared to be enjoying every bit of it
P
and followed every composition the thunderous applause from
Q R
an appreciative audience preceded.
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) P Q S R (b) R S Q P (c) P S Q R (d) R Q S P

26. Keeping farmers to smoke their fields during
P
in view the prevailing weather conditions agricultural experts have advised
Q R
the night to protect vegetables from cold.
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) S R P Q (b) Q P R S (c) S P R Q (d) Q R P S

Work Book Exercise (C) : Ordering of Sentences

Directions : *In the following items each passage consists of six sentences. The first and the sixth sentences are given in the beginning and labelled as S_1 and S_6 respectively. The middle four sentences in each have been removed and jumbled up. These are labelled as P, Q, R and S. You are required to find the proper order for the four sentences and mark accordingly.*

1. S_1 : The lion used to be very widely distributed in Africa and Asia.
   S_6 : No hunting is permitted in such reserved areas.
   P : There are special forest zones set aside for wildlife in various countries.
   Q : Indiscriminate killing by hunters has been the cause of this drastic fall in their numbers.
   R : Today they are a relatively rare species.
   S : If the species survives at all it will be only in national parks.

   Which one of the following sequences is correct?

   (a) Q S P R (b) R S P Q (c) S R P Q (d) R Q S P

2. S_1 : Yes, a mirage can be photographed.
S_6 : That kind of mirage obviously cannot be photographed.
P : That is hallucination.
Q : Anything reflected by the lens of the human eye will naturally be picked up by the photographic lens.
R : Sometimes, however, a person imagines he is seeing something but actually he is not.
S : The image, of course, will be hazy and simmering because of refraction of light.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S P R Q (b) Q R P S (c) P S Q R (d) Q S R P

3. S_1 : One of the greatest curses of the world is the belief in the necessity of poverty.
S_6 : We have been poor in the very midst of abundance, simply because of our own blighting limiting thought.
P : There need not be a poor person on the planet.
Q : But there was no poverty, no want, no lack, in the creator's plan for man.
R : Most people have a strong conviction that some must necessarily be poor, that they were made to be poor.
S : The earth is full of resources which we have scarcely yet touched.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S P Q R (b) R S P Q (c) R Q P S (d) P Q S R

4. S_1 : There is nothing strange in the fact that so many foreign students should wish to learn English.
S_6 : This key will open to him whatever is valuable in the literature of the world.
P : If any valuable book is written in another language an English translation of it is sure to be speedily published.
Q : Anyone who masters the English tongue acquires a key.
R : Most books found to be generally useful are written in English.
S : The English speaking want no monopoly of knowledge.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) P S Q R (b) S Q R P (c) R P S Q (d) P Q S R

5. S_1 : Much of our adult behaviour and our attitudes are determined by our upbringing.
S_6 : Psychologists have studied these forces in depth.
P : But the process does not stop here.
Q : In particular by the effects of that small part of society which is our family.
R : As we grow we are constantly and increasingly affected by new forces such as the social pressure of our friends and the largest world of society.
S : The family and our early life have profound effect on our later life.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S R P Q (b) P R S Q (c) Q P S R (d) Q S P R

6. S_1 : Many people, who are hit on the head and suffer from brain injury, temporarily lose memory of things happening to them a few hour or few days before the accident.
S_6 : It is as if the memories of this time do not have time to become established in the permanent long memory.

P : The first ones to comes back are usually older memories.
Q : After a while the memories begin to return.
R : Then other items appear.
S : But there is always a short period of a few minutes just before the accident, which remains a complete blank.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) P Q R S (b) S R Q P (c) Q P R S (d) Q R P S

7. S_1 : There was a boy named Jack.
S_6 : At last she turned him out of the house.
P : So the mother asked him to find work.
Q : They were very poor.
R : He lived with his mother.
S : But Jack refused to work.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) R Q P S (b) P Q R S (c) Q P R S (d) R P S Q

8. S_1 : I take it that most people who talk glibly of science think of science merely as a kind of hand maiden to make their work easier.
S_6 : But, surely, science is something more than that.
P : Of course, it does make their work easier.
Q : And so it is.
R : All this science does.
S : It adds to the wealth of the nation and better conditions.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) R S P Q (b) Q P S R (c) P S R Q (d) Q R P S

9. S_1 : Chanakya, by his foresight and strength of character, built up the Mauryan Empire.
S_6 : It is not true as some people said that Sardar Patel was not particular about the means as long as he achieved his end.
P : They were men of iron.
Q : Therefore, they were impervious to criticism and had implicit confidence in themselves.
R : Both of them were guided by stern realism and would tolerate no deviations from the objectives which they pursued relentlessly.
S : Similarly, Patel refashioned a compact India out of the fragments left by the British.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S Q R P (b) S R Q P (c) S R P Q (d) P Q S R

10. S_1 : The spiriual training of the boys was a much more difficult training.
S_6 : And I held that this was an essential part of the training of the young and that all training without culture of the spirit was of no use, and might be even harmful.
P : I had realised that the training of the spirit was a thing in itself.
Q : Of course, I believed that every student should be acquainted with the elements of his own religion and have a general knowledge of his own scriptures.
R : I relied little on religious books for spiritual training.

S : To develop the spirit is to build character and to enable one to work towards a knowledge of God and self-realisation.

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) P Q S R (b) R Q S P (c) R P Q S (d) P R S Q

11. S_1 : The word 'victory' generally reminds us of wars and conquerors like Alexander and Napoleon.

S_6 : The victories of peace are more lasting and useful to humanity than the victories of war.

P : Thousands of people are killed and hundreds of towns and cities are destroyed.

Q : But the victory associated with a war comes after so much of destrcution.

R : In this category we may include the achievements of scientists and scholars, statesmen and social reformers and the like.

S : However, there is another type of victory which is creative and constructive.

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) P R Q S (b) S P Q R (c) Q P S R (d) R P Q S

12. S_1 : The Arabs who are not in cities live in the desert all the year round.

S_6 : An Arab loves his horse almost as much as he loves his wife and children.

P : They have the finest horses in the world.

Q : So they can easily move from one place to another.

R : These desert Arabs eat ripe, sweet figs and also the dates that grow upon the palm trees.

S : They lives in tents that can be put up and taken down easily.

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) R S P Q (b) S Q R P (c) P Q R S (d) Q R S P

13. S_1 : Europeans are not used to the serpentine queues we encounter in the Indian subcontinent.

S_6 : That the European youth was willing to go throught these hardships to pay tribute to a spiritual head was unthinkable.

P : We line up even for our filthy public toilets and to pay the electricity bills.

Q : We wait eternally at railway crossings, ration shops, and bank counters.

R : Particularly so in Europe where it is claimed that God is dead, and religion defunct.

S : Hence, the fact that millions, and mostly the youth, made it to the funeral of Pope John Paul II, braving long journeys and queuing for hours on end, is truly remarkable.

Which one of the following sequence is correct?

(a) S P Q R (b) Q R S P (c) S R Q P (d) Q P S R

14. S_1 : If India is hot right now, its thanks to a host of random developments.

S_6 : The SARS outbreak in 2002-03 bypassed India and the tsunami affected countries like Thailand more than it impacted India.

P : Nature helped too.

Q : Arguably, it all began with the IT boom, which coupled with the unceasing tide of outsourcing, made India a global buzz.

R : And, as the saying goes, today's business travellers are tomorrow's leisure travellers.

S : That put in the global consciousness and led to a surge in business travellers.

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) Q S R P (b) R P Q S (c) Q P R S (d) R S Q P

15. S_1 : Sleep is the only natural elixir that repairs the body.
S_6 : Sleep and upward mobility make for incompatible bedfellows.
P : The incessant ringing of mobile phones, the clamour of multiple TV sets, late night parties and the Internet are all par for the course in average urban households.
Q : At work, the manic race against time means we are working longer hours.
R : At home, our lives are no less hectic.
S : But in today's fast-paced world, sleep is the one aspect that is compromised the most.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) P R Q S (b) S Q R P (c) P Q R S (d) S R Q P

16. S_1 : The pleasure of being able to communicate with people from another culture, and to understand their society is a valuable experience.
S_6 : They employ linguistic experts to teach their employees the required language and to interact with employees on the client site.
P : Because of the level of interactions with foreign experts, translators are mandatory in many companies.
Q : Many Indian MNCs with global footprints need linguists to help them in foreign lands.
R : But learning a foreign language is fast becoming a necessary job skill in its own right.
S : As the global market-place expands, the need for personnel who can communicate in foreign languages will increase.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) P Q R S (b) R S P Q (c) P S R Q (d) R Q P S

17. S_1 : What gives a place its distinct identity?
S_6 : So, what memories will you bring home?
P : And that's what best captures Singapore—a dynamic, cosmopolitan city-state where different cultures, ethnic groups and religions have blended over centuries to bridge the East-West divide.
Q : Apart from its geographical location, people and landscape, it's the passage of time.
R : With its friendly, welcoming people, state-of-the art infrastructure and something new happening every day, Singapore is easy to appreciate.
S : Singapore is a city where age-old traditions and cutting-edge innovations are celebrated simultaneously.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) R P S Q (b) Q S P R (c) R S P Q (d) Q P S R

18. S_1 : The fact is that good writing is a craft which can be acquired like any other craft.
S_6 : In short, he has to become a wordsmith.
P : Much the same is the case with the one who aspires to become a good craftsman of English.
Q : Let's take examples.
R : A young man, who wants to become a goldsmith or a silversmith, becomes an apprentice with a seasoned man in that craft.
S : After a few years of apprenticeship, he learns the ins and outs of it and becomes a skilful craftsman.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S P Q R (b) Q R S P (c) S R Q P (d) Q P S R

19. S_1 : Yet, things are not that bad.
S_6 : Fortune, after all, favours the brave, not the complainers.
P : Some of the successful people started out with more handicaps than us.
Q : It is time we stopped feeling sorry for ourselves and got over our doubts and fears to face the world.
R : If we look around ourselves, we find people who had less than us but went on to make their fortunes.
S : Perhaps we can replicate what they did for themselves.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) R Q S P (b) S P R Q (c) R P S Q (d) S Q R P

20. S_1 : Any discussion on human rights is incomplete without reference to the security and terrorist threats facing the country.
S_6 : It is necessary to underline that it will be wrong to treat all such violent movements as pure law and order problems.
P : The Police as also the armed forces are facing an uphill task in containing these violent activities and maintaining peace and order.
Q : It must be appreciated that there is an imperative need for such special legislations as the normal laws are not adequate to deal with the situation.
R : An important issue which has come up in this context relates to the need for special legislation to cope with the situation.
S : Several parts of the country have been rocked by violence, terrorism, secessionist movement and insurgency.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S P Q R (b) P S Q R (c) S P R Q (d) P S R Q

21. S_1 : What are the outstanding features of the Indian Freedom Struggle?
S_6 : It not only permitted but encouraged free expression of opinion within the party and the movement.
P : The movement popularized democratic ideas and institutions in India.
Q : The Indian National Congress was organized on a democratic basis and in the form of a parliament.
R : The nationalists fought for the introduction of a representative government.
S : A major aspect is the value and modern ideals on which the movement itself was based and the broad socio-economic and political vision of its leadership.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) P S R Q (b) S P R Q (c) P S Q R (d) S P Q R

22. S_1 : Indian media still has not matured as far as election coverage goes.
S_6 : There is nothing wrong in the demand for unbiased, non-casteist and non-communal reporting.
P : Today, it is common for public relation's firms to cultivate journalists and planting stories.
Q : At the same time, nobody has addressed to the menace of corruption in the media itself.
R : In such a scenario, the reader feels shortchanged as unbiased election coverage is not available.
S : Press conferences are used openly for giving gifts and bribes to journalists.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) P Q S R (b) Q P R S (c) P Q R S (d) Q P S R

23. S_1 : Over decades, we have made things a lot worse.
S_6 : In the end, it can destroy the entire village.
P : It has proved quite disastrous.
Q : The unregulated spread of borewells was an early form of water privatisation.
R : Many poor farmers have seen their dug wells sucked dry as neighbours collar all the groundwater.
S : The richer you are, the more wells you can sink, the deeper you can go.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) Q S P R (b) P Q R S (c) Q P R S (d) P S Q R

24. S_1 : Corporate India almost means big business.
S_6 : It is the mom-and-pop stores that dot the US landscape.
P : Nothing is farther from the truth.
Q : It is a sobering thought that the no. I contributor to the US GDP is not the *Fortune* 500 club.
R : It also means larger socio-economic impact.
S : In the mind of the average person, largeness equals strategy and success.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S R P Q (b) P Q S R (c) S Q P R (d) P R S Q

25. S_1 : When employees go on strike against changes in labour laws, few realise that these are privileged workers.
S_6 : These are sectional interests who are blocking reform.
P : Pepole protest against reform because they do not want to pay their electricity bills.
Q : Or take the issue of user charges.
R : It is the millions who are without jobs who need real help.
S : Only those who have jobs can go on strike.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) S P Q R (b) Q R S P (c) S R Q P (d) Q P S R

Work Book Exercise (D)

Directions : *In each of the qeustions below a number of sentences are given which are denoted by I, II, III, IV, V, VI and VII. By using all the sentences you have to frame a meaningful paragraph. The correct order of the sentences is your answer. Choose from the five alternatives and the one having the correct order is your answer.*

1. I. Now under liberated economy they are learning to compete domestically and globally.
II. In India corporations until, recently achieved success by avoiding competition using protected and regulated domestic markets.
III. The trend is irreversible.
IV. Business leaders are preparing themselves to meet competitive challenges and tc avoid being swept away.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) I, II, IV, III (b) II, IV, III, I (c) II, IV, I, III
(d) III, IV, II, I (e) II, I, IV, III

2. I. Finally the bureaucratic organisation took over from the pioneering enterprise.
II. The nineteenth century was the age of enterpreneur, the self made man.
III. Thoughtful business administartion took over from action-centred business enterpreneurship.
IV. In the twentieth century the rational executive took command.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) IV, II, I, III (b) III, I, II, IV (c) II, IV, III, I
(d) II, III, IV, I (e) IV, II, I, III

3. I. Recovery was given inadequate attention and consequently some bank branches regularly incurred heavy losses and their parent bodies had to bale them out.
II. As a result banks indulged in extensive lending to borrowers who had little or no potential to make repayments.
III. To fulfil the social objectives laid down by the masters of nationalisation banks were asked to lend to identify priorilty sectors.
IV. 1992-93 results showed that the loss making branches of public sector's banks increased from 10,000 to 13,000 and the quantum of losses showed at 3,369 crore.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) II, I, III, IV (b) IV, I, II, III (c) III, II, I, IV
(d) III, II, I, IV (e) IV, III, II, I

4. I. However different rulers and government dealt with the different groups in a compartmentalised manner.
II. Various situational political changes have taken place over the past three and half-centuries.
III. This tendecy resulted in deeply embedded fragmented South-African society which became even more prominent in the period 1948 until the commencement of the new constitution on May 10, 1994.
IV. South Africa is a racially divided society since the first European settlers arrived in 1652.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) II, IV, I, III (b) IV, II, I, III (c) III, I, II, IV
(d) I, III, IV, II (e) II, I, III, IV

5. I. Such a system will help identify and groom executives for positions of strategists.
II. Evaluation of performance is more often than not done for the purpose of reward or punishment for past performance.
III. They must become an integral part of the executive evaluation system.
IV. Even where the evaluation system is for one's promotion to assume higher responsibilities it rarely includes items that are a key for playing the role of strategists effectivity e.g. the skills for playing the role of change agent and creative problem solving.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) IV, II, I, III (b) IV, III, II, I (c) I, II, III, IV
(d) II, IV, III, I (e) III, IV, II, I

6. I. But categorisation schemes are not always helpful in determining what one can do with or about organisational culture.
II. Much of the literature on organisational culture is focused on categorising types of cultures.
III. It has taken the understanding of corporate culture for beyond what use to be called 'the informal organisation'.
IV. This literature is both 'interesting and informative'.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) II, IV, I, III (b) II, I, IV, III (c) II, III, IV, I
(d) IV, I, II, III (e) IV, II, I, III

7. I. Much of the argument that goes on around the alternative solution occurs because people hold different perceptions of the problem.
II. One of the reasons that Japanese managers are preceived as making superior decisions compared to Western managers is that they spend a great deal of effort and time determining that the problem is correctly defined.
III. Unfortunately, too often in the West, managers assume that the initial definition of the situation is correct.
IV. Up to half the time in meetings is spent in asking 'Is this the real problem?'
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) II, IV, III, I (b) II, III, IV, I (c) III, II, IV, I
(d) I, III, IV, II (e) I, II, III, IV

8. I. Participation involves more than the formal sharing of decision.
II. Through anticipation, individuals or organisations consider trends and make plans, shielding institutions from trauma of learning by shock.
III. Innovative learning involves both anticipation and participation.
IV. It is an attitude characterised by co-operation, dialogue and empathy.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) II, III, I, IV (b) I, II, IV, III (c) IV, I, III, II
(d) III, II, I, IV (e) I, III, II, IV

9. I. Learn a kind of tenderness towards the varity of others.
II. and indeed towards all their prejudices
III. who make a cult of sincerity
IV. who accustomed to difficult negotiations
V. which is infinitely shocking to those.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?
(a) IV, III, V, I, II (b) III, IV, V, II, I (c) IV, I, II, V, III
(d) V, IV, II, III, I (e) I, II, III, IV, V

10. I. It buys programmes and services from many sources, which are then put on the systems chennels.
II. The early cable super market had only a dozen channels on which to display their goods, but new system boast more then 100 channels.
III. A cable system is like a super market.
IV. By the end of the 1980's, cable television will offer as many as 200 different channels of entertainment and services.

V. For a monthly fee individual subscribers order the programmes and services that suit them.
VI. Extra fees are charged for some programmes and services that suit them.
VII. The cable systems deliver all local television programming from nearby cities, and programming from distant networks where signals are sent by satellite.
Which one of the following sequences is correct?

(a) III, I, V, VI, VII, II, IV (b) II, III, I, IV, VII, VI, V
(c) I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII (d) VI, II, VII, I, III, IV, V
(e) VI, VII, I, II, III, IV, V

Work Book Exercise (E) : Based on Type III

Directions : *Rearrange the following sentences A, B, C, D and E in the proper sequence so as to form a meaningful paragraph; then answer the questions given below.*

I. A. However the marketing reports are not good.
B. It is one of its kind in India.
C. The Company, now, may bring down the price.
D. The product was launched six months back.
E. One of the reasons is that it is costly.

1. Which of the following should be the third sentence?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
2. Which of the following should be the first sentence?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
3. Which of the following should be the second sentence?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
4. Which of the following should be the fourth sentence?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
5. Which of the following should be the fifth sentence?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

II. A. He borrowed some money from his neighbour for me.
B. However, he promised to get the money I needed.
C. Since I had no money with me, I decided to borrow from my friend
D. The electricity bill had to be paid immediately.
E. But, he had no money with him to lend me.

1. Which of the following sentences should come third in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
2. Which of the following sentences should come first in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
3. Which of the following sentences should come fifth in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

4. Which of the following sentences should come second in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

5. Which of the following sentences should come fourth in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

III. A. When I turned around, I saw none other than Rajesh.
B. It was then that someone loudly called out my name.
C. I started looking around for Rajesh.
D. The train had already arrived by the time I reached the station.
E. Not finding him, I decided to return home.

1. Which sentence should come second in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

2. Which sentence should come third in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

3. Which sentence should come first in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

4. Which sentence should come last in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

5. Which sentence should come fourth in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

□

Chapter

2 Objective Comprehension

Objective Comprehension of a given passage or a number of passages is an integral part of any examination test in English. The objective English tests of competitive examination are designed to assess through questions the verbal ability, language skills, the knowledge of the examinees on grammar, vocabulary and comprehension of written English. Therefore, a student is required to read the passage carefully and choose a correct answer out of the alternatives given under the question. However, the questions are challenging and they all require an appreciation of more than just the superficial understanding of the passage. Therefore, it is very important that due attention should he paid to comprehension exercises.

The important points to be noted in this field are given as under :

(a) It is pertinent to note that sense of language and fund of words should be ample enough so that students may not feel disadvantage on that account.

(b) The questions are based on what is stated or implied in each passage.

(c) Invariably the inference is based on the logical consequence of the information in the passage. Therefore, the answers must be based on and supported by the information given in the passage under reference.

(d) In some competitive examinations the students are also required to answer questions on synonyms and antonyms given in the passage. It is very important to note that the meaning of the word should be chosen from the alternatives in the context of the theme of the passage. One must not take into account only the literal meaning of the word.

Passage 1

Directions : *Read the following passages carefully and answer the questions that follow.*

Vishwaditya, the king of Magadh, heard that a great physician who lived in the neighbouring kingdom had invented an edible magic substance, which, if eaten with sweetmeat, would give one long life. He invited the physician through his messengers. The physician arrived with four sweetmeat balls mixed with the magic substance. The delighted king ordered his soldiers to bring a big garland made of very attractive looking and scented flowers, and himself garlanded the physician. The physician removed the precious cloth with which he had covered the plate of sweetmeat balls. The king's joy knew no bounds at the sight of the contents of the plate. While the physician was about to offer the sweetmeat balls to the king, the court jester rushed forward, picked up a ball and began eating it. Everyone present in the court was astonished. "Take hold of the mad chap!" shouted the king. The king's bodyguards did so. The half eaten sweetmeat ball fell from his hand. "How dare you touch the magic thing meant for me? Be ready to face the consequence-death!" The jester shed tears. "No use crying",

said the king. "I am crying for you, my Lord!" replied the jester. "Why?" asked the king. "My lord, by eating only half of the magic thing, I am going to die. What will happen to you when you eat the whole of the magic thing?" said the jester. The king saw sense in what the jester said. He realized his mistake of believing in such magic things. He suitably honoured the jester.

1. "The king's bodyguards did so." Which of the following correctly explains 'did so'?
   (a) They snatched away the half-eaten ball.
   (b) They arrested the physician.
   (c) They snatched away the plate of balls.
   (d) They took hold of the physician.
   (e) None of these.

2. According to the king's information, which of the following was the invention of the physician?
   (a) An edible substance that was very sweet.
   (b) A magic substance that would give strength.
   (c) A magic substance that would reduce the life span.
   (d) A substance that would postpone death.
   (e) A substance that would make life miserable.

3. Which of the following statements is true in the context of the passage?
   (a) The king was not moved by the jester's weeping.
   (b) The sweetmeat balls were having wonderful power.
   (c) The punishment sentenced on the jester was implemented.
   (d) The physician was one of the king's own subjects.
   (e) The king had realized his mistake even before the jester's act.

4. When the physician visited the court, the king :
   (a) got annoyed.
   (b) was wearing a garland.
   (c) became very happy.
   (d) ordered him to garland his soldiers.
   (e) uncovered the plate of sweetmeat balls.

5. According to the jester, what was the effect of eating of half a ball, on him?
   (a) Tears in eyes.
   (b) Death sentence.
   (c) Longer life.
   (d) Being honoured by the king.
   (e) None of these.

6. Which of the following surprised the courtiers?
   (a) The physician's wonderful invention.
   (b) The king's unlimited joy at the sight of the plate.
   (c) The jester's wisdom of exposing the physician.
   (d) The king's reaction towards the jester.
   (e) The jester's act of picking up and eating a sweetment ball.

7. What made the jester weep with sorrow?
   (a) The death sentence passed on him by the king.
   (b) His concern and anxiety for the life safety of the king.
   (c) The effect of the physician's invention on the lives of the people.
   (d) The destruction of the half sweetmant ball.
   (e) None of these.

8. The king offered death sentence on the jester because the jester had :
   (a) tried to teach the king a lesson.
   (b) caught hold of the physician.
   (c) insulted the physician by his impolite act.
   (d) snatched away the thing which was meant for the king.
   (e) touched the magic sweetmeat ball to remove its power.

9. "He realized his mistake of believing in such magic things." Which of the following explains 'such magic things'?
   (a) Things which have miraculous power.
   (b) Things which have been prepared by famous physicians.
   (c) Things said to possess magic power but do not have such power.
   (d) Things offered to the king to help him live longer.
   (e) None of these.

10. The king honoured the jester for his act of :
   (a) opening the king's eyes. (b) committing a mistake.
   (c) realizing that he was wrong. (d) believing in false things.
   (e) eating up half a sweetmeat ball.

Passage 2

White cement is the basic raw material for producing cement tiles and cement paint which are used extensively in building construction. The main consumers of white cement are, therefore, cement tile and cement paint manufacturing units. These consumers, mostly in the small scale sector, are today facing a major crisis because of a significant increase in the price of white cement during a short period. The present annual licensed production capacity of white and grey cement in the country is approximately 3.5 lakh tonnes. The average demand is 2-2.5 tonnes. This means that there is idle capacity to the tune of one lakh tonnes or more. The price rise is, therefore, not a phenomenon arising out of inadequate production capacity but evidently because of artificial scarcity created by the manufacturers in their self-interest.

The main reason for the continuing spurt in cement price is its decontrol. As it is, there is stiff competition in the cement paint and tile manufacturing business. Any further price revision at this stage is bound to have a severe adverse impact on the market conditions. The Government should take adequate steps to ensure that suitable controls are brought in. Else it should allow import of cement.

1. Why is the price of cement going up?
   (a) Because the Government is controlling the quota.
   (b) Because of export of white cement.
   (c) Because of the large usage of white cement.
   (d) Because of extensive usage of white cement for construction.
   (e) None of these.

2. Which of the following statement is false according to the passage?
(a) Price rise in white cement would increase the price of cement paint.
(b) White cement is a controlled product.
(c) Increase in price of white cement is not because of production problem.
(d) Price rise in white cement would upset cement tile market.
(e) Most cement paint manufacturers are from small scale sector.

3. What is the crisis being faced by the cement tile manufacturers as described in the passage?
(a) White cement is priced very low.
(b) White cement is not of good quality.
(c) White cement usage is high.
(d) White cement prices are very high.
(e) White cement is being exported.

4. Which of the following words has the same meaning as the word 'idle' as used in the passage?
(a) Lazy
(b) Clumsy
(c) Large
(d) Excess
(e) Known

5. Which of the following is correct according to the passage?
(a) White cement is not used in the manufacture of paint.
(b) White cement forms a minor part of tile manufacturing.
(c) White cement is very important for tile manufacturing.
(d) White cement is used only for making paints.
(e) None of these.

6. Which of the following words has the same meaning as the word 'artificial' as used in the passage?
(a) Unnatural
(b) Prolonged
(c) Practical
(d) Absolute
(e) Deliberate

7. What is the author's suggestion to bring down prices?
(a) Government should control the white cement market.
(b) Production capacity should be increased.
(c) Usage of white cement in other areas should be reduced.
(d) Competition among manufacturers of cement paints and tiles should be reduced.
(e) None of these.

8. Which of the following words has the opposite meaning as the word 'basic' as used in the passage?
(a) Vital
(b) Unimportant
(c) Acidic
(d) Last
(e) Small

9. Which of the following is correct according to the passage?
   (a) Cement production capacity is more than usage.
   (b) Cement production capacity is less than usage.
   (c) Cement production capacity is equal to usage.
   (d) Cement production capacity is twice than usage.
   (e) None of these.

10. What can be presumed from the passage regarding foreign trade in cement?
   (a) The country is exporting cement at present.
   (b) The country is importing cement at present.
   (c) The country is exporting and importing cement.
   (d) The country is neither exporting nor importing cement.
   (e) None of these.

Passage 3

Because goldfish can be kept easily in small ponds and aquariums, They make good pets, but like many other pets, they must have proper care and the right kind of place to live.

A twoinch fish requires a minimum of two gallons of water containing sufficient oxygen to support life. Some oxygen will make its way into the water of an aquarium from the air that touches the surface. Plants in an aquarium also help to furnish oxygen. Snails help to keep an aquarium clean. Thus, with plenty of plants and snail, the water in an aquarium does not have to be changed frequently. A large lake may prove to be a quite unsuitable abode for goldfish.

It is important that goldfish should not be overfed. They can be fed such things as dried insects in addition to commercially prepared goldfish food, but they should never be fed more than once a day. Even then, they should not be given more food than can be consumed in about five minutes. This ensures prolonged life.

1. Which of the following statement is true?
   (a) Goldfish should be given food only once a day.
   (b) Snails eat up the goldfish in an aquarium.
   (c) Plants provide food to the snails.
   (d) Goldfish comes above the surface of water to get oxygen from air.
   (e) A large take is an ideal place for goldfish.

2. Which of the following statements is not true?
   (a) Snails make the aquarium clean by eating up goldfish.
   (b) Two gallons of water with sufficient oxygen is enough for two inch fish.
   (c) Goldfish can be made good pets.
   (d) Plants in an aquarium provide oxygen to goldfish.
   (e) Goldfish must never be given too much food.

3. Which of the following helps supply goldfish with oxygen?
   (a) Snails
   (b) Plants
   (c) Dried insects
   (d) Aquarium
   (e) Surface of water

4. Water in an aquarium needs to be changed if ....
   (a) there are plenty of snails and plants in it.
   (b) there is no sufficient oxygen in it.
   (c) it is very clean and contains sufficient oxygen.
   (d) it does not contain goldfish food and dried insects.
   (e) None of these.

5. What is important to remember when feeding goldfish?
   (a) They should be fed more than once a day.
   (b) They should be fed at five-minute intervals.
   (c) They should be fed with plants and snails.
   (d) They should be fed only once a day.
   (e) They should be given more food than they can consume.

Passage 4

The forces that generate conditions conducive to crime and riots are stronger in urban communities than in rural areas. Urban living is more anonymous living. It often releases the individual from community restraints more common in tradition-oriented societies. But more freedom from constraints and controls also provides greater freedom to deviate. And living in the more impersonalized, formally controlled Urban society means that regulatory orders of conduct are often directed by distant bureaucrats. The police are strangers executing these prescriptions on an anonymous set of subjects. Minor offences in small town or village are often handled without resort to official police action. As disputable as such action may seem to be, it results in fewer recorded violations of the law compared to the big cities. Although perhaps causing some decision-difficulties for the police in small town, formal and objective law enforcement is not always acceptable to villagers.

Urban areas with mass population, greater wealth, more commercial establishments and more products of our technology also provide more frequent opportunities for theft. Victims are impersonalized, property is insured, consumer goods in more abundance are vividly displayed and are more portable. The crime-rate increases despite fromal moral education given in schools.

1. According to the passage, all the following contribute to higher crime-rates in urban areas except :
   (a) vivid display of consumer goods.
   (b) higher standard of living.
   (c) Urban impersonalized living.
   (d) increasing population.
   (e) inadequate police force.

2. Which of the following is a characteristic of an urban setting?
   (a) Unreported minor crimes.
   (b) Deviation from freedom.
   (c) Less forceful social control.
   (d) Minimal opportunities of crime due to better law enforcement.
   (e) Fewer recorded violations of the law.

3. The author's view of 'Traditional Societies' is best expressed by which of the following?
   (a) They provide less freedom for the individual in many circumstances.
   (b) They have lower crime-rates because of the moral teachings in schools.
   (c) They provide inadequate freedom for personal movements and travel.
   (d) They do not have adequate modern technology.
   (e) They are ruled and controlled by distant bureaucrats.

4. People live under more social control in :
   (a) formally controlled Urban societies.
   (b) the presence of the police authorities.
   (c) an anonymous form of living.
   (d) non-traditional societies.
   (e) None of these.

5. It can be inferred from the passage that urban crime can be controlled by :
   (a) greater emphasis on moral education.
   (b) enforcement of law by distant bureaucrats.
   (c) vivid display of expensive consumer goods.
   (d) making the expensive consumer goods less portable.
   (e) None of these.

6. Which of the following statements is true in the context of the passage?
   (a) The display of consumer goods is the main cause of crime.
   (b) Lack of personal contacts increases crimes in Urban areas.
   (c) Small communities have more minor crimes than in Urban centres.
   (d) Urban crime areas cannot be prevented.
   (e) Police in Urban areas settle minor disputes without official action.

7. Which of the following statements is not true in the context of the passage?
   (a) Moral education imparted in schools is ineffective in checking crime-rate.
   (b) There is less freedom in the current society than in a traditional society.
   (c) Urban areas are thickly populated and commercialized.
   (d) Anonymous living in urban areas may lead to a freedom to deviate from rules.
   (e) Urban areas provide more opportunities for crime than rural areas do.

8. According to the passage, the crime in small towns :
   (a) is less frequently reported or dealt with officially.
   (b) is brought well under control by distant bureaucrats.
   (c) leads to an impersonalized style of living.
   (d) is often dealt with objective law enforcement.
   (e) always causes difficulties for the police authorities.

Passage 5

A close look at the facts relating to political interference in administration shows that it is not a one-way process. There is often a nexus between power-hungry and corrupt politicians and civil servants with convenient principles. Many civil servants are only too anxious to

oblige the politicians, and then cash the obligation when they need some special favour. So the attitude of self-righteousness adopted by the civil service is sometimes only a way of covering their own flaws by blaming others.

Every now and then some retired civil servants come out with his memoirs, painting a glorious picture of the heights of administrative efficiency reached during his reign. There is often the suggestion that had there not been so much political interference, things would have been even more fantastic. It is not unusual for the self-styled hero to blame not only interfering politicians but also fellow civil servants who were idiots or crooks, for his failures. This attitude of smug self-satisfaction is, unfortunately, developed during the years of service. Self-preservation rather than service is encouraged by our whole system of rules and procedures.

The remedy has to be drastic and quickly effective. The over-protection now granted to civil servants must end. Today to remove an erring civil servant is just not possible. And the only thing that the highest authority in the Govenment, both in the State and at the Centre, can do is to transfer an official from one job to another. The rules for taking disciplinary action are so complicated that, in the end, the defaulting civil servant gets away, and gets his full emoluments even for the period of the disciplinary proceedings, thus making it a paid holiday for him.

The result is that the administration has become rule-oriented and not result-oriented. Action is possible against the official who takes some interest in his work, but no action is ever taken against a person who does not deliver the goods. If the country is to adopt a result-oriented approach, it is necessary to link job performance with job retention.

1. The facts relating to the problem of political interference indicate that :
   (a) honest bureaucrats are always being troubled by politicians.
   (b) politicians are often misled and trapped by civil servants.
   (c) politicians and civil servants co-operate to gain mutual advantages.
   (d) politicians and civil servants use interference as an excuse for victimizing the common man.

2. The attitude of self-righteousness adopted by the civil service, according to the writer :
   (a) is not welcomed and supported by politicians.
   (b) is dishonest and conceals the facts.
   (c) is very difficult to maintain because of opposition.
   (d) does not really help the public get fair treatment.

3. Civil servants who write their memoirs after retiring :
   (a) claim that they would have achieved outstanding success if interference had not come in the way.
   (b) prove that constant political interference made it impossible for them to do anything properly.
   (c) complain that the credit for their achievements goes to dishonest politicians.
   (d) prove that people of inferior quality in the civil service bring about interference.

4. The existing system of administration seems to encourage civil servants :
   (a) to become self-styled heroes and boss over others.
   (b) to present a glorious picture of the administration.
   (c) to become self-centred and concerned mainly about their own gain.
   (d) to become self-righteous and fight back against corrupt politicians.

5. The problem with the present set-up needing urgent action is :
   (a) a lack of accountability on the part of civil servants.
   (b) a lack of control over the power of politicians.
   (c) a neglect of the ideals of self-righteousness.
   (d) complicated rules and procedures that greatly reduce efficiency.

6. The main principle of the remedy proposed by the writer is, that :
   (a) the politicians should be made accountable for all their decisions.
   (b) the high level of protection enjoyed by civil servants should be reduced.
   (c) the common man's right to efficient and fair administration must be protected.
   (d) rules should be simplified so that there is less scope for misuse.

7. According to existing procedures, if a civil servant is found to be unsuitable or dishonest, :
   (a) he can appeal to an authority like the Supreme Court.
   (b) politicians with whom he has special links will interfere to help him.
   (c) transferring him to another post is the usual action taken.
   (d) a conflict between Central Government and State Government interests can arise.

8. The writer refers to 'a paid holiday' to support his argument that :
   (a) civil servants get a lot of extra benefits.
   (b) disciplinary action is generally not quick or effective.
   (c) lazy and inefficient bureaucrats seem to be on holiday even when on duty.
   (d) special postings that 'favoured' civil servants are unnecessary and wasteful.

9. The expression 'linking job performance with job retention' refers to a policy in which :
   (a) selection to civil service jobs is on the basis of rigorous performance tests.
   (b) selection to civil service jobs is on the basis of rigorous performance and not a minister's opinions is the basis of transfer or promotion.
   (c) retention of good Government servants by discouraging their going to private companies.
   (d) continuation in service will depend on satisfactory performance.

10. The expression 'deliver the goods' means :
   (a) show good job performance.
   (b) accept bribes or other illegal favours.
   (c) make payments of black money as bribes.
   (d) successfully defend oneself against a charge, in a disciplinary inquiry.

Passage 6

A recent report in News Week says that in American colleges, students of Asian origin outperform not only the minority group students but the majority whites as well. Many of these students must be of Indian origin, and their achievement is something we can be proud of. It is unlikely that these talented youngsters will come back to India, and that is the familiar brain drain problem. However recent statements by the nation's policy-makers indicate that the perception of this issue is changing. 'Brain bank' and not 'brain drain' is the more appropriate idea, they suggest since the expertise of Indians abroad is only deposited in other places and not lost.

This may be so, but this brain bank, like most other banks, is one that primarily serves customers in its neighbourhood. The skills of the Asians now excelling in America's colleges will mainly help the U.S.A.. No matter how significant, what non-resident Indians do for India and what their counterparts do for other Asian lands is only a by-product.

But it is also necessary to ask, or be reminded, why Indians study fruitfully when abroad. The Asians whose accomplishments News Week records would have probably had a very different tale if they had studied in India. In America they found elbow room, books and facilities not available and not likely to be available here. The need to prove themselves in their new country and the competition of an international standard they faced there must have cured mental and physical laziness. But other things helping them in America can be obtained here if we achieve a change in social attitudes, specially towards youth.

We need to learn to value individuals and their unique qualities more than conformity and respectability. We need to learn the language of encouragement to add to our skill in flattery. We might also learn to be less liberal with blame and less tightfisted with appreciation, especially.

1. Among the many groups of students in American colleges, Asian students :
   (a) are often written about in magazines like News Week.
   (b) are most successful academically.
   (c) have proved that they are as good as the whites.
   (d) have only a minority status like the blacks.

2. The student of Asian origin in America include :
   (a) a fair number from India.
   (b) a small group from India.
   (c) persons from India who are very proud.
   (d) Indians who are the most hard working of all.

3. In general, the talented young Indians studying in America :
   (a) have a reputation for being hard working.
   (b) have the opportunity to contribute to India's development.
   (c) can solve the brain drain problem because of recent changes in policy.
   (d) will not return to pursue their careers in India.

4. There is talk now of the 'brain bank'. This idea :
   (a) is a solution to the brain drain problem.
   (b) is a new problem caused partly by the brain drain.
   (c) is a new way of looking at the role of qualified Indians living abroad.
   (d) is based on a plan to utilize foreign exchange remittances to stimulate research and development.

5. The brain bank has limitations like all banks in the sense that :
   (a) a bank's services go mainly to those near it.
   (b) small neighbourhood banks are not visible in this age of multinationals.
   (c) only what is deposited can be withdrawn and utilized.
   (d) no one can be forced to put his assets in a bank.

6. The author feels that what non-resident Indians do for India :
   (a) will have many useful side effects.
   (b) will not be their main interest and concern.
   (c) can benefit other Asian countries, as a by-product.
   (d) can American colleges be of service to the world community.

7. The performance of Indians when they go to study in the West :
   (a) shows the fruits of hardwork done by school teachers in India.
   (b) should remind us that knowledge and wisdom are not limited by the boundaries of race and nation.
   (c) is better than people in the West expect of non-whites.
   (d) is better than what it would have been if they had studied in India.

8. The high level of competition faced by Asian students in America :
   (a) helps them overcome their lazy habits.
   (b) makes them lazy since the facilities there are good.
   (c) makes them worried about failing.
   (d) helps them prove that they are as good as whites.

9. The author feels that some of the conditions other than the level of facilities that make the West attractive :
   (a) are available in India but young people do not appreciate them.
   (b) can never be found here because we believe in conformity.
   (c) can be created if our attitudes and values change.
   (d) can also give respectability to our traditions and customs.

10. One of the ways of making the situation in India better would be :
   (a) to eliminate flattery from public life.
   (b) to distinguish between conformity and respectability.
   (c) to give appreciation and not be tightfisted.
   (d) to encourage people and not merely flatter them.

Passage 7

True, it is the function of the army to maintain law and order in abnormal times. But in normal times there is another force that compels citizens to obey the laws and to act with due regard to the rights of others. The force also protects the lives and the properties of law abiding men. Laws are made to secure the personal safety of its subjects and to prevent murder and crimes of violence. They are made to secure the property of the citizens against theft and damage to protect the rights of communities and castes to carry out their customs and ceremonies, so long as they do not conflict with the rights of others. Now the good citizen, of his own free will obey these laws and he takes care that everything he does is done

with due regard to the rights and well-being of others. But the bad citizen is only restrained from breaking these laws by fear of the consequence of his actions. And the necessary steps to compel the bad citizen to act as a good citizen are taken by this force. The supreme control of law and order in a State is in the hands of a Minister who is responsible to the State Assembly and acts through the Inspector General of Police.

1. The expression 'customs and ceremonies' means :
   (a) fairs and festivals.
   (b) habits and traditions.
   (c) usual practices and religious rites.
   (d) superstitions and formalities.

2. A suitable title for the passage would be :
   (a) the function of the army.
   (b) laws and the people's rights.
   (c) the fear of the law and citizen's security.
   (d) the functions of the police.

3. Which of the following is not implied in the passage?
   (a) Law protects those who respect it.
   (b) Law ensures people's religious and social rights absolutely and unconditionally.
   (c) A criminal is deterred from committing crimes only for fear of the law.
   (d) The forces of law help to transform irresponsible citizens into responsible ones.

4. According to the writer, which one of the following is not the responsibility of the police?
   (a) To protect the privileges of all citizens.
   (b) To check violent activities of citizens.
   (c) To ensure peace among citizens by safeguarding individual rights.
   (d) To maintain peace during extraordinary circumstances.

5. Which of the following reflects the main thrust of the passage?
   (a) It deals with the importance of the army in maintaining law and order.
   (b) It highlights role of the police as superior to that of the army.
   (c) It discusses the roles of the army and the police in different circumstances.
   (d) It points to the responsibility of the Minister and the Inspector General of Police.

6. "They are made to secure the property of citizens against theft and damage", means that the law :
   (a) helps in recovering the stolen property of the citizens.
   (b) assist the citizens whose property has been stolen or destroyed.
   (c) initiate process against offenders of law.
   (d) safeguard people's possessions against being stolen or lost.

7. Out of the following which one has the opposite meaning to the word 'restrained' in the passage?
   (a) Promoted
   (b) Accelerated
   (c) Intruded
   (d) Inhibited

8. Which one of the following statement is implied in the passage?
   (a) Peaceful citizens seldom violate the law, but bad citizens have to be restrained by the police.
   (b) Criminals, who flout the law, are seldom brought to book.
   (c) The police hardly succeed in converting bad citizens into good citizens.
   (d) The police check the citizens, whether they are good or bad, from violating the law.

9. Which of the following statements expresses most accurately the idea contained in the first sentence?
   (a) It is the job of the army to ensure internal peace at all times.
   (b) It is the police that should always enforce law and order in the country.
   (c) Army and the police ensure people's security through combined operations.
   (d) It is in exceptional circumstances that the army has to ensure peace in the country.

10. The last sentence of the passage implies that :
   (a) The Inspector General of Police is the sole authority in matters of law and order.
   (b) In every State maintenance of public peace is under the overall control of the responsible Minister.
   (c) A Minister and a responsible State, Assembly exercise direct authority in matters pertaining to law and order.
   (d) The Inspector General of Police is responsible to the State Assembly for maintaining law and order.

Passage 8

The first step is for us to realise that a city need not be a frustrater of life; it can be among other things, a mechanism for enhancing life, for producing possibilities of living which are not to be realized except through cities. But, for that to happen, deliberate and drastic planning is needed. Towns as much as animals, must have their systems of organs–those for transport and circulation are an obvious example. What we need now are organ systems for recreation, leisure, culture, community expression. This means abundance of open space, easy access to unspoilt Nature, beauty in parks and in fine buildings, gymnasia and swimming baths and recreation grounds in plenty, central spaces for celebrations and demonstrations, halls for citizens' meetings, concert halls and theatres and cinemas that belong to the city. And the buildings must not be built anyhow or dumped down anywhere; both they and their groupings should mean something important to the people of the place.

1. Cities can be made to provide full facilities for life, only if :
   (a) these can be mechanically developed.
   (b) proper transport system is introduced.
   (c) cinemas, theatres and concert halls are established there.
   (d) these are thoughtfully and vigorously designed to serve people's needs.

2. A suitable title for the passage would be :
   (a) Towns versus Animals.
   (b) The Need for Planned Cities.
   (c) Transport and Communication System in a City.
   (d) The Need for Entertainment Centres in a City.

3. "A city need not be a frustrater of life" means that :
   (a) one does not expect fulfilment of all life's requirements from a city.
   (b) city life provides all the essential needs of life.
   (c) a city does not necessarily lift man's standard of living.
   (d) a city should not defeat the fulfilment of life's aspirations and aims.

4. Which one of the following has the opposite meaning to the word 'frustrater' in the passage?
   (a) Promoter (b) Applauder
   (c) Approver (d) Executer

5. "The building must not be built anyhow or dumped down anywhere"....the statement implies that building :
   (a) should be built with suitable material.
   (b) should be constructed, according to some suitable design, not indiscriminately.
   (c) should be scattered to provide for more of open space.
   (d) should be built to enable citizens to enjoy nature.

6. The word 'drastic' in the passage means :
   (a) orderly. (b) powerful.
   (c) consistent. (d) determined.

7. The author talks about 'Unspoilt Nature'. In what way can Nature remain unspoilt?
   (a) If Nature is not allowed to interfere with people's day-to-day life.
   (b) By building cities with the system of organs like those of animals.
   (c) By allowing free access to parks and open spaces.
   (d) By allowing Nature to retain its primitive, undomesticated character.

8. According to the author, the function of a city is to :
   (a) provide adequate community expression.
   (b) make available centres of recreation and public gatherings.
   (c) facilitate traffic and communication.
   (d) raise the tone of life and make it more meaningful.

9. The opening sentence of the passage implies that :
   (a) the possibilities of living a decent life cannot be found in a city.
   (b) only a city can provide the means to lead a full life.
   (c) among other places, a city can also help man to lead a successful life.
   (d) a city provides better opportunities for good living than a village.

Passage 9

It is strange that, according to his position in life, an extravagant man is admired or despised. A successful businessman does nothing to increase his popularity by being careful with his money. He is expected to display his success, to have a smart car, an expensive life, and to be lavish with his hospitality. If he is not so, he is considered mean and his reputation in business may even suffer in consequence. The paradox remains that if he had not been careful with his money in the first place, he would never have achieved his present wealth. Among the lwo income group, a different set of values exists. The young clerk who makes his wife a present of a new dress when he hadn't paid his house rent, is condemned as extravagant. Carefulness with money to the point of meanness is applauded as a virtue. Nothing in his life is considered more worthy than paying his bills. The ideal wife for such a man separates her housekeeping money into joyless little piles—so much for rent, for food, for the children's shoes; she is able to face the milkman with equanimity and never knows the guilt of buying something she can't really afford. As for myself, I fall into neither of these categories. If I have money to spare, I can be extravagant, but when, as is usually the case, I am hard up, then I am the meanest man imaginable.

1. In the opinion of the writer, a successful businessman :
   (a) is more popular if he appears to be doing nothing.
   (b) should not bother about his popularity.
   (c) must be extravagant before achieving success.
   (d) is expected to have expensive tastes.

2. The phrase 'lavish with his hospitality' signifies :
   (a) miserliness in dealing with his friends.
   (b) considerateness in spending on guests and strangers.
   (c) extravagance in entertaining guests.
   (d) indifference in treating his friends and relatives.

3. We understand from the passage that :
   (a) all mean people are wealthy.
   (b) wealthy people are invariably successful.
   (c) carefulness generally leads to failure.
   (d) thrift may lead to success.

4. It seems that low paid people should :
   (a) not pay their bills promptly.
   (b) not keep their creditors waiting.
   (c) borrow money to meet their essential needs.
   (d) feel guilty if they overspend.

5. The word 'parodox' means :
   (a) statement based on facts.
   (b) that which brings out the inner meaning.
   (c) that which is contrary to received opinion.
   (d) statement based on the popular opinion.

6. How does the housewife, described by the writer, feel when she saves money?
   (a) is content to be so thrifty.
   (b) wishes life were less burdensome.
   (c) is still troubled by a sense of guilt.
   (d) wishes she could sometimes be extravagant.

7. Which of the following is opposite in meaning to the word 'applauded' in the passage?
   (a) Humiliated
   (b) Decried
   (c) Cherished
   (d) Suppressed

8. The statement 'she is able to face the milkman with equanimity' implies that :
   (a) she is not upset as she has been paying the milkman his dues regularly.
   (b) she loses her nerve at the sight of the milkman who always demands his dues.
   (c) she manages to keep cool as she has to pay the milkman only a month's dues.
   (d) she remains composed and confident as she knows that she can handle the milkman tactfully.

9. As far as money is concerned, we get the impression that the writer :
   (a) is incapable of saving anything.
   (b) is never inclined to be extravagant.
   (c) would like to be considered extravagant.
   (d) doesn't often have any money to save.

10. Which of the following would be the most suitable title for the passage?
   (a) Extravagance leads to poverty.
   (b) Miserly habits of the poor.
   (c) Extravagance in the life of the rich and the poor.
   (d) Extravagance is always condemnable.

Passage 10

A pioneering scheme has been started recently in Southampton on England's south coast to educate motorists who have been convicted of drunken driving.

The penalty for drunken driving might be the loss of a driving licence and a heavy fine. But under the new scheme, convicted drivers do not pay the fine. Instead they have to attend eight training sessions—one a week organized by the local authority probation service. Designed to demonstrate the damage alcohol can do, the scheme was devised by senior probation officer John Cook. He said about a quarter of the people who came to him had a drink problem, but had not realized how much they were drinking. One way of getting the message across was to make the drivers pour out their usual ration of alcohol and then measure it. Almost everyone pours out not a single measure but a double at least an example of how easy it is to have more than just one drink and to encourage other people to do the same. The instructors on the course are giving clinical evidence of the effects of alcohol on the body and brain. The sober truth is that drinking badly affects driving skills, although the drinker might like to believe otherwise.

1. The Southampton scheme requires convicted drivers :
   (a) to pay a heavy fine.
   (b) to attend eight driving sessions–one a week.
   (c) to undergo a probation service.
   (d) to surrender their driving licence.

2. John Cook devised the scheme :
   (a) as a demonstration technique for driving.
   (b) to demonstrate the harmful effects of alcohol.
   (c) to show that Southampton was concerned about drivers.
   (d) to prove that alcohol does influence driving.

3. The problem with a quarter of the people who went to John Cook was that they :
   (a) did not want to stop drinking.
   (b) were unaware of the fact that they could get drunk.
   (c) would not admit that they had a drinking problem.
   (d) did not know how much they were drinking.

4. Most drivers start off with at least :
   (a) a double measure.
   (b) a single measure.
   (c) a little less than a single measure.
   (d) two doubles.

5. The truth is that alcohol :
   (a) does not affect the body but only the brain.
   (b) affects only the brain.
   (c) affects the body and the brain.
   (d) has no effect on the body or the brain.

Passage 11

The reformer must know that what moves people is the authentic life, not mere writing. The newspaper and journals that Lokmanya Tilak and other reformers ran, the books they wrote, sold little, but had enormous effect. Their writing was known to reflect and be just an extension of, their exemplary lives. It was the authenticity of their lives which lent weight to their message, to their example. All knew that their lives were an integral whole-they were not moral in public life and lax in private, nor vice versa. They were not full of pious thoughts and sacred resolutions within the walls of a temple.

A writer who is merely entertaining his readers, even one who is merely informing them, can do what he wants with the rest of his life. But the writer, who sets out to use his pen to reform public life, cannot afford such dualities.

Here is the testimony of one great man-about the influence of another, Lokmanya Tilak.

"I believe that an editor who has anything worth saying and who commands a clientele cannot be easily hushed. He delivered his finished message as soon as he is put under duress. The Lokmanya spoke more eloquently from the Mandalay fortress than through columns of the printed Kesari. His influence was multiplied thousand fold by his imprisonment and his speech and his pen had acquired much greater power after he was discharged than before his imprisonment. By his death we have been editing his paper without pen and speech through

the sacred resolution of the people to realize his life's dream. He could possibly have done more if he were today in the flesh preaching his view. Critics like me would perhaps be still finding fault in the expression of his or that. Today his message rules millions of hearts which are determined to raise a permanent living memorial by the fulfilment of his ambition in their lives."

1. Lokmanya Tilak's messages were most effective :
   (a) when he delivered them through his editorials.
   (b) after his death.
   (c) before his imprisonment.
   (d) when he delivered speeches.
   (e) None of these

2. Which of the following is the result of Lokmanya Tilak's exemplary life?
   (a) The newspapers edited by him did not incur monetary loss.
   (b) The books written by him were useful.
   (c) People resolved to fulfil his life's dream.
   (d) Critics still find fault with his views.
   (e) He was put in jail at Mandalay.

3. Which of the following is the general tendency of critics according to the passage?
   (a) To find fault with one or the other expression of a writer.
   (b) To praise only those writers whom they like.
   (c) To condemn one and all the reformer writers.
   (d) To suggest new ideas to the public.
   (e) To justify their criticism.

4. In the context of the passage, a reformer becomes effective if :
   (a) he is a journalist with an objective viewpoint.
   (b) he is an author with an excellent style of writing.
   (c) he is an effective political leader of the masses.
   (d) he is a person with consistency in his writing and life style.
   (e) he is good critic of social practices.

5. In the context of the passage, which of the following statements about Lokmanya Tilak and the reformers is true?
   (a) They were moral in private life but lax in public life.
   (b) Their influence on people was negligible.
   (c) Very few people used to read the newspapers edited by them.
   (d) They were allowed to edit their newspapers even from inside the jail.
   (e) Their influence was multiplied a thousand fold by their imprisonment.

6. Which of the following types of writers can be moral in their personal life and law in public life?
   (a) Those who want to reform people.
   (b) Those who want to entertain people.
   (c) Those who have a large number of followers who wish to emulate them.
   (d) Those who lead an authentic life.
   (e) Those whose writing is an extension of their exemplary lives.

Passage 12

A person who takes the trouble to form his own opinions and beliefs, will feel that he owes no responsibility to the majority for his conclusions. If he is a genuine lover of truth, if he is inspired by a passion for seeing things as they are and an abhorrence of holding ideas which do not conform to facts, he will be wholly independent of the assent of those around him. When he proceeds to apply his beliefs in the practical conduct of life, the position is different. There are then good reasons why his attitude should be less inflexible. The society in which he is placed is an ancient and composite growth. The people from whom he dissents have not come by their opinions, customs and by a process of mere haphazard. These opinions and customs all had their origin in a certain real supposed fitness. They have certain depth of root in the lives of a proportion of the existing generation. Their congruity with one another may have come to an end. That is only one side of the truth. The most zealous propagandism cannot penetrate to them. In common language, we speak of a generation as something possessed of a kind of exact unity, with all its parts and members homogenous. Yet, plainly it is not this. It is a whole but a whole in a state of constant flux its factors and elements are eternally shifting. It is not one but many generations. Each of the seven ages of man is neighbour to all the rest. The column of the veterans is already sinking into the last abyss, while the column of the newest recruits is forming to each its tradition, its tendency and its possibilities. Only a proportion of each can have nerve enough to grasp the banner of a new truth and endurance to bear it along rugged and untrodden ways. Thus we must remember the stuff of which life is made. We must consider what an overwhelming preponderence of the most tenacious energies and most concentrated interests of a society must be absorbed between material cares and the solitude of the affections. It is obviously unreasonable to lose patience and quarrel with one's time because it is tardy in throwing off its institutions and beliefs and slow to achieve the transformation which is the problem in front of it. Men and women have to live. The task for most of us is arduous enough to make us well pleased with even such imperfect shelter as we find in daily use and wont. To insist on whole community being made at once to submit to the reign of new practices and ideas that have just begun to commend themselves to the most advanced speculative intelligence of the time, this even if it were a possible process, would do hurry on social dissolution.

1. What is the hard task the author is referring to in the paragraph?
   (a) To earn a living.
   (b) To live normal life.
   (c) To change the society.
   (d) To change according to times.
   (e) To find shelter.

2. According to the passage, customs and traditions originate from?
   (a) Beliefs
   (b) Conflicts of life
   (c) Social utility
   (d) Contemporary leadership
   (e) Ignorance

3. According to the author, the attitude of self-opinionated person in the practical social life should be :
   (a) rigid.
   (b) flexible.
   (c) generous.
   (d) optimistic.
   (e) revolutionary.

4. According to the author, a generation is a whole but it is always :
(a) homogeneous.
(b) unified in values.
(c) growing.
(d) constant.
(e) heterogeneous.

5. What does the author mean by describing 'apply his beliefs in the practical conduct of life' in line six of the passage?
(a) To practise what he believes.
(b) To preach what he believes.
(c) To indoctrinate what he believes.
(d) To adhere to what he believes.
(e) To denounce what he believes.

6. According to the author, why overnight change in social setting is not desirable?
(a) It will invigorate our life.
(b) It is difficult to bring about.
(c) It will lead to social disintegration.
(d) It will retard progress of the society.
(e) None of these.

7. The author's attitude towards the problem he discusses is :
(a) opportunistic.
(b) realistic.
(c) pessimistic.
(d) intransient.
(e) doctrinaire.

Passage 13

Most of us use the products of science–railways, aeroplanes, electricity, wireless and thousands of others–without thinking how they came into existence. We take them for granted, as if we were entitled to them as a matter of right. And we are very proud of the fact that we live in an advanced age and are ourselves so very 'advanced'. Now, there is no doubt that our age is a very different one from previous ages and I think it is perfectly correct to say that it is far more advanced. But that is a different thing from saying that we as individuals or groups are more advanced. It would be the height of absurdity to say that because an engine-driver can run an engine and Plato or Socrates could not, the engine-driver is more advanced than, or is superior to Plato or Socrates. But it would be perfectly correct to say that the engine itself is a more advanced method of locomotion than Plato's chariot was.

1. Which one of the following statements is true?
(a) An engine-driver is cleverer than Plato or Socrates.
(b) Plato or Socrates is in no way inferior to the engine-driver.
(c) Plato and Socrates surpassed the engine-driver in every respect.
(d) The engine-driver cannot be compared to Plato or Aristotle.

2. In this passage the author mentions Plato and/or Socrates to emphasise that :
(a) they are/were men of great scholarship.
(b) people as individuals in the modern age are not more advanced than their predecessors.
(c) the engine is a better mode of locomotion than Plato's chariot.
(d) Plato and Aristotle had greater respect for learning.

3. According to the author, the present age is far more advanced than :
   (a) all the previous ages in some respect.
   (b) the age of Socrates and Aristotle in some respects.
   (c) some of the previous ages in all respects.
   (d) all the previous ages in all respects.

4. Many of us make use of machines :
   (a) with very little knowledge of their mechanism.
   (b) without any knowledge of their historical significance.
   (c) with full knowing of their genesis.
   (d) without knowing how they were invented.

5. People today are very proud because they live :
   (a) in a philosophically advanced age.
   (b) in a materially advanced age.
   (c) in a scientifically advanced age.
   (d) in a spiritually advanced age.

Passage 14

I tried a smile–there was no response. I offered the customary gifts–he waved them aside. I tried the few words I knew–and with a gesture of dignity and scorn he handed me a present, a solitary egg; white and chill it nestled in my palm. I smiled again but even I felt that my smiles had become mechanical. There was obviously nothing for it : I would have to put on my little act, which in my opinion is worth a whole Platoon of Assam Rifles as a safety measure. I removed my dentures. There was a roar of interest and excitement from the crowd. I put them back. Another roar. After I had conducted this humiliating performance several times, there was at least a reaction. The chief's lips began to twitch, and finally he broke into a hearty laugh. Pointing to his greying hair, he declared, 'I am an old man too', and soon he was sitting beside me very affably.

1. At first the author was treated by the chief as :
   (a) a person of lower status.
   (b) a person of higher status.
   (c) an old friend of the community.
   (d) a possible enemy.

2. The removing of dentures by the author was intended to show that :
   (a) he was not frightened.
   (b) he was old and weak in some ways.
   (c) he knew a lot of tricks to amuse people.
   (d) he did not wish to be treated as a friend.

3. The crowd was made up of :
   (a) the soldiers from Assam Rifles.
   (b) the tribal people.
   (c) the men who had accompanied the author.
   (d) the chief's bodyguards.

4. The passage suggests that :
   (a) it is impossible to make friends with the tribals.
   (b) it is quite easy to be accepted by the tribals.
   (c) with a little effort it is possible to make friends with the hearts of the tribals.
   (d) only a gift can win over the hearts of the tribals.

5. The chief laughed heartily when :
   (a) the author offered the usual gifts.
   (b) the crowd roared with interest and excitement.
   (c) the author removed his dentures again and again.
   (d) the author received the present and smiled.

Passage 15

In the past man's worst enemy was Nature. He lived under the continual threat of famine and pestilence, a wet summer could bring death to whole nation' and every winter was a menace. Mountains stood like a barrier between people and people, a sea was less a highway than an impassable division. Today Nature, though still an enemy, is an enemy almost completely conquered. Modern agriculture assures us of an ample food supply. Modern transportation has made the resources of the entire planet accessible to all its inhabitants. Modern medicine and sanitation allow dense populations to cover the ground without risk of pestilence. True, we are still at the mercy of the more violent natural convulsions. Against earthquake, flood and hurricane man has, as yet, devised no adequate protection. At most times, Nature is no longer formidable, she has been subdued.

1. Modern medicine has helped man :
   (a) to live longer everywhere in the world.
   (b) to live a healthy life in hygienic conditions.
   (c) to live in thickly populated areas without fear of epidemics.
   (d) balance population with available resources.

2. Man has not yet succeeded in controlling the furies of :
   (a) earthquakes. (b) floods.
   (c) hurricanes. (d) All the three above.

3. Which one of the following statements best reflects the underlying conviction of the passage?
   (a) Man can do wonders.
   (b) Man's knowledge has no end.
   (c) Man has been able to control Nature to a great extent.
   (d) Man has been able to control Nature completely.

4. In ancient times, Man had an apprehension of :
   (a) epidemics. (b) severe droughts.
   (c) floods. (d) All the three above.

5. The modern transport system is a blessing as it :
   (a) has helped decrease the distance between towns and villages.
   (b) has brought comfort to both towns and villages.
   (c) has made all the commodities available to everyone.
   (d) has encouraged people to travel for pleasure.

Passage 16

The capitalist system of society does not foster healthy relations among human beings. A few people own all the means of production and others–though nominally few have to sell their labour under conditions imposed upon them. The emphasis of capitalism being on the supreme importance of material wealth the intensity of its appeal is to the acquisitive intensity. It promotes worship of economic power with little regard to the means employed for its acquisition and the end that it serves. By its exploitation of human beings to the limits of endurance its concentration is on the largest profit rather than maximum production. Thus the division of human family is done on the basis of economic circumstance. All this is injurious to division of human dignity. And when the harrowed poor turn to the founders of religion for succour, they rather offer a subtle defence of the established order. They promise future happiness for their present suffering and conjure up visions of paradise to redress the balance to soothe the suffering and the revolt of the tortured men. The system imposes injustice, the religion justifies it.

1. The passage indicates that the capitalist system is :
   (a) fair. (b) ambitious.
   (c) prosperous. (d) dehumanising.

2. The established order is supported by religion to :
   (a) alleviate the suffering of the poor in the capitalist system.
   (b) perpetuate the injustice imposed by the capitalist system.
   (c) balance the suffering of the poor with hopes of future rewards.
   (d) help the tortured men to seek redress.

3. In a capitalist system :
   (a) the means justify the ends.
   (b) the ends justify the means.
   (c) the means endorsed by religion are strictly followed.
   (d) means which lead to exploitation are strictly prohibited.

4. Capitalism is injurious to human relations because it divides society into two groups, i.e. :
   (a) working and non-working. (b) exploiters and exploited.
   (c) religious and irreligious. (d) buyers and sellers.

5. In a capitalistic system of society each man wishes :
   (a) to acquire maximum wealth. (b) to produce maximum wealth.
   (c) to have visions of paradise. (d) to soothe the sufferings of other.

Passage 17

If I had been asked in my early youth whether I preferred to have dealings only with men or only with books, my answer would certainly have been in favour of books. In later years this has become less and less. Not that I have had so much better experiences with men than with books, on the contrary delightful books even now come my way more often than purely delightful men. But the many bad experiences with men have nourished the meadow of my life as the noblest book could not do.

1. The author says that in later years his love of books diminished because :
   (a) he did not get many delightful books to read.
   (b) he had better experiences with men than with books.
   (c) he had given up the habit of reading books.
   (d) even the bad experiences he had with men were more valuable than what the noblest books could give.

2. Which one of the following statements best reflects the main arguments of the passage?
   (a) Books are always better than men.
   (b) There are more purely delightful men than purely delightful books.
   (c) It is the experience with other human beings that nourishes one's life and not necessarily books.
   (d) Neither men nor books give any worth while experience.

3. Which one of the pairs of phrases best helps to bring out the metaphorical meaning of the meadow of my life?
   (a) Pure and healthy life.
   (b) Vast and rich life.
   (c) Well nourished but dull life.
   (d) Poor but simple life.

4. In his early youth, the author :
   (a) liked to have more dealings with books than with men.
   (b) preferred to have dealings only with books.
   (c) liked to have more dealings with men than with books.
   (d) liked to have dealings more with men than with books.

Passage 18

In everyday speech we talk of having a good memory, of having a poor memory, of having a better memory for faces than for names, of having a memory that is failing and so on. Such talk suggests that memory is an object, a thing which we possess in the same way as we possess a head or a big toe. Yet it is true to say there is no such things as memory. A big toe can be seen and touched, but not so memory. Should an aquaintance boast of having an excellent memory, we cannot confirm his claim in the same way as if he boasted the possession of a well stocked library. We cannot ask him to show his memory. What we could do, however, is to see how much of his past experience he can recollect and how many of the books that he has read he can remember. Memory is a physical and mental retention of the past for future use. The mind and the body tend to forget experiences which are either unwelcome or useless.

1. The author says that :
   (a) memory is not tangible.
   (b) memory is like a big toe.
   (c) big toes are more tangible than memory.
   (d) memory is an object.

2. The author implies :
   (a) that memory has something to do with the brain.
   (b) that memory has got nothing to do with the brain.
   (c) that memory is like a well stocked library.
   (d) that memory is experience.

3. Memory deals with :
   (a) the past.
   (b) the present.
   (c) the future.
   (d) both the past and the present.

Passage 19

The stock-taking done at the first national convection on Consumer Protection served to highlight the areas that called for special attention to sustain the momentum of the movement as genuine forum for safeguarding the people's interests. Spreading awareness about the rights of the consumers and the relief open to them in case they did not get their money's worth of goods and services has rightly been identified as the first priority. While this may not be a difficult task in urban areas, where the movement is oncentrated at present, taking it to the vast rural hinterland calls for a multi-media approach in which radio and television have a crucial role to play. The involvement of the 500-odd consumer organizations in the country in publicising the concept of fair trade practices and the remedies available against their violation will prove rewarding, if the message is conveyed through village bodies.

Government efforts remain confined at best to setting up the infrastructure after the formal launch of the movement with the enactment of the Consumer Protection Act. The mounting backlog of cases in consumer courts, points to the need for toning up the district level redressal machinery.

The main objective of the movement is the creation of a culture that denies place in the market for products that are not consumer friendly. This is possible only if consumer bodies take over the watch-dog role performed by the Government till now and exercise social control over the market to see that the benefits of liberalization are not reaped by traders alone. But the plea to industry to exercise self-regulation and maintain minimum standards of quality and devise appropriate pricing is bound to go unheeded unless strict measures are taken to ensure compliance.

1. The first national convention on Consumer Protection has :
   (a) highlighed the areas for special attention.
   (b) spread awareness about consumer rights.
   (c) specified in relief open to the consumer.
   (d) given it a momentum.

2. Consumer Protection Act proposes to give the Consumer Protection against :
   (a) highly priced substandard goods.
   (b) cheating by selling substandard goods.
   (c) not getting his money's worth.
   (d) denial of relief if the product is not upto the mark.

3. Government contributed to the Consumer Protection Movement by :
   (a) toning up a district level redressal machinery.
   (b) clearing the backlog cases in the consumer court.
   (c) setting up infrastructure.
   (d) enactment of the Consumer Protection Act.

4. Spreading Consumer Protection Movement to the rural areas needs :
   (a) official patronage.
   (b) a multi-media approach.
   (c) consumer organization to canvass this.
   (d) message to be conveyed by village bodies.

5. Role of consumer bodies is :
   (a) to maintain minimum standards of quality.
   (b) to function as a watch-dog.
   (c) to make a plea to industry to exercise self-control.
   (d) to exercise social control over the market.

Passage 20

Though the U.S. prides itself on being a leader in the world community, a recent report shows that it lags far behind other industrialized countries in meeting the needs of its youngest and most vulnerable citizens. The U.S. has a higher infant mortality-rate, a higher proportion of low birth-weight babies, a smaller proportion of babies immunized against childhood diseases and a much higher rate of adolescent pregnancies. These findings, described as a 'quiet crisis' requiring immediate and far-reaching action, appeared in a report prepared by a task force of educators, doctors, politicians and business people. According to the report, a fourth of the nation's 12 million infants and toddlers live in poverty. As many as half confront risk factors that could harm their ability to develop intellectually, physically and socially. Child immunizations are too low, more children are born into poverty, more are in substandard care while their parents work and more are being raised by single parents. When taken together, these and other risk factors can lead to educational and health problems that are much harder and more costly to reverse.

The crisis begins in the womb with unplanned parenthood. Women with unplanned pregnancies are less likely to seek pre-natal care. In the U.S. 80% of tenage pregnancies and 56% of all pregnancies are unplanned. The problems continue after birth where unplanned pregnancies and unstable partnerships often go hand in hand. Since 1950, the number of single parent families has nearly tripled. More than 25 per cent of all births today are to unmarried mothers. As the number of single parent families grow and more women enter the work force, infants and toddlers are increasingly in the care of people other than their parents.

Most disturbingly, recent statistics show that American parents are increasingly neglecting or abusing their children. In only four years from 1987-1991, the number of children in foster care increased by over 50 per cent. Babies under the age of one are the fastest growing category of children entering foster care. The crisis affects children under the age of three most severely, the report says. Yet, it is this period-from infancy through pre-school years–that sets the stage for a child's future.

Directions (Q. 1-9) : *Choose the word which is most opposite in meaning to the given word as used in the passage.*

1. The main focus of the passage is on the plight of :
   (a) orphaned children.
   (b) teenage mothers.
   (c) low birthweight babies.
   (d) unwed mothers.
   (e) None of these.

2. Children falling in which age-group are most severely affected by the 'quiet crisis'?
   (a) Below one year.
   (b) Below three years.
   (c) Between two & three years.
   (d) Between one & three years.
   (e) None of these.

3. Which of the following does not constitute the 'quiet crisis' in the U.S. as per the task force report?
   (a) Lower proportion of new born babies with normal weight.
   (b) Higher incidence of adolecent girls becoming mothers.
   (c) Lower rate of babies surviving childhood diseases.
   (d) Larger proportion of babies who are deprived of immunization.
   (e) Increasing cases of teenage couples getting divorced.

4. Which of the following statements is not true in the context of the passage?
   (a) The number of single parent families today is approximately three times more than four decades ago.
   (b) The number of children in the U.S. entering foster care has decreased after 1991.
   (c) In the U.S., the number of infants living in poverty is about 3 million.
   (d) Only 20 per cent of all the pregnancies in the U.S. are planned.
   (e) About 6 million infants in the U.S. are likely to develop educational and health problems.

5. The number of children born to married mothers in the U.S. is approximately how many times the number of children born to unwed mothers?
   (a) 1.5 times
   (b) 2 times
   (c) 3 times
   (d) 3.5 times
   (e) Not mentioned in the passage.

6. Children born out of unplanned pregnancies are highly vulnerable because :
   (a) they are raised by single parents.
   (b) their parents are mostly poor.
   (c) they are mostly malnourished.
   (d) they are less likely to receive prenatal care.
   (e) their parents are emotionally immature.

7. Decide which of the following factors is/are responsible for the physical, intellectual and social under-development of infants in the U.S.?
   A. Illiteracy of parents
   B. Lack of parental care
   C. Poverty
   (a) Only A
   (b) Only B
   (c) Only C
   (d) Both A & C
   (e) Both B & C

8. An increasing number of infants in the U.S. are in foster care on account of :
   (a) an increasing number of single parent families with the female member working.
   (b) an increasing number of women maintaining the status of unwed motherhood and becoming economically independent.
   (c) an increasing number of employed couples who are required to stay apart.
   (d) an increasing number of women getting divorced and abandoning their babies.
   (e) an increasing number of parents who lack awareness about baby-care.

9. The task force report seems to be based on the data pertaining to the period :
   (a) 1987-91.
   (b) 1950 onwards till date.
   (c) 1987 onwards till date.
   (d) 1950-91.
   (e) 1991 onwards till date.

Directions (Q. 10-12) : *Choose the word which is most nearly the same in meaning as the given word as used in the passage.*

10. CONFRONT
   (a) Face
   (b) Tolerate
   (c) Succumb
   (d) Eliminate
   (e) Oppose

11. VULNERABLE
   (a) Insecure
   (b) Indispensable
   (c) Risky
   (d) Promising
   (e) Delicate

12. ABUSING
   (a) Cursing
   (b) beating
   (c) Ill treating
   (d) Accusing
   (e) Oppressing

Directions (Q. 13-15) : *Choose the word which is most opposite in meaning to the given word as used in the passage.*

13. SEVERELY
   (a) Drastically
   (b) Intensely
   (c) Minutely
   (d) Normally
   (e) Slightly

14. UNSTABLE
   (a) Changing
   (b) Steady
   (c) Stagnant
   (d) Confined
   (e) Constant

15. SUBSTANDARD
   (a) Impoverished
   (b) Compassionate
   (c) Excellent
   (d) Beneficial
   (e) Valuable

❑

ANSWERS

PART-C

1. Sequence of Sentences

Work Book Exercise (A) : Jumbled Parts of a Sentence

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (c) 6. (d) 7. (b) 8. (c) 9. (b) 10. (d)
11. (a) 12. (a) 13. (a) 14. (d) 15. (b) 16. (a) 17. (b) 18. (d) 19. (c) 20. (b)
21. (d) 22. (b) 23. (c)

Work Book Exercise (B)

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (d) 10. (c)
11. (c) 12. (a) 13. (b) 14. (b) 15. (d) 16. (c) 17. (b) 18. (a) 19. (d) 20. (a)
21. (c) 22. (b) 23. (c) 24. (b) 25. (b) 26. (d)

Work Book Exercise (C) : Ordering of sentences

1. (d) 2. (d) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (d) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (c) 10. (c)
11. (c) 12. (b) 13. (c) 14. (a) 15. (b) 16. (a) 17. (d) 18. (b) 19. (c) 20. (d)
21. (b) 22. (a) 23. (c) 24. (d) 25. (c)

Work Book Exercise (D)

1. (e) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (d) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (a)

Work Book Exercise (E)

I.	1. (a)	2. (d)	3. (b)	4. (c)	5. (e)
II.	1. (e)	2. (d)	3. (a)	4. (c)	5. (b)
III.	1. (c)	2. (e)	3. (d)	4. (a)	5. (b)

2. Objective Comprehension

Passage 1

1. (e) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (b) 6. (e) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (a)

Passage 2

1. (e) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (e) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (a) 10. (d)

Passage 3

1. (a) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (b) 5. (d)

Passage 4

1. (e) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (e) 5. (e) 6. (b) 7. (b) 8. (a)

Passage 5

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (b) 9. (d) 10. (a)

Passage 6

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (b) 7. (d) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (c)

Passage 7

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (d) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (d) 10. (b)

Passage 8

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (b)

Passage 9

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (d) 10. (c)

Passage 10

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (c)

Passage 11

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (d) 6. (b)

Passage 12

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (b)

Passage 13

1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (c)

Passage 14

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (c)

Passage 15

1. (c) **2.** (d) **3.** (c) **4.** (d) **5.** (c)

Passage 16

1. (d) **2.** (b) **3.** (b) **4.** (b) **5.** (a)

Passage 17

1. (d) **2.** (c) **3.** (b) **4.** (a)

Passage 18

1. (a) **2.** (d) **3.** (a)

Passage 19

1. (a) **2.** (b) **3.** (c) **4.** (b) **5.** (b)

Passage 20

1. (c) **2.** (b) **3.** (e) **4.** (b) **5.** (c) **6.** (d) **7.** (e) **8.** (a) **9.** (d) **10.** (a)
11. (e) **12.** (c) **13.** (e) **14.** (b) **15.** (d)

PART-D

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

Chapter 1

Narration

(a) **Direct Narration :** Direct narration is a kind of speech which is reported by some other person exactly in the words spoken by the speaker. This speech is placed within inverted commas.

(i) She said to him, "I shall give you money." (Direct Narration)

(b) **Indirect Narration :** Indirect narration is a speech which is reported by some other person by using certain conjunctions in place of commas and making necessary changes in the verbs and the pronouns of the reported speech.

(i) She told him that she would give him money. (Indirect Narration)

For the purpose of changing narration, sentences are divided as follows :

1. Assertive Sentences

Sentences denoting statements in affirmative and negative.

- You are playing.
- She was not sleeping.
- He did this work.
- They will not write to us.

2. Interrogative Sentences

(a) Sentences beginning with auxiliary verbs. (Yes or No answer type questions)

- Are you playing?
- Was she sleeping?
- Did he do this work?
- Will they write to us?

(b) Sentences beginning with question words such as ..... when, where, why, who, which, what etc.

- When are you playing?
- Where was she sleeping?
- Why did he do this work?
- What will they write to us?

3. Imperative Sentences

Sentences denoting command, request & advice are called imperative sentences.

- Soldiers, turn to the right.
- Please give me something to eat.
- Do not waste time.
- Let me stay here.

4. Exclamatory Sentences (Expressing, joy, sorrow, wonder etc.)

- How nice of him!
- What a pretty girl she is!
- Ah! It is beautiful locket
- Alas! All is over.

5. Optative Sentences (Expressing wish, prayer, etc.)

- May you live long!
- Happy Diwali, children!
- Good bye, my daughters!
- Fie, what an ughy sight!

Change in Narration

Assertive Sentences

1. **Assertive Sentences :** Assertive sentences are changed in indirect narration as follows:

(A) Reporting Verb : Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into "tell" or "told" with an object othervise 'say' and 'said' are retained.
'Think'/wonder to oneself can also be used.

(i) He says, "I am a doctor". (Direct)
He says that he is a doctor. (Indirect)

(ii) She said, "I am a doctor."
She said that she was a doctor.

(iii) She says to me, "I am a doctor."
She tells me that she is a doctor.

(iv) She thought, "She will not go out with him."
She thought to herself that she would not go out with him.

(B) Inverted Commas : "That" is used in place of inverted commas.

(i) She said to me, "I am a doctor."
She told me that she was a doctor.

(C) Tense

(a) If the Reporting verb is in the Present or future or Reported speech is a universal truth, the tense of Reported speech does not change.

(i) She says, "I shall go to Delhi."
She says that she will go to Delhi.

(ii) I say to her, "I shall give her money."
I tell her that I shall give her money.

(iii) Teacher said to the students, "The sun rises in the East."
Teacher told the students that the sun rises in the east.

(b) If the Reporting verb is in the past, the tense of the Reported speech changes into past as follows :

(i) Present tense changes into past tense

Present indefinite	Past indefinite
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
Present Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous

(ii) Past tense changes as follows

Past indefinite	Past Perfect
Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Perfect	No Change
Past Perfect Continuous	No Change

(iii) Future tense
will/shall change into would/should

(iv) Modals are changed as follows

May	Might
Can	Could
Have to	Had to
Had to	Had had to
Should	No change
Must	No change

Some Hints on Change of Tenses

1. Need not, used to, would rather, would better, had rather, had better, should, must, subjunctive mood do not change.
2. **Past Continuous :**
   (a) Past continuous changes when it refers to a **complete action-**
   (i) She said to me, "I was thinking of helping him but changed my mind later on".
   (ii) She told me that she had been thinking of helping him but changed her mind later on. (Complete action)
3. **Past continuous does not change when it is used in time clause :**
   (i) He said to me, "While I was singing, she was dancing."
   (ii) He told me that while he was singing. she was dancing.
4. **Past indefinite does not change in the following cases :**
   (a) When it is used in time clause.
   (i) She said to me, "When I met him, he was playing."
   She told me that when she met him he was playing.
   (ii) She said to her mother, "Father had left before/when she reached home."
   She told her mother that father had left before when she reached home.
   (b) When it expresses two simultaneous actions.
   (i) She said, "I cooked vegetables and he fried rice."
   She said that she cooked vegetables and he fried rice.
   (c) When it expresses historical Past.
   (i) He said, "Netaji was born in Kolkata."
   He said that Netaji was born in Kolkata.

Change of 'Will'

'Will' change into 'Should' when the speaker seeks advice or request.
(i) The mother said, "What will I do with so much money, My son!"
The mother asked her son what she should do with so much money.

Change of 'Need' (Refer to Modals No. 7 and 8 Page 32)

(i) She said, "Need I write a letter?"
She asked if she had to write a Letter.
(ii) She said, "if I am selected, I needn't study further."
She said that if she was selected she would not have to study further.

Change of 'Could'

Could is changed in case of Permission :

(i) She said to me, "When I was a student I could not go out alone."
She told me that when she was a student she was not allowed to go alone.

Change of 'Must'

(a) "Must" Normally does not change when it refers to duty or laws of nature.

(i) Rahul said to her, "You must obey your Parents."
Rahul said to her that she must obey her parents.

(ii) She said, "We must all die."
She said that we must all die.

(b) "Must" Changes in the following cases.

(i) She said, "I must leave at once."
She said that she had to leave at once.

(ii) Natasha said, "I must get up early tomorrow."
Natasha said that she would have to get up early the next day.

(iii) Lekha said, "Mansi, You must be silent."
Lekha ordered Mansi to be silent.

Changes of Pronouns in the Reported Speech

1. **First Person–(I, we)** in the reported speech change into the subject of the Reporting verb.

(i) She said to me, "I am unwell."
She told me that she was unwell.

(ii) Rohan said to her, "I shall leave Jaipur soon."
Rohan told her that he would leave Jaipur soon.

(iii) The Captain said, "we have won at last."
The captian told his team mates that they had won at last.

Note : "We" does not change in the following cases.

(a) When 'we' is used in general sense.
(b) When object 'me' is included in the subject.
(c) But 'we' changes into 'It' when 'we' is used by a newspaper or an organisation.

(i) The saint said, "We are mortals."
The saint said that we are mortals.

(ii) She said to me, "We are to leave for temple early."
She told me that we were to leave for temple early.

(iii) The Pioneer said, "We are not responsible for any error."
The Pioneer said that it was not responsible for any error.

2. **Second Person**—You in the Reported speech changes into the object of the Reporting verb.

(i) He said to his mother, "Will you give me money."
He asked his mother if she would give him some money.

(ii) The teacher said to the students, "You are not to leave the class without permission."
The teacher advised the student that they were not to leave the class without permission.

3. **Third Person—** (He, She, They, It) in the Reported speech does not change.

(i) I said to her, "He will not come."
I told her that he would not come.

(ii) The boy said to his father, "They have not returned the book."
The boy told to his father/that they had not returned the book.

5. **Adverbials of time, place and demonstrative :**

(i) Adverbials of Time

Now	change into	then
Ago	,,	before
Today	,,	That day
Tomorrow	,,	The next day
Yesterday	,,	The Previous day/The day before
Last night	,,	The Previous night/the night before
Next month	,,	The following month
The day before yesterday	,,	Two days before
The day after tomorrow	,,	In two days time

Note : Today, Tomorrow, Tonight do not change when the speech is reported the same day.

(a) This morning he said, "I shall leave Chennai tomorrow."
This morning he said that he would leave Chennai tomorrow.

(b) Esha said today, "I am leaving Pune tonight."
Esha said today that she was leaving Pune tonight.

(ii) Adverbial of Place

Change of "Here" "Here" Changes into 'there'.

(a) 'Here' changes' to 'there' only when there is reference to place.
We shall meet here again. (change into there)
Come here, boys. (No change)

(iii) Change of demonstratives

(a) Change of This, These

(i) Used with time ..... changes into 'that' 'those'.
This week — That week
This month — That month

(ii) Used as adjective .....changes into 'the'.
This book — The book
These books — The books

(iii) Used as Pronoun ..... changes into 'it'.
I shall do *this* tomorrow. — I shall do *it* tomorrow.

(iv) Used as subject ..... does not change.
'this', 'these', give the sense of the object being near.
This is my book. — These are my books

Examples

Some examples are worked out as follows :

(a) **Direct :** Rahul says, "The teacher is ill."
Indirect : Rahul says that the teacher is ill.

(b) **Direct :** She said, "The sun rises in the East."
Indirect : She said that the sun rises in the East.

(c) **Direct :** Shashi said, "I have completed my work."
Indirect : Shashi said that she had completed her work.

(d) **Direct :** They said, "We won the match."
Indirect : They said that they had won the match.

(e) **Direct :** You said to her, "I have called my friends."
Indirect : You told her that you had called your friends.

(f) **Direct :** I said, "I shall leave Chennai soon."
Indirect : I said that I should leave Chennai soon.

(g) **Direct :** Jatin said, "I had to leave my village because of poverty."
Indirect : Jatin said that he had had to leave his village because of poverty.

(h) **Direct :** He said, "I shall leave tomorrow."
Indirect : He said that he would leave the next day.

(i) **Direct :** He said to her, "I want to see you now."
Indirect : He told her that he wanted to see her then.

(j) **Direct :** She said, "well, I shall accompany you."
Indirect : She told me that she would accompany me.

(k) **Direct :** She said, "you see, you cannot meet the boss."
Indirect : She told me that I could not meet the boss.

Note : Well, you see, okay, you know, therefore, so, yet, but etc..... when these words are used in the Reported speech, they do not change.

Interrogative Sentences

1. **Reporting Verb** Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into ask/asked or inquire/ Inquired of or want /wanted to know, demand/demanded, wonder/wondered.

   (i) Mother said to daughter, "Have you completed your home work?"
   Mother asked daughter if she had completed her home work.

2. **Inverted Commas**

   (a) In 'yes' or 'no' Answer type questions 'if' or 'whether' is used in place of inverted commas..

   (i) Father said to me, "Do you know the residence of the doctor?"
   Father asked me if I knew the residence of the doctor.

   (b) In the sentences beginning with Question words, inverted commas are replaced by question word itself (who, when, what etc.)

   (i) The teacher said to Rohan, "Why are you late?"
   The teacher asked Rohan why he was late.

(c) But if a Clause with Interrogative Pronouns (Question words) is followed by main clause 'that' is used before the question words and this rule also applies to "if and whether" in 'yes' or 'No' answer type questions.

(i) She said to me, "When she will come is not certain?"
She told me that when she would come was not certain.

(ii) I said to him, "whether she will pass is not certain?"
I told him that whether she would pass was not certain.

(d) **Tense**
(e) **Pronouns**
(f) **Adverbs of time and place**

The changes in these parts of the reported speech are made as explained earlier in the case of assertive sentences

Note : Students are required to change interrogative sentences into Assertive sentences before changing the Narration. e.g.,

Direct : She said to her mother, "will you take me to temple"?
Indirect : She asked her mother whether/if she would take her to temple.

Examples

Some examples are worked out as follows :

(a) **Direct :** Tina said to Rohan, "Will you help me today?"
Indirect : Tina asked Rohan if he would help her that day.

(b) **Direct :** He said to me, "What are you doing?"
Indirect : He asked me what I was doing.

(c) **Direct :** Anil said to me, "Why did you do it?"
Indirect : Anil inquired of me why I had done it.

(d) **Direct :** Pearl said to Riya, "Do you know Rohit?"
Indirect : Pearl asked Riya if she knew Rohit.

(e) **Direct :** The teacher said to the boy, "Have you done your home work?"
Indirect : The teacher asked the boy if he had done his home work.

(f) **Direct :** She said, "How can I do such a foolish work?"
Indirect : She thought/wondered how she could do such a foolish work.

(g) **Direct :** Sonia said to her brother, "When my husband will return tonight is uncertain.
Indirect : Sonia told her brother that when her husband would return that night was uncertain.

(h) **Direct :** Nisha said, "Whether (if) you have qualified, the test cannot be confirmed.
Indirect : Nisha told her sister that whether (if) she would qualify the test could not be confirmed.

(i) **Direct :** Rahul said to Ritesh, "What you are doing is immoral."
Indirect : Rahul told Ritesh that what he was doing was immoral.

(j) **Direct :** She said to her companions, "Why not stay overnight here?"
Indirect : She suggested to her companion that they should stay overnight there.

(k) **Direct :** Manu said to his friend, "Why help him now?"
Indirect : Manu told his friend that it was no use helping him then.

Note : Could, would would like used as polite request in interrogative sentences are reported as follows—

Request, Advice + Object + to (Refer to Page 32)

She said to her friend, "Could/would you please lend me some money?"
She requested her friend to lend her some money.
The captain said to the lady, "Would you like to have dinner with me?"
The captian requested/invited the lady to have dinner with him.

Imperative Sentences

(a) **Reporting Verb :** A verb in the Reporting verb changes into command/**order, beg, request, advise, forbid, suggest, propose, assure, ask, remind, warn, agree, refuse, promise, etc.**

(i) She said, "Mohan, please bring me that book."
She requested Mohan to bring her that book.

(ii) Mother said to me, "Take umbrella with you when you go out".
Mother advised me to take umbrella with me when I went out.

(iii) I said to my friend, "Don't go out in dark."
I forbade my friend to go out in dark.

(iv) The captain said, "Soldiers, March on till it is dark.
The captain commanded the soldiers to march on till it was dark.

(v) The lady said, "Thanks, I shall never forget this kindness, Arnav."
The lady thanked Arnav and assured him that she would never forget she kindness.

(vi) Richa said, "Congratulation my son, you have won."
Richa congratulated her son telling him that he had won.

(b) **Inverted Commas :** 'To/not to' is used in place of inverted commas.

(i) She said to the Postman, "Either go or wait."
She asked the Postman either to go or wait.

(ii) The lady said to the soldier, "Please do come sometime."
The lady requested the soldier to come sometime.

(iii) Richa said to her friend, "If I were you, I would not care for such a man".
Richa advised her friend not to care for such a man.

(iv) The manager ordered the clerk, "Run to the next office and bring some stationery.
The manager ordered the clerk to run to the next office and bring some stationery.

(v) She said to the stranger, "You must leave my room at once."
She ordered stranger to leave her room at once.

(vi) The teacher said to Suhani, "Will you stop talking now?"
The teacher ordered Suhani to stop talking then.

(vii) I said to her, "Would/Could you please help me"?
I requested her to help me.

(c) Tense
(d) Pronouns
(e) Adverbs of time and place

The change in these parts of reported speech are made as explained earlier in the case of assertive sentences

Note : It should be noted that when 'to' is used in place of inverted commas, the form of the verb does not change.

to + 1st form of the verb –'to go'.

Change of 'Let'

Study the following Sentences–

(a) Let as a proposal/suggestion.

(i) He said, "Let us go to the movie."
He proposed that they should go to the movie.

(ii) I said to Deepa, "Let us buy a new house."
I suggested to Deepa that we should buy a new house.

(iii) Reena said to me, "Let us celebrate X-Mas."
I said, "No, let us not."
Reena proposed to me that we should celebrate X-Mas. But I did not agree to her proposal.

(b) 'Let' as a request.

(i) Ravi said to the manager, "Let me go home."
Ravi requested the manager that he might be allowed to go home.
Or Ravi requested the manager to let him go home.

(ii) The girls said to the gate keeper, "Let us enter the school.
The girls requested the gate keeper to let them enter the school.

(c) Let as an order.

(i) The manager said to his assistant, "Let the customers in."
The manager orderd his assistant to let the customers in.

(d) Let as 'don't care'

(i) Sawant said, "Let it rain, I have to go."
Sawant persisted that he did not care for the rain and he had to go.

(ii) Miss Pillai said, Let my friends say so."
Miss Pillai said that she did not care for her friends.

Some Examples are worked out as follows

1. The Principal said, "Congratulatious, My son, you have won."
2. The lady said, "Thanks, I shall never forget this kindness, "Arnav".
3. She cried, "God will never pardon you."
4. The manager said to the assistant, "Let the customer in."
5. The girls said to the gate keeper, "Let us enter the school."
6. Pearl said to her friend, "Let us go on long drive."
7. She said, "Let it rain, I have to go."
8. The son said, "Let my parents say so."
9. She said to the postman, "Either go or wait."

10. The lady said to her, "Please do come some time."
11. The Mother said to her daughter, "Shut the door, will you?
12. She said, "You are playing, are not you?"
13. The mother asked Arnav, "You did not meet Sonia, did you?
14. Payal said to Rohan, "I did not go to the movie, did you?
15. "Well spoken," The audience cried.
16. "Beware, there is a danger," The captain warned.
17. "Be sure, I am always with you," said the mother.
18. "Father", said the son, "The teacher said to me, "you are a naughty boy."
19. "When I shall learn swimming," said a small girl, "is not certain."

Answers

1. The principal congratulated the boy telling him that he had won.
2. The lady thanked Arnav and assured him that she would never forget the kindness.
3. She bitterly cursed him that God would never pardon him.
4. The manager ordered the assistant that the customer might be allowed.
5. The girls requested the gatekeeper to allow them to enter the school.
6. Pearl suggested to her friends that they should go on long drive.
7. She persisted that she did not care for the rain and she had to go.
8. The son said that he did not care for his parents.
9. She asked the postman either to go or wait.
10. The lady requested her to come sometime.
11. The mother asked her daughter to shut the door.
12. She asked me if I was not playing.
13. The mother asked Arnav if he had met Sonia.
14. Payal told Rohan that she had not gone to the movie and asked him if he had gone.
15. The audience applauded/appreciated his speech that he had spoken well.
16. The captain warned the soldiers to beware of the danger.
17. The mother assured her daughter that she was always with her.
18. The son told his father that the teacher had told him that he was a naughty boy.
19. A small girl told me that when she would learn swimming was not certain.

Exclamatory Sentences

(a) Reporting Verb : Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into 'Exclaim with sorrow,' 'Exclaim with surprise, 'Exclaim with joy', 'Cry out' etc.

(i) Portia said, 'Good Heavens, I am ruined
Portia exclaimed with sorrow that she was ruined.

(ii) The director said, "What a good dance, Suhani! you have won the contest."
The director remarked with appreciation/applauded that Suhani had danced well and declared that she had won the contest.

(iii) Mona said, "Hello Sameer, Good Morning!"
Mona greeted Sameer and wished (bade) him good morning.

(iv) The king said, "How foolish of me!"
The king confessed with regret that he was very foolish.

(b) **Inverted Commas :** 'That' is used in place of inverted commas.

(i) Tarun said, "How clever I am!"
Tarun exclaimed that he was very clever.

(ii) Deepa said, "What a pity! you have not succeeded.
Deepa exclaimed that it was a pity that he had not succeeded.

(iii) "So help me Heaven!" He cried, "I shall never cheat anyone.
He called upon heaven to witness his resolve that he would never cheat any one.

(iv) "Be Sure, I am always with you," said the mother.
The mother assured her daughter that she was always with her.

(c) **Tense** The change in these parts of
(d) **Pronoun** reported speech are made as
(e) **Adverb of time and place** explained earlier in the case of assertive sentences.

Take care of the following changes

(i) What, Oh, Ah, Good Heavens, Hurrah— joy, sorrow, surprise.
(ii) Bravo—Applause, Appreciation
(iii) Hark—Listen
(iv) Fie/Phooh—Contempt

Note : Before changing the narration exclamatory sentences are first transformed into assertive sentences.

Optative Sentences (Prayer & wish)

(a) **Reporting Verb**–Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into 'wish' and 'pray'.

(i) The old man said to his son, "May God bless you!"
The old man wished/blessed his son that God might bless him.

(ii) They said, "May God save our country."
They Prayed that God might save their country.

(b) **Inverted Commas**–'That' is used in place of inverted commas.

(i) He said, "May God pardon my sins!"
He prayed that God might pardon his sins.

(ii) The beggar said, "May you live long".
The beggar prayed that she might live long.

(iii) The old woman said to the child, "God helps you!"
The old woman prayed that God might help the child.

(c) **Tense** The change in these parts of
(d) **Pronouns** Reported speech are made as
(e) **Adverb of time and place** explaimed earlier in the case of assertive sentences.

Note : Before changing the Narration, optative sentences are first converted to assertive sentences.

Practice Exercise-1

1. I said to him, "I will not go there tomorrow."
2. The clerk said to me, "I will not attend the office tomorrow."
3. Hari said to them, "Mohan did not sleep here yesterday."
4. Gita said to Rita, "Will you help me in this work?"
5. Sadhna said to me, "Can you go with me to the station?"
6. Her father said to me, "Do you know where prem is?"
7. I said to him, "Don't you know that I am your friend?"
8. Ram said to me, "Why do you not go home?"
9. He said, "How is your father?"
10. He said to her, "Go away from here at once."
11. The teacher said to the boys, "work hard."
12. The doctor said to the patient, "Do not eat much to escape from disease."
13. The servant said to him, "Sir, grant me leave for two days."
14. He said, "Let us wait for our friends."
15. He shouted, "Let me go."
16. The spectators said, "Bravo! well done."
17. The captain said, "Hurrah! we have won the match."
18. The doctor said, "Alas! The poor man is no more."
19. The teacher said to me, "What a pity you did not follow my advice."
20. Mohan said, "Ah, what a bloody deed you have done!"
21. She said, "How beautiful the rose is!"
22. She said, "What a lazy fellow you are!"
23. She said, "May God pardon him."
24. Ram said to his friend, "May you succeed in the examination."
25. They said, "Long live the Prime Minister."
26. The minister said, "What a disaster the earthquake is!"
27. The teacher said to the boy, "I shall report the matter to the Principal if you misbehave again."
28. I said, "When it gets dark, light the lamp."
29. "Suppose you children go out for a nice long walk, She said."
30. "Doctor," cried the patient, "Please tell me how much time I have."

Practice Exercise-2

1. He says to me, "I have never been to your house I shall go with you."
2. He said to me, "She left Ahmdabad after I had gone."
3. She said to him, "But you are a fool. You do not understand me."
4. Sohan said to me, "I am your friend. I will never desert you."
5. The teacher asked Vina, "What is your name? Where do you come from?"
6. My friend told Rita, "I am going out. Will you go along with me?"

7. Rahul said to me, "Where are you going? Can I accompany you?"
8. The teacher said, "Boys, If you want to pass, you should work hard."
9. The teacher said, "Boys, if you want to pass, why are you not working hard?"
10. The teacher said, "Boys, if you want to pass, work hard."
11. "Will you give me lodging for one night?" asked the weary traveller, "Yes", said my father, "you are very welcome."
12. The Governor of the town asked the slave, "How has this hungry lion forgotten his nature?" The slave replied, "This very lion which is standing before you was my friend in the woods."
13. Seema said to Arnav, "Will you go to hospital today?" Arnav said, "No." "Why?" asked seema, "Becuase I am feeling better." replied Arnav.
14. The teacher said to Rita, "Did you finish your work yesterday?" Rita said, "No, Sir, my mother was ill."
15. The teacher said, "If you come before school tomorrow, I will explain it." The boys said, "Sir, we shall do as you say."
16. "Go down to the bazar. Bring me some oil and lump of ice," ordered his master.
17. Rameshwar said to his teacher, "Sir, I did not do my work as I was ill."
18. Father said to Mohit, "Dear, why are you sad today?"
19. Father said to Mohit, "Bring me a glass of water."
20. He said, "O! Son, my daughter will marry the strongest and greatest person. There is no one stronger and greater than you. Will you accept her as your wife?"
21. The policeman said to the thief, "Rascal, How could you dare do that? Did you not know the punishment of your crime?"
22. The girl said to the youngman, "Who are you? What do you want with me? I have never seen you before? Please take your seat."
23. A farmer took his sons to the field and said, "There is a treasure hidden here in the earth. If you find it, share it amongst you."
24. The student said, "May I come in, Sir? I am late today." The teacher said, "Yes, you may but this is not your first chance of getting late."
25. The woman said, "All travellers are welcome for the sake of one." "Who is that one," said the king, "for whose sake you make all travellers welcome?" "It is our lawful king, Robert the Bruce.", said the old woman.
26. "How pretty you are!" said the fox to the crow. "I am sure so beautiful a bird must have a beautiful voice. Cheer up, my dear, will you not sing a few notes for me?"
27. Ram said to me, "Thank you for all your help. I could not have finished the work without your help."
28. He said to the shopkeeper, "You are a fool. You have done the opposite of what I desired you to do. Instead of changing the perfume you have changed the shaving cream."
29. "I am a dead man, Hardy," said Nelson, "I am going fast, it will be all over with me soon. Let my dear lady have my hair and other things belonging to me."
30. A young prince once asked a lady, "How is it that you are so fascinating?" The lady felt shy and left the room saying, "Beauty lies in the eyes of a beholder."

31. He said, "Yes, I have broken the slate."
32. He said, "No, I have not done this."
33. The candidate said to the boss, "I assure you of my best service."
34. The doctor said to the patient, "I hope you are better now."
35. "Since it is fine, let us go swmming, "Juliet said to Arnav."
36. "How steep the hill is!" They said, "We are tired."
37. "Neither a borrower, nor a lender be," said he to his son.
38. "Why have you come to disturb me," said the master, "Go away."
39. Said Shaurya to Sameer, "Be up. It is no use wasting time." "But I have no work to do today." replied Sameer.
40. "Ladies are," said the chaueffer, "waiting out side. They are getting impatient, Sir."
41. "Mohan made this mess. Let him clear it up," said his father.
42. I said, "Let Mohan do his worst, he cannot harm me."
43. "Let's give a party", said Jaya.
    "Let's not," said her husband.

chapter

2

Synthesis

Definition : Synthesis means the combination of two or more simple sentences into one simple, complex and compound sentence.

Part-I : Combining two or more simple sentences into one Complex sentence with the help of subordinate conjunctions to make :

(a) Noun Clause
(b) Adjective Clause
(c) Adverb Clause

Part-II : Combining two or more simple sentences into one simple sentence as follows—

(a) By using Infinitive
(b) By using Participle
(c) By using Nominative Absolute
(d) By using Gerund and Noun with Preposition before it.
(e) By using Noun or Phrase in Apposition.
(f) By using Adjective
(g) By using Conjunction 'And'
(h) By using Adverb or Adverbial Phrase

Note : All these combination are related to Subordinate Clause (Noun, Adjective and Adverb).

Part-III : Combining two or more simple sentences into one compound sentence by using Co-ordinating conjunctions to make.
Co-ordinate Clause.

Part-I

Complex Sentence

A complex sentence is formed by joining two or more simple sentences with the help of subordinate conjunctions as follows.

As stated earlier a complex sentence consists of more than one clause. Besides a principal clause, one or more subordinate clauses form a complex sentence. There are three kinds of subordinate clauses joined by their respective subordinating conjunctions *e.g.*,

(i) I know **that** he is a good boy. (Noun clause)
(ii) I know the man **who** was here yesterday. (Adjective clause)
(iii) I shall give you money **when** you do this work. (Adverb clause)

These sentences contain three kinds of subordinate clauses.

(a) Noun clause.
(b) Adjective clause.
(c) Adverb Clause.

(A) Noun Clause

I know that he is a good boy.

In the above sentence 'I know' is a principal clause. 'that he is a good boy' is a noun clause as it does the work of a noun. Noun clause answer the verb or noun in the principal or any other subordinate clause.

Subordinate conjunctions of Noun clause **that, if, whether, when, where, how, why, what, who, whose, whom, which, whatever.**

A set of simple sentences may be combined in the following manner by making noun clause.

(a) Object to a transitive verb.

(i) I say it. He is a good man.
I say that he is a good man.

(ii) I said it. He is a good man.
I said that he was a good man.

(iii) I cannot say. Will he come tomorrow?
I cannot say if/whether he will come tomorrow.

(iv) I don't know. What is he doing?
I don't know what he is doing.

(b) Object of infinitive, gerund and participle.

(i) Everybody was pleased to know. She was absent.
Everybody was pleased to know that she was absent.

(ii) She kept on asking. When will her mother return?
She kept on asking when her mother would return.

(c) Object to Preposition

(i) I don't believe. She said something.
(ii) I don't believe in what she said.
(iii) Please listen. Your teacher is telling something.
Please listen to what your teacher is telling.

(d) Complement of a verb

(i) The hope is. She will return tomorrow.
The hope is that she will return tomorrow.

(ii) The fact is. Nisha has not qualified the test.
The fact is that Nisha has not qualified the test.

Note : Noun clause following the verbs –'to be, become, seem, appear, grow, taste, smell, prove, look, make' etc. –performs the function of a complement of these verbs (in place of a predicate).

(e) The case in Apposition to a Noun

(i) She never believed in his statement. His father is a doctor.
She never believed in his statement that his father was a doctor.

(ii) No one heard the news. The prime minister is coming tomorrow.
No one heard the news that the prime minister was coming the next day.

(f) The case in Apposition to a Pronoun

(i) It is true. My brother has left for America.
It is true that my brother has left for America.

(ii) It was not known. What is she doing in Indore?
It was not known what she was doing in Indore.

(g) The subject of a Verb

(i) It is true. What he knows.
(a) It is true what he knows.
(b) What he knows is true. (subject of a verb)

(ii) It is not known. When will she come?
(a) It is not known when she will come.
(b) When she will come is not known. (subject of a verb)

Noun clause as a subject may be used in place of pronouns. 'It, this, that,' Noun dause works as a subject in this type of sentences.

Examples worked out for the students :

1. I say. She is a good woman.
   I say that she is a good woman.
2. I said. He is an honest man.
   I said that he was an honest man.
3. I cannot say. She will come.
   I cannot say whether/if she will come.
4. I did not know. Will he come?
   I did not know if he would come.
5. I doubt. Can he do it?
   I doubt if he can do it.
6. I am certain. She has got through the examination.
   I am certain that she has got through the examination.
7. I don't know. He said something.
   I don't know what he said.
8. What you say. I shall not do.
   I shall not do what you say.
9. It is not clear. What he says.
   (a) It is not clear what he says.
   (b) What he says is not clear.
10. It is true. She will succeed.
    (a) That she will succeed is true.
    (b) It is true that she will succeed.

11. She came sometime in the morning. It is a mystery.
    (a) When she came in the morning is a mystery.
    (b) It is a mystery when she came in the morning.
12. I wonder. How can she pass?
    I wonder how she can pass.
13. He denied. He has committed theft.
    He denied that he had committed theft.
14. The fact is. He is a hard-working fellow.
    The fact is that he is a hard working fellow.
15. The fact is well known. He is an honest person.
    The fact that he is an honest person is well known.
16. She came from somewhere in 1970. It is not revealed.
    (a) It is not revealed where she came from in 1970.
    (b) Where she came from in 1970 is not revealed.
17. Someone misguided him. His parents don't know.
    His parents don't know who misguided him.
18. A certain number of students were admitted. The Principal does not know this number.
    The Principal does not know how many students were admitted.
19. Everybody wants to know the reason. The two friends quarrelled yesterday.
    Everybody wants to know why the two friends quarrelled yesterday.
20. Do you know the time? The train will arrive at a certain time.
    Do you know when the train will arrive?

Practice Exercise-1

Combine the following sentences into complex sentences.

1. I don't know. He will come.
2. He is going somewhere. I cannot say.
3. He was not guilty. That was the verdict of the bench.
4. There is no doubt in it. He will do it.
5. He is correct. I am sure of it.
6. You gave him stolen money. That was his statement.
7. He may be guilty. I am not certain.
8. Some one arrived late at night. I do not know.
9. I don't believe it. He said something to me.
10. Nobody informed me. My mother went to temple sometime in the evening.
11. Everybody doubts it. He will pass.
12. This is my belief. He will cheat you.
13. My father will come here. I do not know the time.
14. Where have you put my purse? Please tell me.
15. Are you listening? I am saying something.

16. He came late. I cannot tell the reason?
17. The news is wrong. He died last night.
18. He confessed. He had committed murder.
19. It was expected. He will arrive soon.
20. It is believed. Netaji died in aircrash.
21. I cannot say, She may be a doctor.
22. What is your attitude to life? All depends on this.
23. My son is anxious to learn. How can one travel to space?
24. The fact is. He is a coward.
25. She declared her intention. She will not marry next year.
26. He wasted a certain amount of money. His wife cannot tell.
27. I cannot rely on it. She has promised me something.
28. The police are trying to inquire. When did she leave the party?
29. She told me the fact. Her father will not allow her to go abroad.
30. Our expectation was. We will succeed.
31. The news is not correct. She has returned from Chennai.
32. She confessed. She went to Delhi last night.
33. My sister kept on asking. When shall I come back from Indore?
34. The verdict of the judges has been challenged. He is guilty.
35. I can not tell. She came sometime in the morning.
36. The rumour is baseless. He died last night.
37. She completed this work in a strange manner. Everyone wonders.
38. It is certain. She will arrive today.
39. I heard him telling his mother. He is leaving for America very soon.
40. It cannot be confirmed. Has he married?

(B) Adjective Clause

I know the man who was here yesterday.

In the above sentence 'I know the man' is a principal clause. 'Who was here yesterday' is an Adjective clause. It does the work of an Adjective qualifying noun 'the man'. Adjective clause qualifies noun or pronoun as the case may be.

Subordinate conjunctions of Adjective clause are–**"Who, whose, whom, which, of which, that, as, why, when, where."**

Examples worked out for the students.

1. I know the man. He is a doctor.
   I know the man who is a doctor.
2. This is my pen. It is very costly.
   This is my pen which is very costly.
3. I don't know any of the men. They live here.
   I don't know any of the men that live here.

4. I have met all the boys. They are studying in the college.
   I have met all the boys that are studying in the college.
5. The Sanskrit language is not difficult to learn. It is taught in our school.
   The Sanskrit language that is taught in our school is not difficult to learn.
6. The monster was proud of his power. He was defeated by Hercules.
   The monster who was proud of his power was defeated by Hercules.
7. He settled in the town. He retired there from service.
   He settled in the town where he retired from the service.
8. It was midnight. The trains collided then.
   It was midnight when the trains collided.
9. I had many friends in prosperity. All of them have deserted me now.
   In prosperity I had many friends who all have deserted me now.
10. He has become suddenly rich. I can tell you the reason.
    I can tell you the reason why he has become suddenly rich.
11. Shalini bought only one of the flats? These were built by AWHO.
    Shalini bought only one of the flats that was built by AWHO.
12. I have invited Mohan. Everybody likes him.
    I have invited Mohan whom everybody likes.
13. He bought a new book. Its price is very cheap.
    He bought a new book the price of which is very cheap.
14. The book has been found. I lost it yesterday.
    The book which I lost yesterday has been found.
15. He settled in Nagpur. He was born there.
    He settled in Nagpur where he was born.

Practice Exercise-2

Combine the following simple sentences into complex sentences—

1. Shakespeare was a great dramatist. He is the author of a number of plays.
2. You have put my purse somewhere. Please show me the place.
3. This is the college. I studied here.
4. It was 10 o'clock. My father left for office then.
5. Can you tell me the reason? You are wasting time.
6. The boy was present there. The teacher gave him a prize.
7. I bought a pen. I shall give you the same pen.
8. I was the first man. I heard his name on the radio.
9. They were sitting under a tree. Its shade was very cool.
10. I shall go by the Taj Express. It goes to Agra direct.
11. They are reading a book. It is very rare.

12. The news is true. He gave it yesterday.
13. Yesterday I bought a book. It is very cheap.
14. They committed a mistake. It was quite serious.
15. You can not believe such a person. The person is dishonest.
16. We undertook a journey to Gwalior. It was tiring.
17. A soldier was lying in the field. He was wounded.
18. The dog felled the candle. It was burning.
19. They are healthy. The healthy do not need a doctor.
20. The man died last night. He was wounded in an accident.
21. The magic ball was eaten by the jester. It was meant for king.
22. Seema was the last person. She left for home.
23. This is a class room. It is not the place to play.
24. He has a large family. He has to educate them.
25. He has some bills. He must pay them in cash.
26. I have no friend. I cannot talk to him.
27. Childhood is a time. One can teach good habits to children.
28. I know the reason. He could not succeed.
29. The time is not certain. He will come tomorrow.
30. Nobody appreciated the way. She behaved at the party.
31. I was informed of the place. He was living there.
32. I remember very well the year. He retired then.
33. You can have anything. Whatever you like.
34. The students are very hard working. They hail from Bihar.
35. The girl is a cousin of my wife. The girl has long hair.
36. I never visit any of my uncles. They reside in Manekshaw Enclave.
37. The news is true. The Voice of America broadcast it.
38. The players were present at the function. The President awarded them cash prize.
39. Good deeds live after men. They do them in their lives.
40. Kabir was a famous poet. He wrote spiritual poetry.

(C) Adverb Clause

When you do this work, I shall give you money.

In the above sentence, 'I shall give you money is a principal clause. 'When you do this work' is an adverb clause. It does the work of an Adverb. It is required to modify some verb, Adverb or Adjective in some other clause.

Adverb clause may be classified as follows.

Examples worked out for the students.

Time Clause Conjunctions : When, as, while, as soon as, before, after, by the time, until, till whenever, small, as long as-

1. He saw the police departing. He immediately got into his car.
   As he saw the police departing, he immediately got into his car.

2. I will get money for you. Don't go till then.
   Don't go until I get money for you.
3. I left office. My wife arrived afterwards.
   My wife arrived after I had left office.
4. He was going to school. He was caught in the rain.
   While he was going to school, he was caught in the rain.
5. His father retired last year. He has been idle from that time.
   Since his father retired last year he has been idle.

Condition Clause

Conjunctions : If, unless, suppose, in case, on condition that, provided, I wish, I would, would that, if only.

1. Work hard. You will fail.
   If you do not work hard, you will fail.
2. We may go tomorrow. It depends on the weather.
   We may go tomorrow if weather permits.
3. Do it well. You will be rewarded.
   If you do it well, you will be rewarded.
4. Work hard. You will fail otherwise.
   If you do not work hard, you will fail.
5. She had laboured. Otherwise she would not have succeeded.
   If she had not laboured, She would not have succeeded.

Purpose :

Conjunctions : So that, lest, in order that, that

1. He went to Delhi. He wanted to meet his mother.
   He went to Delhi so that he might meet his mother.
2. He is afraid of getting late. He will go by his own car.
   He will go by his own car lest he should get late.

Place :

Conjunctions : Where, Wherever

1. I shall go. He works there in a factory.
   I shall go where he works in a factory.
2. You can stay. You can stay anywhere.
   You can stay wherever you like.

Result :

Conjunctions : 'That' (followed by 'Such', 'So')

1. He grew weaker and weaker. He was admitted to hospital.
   He grew so weak that he was admitted to hospital.
2. He drove very fast. He soon overtook us.
   He drove so fast that he soon overtook us.

Reason :

Conjunctions : because, since, as, that, now that.

1. The students disobeyed the teacher. He was annoyed.
   The teacher was annoyed because the students disobeyed him.
2. You are disturbing me. I can not work.
   I cannot work as you are disturbing me.
3. He came late. He was punished.
   He was punished because he came late.
4. It was dark outside. I did not go out.
   Since it was dark outside, I did not go out.

Concession or Contrast

Conjunctions: although, though, as, even if, however, even if, whether, even though, no matter what, no matter that, not with standing that, much as, whatever.

1. He is very old. He can still run very fast.
   Although he is very old, he can run very fast.
2. He has succeded in life. He is still humble.
   Though he has succeeded in life, He is still humble.
3. He is lucky. he will not win this match.
   However lucky he may be, he will not win this match.
4. She is rich. She is not kind.
   Rich as she is, she is not kind.

Manner

Conjunctions : as, as if, as though

1. I advised him. He acted accordingly.
   He acted as I advised him.
2. He is not educated. He speaks like an educated person.
   He speaks as if he were an educated person.

Comparison :

Conjunctions : Than, As

1. The tiger is larger. The cat is smaller.
   The tiger is larger than the cat.
2. Her mother is wise. Richa is equally wise.
   Richa is as wise as her mother is.

Practice Exercise-3

Combine the following simple sentences into complex sentences.

1. He ran very quickly. He overtook everybody.
2. You always disturb me. I cannot work.
3. I had left office. My boss called me.
4. The members of the committee arrived. The conference started.
5. You must hurry. Otherwise you will miss the train.
6. It was very sultry noon. I could not go out.
7. I left office. The train started that very moment.
8. He will not leave at night. He cannot bear the idea of being robbed.
9. He came to me. He wanted my help.
10. He found out his mistake. Then he repented very much.
11. Do not sleep out side. You will be ill.
12. I reached the station. The train had left.
13. You left India. You have not written any letter since.
14. The old man walks fast. He walks like a young person.
15. He is rich. He is unhappy.
16. Help others. God will help you.
17. They were playing in the garden. It started raining.
18. No money was given to me. The work was stopped.
19. The patient grew weaker and weaker. He died last night.
20. His brother died. He has been very poor from that time.
21. Everybody will admire him. His being hard working is a condition.
22. Go out. You will catch cold.
23. He was sick. Even then he went out.
24. He was cremated in the village. He settled there after his retirement.
25. He is admired by everybody. He is still not proud.
26. He was sitting on the grass. A snake bit him.
27. She waited for her friend. She waited till her arrival.
28. She came late. Else she would have enjoyed music.
29. Do you want to go to Malabar Hills? Then bring money with you.
30. I shall go. My cousin works there.
31. Water is very cold. No one can drink it.
32. He employed a watch man. He wanted to be safe.
33. They helped me. Otherwise I would not have got success.
34. I would have been glad. I could have given you money.
35. You may go any where. You like.
36. He did not stop working. He achieved success.
37. The signal was given. The train started immediately.
38. You can stay here. You wish so.

39. She is beautiful. No other member in her family is so beautiful.
40. Let us wait. The train stops.
41. I make a promise. I stick to it.
42. He is working hard. His aim is to join Army.
43. He fled. He wanted to escape being caught.
44. I will get money for you. Please do not go till then.
45. Everybody will admire you. Your honesty is the condition.
46. He did not receive help in time. He would not have died from burns.
47. He gets more. Then he works more.
48. Do not get into the train. The train must stop.
49. It may rain. The schools may be closed.
50. We shall leave for Shimla. It depends on weather.
51. I should be glad. I could help your husband.
52. He worked hard. He would have failed.
53. I shall be glad. I can help you in getting a job.
54. She treated me in a certain manner. I shall treat her so.
55. My younger sister behaves with me. She behaves like an elder sister.
56. She wrote an essay. She wrote to the best of her ability.
57. She speaks well. She writes better.
58. She is wise. She is kinder.
59. He is not rich. He spends like a rich person.
60. The candidates stayed in the hall. They stayed till the departure of the supervisor.
61. She is wise. Her mother is equally wise.
62. I advised him. He did the work accordingly.
63. He will go by his own Car. He is afraid of getting late.
64. The patient grew weaker and weaker. He died at last.

Part-II : Synthesis (Simple Sentences)

Simple Sentences

Examples worked out for the students.

The following are the usual ways of combining a set of simple sentences into one simple sentence.

(a) By using infinitive

(i) He bought a pen. He wanted to give it to me.
He bought a pen to give it to me.

(ii) The work was very easy for her. She could do it.
The work was very easy (easy enough) for her to do.

(iii) She is very weak. She cannot understand a single word of the letter.
She is too weak to understand a single word of the letter.

(iv) I went to the station. My object was to receive my uncle.
I went to the station to receive my uncle.

(v) I have a lot of money. I would spend it tonight.
I have a lot of money to spend tonight.

(vi) She admitted. She met him last evening.
She admitted to have met him last evening.

(vii) It appears. She is improving in her study.
She appears to be improving in her study.

(viii) It is expected. She will come tomorrow.
She is expected to come tomorrow.

(ix) I advised her. She acted accordingly.
She acted according to my advice.

(B) By using Participle : (Present, Past, Perfect)

1. Present Participle

(i) She entered the Mall. She was very happy.
Entering the Mall she was very happy.

(ii) I was hungry. I took my food.
Being hungry I took my food.

(iii) I reached college. I went direct to my class room.
Reaching college I went direct to my class room.

2. Past Participle

(i) She was disappointed. She left her study.
Being disappointed she left her study.

(ii) I gave him a candle. It was burnt.
I gave him a burnt candle.

(iii) I found my pen. It was lost.
I found my lost pen.

3. Perfect Participle

(i) I took food. I went to college.
Having taken food I went to college.

(ii) He picked my pocket. He fled.
Having picked my pocket he fled.

(C) By using Nominative Absolute

(i) The police arrived. The pick pocket fled.
The police having arrived, the pick pocket fled.

(ii) The picture ended. The audience left.
The picture having ended, the audience left.

(D) By using preposition before Gerund or Noun

(i) She insisted. She would go with me.
She insisted on going with me.

(ii) Suhani persisted. She wanted to live in Hyderabad.
Suhani persisted in living in Hyderabad.

(iii) My brother bought a new house. He bought it for his wife.
My brother bought a new house for his wife.

(E) Noun or Phrase in Apposition

In such kind of sentences Noun or Phrase is placed within commas after the Nouns referred to.

(i) My brother went to Shimla. Shimla is a beautiful hill station in Himachal.
My brother went to Shimla, a beautiful hill station in Himachal.

(ii) Kapil Dev was the best bowler. He was the Captain of Indian Cricket team.
Kapil Dev, the Captain of Indian Cricket team, was the best bowler.

(F) By using Adjective

(i) I came across a girl in the garden. She was beautiful.
I came across a beautiful girl in the garden.

(ii) They laughed at a small boy. He was hungry.
They laughed at a small hungry boy.

(G) By using Conjunction 'and'

(i) I saw a cow. I saw a calf also.
I saw a cow and a calf.

(ii) He bought new books. He bought also old books.
He bought new and old books.

(iii) Nisha went to the movie. Her husband also went with her.
Nisha and her husband went to the movie.

(H) By using Adverbs or Adverbial Phrases

(i) She went to parlour. She went frequently.
She went to parlour frequently.

(ii) He was running. His speed was slow.
He was running slowly.

(iii) I am sure. She will go to the movie.
I am sure that she will go to the movie.

Practice Exercise-1

Combine the following set of simple sentences into simple sentences.

(a) By using Infinitive :

1. He is very weak. He can not run.
2. I want a knife. I shall peel the vegetables.
3. He had a large family. He had to support them.
4. She has no pen. She cannot write a cheque.
5. He heard of my success. He was glad of it.
6. It is believed. He died from heart attack.
7. I expect. I shall pass next year.
8. It is reported. She has married lately.

(b) By using Participle :

1. He drew the sword. He attacked the enemy.
2. He could not eat nuts. He had no teeth.
3. I was returning home. I saw a black dog.
4. He resolved firmly. He never smoked.
5. She completed the letter. She posted it.
6. He was disappointed. He gave up the job.
7. Turn to the right. You will find my house.
8. She was tired of riding. She went to bed.
9. We heard no answer. We rang the bell again.
10. Ceaser was stabbed. He died from the wounds.

(c) By using Nominative Absolute :

1. The sun rose. Fog disappeared.
2. Archana was late. The teacher punished her.
3. The letter was written. I posted it soon.
4. The time was over. We handed our the note books.
5. It was cloudy. We went on picnic.
6. The rain is scanty this year. Sugar is dear in the market.
7. His uncle died. He inherited the property.
8. Rashmi's father was rich. She was not proud of this.
9. The Ganga is our sacred river. We should keep it clean.

(d) By using preposition before Gerund or Noun :

1. He killed his enemy. He was justified in this.
2. She wanted to go to market. She insisted on this.
3. He won praise. He saved the life of the prince.
4. The teacher was absent. We were informed of this.
5. The girl has long hair. The girl is the cousin of my wife.

6. He has stolen my book. There is no doubt about this.
7. He is reading comics. He is fond of them.
8. He was wounded. I heard of this.
9. All returned safe. We all were happy at this.
10. I bought a new house. I paid huge amount for it.

(e) By using Noun or Phrase in Apposition :

1. Suniti is the daughter of a doctor. She stood first in the college.
2. Mr. Sinha is an engineer. He works in the Hydel department.
3. Harsh is a famous poet. He writes love poetry.
4. Nanda is a great builder. He has built a number of apartments.
5. He bought a very costly picture. It is a work by a most famous artist of India.

(f) By use of Adverbs or Adverbial Phrase :

1. He replied back. This took him no time.
2. He saved money. This was wise of him.
3. I escaped from the den of gangster. This was lucky.
4. I got help from my friends. This was not expected.
5. I shall return tonight. It will not be long.
6. I shall get through the examination. There is no doubt about this.
7. She went to college. She was in a hurry.
8. She will go to the States next year. It is certain.

(g) By using 'Adjective' or 'And' :

1. I am buying a house next week. It is very costly.
2. A girl entered the room. She was young.
3. She was kind. She was generous.
4. Why are you nervous? Why are you sad?

(A) Noun Clause (Simple Sentence)

Some Examples worked out (Relating to Noun Clause).

Combine the following simple sentences into one simple sentences:

1. There is no doubt in it. He will do it.
   Undoubtedly, he will do it.
2. He is correct. I am sure of it.
   I am sure of his being correct.
3. Nobody informed me. My father went sometime in the evening.
   Nobody informed me of the time of my father is departure in the evening.
4. It is allaged. He committed a murder.
   He is alleged to have committed murder.
5. It is understood. He is honest.
   He is understood to be honest.

6. The news is wrong. That he died.
   The news of his death is wrong.
7. They did not inform me. Their mother was ill.
   They did not inform me of their mother illness.
8. He confessed. He had committed the murder.
   He confessed to have committed the murder.
9. He hoped. He will succeed.
   He hoped to succeed.
10. I told you something. You must believe.
    You must believe in my statement.
11. We believe. The news is true.
    We believe in the truthfulness of the news.
12. It is high time. You should start working hard.
    It is high time for you to start working hard.
13. I wish. You should be quiet.
    I wish you to be quiet.
14. You saved money. It was prudent.
    It was prudent of you to save money.
15. He will marry her. He is not afraid of it.
    He is not afraid of marrying her.
16. I expect. I will meet you tomorrow.
    I expect to meet you tomorrow.
17. I expect. He will pass with credit.
    (a) I expect him to pass with credit.
    (b) He is expected to pass with credit.
18. It appears. He is rich.
    He appears to be rich.
19. It is believed. He is honest.
    He is believed to be honest.
20. It is reported. He is doing well in business.
    He is reported to be doing well in business.
21. It appears. He has been cheated.
    He appears to have been cheated.
22. He denies. He met her yesterday.
    He denies to have met her yesterday.
23. He insisted. He will join college.
    He insisted on joining college.
24. He will succeed. It is certain.
    (a) He is certain to succeed.
    (b) He will certainly succeed.

25. I do not know. How did he travel to Delhi?
I do not know the manner of his travelling to Delhi.
26. I cannot tell the reason. Why did he leave his sister.
I cannot tell the reason of his leaving his sister.
27. He left yesterday. No body informed me.
No body informed me about his leaving yesterday.
28. He declared. He was innocent.
He declared his innocence.
29. How long will the war last? It is uncertain.
The duration of war is uncertain.
30. The king ordered. The murderer should be hanged.
The king ordered the murderer to be hanged.

Practice Exercise-2

Combine the following sentences into simple sentences:

1. The student admitted. He was absent.
2. I am not aware. What is he?
3. I don't know. What is his name?
4. I cannot recall. Where does he live?
5. I have no faith in his promise. She promissed to help me.
6. It is certain. She will succeed.
7. My faith is firm. He will succeed.
8. That makes the offence worse. You were absent.
9. She is sure. She will secure high marks.
10. She persisted. She will continue her study.
11. My father insisted. I should join army.
12. We do not know the reason. She left the party suddenly.
13. The soldiers were told. How could they climb the hill?
14. I expect. He is honest.
15. We hope. We will be invited.
16. He denied. He sold spurious drugs to the customers.
17. It is certain. She has two son.
18. It is expected. She will qualify Entrance Examination.
19. It appears. She is honest.
20. It is believed. Netaji died in air crash.
21. It is alleged. He stole his brother's jewellery.
22. It is likely. She may come late.
23. It is certain. He will be punished tomorrow.
24. He is sure. He wil succeed.
25. It is beyond doubt. She will recover from illness.

(B) Adjective Clause to Simple Sentence

Examples worked out

Combine two simple sentences into one simple sentences :

(Relating to Adjective clause) :

(i) He gave me money. He gave it to spend.
He gave me money to spend.

(ii) He has a lot of money. He will spend it on books.
He has a lot of money to spend on books.

(iii) In the park we saw children. They were playing base ball.
In the park we saw children playing base ball.

(iv) I will board a train. It connects Udaipur.
I will board a train connecting Udaipur.

(v) They are watching match. It is very interesting.
They are watching a very interesting match.

(vi) The magic ball was eaten by the jester. It was meant for the king.
The magic ball meant for the king was eaten by the jester.

(vii) The soldier lay in the battle field. He was wounded.
The wounded soldier lay in the battle field.

(viii) He visited the Taj. It is an artistic building.
He visited the Taj, an artistic building.

(ix) The book is very costly. I purchased it yesterday.
The book purchased by me yesterday is very costly.

(x) Rathore is our captain. He scored five runs.
Rathore, our captain, scored five runs.

(xi) The girl is cousin of my wife. She has long hair.
The girl with long hair is the cousin of my wife.

Practice Exercise-3

Combine the following simple sentences into one simple sentence.

1. She has arrived earlier. Do you know the reason?
2. Kabir was a famous poet. He was a weaver.
3. I bought a house last year. It is quite large.
4. We came across a soldier. He was in trouble.
5. He invented a machine. It is used for stitching.
6. Mr. Verma is our teacher. Everybody loves him.
7. This is a class room. It is not the place to play.
8. We committed a mistake. It is quite serious.
9. Do you know the time? Your father left in the morning.
10. The boys are honest. They live near my house.
11. The man could not do work well. The man was tired.
12. We undertook a journey. The journey was tiring.

13. I was the first man. I heard his name on the radio.
14. He has a large family. He has to educate them.
15. He has some bills. He must pay them.
16. They admitted the offence. They committed last night.
17. You cannot believe such a person. The person is dishonest.
18. We undertook a journey to Gwalior. The journey was tiring.
19. In the street we saw a beggar. He was begging from door to door.
20. The man died last night. He was wounded in an accident.
21. The police discovered the weapon. It was used to kill the victim.
22. Air is the first necessity of life. It is the cheapest thing in the world.
23. Childhood is a time. One can learn good habits during this time.
24. I know the reason. He could not succeed.
25. The time has been announced. He will come tomorrow.
26. I remember very well the year. He retired then ?
27. These students are very hard working. They hail from Bihar.
28. The offence is unpardonable. She committed it intentionally.
29. The good deeds live after men. They do them in life.
30. Malini repaid the debt. Her father had incurred it.

(C) Adverb Clause to Simple sentence

Examples worked out

Combine two simple sentences into one simple sentence. :

(Relating to Adverb Clause):

(i) She is very poor. She cannot carry on her study.
She is too poor to carry on her study.

(ii) He employs a watch man. He wants to be safe.
He employs a watch man to be safe.

(iii) He heard the news. He fainted.
On hearing the news he fainted.

(iv) He was sitting on a tree. A snake bit him.
Sitting on a tree he was bitten by a snake.

(v) The police arrived. The rioters fled.
The police having arrived the rioters fled.

(vi) She was late. she was punished.
Being late she was punished.

(vii) She came late. She was not punished.
Inspite of being late she was not punished.

(viii) Work hard. You will succeed.
By working hard you will succeed.

(ix) Work hard. You will fail otherwise.
Without working hard you will fail.

(x) She had laboured hard otherwise. She would not have succeeded.
But for hard labour she would not have succeeded.

Practice Exercise-4

Combine the following simple sentences into one simple sentence:

1. I had passed high school examination. I got a job.
2. He takes dinner early. He is afraid of getting ill.
3. The thief saw the police. He fled immediately.
4. He was sitting on the grass. A snake bit him.
5. He was late. He was punished.
6. The weather was unpleasant. We did not go out.
7. She was insulted. She left the room.
8. He was overpowered by the enemy. The enemy stabbed him.
9. He posseses huge wealth. He is not happy.
10. Go out. You will catch cold.
11. Work hard. You will fail.
12. Examine the paper carefully. You can not give your opinion.
13. He is very lazy. He is not fit to be a player.
14. We may go tomorrow. It depends on the weather.
15. Every sunday he goes to Delhi. He goes to see his sick brother.
16. He is so weak. He cannot even walk.
17. I advised him. He did the work accordingly.
18. He is working hard. His aim is to join Army.
19. He is very kind. He helps everybody.
20. Permit me. I shall leave the room.
21. The work was done. I was present then.
22. He is very honest. He will not deceive you.
23. Turn to right. You will see a tall building.
24. He was going to school. He was caught in the rain.
25. His father retired last year. He has been idle from that time.
26. He drove very fast. He soon overtook us.
27. He suceeded in life. He is still humble.
28. He is very clever. He can see through your tricks.
29. Your sorrow is too deep. It cannot be expressed in tears.
30. This house is too small. It cannot serve my purpose.

Exercise-5

(Based on Noun, Adjective and Adverb Clauses)

Combine the following set of sentences into simple sentences:

1. The lady entered the Mall. She went straight to the manager.
2. Archana lost her purse. It was very costly. It contained a lot of cash.
3. He came late. He was punished for this.

4. Small families are not an advantage. It is certain now.
5. Some people drink. This is injurious to health.
6. He has some new clothes. They are in the box.
7. He told a lie. He was not afraid of it.
8. We reached Shimla. We went to our hotel.
9. Yesterday my brother went to Chandigarh. Rohan went also.
10. She was clever. I could notice it.
11. It was very hot. I did not go out.
12. The train was late. We reached home late.
13. My father did not sell the house. This was wise.
14. They were walking in the garden. They enjoyed themselves.
15. Rohit had no money. He succeeded in his aim.
16. Work hard. You will pass.
17. The speech ended. We went to dinner.
18. He had no house. He could not sell.
19. He fired at his friend. He was arrested for this.
20. She earns a lot of money. She runs a beauty parlour.
21. Ashok was a great emperor. He become compassionate. It happened after the battle of Kalinga.
22. He was walking in the street. He saw a beggar. The beggar was not able to walk.
23. He arrived at the party. He was pleased. He met all of his friends.
24. We come to the Institute. We come to study. We study English.
25. Deepa was driving. She heard Reema's voice. She was humming a song.
26. I am threatened. I will speak the truth. I am not afraid of it.
27. It was dark. He fired at his enemy. He wanted to kill him.
28. He was successful. I was told. I was glad of it.
29. The child had broken window pane. It was tinted. He was playing cricket. He was punished for this.
30. We were delighted. We saw him. He was buying fruit. He was buying mangoes.

Part-III : Compound Sentence

We have already studied that a compound sentence contains a co-ordinate clause or more than one main clause. They are joined by co-ordinating conjunctions.

Some Examples worked out:

Co-ordinating conjunctions are given as follows:

(A) Illative conjunction are used when one statement is concluded from the other. They express reason.

They are – so, therefore, for

(a) She came late. She was punished.
She came late, so she was punished.

(b) I cannot go out. It is very cold outside.
  (i) I cannot go out for it is very cold outside.
  (ii) It is very cold out side, therefore, I cannot go outside.

(B) Adversative conjunctions add two statements to make a compound sentence. They express a contrast. They are **"still, nevertheless, but, yet, whereas, while, however"** They express contrast.

(a) She is intelligent. She is dishonest.
  She is intelligent but dishonest.
(b) She was ill. She came.
  She was ill yet she came.

(C) Alternative conjunctions express a choice between alternatives. They are **"or, nor, otherwise, else, or else"**. They express condition.

(a) Work hard. you will fail.
  Work hard or you will fail.
(b) Do not be angry. Do not be rash.
  Be neither angry nor rash.

(D) Cumulative (Copulative) Conjunction add one statement to the other. They are **both-and, not only-but also, as well as, and neither-nor, either-or.**

(a) He is a fool. He is dishonest also.
  He is not only fool but also dishonest.
(b) He is handsome. He is smart also.
  He is not only handsome but also smart.

Practice Exercise-1

Combine the simple s itences into compound sentences:

1. He is intelligent. He is careless.
2. He can succeed. He will not work hard.
3. Morning walk is a good exercise. Everybody should walk.
4. He came late. He would have enjoyed music.
5. Walk fast. You will catch bus.
6. Wait here. He will not meet you.
7. The bus was slow. He reached late.
8. You are a liar. Your brother is a liar.
9. She is smart. She is honest too.
10. Do not be a borrower. Do not be a lender.
11. You may be correct. You may be wrong.
12. She is often late. She comes on foot.
13. Stand outside. Come in
14. Weather was not fair. We went on picnic.
15. She came. She consoled me.

Practice Exercise-2

1. She came late. She was punished.
2. I can not go out. It is very cold outside.
3. She is intelligent. She is dishonest.
4. She was ill. She came.
5. Work hard. You will fail.
6. Do not be angry. Do not be rash.
7. He is a fool. He is dishonest also.
8. He is handsome. He is smart.
9. He is intelligent. He is careless.
10. He can succeed. He will not work hard.
11. Morning walk is a good exercise. Everybody should walk.
12. He came late. He would have got the bus.
13. Walk fast. You will catch bus.
14. Wait here. He will not meet you.
15. The bus was slow. He reached late.
16. You play piano. Your brother plays piano.
17. She is obedient. She is polite also.
18. Do not be a borrower. Do not be a lender.
19. Richa cannot sing. Esha cannot sing.
20. Everything decays. Truth Survives.
21. I doubt it. He will pass.
22. I went to Indore. I spent a few days there.
23. I requested her to lend me some money. She refused.
24. You come by car. We shall take you to temple.
25. He took bath. He put on new clothes.
26. He fell off the stairs. He died from injuries.
27. Say one word. I shall kill you.
28. Write to father. Otherwise I would do so.
29. He is working hard. He wants to pass.
30. Sona cannot sing. Her husband cannot sing. ❑

Chapter

3 Transformation

Transformation is a process of changing sentences into various forms given below.

Part-I (Simple Sentences)

Change of a simple sentence to a complex sentence is made by expanding a phrase or words into a subordinate clause.

(a) Noun phrase/Noun to Noun clause.
(b) Adjective phrase/Adjective to Adjective clause.
(c) Adverb phrase/Adverb to Adverb clause.

Part-II (Complex Sentences)

Change of a complex sentence to a simple sentence is made by replacing a subordinate clause into a word or phrase as follows.

(a) Noun clause to Noun phrase, Noun, Infinitive, Gerund case in apposition etc.
(b) Adjective clause to Adjective phrase/Adjective, Participle, Infinitive case in apposition etc.
(c) Adverb clause to Adverbial phrase/Adverb, Participle, Infinitive etc.

Part-III (Compound Sentences)

(a) Change of a simple sentence to a compound sentence.
(b) Change of a complex sentence to a compound sentence.

Note : Students are again reminded of the instructions that all sentences simple, complex and compound have bearing on Inter-relationship of the clauses.

This fact has been explained variously in chapters on :
1. Clauses, 2. Clause Analysis, 3. Synthesis, 4. Transformation

Part-IV Miscellaneous Sentences

(a) Interchange of degree of comparison.
(b) Interchange of affirmative and negative sentences.
(c) Interchange of assertive and interrogative sentences.
(d) Interchange of exclamatory and assertive sentences.
(e) Sentences expressing condition.
(f) Sentences expressing contrast.
(g) Removal of adverb 'too'.
(h) Interchange of Parts of Speech
(i) Interchange of voice.
(j) Change of Narration

Refer to chapters on Voice and Narration in the book.

Part-I

Simple to Complex

A simple sentence can be changed to a complex sentence by expanding phrase or a group of words into a subordinate clause as explained below :

(a) Noun phrase/Noun to Noun clause.
(b) Adjective phrase/Adjective to Adjective clause.
(c) Adverb phrase/Adverb to Adverb clause.

(A) Noun phrase is a group of words that do the work of a noun (explanation).

Study the following examples :

(i) He hopes to succeed. (object to verb)
(ii) Truth cannot perish. (subject to verb)
(iii) Pay attention to his words. (object to preposition)
(iv) My faith about his success is firm. (case in apposition to Noun)
(v) It is unfortunate to be cheated by friends. (case in apposition to a pronoun 'it')
(vi) My wish is to do something useful. (complement of a verb 'is')

Change of Noun Phrase/Noun to a Noun Clause

(i) He hopes that he will succeed.
(ii) What is true cannot perish.
(iii) Pay attention to what he says.
(iv) My faith that he will succeed is firm.
(v) It is unfortunate that one is cheated by friends.
(vi) My wish is that I should do something useful.

(B) Adjective phrase is a group of words that do the work of an Adjective (qualification).

Study the following examples.

(i) He is a student of great promise.
(ii) I met my friend living in Mumbai.
(iii) They found a dead body covered with a white sheet.
(iv) He is a man of few words.
(v) Mohan with a lot of wealth is a miser.

Change of Adjective phrase/Adjective to an Adjective clause.

(i) He is a student who holds a great promise.
(ii) I met my friend who is living in Mumbai.
(iii) They found a dead body which was covered with white sheet.
(iv) He is a man who speaks a few words.
(v) Mohan who has a lot of wealth is a miser.

(C) Adverb phrase is a group of words that does the work of Adverb (modification).

(i) I shall do it in your presence.
(ii) Do not go till my return.
(iii) He went there to buy books.
(iv) He was blamed for telling a lie.
(v) For all his wealth he is unhappy.

Change the Adverbial phrase/Adberb into Adverb Clause

(i) I shall do it when you are present.
(ii) Do not go until I return.
(iii) He went there so that he might buy books.
(iv) He was blamed as he told a lie.
(v) Although he is wealthy he is unhappy.

Note : Subordinate clauses can be introduced by subordinating conjunctions as given in chapter on Clauses.

Practice Exercise-1 (a)

Simple to Noun Clause

Change the following simple sentences into complex sentences by using Noun Clause.

1. He confessed his guilt.
2. All depends on his future.
3. His age is not known.
4. Speak the truth.
5. His silence proved his complicity in the crime.
6. He appears to be running temperature.
7. He denied to have murdered.
8. He is believed to be honest.
9. She informed me of her arrival.
10. The news of his death is wrong.
11. Subhash Chandra Bose is believed to have died in Japan.
12. I have already heard his statement.
13. He is sure to have been punished.
14. He is expected to give me money.
15. Mohit may do anything.
16. I wish you to be successful in life.
17. He wishes to be a very rich person.
18. There is no truth in his remarks.
19. The place of his hiding is likely to be discovered very soon.
20. We believe the news to be true.
21. Your innocence is beyond any doubt.
22. I have long doubted his honesty.
23. I have long suspected his guilt.
24. His father is likely to give him punishment.
25. It is high time to leave India.
26. His resignation is out of the question.

Practice Exercise-1 (b)

Change the following complex sentences into simple ones by using Noun clause.

1. I have long suspected him to be a thief.
2. The news of his arrival has not been intimated.
3. Her remarks about my failure were disgusting.
4. Truth is eternal.
5. She is expected to learn good manners.
6. Pay heed to my instructions.
7. She has a desire to learn swimming.
8. Her wish is to do social work in future.
9. He is reported to have lost his reputation.
10. I kept on wondering about her success.
11. Everybody is responsible for his deeds.
12. His fall is certain.
13. She did not inform me of his profession.
14. Nobody knows his whereabouts.
15. She jumped at my offer.

Practice Exercise-2 (a)

Simple to Adjective Clause

Change the following simple sentences into complex sentences by using Adjective clause.

1. I bought a very cheap pen yesterday.
2. I saw a beggar begging from door to door.
3. This is my native village.
4. Do you know the reason of his failure?
5. The value of exercise is great.
6. His offence is unpardonable.
7. They came across the students smoking by the road side.
8. A tired man cannot do work well.
9. This is not the manner to please your boss.
10. He gave me money to spend.
11. The pen given by him is very cheap.
12. I have no friend to talk to.
13. He was the last to arrive at the party.
14. He gave me a fake news.
15. How can you believe a dishonest person?

Practice Exercise-2 (b)

Change the following simple sentences to complex sentences by using Adjective clause.

1. We committed a quite serious mistake.
2. They found a rare piece of diamond.
3. We undertook quite a tiring journey.
4. The tired man could not do work well.
5. The dog felled the burning candle.
6. The murder committed by him ruined his life.
7. He invented a machine for stitching.
8. He saw a brightly burning candle in the corner.
9. A class room is not the place to play.
10. He has a large family to educate.
11. He was the last man to attend the funeral.
12. Do you know the time of your father's departure?
13. Do you know the reason of her arrival earlier?
14. Nobody appreciated her behaviour at the party.
15. I was informed of his residence.
16. Kabir, a weaver, was a famous poet.
17. Everybody loves Mr. Verma, our teacher.
18. The boys living near my house are honest.
19. The place of the cremation of the leader was thronged with people.
20. She told me the reason of her being late.
21. Shakespear, a great dramatist, wrote a number of plays.
22. The girl with long hair is a cousin of my wife.
23. They live just near the by pass on the outskirts of the city.
24. The players awarded cash prize by the President were present at the function.
25. The offence committed by them intentionally is unpardonable.
26. I paid the debt incurred by my father.

Practice Exercise-3

Simple to Adverb Clause

Change the following simple sentences into complex sentences by using Adverb clause.

1. For all his experience he is still not efficient.
2. He can not succeed without hard work.
3. On being scolded he left the room.
4. The signal having been given the train started.
5. I shall be very glad to help him.
6. He is too simple to win the game.
7. He was punished on account of his mischief.

8. The work was done in my presence.
9. Despite his wealth he is not respected.
10. You must wait here till the arrival of your father.
11. Notwithstanding his poverty, he is honest.
12. Do it to the best of your ability.
13. Nobody must expect to become rich without hard work.
14. My heart is too full for words.
15. With a view to continuing his higher study he borrowed money from the bank.
16. Being very fat she is undergoing slimming treatment.
17. In comparison with the tiger the cat is swifter.
18. I am thankful to you for helping my brother.
19. But for the timely help he would have died from burns.
20. She is kind enough to help everybody.
21. He did not stop wroking before his success.
22. They were afraid of being caught in the shower.
23. You must act in accordance with the rules.
24. Considering his capability he was promoted.
25. Weather permitting we shall leave for Shimla.
26. Water is too hot to drink.
27. All being well I shall meet her parents today.
28. I shall be glad to be invited.
29. I would be glad to be there.
30. I would have been glad to have been there.
31. Your behaviour was too much for the guests.
32. She is too good for me.
33. He was quick enough to overtake me.
34. It being a junk food we did not taste it.
35. But for our poverty we would have been a happy family.

Part-II

Complex to Simple

A complex sentence can be changed to simple sentence by contracting a subordinate clause into a phrase or a word.

(a) Noun clause to Noun phrase/Noun, Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, Case in apposition etc.

(b) Adjective clause to Adjective phrase/Adjective (Infinitive/Participle, Case in apposition etc.

(c) Adverb clause to Adverb phrase/Adverb, Participle, Infinitive etc.

Note : We have already studied the examples in the foregoing explanation.

Practice Exercise-1 (a)

Change the following complex sentences to simple sentences by replacing Noun clause.

1. It is much regretted that she is dishonest.
2. He admitted that his enemy was generous.
3. I know where your brother lives.
4. Pay heed to what your officers say.
5. Never say what is wrong.
6. We believe that God exists.
7. I expect that he will pass.
8. It is unfortunate that he died young.
9. He asked me why I gave money to his brother.
10. He confessed that he had met her last evening.
11. I agreed that I would teach him.
12. I informed him that she had gone.
13. It appears that he has been scolded by his father.
14. I ordered him that he should leave the room at once.
15. People are certain that he is honest.

Practice Exercise-1 (b)

Change the following complex sentences into simple ones by replacing Noun clause.

1. He confessed that he was guilty.
2. I do not care for what she has remarked.
3. Mohit may do what he likes.
4. I have long doubted if he is honest.
5. The rumour that he has died is baseless.
6. How old he is, is not known.
7. What she said is disgusting.
8. The fact that he was silent proved his complicity in the crime.
9. He denied that he had murdered.
10. It appears that she is absent today.
11. It was alleged that she had abused him.
12. She wanted to know what his name was.
13. My hope is that I should earn a lot of money.
14. It is sure that he has been punished.
15. It is expected that he will give me money.
16. All depend on what his future is.
17. I don't believe in what she said.
18. I agreed to what he proposed.

Practice Exercise-2 (a)

Change the following complex sentences to simple sentences by replacing Adjective clause.

1. He is not such a man as can be trusted.
2. A student who is careless cannot succeed.
3. He is not a man who will cheat anyone.
4. He has a large house in which he lives.
5. The statement they made is false.
6. You can have anything that you like.
7. Dogs that bark seldom bite.
8. I know the reason why he could not succeed.
9. Milton who was a famous poet, wrote 'Pardise Lost'.
10. The train that connects New Delhi is late.
11. Childhood is a time when good habits can be learnt.
12. The man who was wounded died last night.
13. Those who are healthy do not need a doctor.
14. The good deeds that man does live after him.
15. The place where the leader was cremated was thronged with people.

Practice Exercise-2 (b)

Change the following sentences to simple ones by replacing Adjective clause.

1. Yesterday I bought a book which is very cheap.
2. You cannot believe a person who is dishonest.
3. Those who are hard working succeed in life.
4. A soldier who was wounded was lying in the field.
5. The players who were tired could not perform well.
6. The monster who was proud of his power was defeated by Hercules.
7. In the street we saw a beggar who was begging from door to door.
8. The man who was wounded in the accident died last night.
9. The police discovered the weapon which was used to kill the victim.
10. The magic ball which was meant for the king was eaten by the jester.
11. Seema was the last person who left for home.
12. My uncle was the first man who heard her name on the radio.
13. He has some bills which he must pay in cash.
14. I have no friend whom I can talk to.
15. Childhood is a time when one can teach good habits to children.
16. The time when he will come tomorrow is not certain.
17. All of us were told the reason why he had become rich suddenly.
18. I remember very well the year when he retired.
19. The people who reside in our colony were shouting for justice.

20. Rathore who is our captain scored fifty runs.
21. Edison, who was a great scientist invented electricity.
22. We visited the Taj which is a unique building.
23. I shall travel by the Taj Express which goes to Agra direct.
24. The students who hail from Bihar are very hard working.
25. Tomorrow I will board a train which connects Udaipur.
26. The news which the Voice of America broadcast is true.
27. I met a poet whom I had already known.
28. Mr. Gupta will buy the house which I built only last year.
29. The book which I had lost has been found out.
30. Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others.

Practice Exercise-3

Change the following complex sentences into simple sentences by replacing Adverb clause.

1. He did as I wished.
2. We get up when it is morning.
3. When we had finished work, we went home.
4. As he saw me, he ran away.
5. While she was walking in the garden, a stranger addressed her.
6. He is so kind that he helps everybody.
7. We went home after the teacher had arrived.
8. He wrote as fast as he could.
9. He will not return money unless he is threatned.
10. I succeeded better than I expected.
11. When the thief was found out, he was arrested.
12. Although she was punished, she was not ashamed.
13. You can talk as much as you like.
14. Poor as he is, he is honest.
15. Notwithstanding that he is honest, he is not hard working.
16. If they had not helped me, I would not have gained success.
17. He ran fast so that he might catch taxi.
18. As she ran fast, the teacher declared her first.
19. As he is poor, we will help him.
20. If God wills, you will succeed.
21. If I make a promise, I will stick to it.
22. Everybody complimented him because he had succeeded.
23. He has come to Chandigarh so that capable doctors may treat him.
24. As it was fine, we left for picnic.
25. While they were watching T.V. their friends visited them.
26. While she was crossing the road, a scooter knocked her down.

27. Sania is so slow that she cannot be a good tennis player.
28. She is too clever not to see through your tricks.
29. Her sorrow is so deep that it cannot be expressed in tears.
30. He will stick to his job lest he should starve.
31. When the signal was given, the train started.
32. Since I arrived in Chennai, I have not had any rest.
33. The project was not launched because no money was given to me.
34. This house is so small that I cannot live in it.
35. Since the weather was very pleasant, we went on a long drive.

Part-III

Simple and complex sentences to compund sentences

(a) Change of simple sentences to compound sentences.
(b) Change of complex sentences to compound sentences.

(A) Simple sentence can be converted to compound sentence by changing phrase and a co-ordinating clause:
(i) Noun phrase/Noun to co-ordinate clause.
(ii) Adjective phrase/Adjective to co-ordinate clause.
(iii) Adverb phrase/Adverb to co-ordinate clause.

(B) Complex sentence can be converted to compound sentences by changing subordinate clause to co-ordinating clause :
(i) Noun clause to co-ordinate clause.
(ii) Adjective clause to co-ordinate clause.
(iii) Adverb clause to co-ordinate clause.

Note : (a) Co-ordinate clause is also called Independent clause.
(b) We have already studied co-ordinating conjunctions in chapter on Clauses and Synthesis.
They are : and, but, yet, still, neverthless, whereas, while, or, otherwise, else, or else, nor, as well as.

(A) Change of simple sentences into compound sentences

Examples worked out for the students:

1. Climbing up the stairs he fell down.
   He was climbing up the stairs and he fell down.
2. Being disappointed he left the job.
   He was disappointed, so he left the job.
3. Having taken bath, he put on new clothes.
   He had taken bath and put on new clothes.
4. Inspite of being rich, he is not happy.
   He is rich but he is not happy.

5. By running very fast, you can catch the bus.
   Run very fast and catch the bus.
6. It being very hot we left for Nainital.
   (a) We left for Nainital for it was very hot.
   (b) It was very hot so we left for Nainital.
7. Arriving at home she found her son missing.
   She arrived at home and she found her son missing.
8. Without respecting others you will not be respected.
   Respect others otherwise you will not be respected.
9. For all his knowledge he could not earn money.
   He had knowledge but he could not earn money.
10. Being stabbed fatally he died.
    He was stabbed fatally, so he died.

Practice Exercise-1

Change the following simple sentences into compound sentences:

1. I shall leave the room with your permission.
2. For all his knowledge he is a fool.
3. He was punished on account of his fault.
4. Despite his wealth, he is not respected.
5. He worked hard to secure high percentage of marks.
6. On his return we asked him many questions.
7. In addition to mathematics he also teaches Hindi.
8. I am thankful to you for sending me money.
9. Besides being rich he is learned also.
10. Notwithstanding my request he left Jhansi.
11. He was sitting in the drawing room watching T.V.
12. With all his contacts he never used unfair means.
13. He must admit his fault on pain of punishment.
14. He must work hard to secure high percentage of marks.
15. He was dismissed for embezzlement.
16. The weather being very fine, we left for swimming.
17. In the event of his death his son will inherit the property.
18. He did not follow the rules out of ignorance.
19. To my surprise he could not qualify examination.
20. Only the rich can afford such a costly treatment.
21. Do this to escape suffering.
22. He went by car fearing rain.
23. Without being invited I shall not go.
24. Neither of the statements is correct.
25. Do not desire without deserving.

(B) Change of Complex sentences into compound

Examples worked out for the students:

1. When she arrived at home, she found her son missing.
   She arrived at home and she found her son missing.
2. While he was climbing up, the stairs, he fell down.
   He was climbing up the stairs and fell down.
3. As he was disappointed, he left the job.
   He was disappointed so he left the job.
4. When he had taken bath, he put on new clothes.
   He had taken bath and put on new clothes.
5. Although he is rich, he is not happy.
   He is rich but he is not happy.
6. If you run very fast, you can catch the bus.
   Run very fast and catch the bus.
7. As it was very hot, we left for Nainital.
   (a) We left for Nainital for it was very hot.
   (b) It was very hot so we left for Nainital.
8. If you do not respect others, you will not be respected.
   Respect others otherwise you will not be respected.
9. Although he had knowledge he could not earn money.
   He had knowledge but he could not earn money.
10. As he was stabbed fatally, he died.
    He was stabbed fatally, so he died.

Practice Exercise-2

Change the following complex sentences into compound sentences replacing subordinate clause.

1. Although she is sick, she will come.
2. If you come by car, we will take you to temple.
3. As it was cold, we did not go out.
4. When the thief was found out, he was arrested.
5. When she arrived, everybody welcomed her.
6. If you do not stop smoking, you will suffer from lung disease.
7. I shall not go, unless I am invited.
8. If you listen seriously, I will tell you all.
9. I am glad that he has recovered from illness.
10. I have found the pen that I had lost.
11. He had a dog that was very faithful.
12. Unlucky as he is, he is never disappointed.
13. (a) Do this lest you should suffer.
    (b) If you donot do this, you will suffer.
14. However intelligent he may be, he can not succeed.

15. If he had not given me money, I would not have started business.
16. If he were at home, I would meet him.
17. If he is at home, I shall give him money.
18. In case he dies, his son will inherit his property.
19. He must work hard so that he may pass.
20. He could afford to spend something but he spent more.

Part-IV

Interchange of following sentences

(a) Interchange of Degree
(b) Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentence
(c) Interchange of Assertive and Interrogative Sentence
(d) Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentence
(e) Sentences Expressing Condition
(f) Sentences Expressing Contrast
(g) Removal of Adverb 'too'
(h) Interchange of Parts of Speech

(a) Interchange of degrees without changing the meaning.

Rule I

1. **Comparative** – She is more intelligent than her brother is.
   Positive – Her brother is not so intelligent as she is.
2. **Comparative** – She is not more intelligent than her brother is.
   Positive – Her brother is as intelligent as she is.
3. **Positive** – She is not so intelligent as he.
   Comparative – He is more intelligent than she.

Rule II

4. **Positive** – Very few writers in India are as famous as R.K. Narayan.
   Comparative – R.K. Narayan is more famous than most of the Indian writers.
   Superlative – R.K. Narayan is one of the most famous Indian writers.

Rule III

5. **Positive** – No other writer in India is so famous as R.K. Narayan.
   Comparative – R.K. Narayan is more famous than any other writer in India.
   Superlative – R.K. Narayan is the most famous of all the writers in India.
6. **Positive** – No other bowler in India is so famous as Kapil Dev.
   Comparative – Kapil Dev is more famous than any other bowler in India.
   Superlative – Kapil Dev is the most famous of all the bowlers in India.

Rule IV

7. **Superlative** – Varanasi is not the oldest of all the cities in U.P.
   Comparative – Varanasi is not older than some other cities in U.P.
   Positive – Some other cities in U.P. are at least as old as Varanasi.

More Examples Solved

1. Positive – Rustam was as powerful as his brother.
   Comparative – Rustam's brother was not more powerful than Rustam.
2. Superlative – Shivaji was one of the greatest warriors of India.
   Comparative – Shivaji was greater than most of the warriors in India.
3. Positive – Very few countries are as rich in heritage as India.
   Comparative – India is richer in heritage than most of the countries.
4. Comparative – Eagle flies higher than any other bird.
   Positive – No other bird flies as high as eagle.
   Superlative – Eagle flies highest of all the birds.
5. Positive – No one else is so honest as our principal.
   Comparative – Our principal is more honest than anybody else.
   Superlative – Our principal is the most honest of all.
6. Superlative – She is the most successful teacher in our college.
   Positive – No other teacher in our college is as successful as she is.
   Comparative – She is more successful than any other teacher in our college.
7. Superlative – She is one of the most successful business women in our country.
   Comparative – She is more successful than most of the business women in our country.
   Positive – Very few business women in our country are as successful as she is.
8. Comparative – It is better to lend than borrow.
   Positive – Borrowing is not as good as lending.
9. Superlative – The Ambanis are not the richest of all the Indian industrialist.
   Comparative – The Ambanis are not richer than some other Indian Industrialists.
   Positive – Some other Indian industrialists are at least as rich as the Ambanis.
10. Positive – No other legendary hero was so valorous as Arjun.
    Superlative – Arjun was the most valorous of all the legendary heroes.

(b) Interchange of Affirmative and negative sentences.

Study the following examples :

1. Affirmative – Only he is responsible for my failure in life.
   Negative – None but he is responsible for my failure in life.
2. Negative – He could not climb up the tree.
   Affirmative – He failed to climb up the tree.
3. Affirmative – As soon as she arrived, she went to bed.
   Negative – No sooner did she arrive than she went to bed.
4. Negative – If you do not work hard, You will fail.
   Affirmative – Unless you work hard, you will fail.

5. **Affirmative** – He is an honest person.
   Negative – He is not a dishonest person.
6. **Affirmative** – I was doubtful of his success.
   Negative – I was not sure of his success.
7. **Affirmative** – She is more intellegent than he.
   Negative – He is not so intellegent as she.
8. **Affirmative** – Netaji was a greater freedom fighter than any other leader.
   Negative – No other leader was so great freedom fighter as Netaji.
9. **Affirmative** – She is too clever to be cheated.
   Negative – She is so clever that she cannot be cheated.
10. **Affirmative** – He is sometimes angry.
    Negative – He is not always angry.
11. **Affirmative** – Everybody admits that he is very helpful.
    Negative – Nobody denies that he is very helpful.
12. **Affirmative** – You must have given money to your poor friend.
    Negative – You must not have failed to give money to your friend.
13. **Affirmative** – I will always remember you in my life.
    Negative – I will never forget you in my life.
14. **Affirmative** – It is unlikely that he will give you money.
    Negative – It is not likely that he will give you money.
15. **Affirmative** – Every body cried.
    Negative – (a) There was none who did not cry.
    (b) There was none but cried.
16. **Affirmative** – I love my children.
    Negative – I am not without love for my children.
17. **Affirmative** – He is bound to succeed.
    Negative – He cannot but succeed.
18. **Affirmative** – It always pours when it rains.
    Negative – It never rains but pours.
19. **Affirmative** – I saw her last when I visited Pune.
    Negative – I have not seen her since I visited Pune.
20. **Affirmative** – I met him in 2009.
    Negative – I have not met him since 2009.
21. **Affirmative** – The fort was burnt before it was surrendered.
    Negative – The fort was not surrendered until it was burnt.
22. **Affirmative** – It is often difficult.
    Negative – It is not always easy.
23. **Affirmative** – Look before you leap.
    Negative – Don't leap before you look

24. Affirmative – I met Malini five years ago.
Negative – I have not met Malini for five years.

25. Affirmative – Always speak the truth.
Negative – Never tell a lie.

26. Affirmative – Every one has feelings.
Negative – There is no man who has no feelings.

27. Affirmative – He always began a job which he completed.
Negative – He never began a job which he did not complete.

28. Negative – There is no smoke without fire.
Affirmative – Fire causes smoke.

29. Negative – There is no rose without a thorn.
Affirmative – Every rose has a thorn.

30. Affirmative – All those boys are intelligent.
Negative – None of the boys is/are dull.

31. Affirmative – We found a few students.
Negative – We did not find many students.

32. Affirmative – I am very tired.
Negative – I am not a little tired.

33. Affirmative – She accepted my offer.
Negative – She did not refuse my offer.

34. Negative – If you had not helped me I would have failed.
Affirmative – But for your help I would have failed.

35. Affirmative – Work or perish.
Negative – If you do not work, you will perish.

36. Negative – If you do not pay, you will be refused admission.
Affirmative – Unless you pay, you will be refused admission.

37. Affirmative – If Leena were at home, I would meet her.
Negative – Leena is not at home otherwise I would meet her.

38. Affirmative – She was forbidden to loiter in the gallery.
Negative – She was asked not to loiter in the gallery.

39. Affirmative – Sushma loves her father as much as she loves her mother.
Negative – Sushma loves her father no less than her mother.

40. Affirmative – Raghu has more wealth than common sense.
Negative – Raghu does not have as msuch common sense as he has wealth.

41. Affirmative – You know her nature as well as her husband does.
Negative – Her husband does not know her nature better than you.

42. Affirmative – He was more worthy of a praise than anyone else.
Negative – None else was as worthy of praise as he was.

(c) Interchange of Assertive and Interrogative setneces.

Study the following sentences :

1. **Assertive** – I gave you money to buy a bike.
   Interrogative – Did I not give you money to buy a bike?
2. **Interrogative** – Was he not kind to help you?
   Assertive – He was kind enough to help you.
3. **Interrogative** – Who does not like to be praised?
   Assertive – Everybody likes to be praised.
4. **Interrogative** – Who can forget their sacrifice?
   Assertive – Nobody can forget their sacrifice.
5. **Interrogative** – Why waste money on luxuries?
   Assertive – It is foolish to waste money on luxuries.
6. **Assertive** – He could not have achieved success without your help.
   Interrogative – Could he have achieved success without your help?
7. **Assertive** – That is not the manner to do this work.
   Interrogative – Is this the manner to do this work?
8. **Assertive** – No one can be expected to do wrong to his parents.
   Interrogative – Who can be expected to do wrong to his parents?
9. **Interrogative** – What though I have lost a friend for your sake?
   Assertive – It does not matter that I have lost a friend for your sake.
10. **Assertive** – Their glory can never fade.
    Interrogative – When can their glory fade?
11. **Interrogative** – Have I ever refused to give you money?
    Assertive – I have never refused to give you money.
12. **Interrogative** – Why not stay here tonight?
    Assertive – It is better we should stay here tonight.
13. **Interrogative** – What is the use of going there?
    Assertive – (a) It is no use going there.
    (b) There is no use of going there.
14. **Interrogative** – If you stab him, will he not die?
    Assertive – If you stab him, he will die.
15. **Interrogative** – Why blame him?
    Assertive – It is no use blaming him.
16. **Interrogative** – What is that to me?
    Assertive – It does not matter to me.

(d) Interchange of exclamatory and assertive.

Study the following sentences:

1. **Exclamatory** – How smart she is!
   Assertive – She is very smart.
2. **Exclamatory** – What a pretty girl she is!
   Assertive – She is a very pretty girl.
3. **Exclamatory** – Oh that I were a doctor!
   Assertive – I wish I were a doctor.
4. **Exclamatory** – Alas! He died so young.
   Assertive – It is sad (to think) that he died so young.
5. **Exclamatory** – Would that she were here!
   Assertive – I wish she were here.
6. **Exclamatory** – Had you but completed your education!
   Assertive – I wish you had completed your education.
7. **Assertive** – It is very foolish of me to ask for money.
   Exclamatory – How foolish of me to ask for money!
8. **Assertive** – I wish I had come here last year.
   Exclamatory – Would that I had come here last year!
9. **Exclamatory** – Hurrah! we have won the match.
   Assertive – It is a matter of joy that we have won the match.
10. **Exclamatory** – To think of our living together!
    Assertive – It is strange that we think of living together.
11. **Exclamatory** – If only I could meet her now!
    Assertive – I wish I could meet her now.
12. **Exclamatory** – Alas! we have lost today!
    Assertive – It is sad that we have lost today.
13. **Exclamatory** – Bravo, well done!
    Assertive – It is brave of you to have done well.
14. **Exclamatory** – To think of our meeting here!
    Assertive – I never thought of meeting you here.
15. **Exclamatory** – What a piece of work is man!
    Assertive – Man is a wonderful piece of work.
16. **Exclamatory** – How wise of you!
    Assertive – It is very wise of you.
17. **Exclamatory** – Oh to be a queen!
    Assertive – I wish I were a queen.
18. **Exclamatory** – Oh to have been a prince!
    Assertive – I wish I had been a prince!
19. **Exclamatory** – Our Prime Minister and so weak!
    Assertive – It is shocking that our Prime Minister is so weak.
20. **Exclamatory** – Such a man and my husband.
    Assertive – It is shocking that such a man is my husband.

21. **Exclamatory** – What a pity! you have lost.
Assertive – It is a great pity you have lost.

22. **Exclamatory** – A child and so bold at this age!
Assertive – It is wonderful that a child is so bold at this age.

23. **Exclamatory** – O for a small house to live in Mumbai!
Assertive – I ardently wish to have a small house to live in Mumbai.

24. **Exclamatory** – Fie, Fie! you are a cheat.
Assertive – It is contemptible that you are a cheat.

25. **Exclamatory** – Alas! that ever a friend should be false.
Assertive – It is sad that a friend should be false.

(e) Sentences expressing condition.

1. If/In case you work hard, you will get through.
2. Unless you take medicine, you will not get well.
3. You will get well only if you take medicine.
4. Should you help me, I shall succeed.
5. Were I a doctor, I should treat you.
6. Had you gone there, you would have met her.
7. Supposing you win lottery, how will you spend money?
8. I shall go to the movie provided you allow me.
9. Do it and you will be awarded a prize.
10. Do not be late otherwise /or you will be punished.
11. Have you paid for this book? then take it.
12. One more game and we will play in the finals.
13. Without investing money you can't earn profit.
14. By going out you will catch cold.
15. But for examining me the doctor could not have diagnosed my illness.
16. I shall give you information in the event of your keeping it secret.
17. I shall give you information on the condition that you will not reveal it.

(f) Sentences expressing contrast.

1. Although she is poor, she is honest.
2. Even though she came late, she was not punished.
3. Notwithstanding that she is wealthy, she is a miser.
4. Rich as she is, she is not honest.
5. Admitting that she is learned, she is not proud.
6. However hard you may try, you cannot compete with him.
7. However intelligent she may be, she cannot pass.
8. I shall do it whatever you may say.
9. She was tired, all the same she did not go to bed.
10. He is very strict at the same time he is loving by Nature.

11. For all that he may say nobody trusts him.
12. It was raining nevertheless she went away.
13. Even if you run fast, you will not get the train.
14. He was weak indeed, but he could walk.
15. She has married indeed, but she is not happy.
16. Come what may she will not desist from playing tricks.
17. Much as I would have liked to give her money, I had no means.
18. No matter what they said, he married a girl of her choice.
19. No matter where she is, she will call me up as usual.
20. I must go whether you come with me or not.

(g) Removal of Adverb too

Rewrite the following sentences removing the Adverb (too):

1. He is too tired to walk.
   He is so tired that he cannot walk.
2. She is too anxious for the safety of her husband.
   She is over anxious for the safety of her husband.
3. It is too cold to go on picnic.
   It is so cold that one cannot go on Picnic.
4. The shirt is too loose for my body.
   The shirt is so loose that it does not fit my body.
5. It is too hot.
   It is excessively hot.
6. He is too eager for priase.
   He is over eager for praise.
7. The fort is too high for anyone to climb.
   The fort is so high that no one can climb it.
8. He was too selfish.
   He was selfish beyond limit.
9. My heart is too full for words.
   My heart is so full that I cannot utter a word.
10. He is too fast not to catch up with you any moment.
    He is so fast that he can catch up with you any moment.
11. She is too good for me.
    She is so good that I am no match for her.
12. This house is too small for me.
    This house is so small that it cannot serve my purpose.
13. This adversity is too much for anyone.
    This adversity is so harsh that no one can bear it.
14. My teacher is too fat.
    My teacher is fatter than she should be.
15. As a child Suhani was too active.
    As a child Suhani was more active than she should have been.

(h) Interchange of parts of speech.

Following interchanges of one part of speech for another are made :

1. Noun

(a) Noun	into	Verb
(b) Noun	into	Adjective
(c) Noun	into	Adverb

2. Verb

(a) Verb	into	Noun
(b) Verb	into	Adjective
(c) Verb	into	Adverb

3. Adjective

(a) Adjective	into	Noun
(b) Adjective	into	Verb
(c) Adjective	into	Adverb

4. Adverb

(a) Adverb	into	Noun
(b) Adverb	into	Verb
(c) Adverb	into	Adjective

Practice Exercise

(A) Nouns into verbs

Replace the nouns in *Italics* in the following sentences by verbs:

1. She got *success* in the examination.
2. Her *intention* was to harm me.
3. He gave me *advice*.
4. They can not get *admission* without documents.
5. I have a *disinclination* for work in office.
6. The *taste* of these mangoes is sour.
7. They have made an *agreement* to complete this work in time.
8. I have no *inclination* of going to the movie.
9. He is a *disgrace* on his family.
10. The *cost* of this refrigerator is very high.

(B) Nouns into Adjectives:

Replace the Nouns in *Italics* in the following sentences by Adjectives:

1. She admitted her *guilt*.
2. The room was full of *dust*.
3. He is a man of *great courage*.
4. They do work with *skill*.
5. He is living in *peace* these days.
6. He was punished for his *negligence*.

(C) Nouns into Adverbs

Replace the Nouns in *Italics* in the following sentences by Adverbs:

1. She left the room in *anger*.
2. Please carry it with *care*.
3. She survived because of *luck*.
4. She is living in *peace* with her only son.
5. She listened to me with *patience*.
6. She listened to me with *attention*.
7. She left the room in a *hurry*.
8. He goes to chandigarh *every week*.

Verbs

(a) Verbs into Nouns

Replace the Verbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by Nouns:

1. My brother *promised* to help me.
2. This computer is *made* in India.
3. She accepted all that I *proposed*.
4. She was *bathing*.
5. She *signed* the documents.
6. I *need* money.
7. Please *help me*.
8. She was so intelligent that we *admired* her.

(B) Verbs into Adjectives

Replace the Verbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by Adjectives:

1. She *differs* with me in her views.
2. She always *obeys* her brother.
3. He has *succeeded* in her work.
4. He *hoped* to succeed.
5. I *doubt* your honesty.
6. His success has *astonished* me.

(c) Verbs into Adverbs

Replace the Verbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by Adverb:

1. She *hurried* to the bus stop.
2. I *forced* him to leave.
3. She *succeeded* in her task.
4. She *attended* to my advice.
5. They *helped* me in difficulties.
6. She *cares* for her duty.

Adjectives

(a) Adjectives into Nouns

Replace the Adjectives in *Italics* in the following sentences by Nouns:

1. Exercise makes body *strong*.
2. Her actions are *careful*.
3. She is very *wise* in spending money.
4. Their expediation was *successful*.
5. He is a *courageous* man.
6. We are *proud* of our country.
7. The room is *dusty*.

(b) Adjectives into Verbs

Replace the Adjectives in *Italics* in the following sentences by Verbs:

1. You have given me *pleasant* news.
2. Her favour was *intentional*.
3. She was *successful* in her job.
4. He is *careful* of his health.
5. Your behaviour was *annoying* to your wife.
6. We are *proud* of your success.

(c) Adjectives into Adverbs

Replace the Adjectives in *Italics* in the following sentences by Adverbs:

1. She is leading a *peaceful* life with her daughter.
2. Be *careful* in your work.
3. She is *attentive* in learning computers.
4. His handwriting is *neat*.
5. I am *comfortable* in my seat.
6. He is a *slow* driver.
7. Her action is *intentional*.
8. I am *certain* that I will pass.

Adverbs

(a) Adverbs into Nouns

Replace the Adverbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by Nouns:

1. Do not talk with children *angrily*.
2. Do you work *attentively*.
3. Enter the room *carefully*.
4. They did it *successfully*.
5. Stock tacking is done *annually*.

(b) **Adverbs into Verbs**

Replace the Adverbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by Verbs:

1. She went to the airport in a taxi *hurriedly.*
2. They always act *obediently.*
3. She does her duty *carefully.*
4. They served me *helpfully.*
5. She listened to my advice *attentively.*

(c) **Adverbs into Adjectives**

Replace the Adverbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by Adjectives:

1. *Fortunately* they succeded in the difficult task.
2. She is walking *gracefully.*
3. She behaved with me *disgracefully.*
4. She solved the problem *successfully.*
5. Probably she will succeed.
6. She was dressed *elegantly.*

Miscellaneous Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences as directed :

1. His.....with the strangers astonished everybody. (use noun of 'familiar)
2. India is richer in heritage than most of the countries. (use 'rich' in place of 'richer)
3. A student of our school is a.....leader. (use adjective of 'fame'.)
4. We were disappointed when our tour was cancelled. (make noun of 'cancel')
5. He was happy to leave the house. (use happily in the sentence)
6. It is better to starve than beg. (make gerund of 'to starve')
7. There is possibility of his being late. (use model 'may')
8. She looks just as smart in saari as she does in jeans. (use 'whether' in the sentence)
9. None in their correct senses will ever do it. (begin the sentence with 'none but')
10. Our principal is the most honest of all in the college. (make the sentence comparative)
11. Suresh thought of a new plan. (change voice)
12. He could not complete the race as he had injured his foot. (Rewrite by using verb prevent)
13. Shivaji was one of the greatest warriors of India. (Change into comparative degree)
14. Sheena returned a month ago. (begin the sentence with 'it is')
15. For more information contact the Secretary. (begin the sentence with 'should')
16. You remembered to buy a pen for me. didn't you? (begin the sentences with 'you did not')
17. You have nothing to complains of. (begin the sentence 'there is')
18. Please read this letter. (use phrasal verb beginning with 'go')
19. He has refused to help me. (begin the sentence with 'he said')
20. It is better to lend than borrow. (use gerunds for infinitives)
21. The price of milk has risen steadily. (make sentence using 'steady')
22. The judge punished the guilty. (make sentence using 'fail')
23. If you do not come, I will not go to the movie. (use 'unless' for 'if')
24. His victory surprised me. (make sentence using 'take')
25. The driver lost the job for rash driving. (begin the sentence with 'had')
26. He gives me the same love as he gives her. (rewrite the sentence using 'noless')
27. Her failure in life disappointed her parents. (make noun of 'disappoint')
28. We did not have good time because it was too cold. (begin the sentence with 'if')
29. Of what use is this book to you? (begin the sentence with 'This book'
30. She is not such a wise lady as she is known (make a comparative degree of 'wise')
31. Put your tools away. People may fall over them. (combine the sentences)
32. I would rather die than flatter. (rewrite the sentence using 'prefer')
33. Nobody will deny that she is honest. (use 'admit' in the sentence)
34. It you cannot face the music, I will have to. (make the sentence by using 'or')
35. Although she was too young, the commission appointed her. (use 'despite' for 'although')
36. She is not so much wise as beautiful. (make comparative of 'wise')

37. This should be of the greatest value to mankind. (make positive degree of 'great')
38. The storm which had been a threat since Monday at last broke out with great fury. (rewrite the sentence by using 'Threaten')
39. Waste not, want not. (begin the sentence with if)
40. I accept your offer. (use 'acceptable' in this sentence)
41. Reena has more money than brain. (write the sentence in 'positive degree')
42. It is normal for a child to eat four times a day.(make adverb of 'normal' in the sentence).
43. I caught a train and went to Amravati. (make a sentence with 'Perfect Participle')
44. I was not sure that it was you. (use 'doubtful' for 'not sure')
45. I do not know her nature any better than you. ('use positive degree')
46. She complained that the room was hot. (make a simple sentence)
47. Tanya is the most punctual of all the boys in her class. ('make a comparative degree')
48. What long hair you have! (end the sentence with 'is')
49. Even if you try hard, you cannot earn much. (use 'however' in the sentence)
50. Do they believe in God? (end the sentence with 'exists')
51. Who replaced the player after he was injured? (use 'substitute' for replace)
52. She has not met me for years. (make the sentence using 'ago')
53. Only my friends are responsible for my adversity. (make negative)
54. All the atheletes complained that ameneties provided were far from satisfactory. (make sentence with 'complain of')
55. It is unlikely that he will help you. (make the sentence using 'not')
56. He attended the function. No one raised any objection. (combine the sentence using 'gerund attending')
57. The girls were not permitted to go on Picnic (make sentence using 'let')
58. I have not a map, I can't guide you. (make the sentence using 'if')
59. They found a little sugar in the kitchen. (make a 'negative sentence')
60. Sunil had visited Mohan only once before but he remembered the route. (make the sentence using 'although')
61. I met him last, when his father died. (use 'since' for 'when')
62. If only I could meet her again. (begin the sentence with 'would that')
63. The situation was filled with high drama. (use 'dramatic' in the sentence)
64. The sun rose and the fog disappeared. (make the sentence with 'nominative' absolute)
65. O for a small place to live in the hills! (begin the sentence with I wish)
66. We worried about his attitude to the poor. (begin the sentence with 'his attitude')
67. It is sad that a friend should be false. (make sentence using 'Alas')
68. This is the last time you will ever sit in this room. (begin with 'never' in the sentence)
69. This sum is too difficult for me. (make a complex sentence)
70. It is wonderful that such a child is bold. (begin the sentence with 'how')
71. He refused to allow the late comers in and this annoyed them. (begin the sentence with 'his refusal')
72. Fie Fie! you are a cheat. (change into 'assertive sentence')
73. Fairies do not exist. (make the sentence 'using out of the question.)

74. This plane flies direct from Srinagar to Delhi. (rewrite the sentence using 'flight')
75. What is that to you? (make the sentence 'negative')
76. This is the greatest discovery that the world has ever known. (begin the sentence with 'never')
77. Eat few rich dinners and you will need few medicines. (rewrite the sentence with if)
78. He will be angry if you come late. (use 'and' in the sentence)
79. The brilliant student surprised every one. (use 'brilliance' in the sentence)
80. It is no use blaming him. (begin the sentence with 'there')
81. I was so sure that I could depend on him. (use 'dependence' in the sentence)
82. You will have to write legibily. (Write using prefix 'it' before legibily)
83. Shall we ever forget these happy days. (rewrite using 'never')
84. This is not the manner to do this work. ('Write a clause after manner')
85. His prompt reply will able us to take timely action. (rewrite the correct sentence)
86. As it was a recess time, the students were playing. (being the sentence with 'it')
87. Who does not like to be praised? (change the sentence into assertive)
88. That was not my meaning at all. (rewrite using the verb 'mean')
89. If you listen seriously, I will tell you all. (rewrite the sentence using in the event of')
90. I am glad that he has recovered from illness. ('rewrite the sentence using 'recovery')
91. Do this to escape sufferings. (make the sentence using 'last')
92. It is likely that he will help you. (rewrite the sentence beginning with 'he')
93. Mr. Rahul is on leave, Mrs. Deepa ..... English these days. (Fill in the form of verb 'teach')
94. Please sit down. (change the voice)
95. Gold jewellery is bought and sold here. (change the voice)
96. He is said to be a spy. (begin the sentence with 'it')
97. She denied to have visited the multiplex yesterday. (begin the sentence with 'she desied that')
98. This computer is made in India. (use noun of 'made' in the sentence)
99. Every one wept when he departed. (use 'but wept' in the sentence)
100. If you had not worked hard, you would have wasted this year. (use 'hard work' in the sentence)
101. Although she is glamorous, she is modest. (use 'as' in the sentence.)

Chapter

4 Punctuation

Punctuation is a system in which marks are used in writing to indicate pauses and division of sentences. The meaning of written communication is made clear to the readers by the use of these marks. In fact punctuation is the right use of putting in marks or stops in writing.

The following are the principal marks of punctuation.

1. Comma (,)
2. Apstrophe (')
3. Semi Colon (;)
4. Colon (:)
5. Dash and Parenthesis. (–)
6. Quotation marks (Inverted Commas) (" ")
7. Hyphen (-)
8. End marks —
   (a) Full stop (.)
   (b) Question Marks (?)
   (c) Exclamatory marks (!)

Besides punctuation marks the students are required to know the use of :

(a) Capital letters

(b) How to write numerals?

Use of Comma (,)

(a) The comma is used for a short or slight pause to separate words in a list but it is avoided before 'and' :

(i) Everything they will give me, food, clothes and salary.

(ii) We will need cake, candles, lights and all.

(b) Used to separate Adverb Clause when it is followed by main clause:

(i) When the train arrives, we shall board it

(ii) Unless you take exercise, you will not lose weight.

(c) Used to mark off non-restrictive adjective clause. In such cases Adjective clause acts as a co-ordinate clause :

(i) He ate contaminated food, which (and this) made him sick.

(ii) She went out with Arnav, who (and he) bought her a necklace.

(iii) She said that she would help me, which (but which) was not true.

Note : Restrictive Adjective clause is restrictive in meaning.

Comma is not used to mark off restrictive clauses.

(i) My brother who is working hard is bound to succeed.

(ii) The boys who attended N.C.C. Camp will be awarded certificates.

(d) Used to write Noun in appositions :

(i) I would like to meet Mr. Kabir, your manager.

(ii) Mr. Kabir, the manager of our company, will call on you tomorrow.

(e) Used for Parenthetical Expressions:

(i) We knew, of course, that he would not attend your marriage.

(ii) Theye are, however, intelligent.

(iii) Your friend, if I am correct, is dishonest.

(iv) They, as you know, will visit us next Summer.

(v) Therefore, I like her.

(vi) Moreover, She is intelligent.

(vii) In fact, I like him.

(viii) Slowly, She entered the room.

Note : Students should take not of the following phrases carefully. after all—to say the least, is several ways, I know, I am sure, however, of course, therefore etc.

(f) Used to separate nominative absolute:

The sun having risen, we left for the town.

The task having been done, They went to bed.

(g) Used to separate initials and Titles :

Please call on Prof. Sharma, M.A., Ph.D.

(h) Used while writing address:

Lt. General A.K. Chopra,
50, Arun Apartments,
Noida . (U.P.)

(i) Used while writing dates :

July 10, 2008
10th July 2008 (No comma is required)
Thursday, July 10th, 2008

(j) Used while expressing Numerical expressions in group of there digits from right direction :

7, 297, 789

(k) Used after Solutions and Complimentary close :

My dear son,
Dear son,
Yours sincerly,
Yours truly,

(l) Used to separate question tag from the sentence:

She is honest, isn't she?
It is a nice story, isn't it?

(m) Used for omitted words:

She is dull, her sister, clever.

Reena is ten, Sheena, fourteen.

(n) Used to write reported speech after/before :

(a) Reporting Verb:

"I am not going tomorrow, " said she.

She said, "I am not going tomorrow."

"I am not", she said, "going tomorrow."

"I am not going tomorrow," said she, "I am ill".

Note : Comma is not used at the end when the reported speech is interrogative.

"Are you going tomorrow?" said she.

"Are you", said she, "going tomorrow?"

(o) Used After Words of Address :

Priya, bring me some fruit.

Bring me some fruit, Priya

I know, Shreya, time has come now.

(p) Used for separation of words:

Sleep, sleep peacefully.

Blow, blow fast

What she is, is well known.

(q) Used to indicate the omission of a verb :

Richa got house. Esha, cash

The bride was a Kaystha, the groom, a Brahmin.

2. Apostrophe (')

(a) Used with 's' to indicate that a thing or a person belongs to somebody:

Rohan's house

Children's school

Women's wardrobe

My sister's husband.

(b) Apostrophe is not used in case of non living things :

The table's wood. (wrong)

The wood of the table. (correct)

The book's price. (wrong)

The price of the book. (correct)

(c) In case of Plural Nouns and proper Nouns ending with 's' Apostrophe without 's' is used at the end.

The Girls' hostel.

The Students' Club.

Kalidas' poems

Dickens' Novels

(d) Pronouns do not required the use of apostrophe. Only 's' is used with pronouns:
Yours faithfully,
This house is hers
Ours is a large house.

(e) The letters that are omitted are represented by an apostraphe while writing contracted form :

I'm, I've, Can't	It's
I'll, They'd	Won't

(f) Apostrophe with 's' is used with figures and letters to make plural:
1. P's and Q's
2. 7's, 8's

But we say.
Fours, Sixes, Tens

(g) Apostrophe with 's' is used to make abbreviations Plural. However, in some cases Apostrophe can be omitted too :

M.A.'s, in'89 (1989)	M.P's, Ph.D's
The 90s of the previous century.	(Correct)

3. Semicolon (;)

Semicolon is used almost as a period/full stop within a sentence. It is used at the end of a thought in place of 'and', 'but', because etc to indicate that the thought continues into another thought.

1. Please do it; I shall give you money.
2. Krishna is black; Radha is fair.
3. It is cloudy; it may rain.
4. Man proposes; God disposes.

4. Colon (:)

Colon is used when a list, quotation or a long speech is to follow after it.
It is used to explain the words – Namely, as follows, following, for example etc.
(i) Wordsworth wrote : Child is father of man.
(ii) The meaning can be explained thus : Honesty does not always pay.
(iii) They brought many charges against him namely. Murder, Rape and Theft.
(iv) Please send us the following items of furniture : Chairs, Tables, Benches and Stools.

5. Dash (–) and Parentheses

(a) Dash is used in a sentence to mark an abrupt end to indicate that the words within a dash do not belong there. They are treated as just after thought. Some times they are parenthetical expressions. Double dashes are also known as parenthesis.
(i) They are – you know – crooks.
(ii) My friend – I am sure – is very sincere. (used for explanation)
(iii) The other players – Gambhir and Raina – are also part of India team.
(iv) Please send me the detail such as – your age, your income, nature of the job.
(v) Antony lost for love all – kingdom, glory, friends and honour.

(b) Used sometimes for colon :

We have received the following articles

(i) Photo graphs

(ii) Identity cards

(iii) Medical certificates

(c) Used as a Pause :

(i) I wrote her a message.....a message of peace and love.

(ii) He narrated a story.....a story that amused everyone.

(d) Used to indicate a missing word.

(i) Mrs.....is a very shrewd lady.

(ii) Please refer to page 20–25.

(e) To resume a scattered subject : e.g.

Honour, money, love.....all were lost.

Friends, relative, partners.....all are present.

6. Quotation Marks (' '), (" ") (Inverted Commas)

Quotation Marks are used to enclose words and punctuation in direct speech. They are also termed inverted commas when written as such (" ").

(a) She shouted, "We have to win."

(b) Used to enclose the names of books, poems, eassays.

(i) I have bought, "Tales from Shakespears."

(ii) Have you studied, "Ode to Nightingale."

(c) Used to enclose exact words spoken, written or quoted with a view to highlighting them.

(i) 'Beware of Dogs' was written on the gate.

(ii) Political parties use 'secularism' as 'catch vote slogan'.

7. Hyphen (–)

Hyphen is used to indicate words or parts of words that belong together.

(a) Used to make compound adjective qualifing a noun :

10 year-old-boy

well-known actress

A 5-day week

A hundred-rupee note

Mother-in-law

(b) Used after prefixes to separate two vowels and three consonants:

Co-ordinate

Co-operation

(c) Used to make compound numbers : (21 to 99)

Twenty–Six

Seventy–One

(d) Used to separate constituents of compound words :

Door-to-door campaign
Double-storey apartments
Man-to-man relations

(e) Used to write prefixes :

Ex-husband
Vice - president
Non-violence

8. The End Marks

(a) The Full Stop (.)
(b) The Question Mark (?)
(c) The Exclamation Mark (!)

(a) Full Stop (.)

(a) Also known as a longest period, is used :

(i) They have arrived.
(ii) She will join our club.
(iii) Pay now and get out.

(b) Used after abbreviations and initials of the names. They may be omitted in current English :

A.B. Vajpayee		A.K. Chopra
Feb.	U.S.A.	U.K.
Dr.	Prof.	Mr./Mrs.
e.g.	etc.	Feb.
U.N.O. (UNO)	M.L.A. (MLA)	

(c) Used after fractions, amount, time and date :

Fractions	Amount	Date
9.15 a.m.	₹ 50.75	5.9.05

(d) Used at the end of the address:

10, Rama Kutir, Chandigarh.

(b) Question Mark (?)

Used after interrogative questions:

(i) Are you staying there?
(ii) Could you please help me?
(iii) When did you meet her last?
(iv) How have you done?
(v) I asked her how she had done it.

Note : In sentence (v) full stop instead of question mark is used because it is a question in Indirect speach.

Question Tag :

They can do it, can't they?
She will come, won't she?
Asking a question or expressing a doubt in a statement.
She was married in 1992?
She is honest (?) lady.

(c) The exclamation mark (!)

Used after interjections, the words and sentences expressing emotions such as joy, sorrow, surprise, pity, prayer, curse.

(i) What a pretty child!.
(ii) How good of you!
(iii) Ah! we are ruined.
(iv) O! What you have done.
(v) O father! What you have done.

Capital :

(a) Capital letters are used
(i) To write God and Man in the widest sense.
God loves all
Man is mortal.
(ii) Pronouns used for God also begin with a Capital letter
(i) God is great.
(ii) We worship Him.
But gods and goddesses used as deities do not begin with a capital letter.

(b) To write proper nouns.
Pearl, Arnav, Suhani, Shaurya.

(c) To write 'First person of the pronoun.
She likes me but I don't like her.

(d) To write Interjection O, Oh
Oh! We are ruined.

(e) To write a reported speech.
She said, "I am a queen."
They said, "We have won the match."

Numerals

How to write Numerals?

1. When a sentence contains one series of numbers, all numbers of series should be written in figures. She has bought 4 chairs, 2 tables and 8 stools.
2. When a sentence contains two series of numbers, the nember in one series should be written in words and the nember in second series should be written in figures.

Five students have secured 90 marks and two have secured 85 marks.

3. Write Compound Numbers between 21 and 99 in words:
   Twenty-one Thirty-seven
   Seventy-four Sixty-Four
4. Numerical expressions are set off in groups of three digits from right.
   7, 897, 684
   97, 684
5. When one number follows another number immediately, first number should be written in figures and the second, in words.
   Four 5- feet long pipes
   Two 15 by 12 feet rooms.
6. When a sentence begins with a number, the number should be written in words, forty persons died in accident and twelve were wounded.

Practice Exercise

Punctuate the following sentences :

1. reena said to the servant what have you been doing since morning the servant said madam i have been walking the dog said go at once to the kitchen what have to do there the servant asked.
2. alas said her mother you have eaten all that i had mother do not worry i can manage without food but what about you said shaurya you have not eaten too.
3. great god i would rather be a pagan than such a christian wrote wordsworth.
4. by god I have not done it.
5. good heavens I have lost my purse.
6. good morning suhani have you slept well said her mom you do not appear to have slept well asked suhani in turn you were awake when I got up to turn off the air conditioner.
7. i cannot go she said because rain has not stopped so far.
8. they are well now arnav said they can go but it is drizzling how can they go said my daughter pearl.
9. do not desire O my young friend to get what you cannot get said the fisherman.
10. the king said to the jester how dare you touch the magic thing meant for me be ready to face the consequences shedding tears the jester said I am sorry no use crying said the king I am crying for you my lord replied the jester why asked the king.
11. You expect every body the slave said to the master, to flatter you all the time why is it so.
12. the queen cried help help.
13. Advise me deep said how can i solve this problem.
14. No said malini i have not heard this news.
15. Young and old good and bad all must die.
16. the names of the students are rohit, meenakshi, rahul, sona and ankur.

17. Oh dear i am tired today.
18. O yes i like singing you like dancing.
19. some are born great some achieve greatness.
20. you fools how dare you enter my room without permission.
21. She wouldnt go there my son.
22. For god's sake please help me.
23. ah i am undone my friends have ruined me.
24. alas what a fool i am he has after all cheated me.
25. the words the prohibited area were written on the wall.

❑

Chapter

5 Spelling Rules

Introduction

English spelling is an intriguing part of learning English. Max Muller went one step further and summed up the dilemma of those learning English. "English spelling is a national misfortune to England and international misfortune to the rest of the world.

Various scholars and linguists have suggested a number of ways to learn spellings such as Dictionary method, Dictation method, Playway method, Old drill method and so on.

Without going into the merits and demerits of any methods we may agree to the sound advice of Tomkinson that 'Caught rather than taught' is the best way to learn spellings. In other words a student can solve the problem just by reading constantly and preparing a list of words that spell a danger for a student.

There are many reasons for poor spellings. A five among them are poor memory, weak retention power and less of reading activity, therefore, correct spellings need constant writing practice, usage and power of recollection. The more a student recollects a word, the more capability he acquires to avoid errors in spelling words.

Some Important Rules on Spellings

1. The end consonant is usually doubled when there is one vowel letter before it

(a) While adding 'ed, ing' e.g.,

Stop + ed + ing	—	Stopped	Stopping
Spot + ed + ing	—	Spotted	Spotting
Admit + ed + ing	—	Admitted	Admitting
Regret+ed+ing	—	Regretted	Regretting
Recur+ed+ing	—	Recurred	Recurring
Plan + ed + ing	—	Planned	Planning

Exceptions :

Suffered	Suffering
Benefited	Benefitting
Offered	Offering
Differed	Differing
Focus	Focused

(b) While adding 'er' ,'est' to make compartive and superlative degree *e.g.*

Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Sad	Sadder	Saddest
Fat	Fatter	Fattest
Mad	Madder	Maddest

(c) While making a noun of a verb by adding 'er'

Cut	Cutter
Swim	Simmer
Run	Runner
Sin	Sinner
Rub	Rubber

(d) While adding Y to make an adjective of a noun.

Mud	Muddy
Fun	Funny

(e) If the stress is on the first syllable of a word that ends in "at, el, il, op, ip."

Equal + ed + ing	Equalled, Equalling
Travel + ed, ing	Travelled, Travelling
Level + ed + ing	Levelled, Levelling
Worship + ed + ing	Worshipped, Worshipping
Slap + ed + ing	Slapped, Slapping
Equip + ed, ing	Equipped, Equipping
Handicap + ed + ing	Handicapped, Handicapping
Signal + ed + ing	Signalled, Signalling
Model + ed + ing	Modelled, Modelling

2. The end consonant is not doubled :

(a) When there is dipthong before it.

Reap + ed + ing	Reaped, Reaping
Heap + ed + ing	Heaped, Heaping
Team + ed + ing	Teamed, Teaming
Shout + ed + ing	Shouted, Shouting
Cool + ed + ing	Cooled, Cooling

(b) When there is a suffix with a consonant.

Sin + ful	Sinful
Woman + hood	Womanhood
Sad + ness	Sadness
Equip + ment	Equipment

(c) When the stress is on the second syllable.

Listen + ed + ing	Listened, Listening
Offer + ed + ing	Offered, Offering
Answer + ed + ing	Answered, Answering
Murmur + ed + ing	Murmured, Murmuring

3. Words Ending in 'y' :

(a) Verbs ending in 'y' change into 'i' while they are conjugated (Making form of verbs) but 'y' remains unchanged when suffix 'ing' is added.

Rely	Relied	Relying
Marry	Married	Marrying
Try	Tried	Trying
Carry	Carried	Carrying

(b) Words ending in 'y' with a vowel before it do not change.

Obey	Obeyed	Obeying
Pray	Prayed	Praying
Enjoy	Enjoyed	Enjoying

Exceptions :

Say	Said	Saying
Pay	Paid	Paying
Lay	Laid	Laying

(c) When suffix 'ing' is added to verbs ending in 'ie', then change in to 'y'.

lie	lying
die	dying
tie	tying

(d) Nouns and adjectives ending in 'y' with a vowel before them, change into 'i' when suffixes er, est, ly, full, ness are added.

Happy	Happier	Happily
Fly	Flier	
Plenty	Plentiful	
Tidy	Tidier	Tidiest
Pity	Pitiful	
Sunny	Sunnier	Sunniest

4. When words ending in 'll' are compounded with double 'll', both words become single 'l' :

Will + full	Wilful
Full+fill	Fulfil

Exceptions :

Wellbeing
Farewell

5. Use of suffix 'ly' with adjectives to make adverbs:

(a) Adjectives ending in 'l' are written with 'll' while adding suffix 'ly'.

Final + ly	Finally
Real + ly	Really
Useful + ly	Usefully
Playful + ly	Playfully

(b) Adjectives ending in 'le' are written without 'le' while adding suffix 'ly'.

Sensible + ly	Sensibly
Forcible +ly	Forcibly
Gentle + ly	Gently
Subtle +ly	Subtly

6. In words ending in 'n' retain 'n' when 'ness' is added :

Keen	Keenness
Clean	Cleanness
Mean	Meanness

7. The letter 'c' is followed by letter (ei) and other letters by (ie) :

Receive	niece
Perceive	Siege
Deceive	Belief
Conceive	Achieve
Ceiling	berief

Exceptions :

Leisure, Counterfeit, freight, feign, their, height, heir, reign.

8. Words ending in 'll' are used with single 'l' when compounded with full, all, well, un, in dis :

All + together	Altogether
All + most	Almost
Well + come	Welcome
All + ready	Already
Un + till	Until
In + still	Instil
Dis + till	Distil

9. The silent 'e' is not dropped when :

(a) Suffix 'ly' is added

False + ly	Falsely
Safe + ly	Safely
Sure + ly	Surely

Exceptions :

Whole + ly	Wholly
True + ly	Truly
Due + ly	Duly

(b) 'e' is not dropped after 'c' or 'g' while adding suffixes 'able', 'ous' beginning with vowel.

Peace + able	Peaceable
Trace + able	Traceable
Service + able	Serviceable
Courage + ous	Courageous
Advantage + ous	Advantageous
Manage + able	Manageable
Marriage + able	Marriageable
Charge + able	Chargeable

(c) 'e' is not dropped when suffixes beginning with consonant are added such as **ful, less, hood, ly, ment, ness.**

hate + ful = hateful	use + less = useless
care + ful = careful	improve +ment = improvement
like + ness = likeness	state + hood = statehood
Extreme + ly = extremely	achieve + ment = achievement

Exception (1) :

Argue + ment = argument Awe + ful = awful

Exception (2) :

Final 'e' in the following words can be retained or removed.

like — likeable, likable
mile — mileage, milage
judge — judgement, judgment
abridge — abridgement, abridgment
acknowledge — acknowledgement, acknowledgment

10. The silent 'e' is dropped while adding :

(a) suffixes such as 'ing, able, ary, ous'.

rove + ing = roving
care + ing = caring
age + ing = aging
value + able = valuable
note + able = notable
stare + ing = staring
advise + able = advisable
imagine + ary = imaginary
desire + ous = desirous
pore + ous = porous
fame + ous = famous
imagine + able = imaginable
love + able = lovable
move + able = movable

Exceptions : like + able = likeable

(b) silent 'e' is dropped while adding 'y' to a noun –

Stone + y = stony
Noise + y = noisy
Taste + y = tasty
Ice + y = icy

(c) The silent 'e' after consonant 't' is dropped when suffix 'tion' is added.

Pollute + tion = pollution
Frustrate + tion = frustration
Delete + tion = deletion
Deplete + tion =depletion

(d) 'e' is changed to 'i' in words 'CE' when 'ous' as suffix is added.

Vice + ous = vicious
Malice + ous = malicious
Space + ous = spacious
Grace + ous + gracious

(e) ee or oo are not dropped with suffixes 'able, ing, full'.

agree agreeable agreeing

foresee	foreseeable	foreseeing
woo		wooing
glee	gleeful	—

(f) Final 'c' is changed to 'ck' before ed, ing, er

Panic	panicked
Picnic	picnickers

11. Making plurals – Some pitfalls :

(a) The plural of a noun is usually made by adding 's' to it
homes, arms, boys, flames

Exceptions :

(b) Nouns ending in, o, kch, ch, ss end in 'es' when changed in plural forms:

wishes, switches, axes, asses, potatoes, tomatoes.

But add 's' only in abbreviated words ending in 'o' **photos, Pianos, dynamos.**

(c) When singular Nouns ending in 'f' or 'fe' are changed into plural add 'ves' in place 'of', 'f' or 'fe'.

Wife	Wives
Wolf	Wolves
Loaf	loaves
Thief	Thieves

Exception :

Handkerchief	handkerchiefs
chief	chiefs
cliff	cliffs
belief	beliefs

(d) When singular nouns ending in 'y' with a consonant before them are changed into plural 'y' changes into 'ies'.

Country	Countries
Lady	Ladies.

(e) Nouns ending in 'y' with a vowel word before them retain 'y' when 's' is added.

Joy	Joys
Day	days
Play	Plays
Monkey	Monkeys

12. As a part of spellings a student is supposed to be aware of the mute (silent) consonants e.g. :

(i) 'b' is silent in
subtle, debt, debtor, doubt.

(ii) 'd' is silent in
grudge, hedge, sledge, adjourn.

(iii) 'g' is silent in
malign, benigh, assign, sign.

(iv) 'h' is silent in
honour, hour, honest, honorary, exhaust.

(v) 'k' is silent in
knife, know, knee, knight.

(vi) 'l' is silent in
balm, talk, folk, alms, palm, calm, chalk.

(vii) 'n' is silent in
Solemn, autumn, hymn, column.

(viii) 'p' is silent in
pseudonym, Psychology, Corps, receipt.

(ix) 't' is silent in
often, whistle, hustle, debut, depot, hasten, fasten.

(x) 'w' is silent in
write, wrath, wring, wrong, wrap.

(xi) 'h' is silent in
daughter, draught, sight, right.

Some Most Likely Pitfalls for Spelling Learners

[A]

Aggregate
Adjacent
Autumn
Accumulate
Accrue
Absence
Ascetic
Agree, Agreeable, Agreement
Address
Achieve
Already
Assassin
Annihilate
Acquire
Apparatus
Admissible
Acreage
Abridgeable, Abridgement,
Allot, Allotment, Allotted, Allotting
Accessible
Adversary
Assist, Assistant
Acquitted, Acquitting
Accommodate, Accommodation
Assess, Assessment
Awful
Aggravate
Athlete, Athletic
Accede
Accomplish, Accomplishment
Adolescent
Acquaint
Abstinence, Abstinent
Appearance
Assassin, Assassination
Advantageous
Arguable, Arguing, Argument
Acceptable
Accelerate, Accelerator
Annual
Admitting
Abbreviate
Allegiance
Allure
Aggrieved
Arrangement.
Advisable, Advise, Adviser, Advising
Appall
Acquise
Apostle
Amateur

[B]

Bouquet
Beggar
Balloon
Banquet
Bequeath
Battalion
Bidding
Business
Biscuit
Bureaucracy
Besiege
Beginner, Beginning
Busying
Beseech
Breakable
Book keeper
Believable, Believe
Blamable, Blameworthy
Betrayed,
Besiege
Benefit, Beneficial, Benefited
Bony
Bureau
Beneficent

[C]

Ceiling
Coolly
Coercible
Caffeine
Colloquial
Commemorate
Challenge
Conscience, Conscientious
Cigarette
Credible
Collapsible
Celebrate
Canvass, Canvassing
Coming
Corroborate
Compatible
Contemptible
Commitment, Committed
Cancelled, Cancelling, Cancellation
Chagrined, Chagrining
Controlled
Conceit, Conceited
Conferred
Colossal
Cagey
Confectionery
Corruptible
Conscious
Convertible
Counterfeit
Counsel, Counselled
Collaborate
Conqueror
Changeable
Chauffer
Concede
Commendable
Connoisseur
Collectible
Courageous
Contractible
Concurred, Concurrence, Concurrent
Colonel
Committe

[D]

Discernible
Dispelling
Dissimilar
Dysentery
Deficient
Defendant
Deterred, Deterrence, Deterrent
Dependable, Dependance, Dependent
Despicable
Desperate
Descendant
Dissipate, Dissipation
Distil
Dictionary
Diffidence, Diffident
Drunkenness
Dispensable
Dungeon (Subterranean cell of Prisoners)
Demogogue (Political Agitator)
Deference,, Deferment
Deceit, Deceitful, Deceive, Deceiver, Deceiving

Difference, Different
Digestible
Discernible
Disheveled (Unkempt, Untidy)
Dismissible

[E]

Enmity
Etiquette
Expungeable
Erosion
Extravagance
Ecclesiastic
Embarrass
Exceed
Equilibrium
Exchangeable
Exhaustible
Enforceable
Erroneous
Elementary
Exaggerate
Echoes
Eligible
Existence, Existent
Efficient
Exhilarate, Exhilarating
Excusable
Ecstasy
Eighth

[F]

Fulfil
Fahrenheit
Fascinate
Fierce
Feign (Pretend)
Freight
Forcible

[G]

Glamour
Grammar
Goddess
Grotesque
Guarantee
Gaiety, Gaily
Gauge
Grief, Grieve, Grievous
Glamorous
Gorgeous

[H]

Hierarchy
Harass, Harassment
Hypocrisy
Hygiene
Heinous
Haemorrage

[I]

Inoculate
Inadmissible
Inference
Impeccable
Illiterate
Immaculate
Inventor
Incurring
Irrefutable
Innocuous
Install
Impressible
Interchangeable
Imposter
Infallible
Incorrigible
Insistence, Insistent
Impregnable
Idiosyncrasy
Irrevocable
Incredible
Intermittence, Intermittent
Innumerable
Irreparable, Irresistible
Incompatible
Irrelevant
Inadvertence, Inadvertent
Inedible

[K]

Kaleidoscopic

[L]

Likable (likeable)
Lodgment
Licentious
Livable
Luscious
Lovable
Lascivious
Legible
Licence
Languor
Leisure
Lieutenant

[M]

Miscellaneous
Munificent
Moustache
Martyr
Movable
Mischievous
Manoeuvre
Millionaire
Mosquitoes
Motto, Mottoes
Mimicked, Mimicking.
Millennium
Maintain, Maintenance
Manageable
Magnificient

[N]

Noticeable
Niece
Neigh
News-stand
Ninth
Negligible

[O]

Omitted
Ostensible
Obsession, Obsessive
Opulence, Opulent,
Omniscience, Omniscient
Oscillate, Oscillation, Oscillating
Occur, Occurred, Occurrence, Occurring
Obeisance
Offence

[P]

Pronunciation
Perishable
Permissible
Possible
Peaceable
Provable
Panicked, Panicking, Panicky
Profession
Perceivable, Perceive
Privilege
Potatoes
Professor
Prefer, Preference, Preferred
Perseverance, Persistence, Persistent
Prohibited
Procedure
Portable
Precede, Preceding, Predecessor
Producible
Playwright
Possess, Possession
Plebeian
Profecient
Parallel
Phenomena
Pursue, Pursuit
Patrolling
Pretence
Proceed

[R]

Renaissance
Reversible
Recede
Repellent
Resuscitate
Regretted, Regretting
Relevance, Relevant
Relief, Relieve
Repentance, Repentant
Replaceable
Refer, Reference, Referred

Receipt, Receive, Receiver
Reparable
Reconnaissance

[S]

Sponsor
Secretary
Sufficient
Splendour
Spontaneity
Succumb
Shield
Sergeant
Stationary
Skill, Skilful
Satellite
Siege (beleaguer)
Salable
Severity
Secede
Souvenir
Seismic
Serviceable
Suppress, Suppressible
Stationery
Supersede
Shriek
Sustenance
Stubborn, Stubborness
Sovereign, Sovereignty
Secondary
Seize, Seizure
Succeed
Subsistence
Sizable
Suddenness
Superintendence, Superintendent
Scintillate, Scintillation, Scintillating
Salvageable
Susceptible
Sacrilege, Sacrilegious
Surfeit
Sleight
Strength

[T]

Travelled
Titillate
Tariff
Traffic, Trafficked, Trafficker
Traceable
Tangible
Threshold
Truly
Transmissible
Tranquillity
Trespass, Trespasser
Tyrannical, Tyrannize, Tyranny
Twelfth

[U]

Undiscernibly
Utterance
Until
Unmistakable, Unmistakably
Unparalleled
Usable, Using

[V]

Vacuous
Vicissitude
Vaccination
Verandha
Vigor, Vigorous
Vacuum
Value, Valuable
Vacillate, Vacillation, Vace
Vicious

[W]

Wintry
Wield
Weigh, Weight
Woollen, woolly
Welfare
Weird
Wholly
Welcome

Chapter

5 Contractions

What is a Contraction?

Contraction is the short form of a word. It is formed by combining two words into one.

Forms of Contractions :

The two words are usually contracted as follows:

(i) Subject + auxiliary verb.

(ii) Auxiliary verb + not

1. Subject (Noun and Pronoun) and Auxiliary verb :

Auxiliary Verbs are

(a) To be – is, am, are, was, were

(b) To do – do, did

(c) To have –have, had

(d) Modal auxiliaries :

Will, shall, can, Could, may, might, should, must

The contraction of subject + Auxiliary is made by dropping the beginning of the auxiliary verb. The dropped letter is shown by an apostraphe.

I am	I'm
I have	I've
I will/Shall	I'll
Moni has	Moni's
Moni is	Moni's

2. Auxiliary verb + not :

This type of contraction is formed by dropping 'O' the dropped letter is shown by an apostrophe.

are not	aren't
was not	wasn't
am not	arent't

Since "amn't is wrong, use 'aren't for this wrong expression.

Note : In negative verb phrases with "be, have, will, shall, would and should." contractions may be used in two forms.

She's not or she isn't

He'll not or he won't

3. The common contractions are as follows :

Singular : Pronoun + Auxiliary verb

I am	I'm
I have	I've
I will/Shall	I'll
I would, should, had	I'd
You are	You're
You have	You've
You will	You'll
You would, you had	You'd
She, He is/has	She's /He's
She, He will	She'll/He'll
It is, has	It's
It will	It'll
Plural : Pronoun + auxiliary verb	
We are	We're
We have	We've
We will	We'll
We would, should had	We'd
They are	They're
They have	They've
They will	They'll
They would/should had	They'd

4. Noun + Auxiliary Verbs :

(i) Mohan is	Mohan's
(ii) Mohan has	Mohan's

The following contractions are not used with **nouns**

Kim should, would, had	Kim'd
Kim will	Kim'll

5. Auxiliary verbs +not :

am + not (amn't is not used as contraction form)

Is not	Isn't
Are not	aren't
Was not	Wasn't
Were not	Weren't
Do not	Don't
Does not	Doesn't
Did not	Didn't
Have not	Haven't
Has not	Hasn't
Had not	Hadn't
Will not	won't

Shall not	shan't
May not	Mayn't
Might not	Mightn't
Must not	musn't
Ought not	oughtn't
Need not	needn't
Would not	Wouldn't
Should not	Shouldn't
Cannot	Can't
Could not	Couldn't
Dare not	Daren't

6. Some of the common contractions :

Here is	here's
There is	there's
That is	that's
That will	that'll
How is	how's
What is	what's
Who is	who's
What will	what'll
Who will	who 'll
Who would	who'd

❑

ANSWERS

PART-D

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

1. Narration

Practice Exercise-1

1. I told him that I would not go there the next day.
2. The clerk told me that he would not attend the office the next day.
3. Hari told them that Mohan had not slept there the previous day.
4. Gita asked Rita if she would help her in the work.
5. Sadhna asked me if I could go with her to the station.
6. Her father asked me whether I knew where Prem was.
7. I asked him if he did not know that I was his friend.
8. Ram asked me why I did not go home.
9. He asked me how my father was.
10. He ordered her to go away from there at once.
11. The teacher advised the boys to work hard.
12. The doctor advised the patient not to eat much to escape from disease.
13. The servant requested him to grant him leave for two days.
14. He said that they should wait for their friends.

Or

He told me that we should wait for our friends.

15. He shouted to me to let him go.

Or

He shouted to me that he might be allowed to go.

16. The spectators applauded them saying that they had done well.
17. The captain exclaimed wity joy that they had won the match.
18. The doctor exclaimed with sorrow that the poor man was no more.
19. The teacher expressed regret that it was a great pity that I had not followed his advice.
20. Mohan exclaimed with sorrow that it was a very bloody deed he had done.
21. She exclaimed with wonder that the rose was very beautiful.
22. She exclaimed with pity that he was a very lazy fellow.
23. He prayed that God might pardon him.

24. Ram wished that his friend might succeed in the examination.
25. They prayed that their Prime Minister might live long.
26. The minister exclaimed with sorrow that the earthquake was a terrible disaster.
27. The teacher threatened/warned the boy to report the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
28. (a) I told her to light the lamp when it got dark.
    (b) I told her that when it got dark she should light the lamp.
29. She proposed that the children went out for a nice long walk.
30. The patient pleaded with the doctor to tell her how much time she had.

Practice Exercise-2

1. He tells me that he has never been to my house and therefore, he will go with me.
2. He told me that she left Ahmedabad after he had gone.
3. But she told him that he was a fool because he did not understand her.
4. Sohan told me that he was my friend and therefore, he would never desert me.
5. The teacher asked Vina what her name was and where she came from.
6. My friend told Rita that she was going out and asked her if she would go along with her.
7. Rahul asked me where I was going and if he could accompany me.
8. The teacher told the boys that if they wanted to pass, they should work hard.
9. The teacher asked the boys why they were not working hard, if they wanted to pass.
10. (a) The teacher adivsed the boys to work hard, if they wanted to pass.
    (b) The teacher told the boys that if they wanted to pass they should work hard.
11. The weary traveller asked my father if he would give him lodging for one night. My father replied that he would because he was very welcome.
12. The Governor of the town asked the slave how the hungry lion had forgotten his nature. To this the slave replied that very lion which was standing before him had been his friend in the woods.
13. Seema asked Arnav if he would go to hospital that day. Arnav replied that he would not. Then Seema asked him why he would not. Arnav replied that he would not go because he was feeling better.
14. The teacher asked Rita if she had finished her work the previous day. Rita replied respectfully that she had not because her mother had been ill.
15. The teacher told the boys that if they came before shcool the next day, he would explain it. The boys assured him respectfully that they would do as he said.
16. His master ordered the servant to go down to the bazar and bring him some oil and lump of ice.
17. Rameshwar told his teacher respectfully that he had not done his work as he had been ill.
18. Father asked Mohit lovingly why he was sad that day.
19. Father asked Mohit to bring him a glass of water.

20. Addressing him as his son he told him that his daughter would marry the strongest and greatest person and there was no one stronger and greater than he. So he asked him if he would accept her as his wife.
21. Calling the thief rascal the policeman asked him how he could dare do it and if he had known the punishment of his crime.
22. The girl asked the young man who he was and what he wanted with her. Further she told him that she had never seen him before and requested him to take his seat.
23. A farmer took his sons to the field and told them that there was a treasure hidden there in the earth. He advised them to share to amongst them, if they found it.
24. The student asked the teacher respectfully if he might come in although he was late that day. The teacher replied that he might but reminded him that that was not his first chance of getting late.
25. The woman told the king that all travellers were welcome for the sake of one. The king asked the woman who that one was for whose sake she made all travellers welcome. To this the old woman replied that it was their, lawful king, Robert the Bruce.
26. The fox flattered the crow saying that he was very pretty, and told him that she was sure that so beautiful a bird must have a beautiful voice. she cheered him up lovingly and asked him if he would not sing a few notes for her.
27. Ram thanked me for all my help (saying that) and said that he could not have finished the work without my help.
28. He reprimanded the shopkeeper saying that he was a fool because he had done the opposite of what he had desired him to do. He informed him that instead of changing the perfume he had changed the shaving cream.
29. Nelson called Hardy near him and told him that he was a dead man and he was going fast because it would be all over with him soon. So he requested Hardy to let his dear lady have his hair and other things belonging to him.
30. A young prince once asked a lady how it was that she was so fascinting. She felt Shy and left the room saying that beauty lay in eyes of a beholder.
31. He admitted that he had broken the slate.
32. He denied that he had done it.
33. The candidate assured the boss of his best services.
34. The doctor hoped that the patient was better then.
35. Juliet suggested to Arnav that they should go swimming since at was fine.
36. They exclaimed that the hill was very steep and they were tired.
37. He advised his son to be neither a borrower nor a lender.
38. The master scolded his servant for disturbing him and ordered him to go away.
39. Shaurya asked Sameer to be up as it was no use wasting time. But Sameer replied that he had no work to do that day.
40. The chauffer told his master repectfully that the ladies were waiting outside and they were getting impatient.
41. Mohan's father said that Mohan had made the mess and that he was to clear it.
42. I declared that Mohan might do his worst, he could not harm me.
43. Jaya suggested giving a party (to give a party) but her husband opposed the idea.

2. Synthesis

Part-I

Practice Exercise-1

1. I do not know whether he will come.
2. I cannot say where he is going.
3. The verdict of the bench was that he was not guilty.
4. There is no doubt that he will do it.
5. I am sure that he is correct.
6. (a) His statement was that you gave him stolen money./
   (b) That you gave him stolen money was his statement.
7. I am not certain if he is guilty.
8. I do not know who arrived late at night.
9. I do not believe in what he said to me.
10. Nobody informed me when my mother went to temple in the evening.
11. Everybody doubts if he will pass.
12. (a) This is my belief that he will cheat you.
    (b) That he will cheat you is my belief.
13. I do not know when my father will come here.
14. Please tell me where you have put my purse.
15. Are you listening to what I am saying.
16. I cannot tell why he came late.
17. The news that he died last night is wrong.
18. He confessed that he had committed murder.
19. It was expected that he would arrive soon.
20. It is believed that Netaji died in air crash.
21. I cannot say whether/if she is a doctor.
22. All depends on what your attitude to life is.
23. My son is anxious to learn how one can travel to space.
24. The fact is that he is a coward.
25. She declared her intention that she would not marry the following year.
26. His wife cannot tell how much money he wasted.
27. I cannot rely on what she has promised to me.
28. The police are trying to inquire when she left the party.
29. She told me the fact that her father would not allow her to go abroad.
30. Our expectation was that we would succeed.
31. The news that she has returned from Chennai is not correct.

32. She confessed that she had gone to Delhi the previous night.
33. My sister kept on asking when I would come back from Indore.
34. The verdict of the Judges that he is guilty has been challenged.
35. I can not tell when she came in the morning.
36. The rumour that he died last night is baseless.
37. Everyone wonders how she completed this work.
38. It is certain that she will arrive today.
39. I heard him telling his mother that he was leaving for America very soon.
40. (a) It cannot be confirmed whether he has married.
    (b) Whether he has married cannot be confirmed.

Practice Exercise-2

1. Shakespeare who was a great dramatist is the author of a number of plays.
2, Please show me the place where you have put my purse.
3. This is the college where I studied.
4. It was ten o'clock when my father left for office.
5. Can you tell me the reason why you are wasting time?
6. The boy whom the teacher gave a prize was present there.
7. I shall give you the same pen that I bought.
8. I was the first man who heard his name on the radio.
9. They were sitting under a tree the shade of which was very cool.
10. I shall go by the Taj express which goes to Agra direct.
11. They are reading a book which is very rare.
12. The news that he gave yesterday is true.
13. Yesterday I bought a book which is very cheap.
14. They committed a mistake which was quite serious.
15. You cannot believe such a person as is dishonest.
16. We undertook a journey to Gwalior which was tiring.
17. A soldier who was wounded was lying in the field.
18. The dog felled the candle which was burning.
19. Those who are healthy do not need a doctor.
20. The man who was wounded in accident died last night.
21. The magic ball which was meant for the king was eaten by the jester.
22. Seema was the last person who left for home.
23. This is a class room which is not the place to play.
24. He has a large family whom he has to educate.
25. He has some bills which he must pay in cash.
26. I have no friend whom I can talk to.
27. Childhood is a time when one can teach good habits to children.
28. I know the reason why he could not succeed.

29. The time when he will came tomorrow is not certain.
30. Nobody appreciated the way in which she behaved at the party.
31. I was informed of the place where he was living.
32. I remember very well the year when he retired.
33. You can have anything that you like.
34. The students who hail from Bihar are very hard working.
35. The girl who has long hair is a cousin of my wife.
36. I never visit any of my uncles that reside in Manekshaw Enclave.
37. The news which the voice of America broadcast is true.
38. The players whom the president awarded cash prize were present at the function.
39. The good deeds which men do in their lives live after them.
40. Kabir who was a famous poet wrote spiritual poetry.

Practice Exercise-3

1. He ran so quickly that he overtook everybody.
2. As you always disturb me, I cannot work.
3. When I had left office, my boss called me.
4. When the members of the committee arrived, the conference started.
5. You must hurry lest you should miss the train.
6. I could not go out because it was very sultry noon.
7. As soon as I left office, the rain started.
8. He will not leave at night, lest he should be robbed.
9. He came to me so that I might help him.
10. When he found out his mistake, he repented very much.
11. If you sleep outside, you will be ill.
12. When I reached the station, the train had left.
13. Since you left India, You have not written any letter.
14. The old man walks as fast as a young person.
15. (a) Rich as he is, he is unhappy.
    (b) Though he is rich, he is unhappy.
16. If you help others, God will help you.
17. While they were playing in the garden, it started raining.
18. The work was stopped because no money was given to me.
19. The patient grew so weak that he died last night.
20. Since his brother died, he has been very poor.
21. Everybody will admire him if he is hard working.
22. If you go out, You will catch cold.
23. Although he was sick yet he went out.
24. He was cremated where he settled after his retirement.
25. Though he is admired by everybody, he is not proud.

26. While he was sitting on the grass, a snake bit him.
27. She waited for her friend till she arrived.
28. If she had not come late, she would have enjoyed music.
29. If you want to go to Malabar Hills, bring money with you.
30. I shall go where my cousin works.
31. Water is so cold that no one can drink it.
32. He employed a watchman so that he might be safe.
33. If they had not helped me, I would not have got success.
34. If I had given you money, I would have been glad.
35. You may go wherever you like.
36. He did not stop working until he achieved success.
37. As soon as the signal was given, the train started.
38. You can stay here if you wish.
39. No other member in her family is as beautiful as she is.
40. Let us wait till the train stops.
41. If I make a promise, I stick to it.
42. He is working hard so that he may join Army.
43. He fled lest he should be caught.
44. Please do not go until I get money for you.
45. Everybody will admire you on condition that you are honest.
46. If he had received help in time, he would not have died from burns.
47. The more he gets, the more he works.
48. Do not get into the train until it stops.
49. If it rains, the schools may be closed.
50. We shall leave for Shimla if weather permits.
51. I should be glad if I could help your husband.
52. If he had not worked hard, he would have failed.
53. I shall be glad if I can help you in getting a job.
54. I shall treat her as she treated me.
55. My younger sister behaves as if she were an elder sister.
56. She wrote an essay as well as she could.
57. She writes better than she speaks.
58. She is more kind than wise.
59. He spends as if he were a rich person.
60. The candidates stayed in the hall till the supervisor departed.
61. She is as wise as her mother is.
62. He did the work as I advised him.
63. He will go by his own car lest he should get late.
64. The patient grew so weak that he died at last.

Part-II

Practice Exercise-1

(a) By using Infinitive :

1. He is too weak to run.
2. I want a knife to peel the vegetables.
3. He had a large family to support.
4. She has no pen to write a cheque.
5. He was glad to hear of my success.
6. He is believed to have died from heart attack.
7. I expect to pass next year.
8. She is reported to have married lately.

(b) By using Participle :

1. Drawing the sword he attacked the enemy.
2. Having no teeth he could not eat nuts.
3. Returning home I saw a black dog.
4. Having resolved firmly he never smoked.
5. Having completed the letter she posted it.
6. Disappointed he gave up the job.
7. Turning to the right you will find my house.
8. Tired of riding she went to bed.
9. Hearing no answer we rang the bell again.
10. Having been stabbed Ceaser died from the wounds.

(c) By using Nominative Absolute:

1. The sun having risen, fog disappeared.
2. Archna being late, the teacher punished her.
3. The letter having been written, I posted it soon.
4. The time being over, we handed over the note books.
5. It being cloudly, we went on picnic.
6. The rain being scanty this year, sugar is dear in the market.
7. His uncle having died, he inherited the property.
8. Despite his father being rich, she was not proud.
9. The Ganga being our sacred river, we should keep it clean.

(d) By using preposition before Gerund or Noun:

1. He was justified in killing his enemy.
2. She insisted on going to the market.
3. He won praise for saving the life of the prince.
4. We were informed of the absence of the teacher.

5. The girl with long hair is the cousin of my wife.
6. There is no doubt about his stealing my book.
7. He is fond of reading comics.
8. I heard of his being wounded.
9. We all were happy at the safe return of all.
10. I paid huge amount for a new house.

(e) By using Noun or Phrase in Apposition:

1. Suniti, the daughter of a doctor, stood first in the college.
2. Mr. Sinha, an engineer, works in the Hydel department.
3. Harsh, a famous poet, writes love poetry.
4. Nanda, a great bulider, has built a number of apartments.
5. He bought a very costly picture, a work by a most famous artist of India.

(f) By use of Adverbs or Adverbial phrase:

1. He replied back in no time.
2. He saved money wisely.
3. I escaped from the den of the gangsters luckily.
4. I got help from my friends unexpectedly.
5. I shall return tonight before long.
6. Undoubtely, I shall get through the examination.
7. She went to college hurriedly.
8. She will certainly go to the states next year.

(g) By using 'Adjective' or 'And':

1. I am buying a very costly house next week.
2. A young girl entered the room.
3. She was kind and generous.
4. Why are you nervous and sad?

Practice Exercise-2

1. (a) The student admitted to have been absent.
   (b) The student admitted his absence.
2. I am not aware of his profession.
3. I don't know his name.
4. I cannot recall his residence.
5. I have no faith in her promise to help me.
6. (a) Her success is certain.
   (b) She will certainly succeed.
7. My faith in his success is firm.
8. Your absence makes the offence worse.
9. She is sure of securing high marks.

10. She persisted in countinuing her study.
11. My father insisted on my joining army.
12. We do not know the reason of her leaving the party suddenly.
13. The soldiers were told the manner of climbing the hill.
14. I expect him to be honest.
15. We hope to be invited.
16. He denied to have sold spurious drugs to the customers.
17. She has certainly two sons.
18. She is expected to qualify Entrance Examination.
19. She appears to be honest.
20. Netaji is believed to have died in air crash.
21. He is alleged to have stolen his brother's jewellery.
22. She is likely to come late.
23. He will certainly be punished tomorrow.
24. He is sure to succeed.
25. Undoubtedly, she will recover from illness.

Practice Exercise-3

1. Do you know the reason of her arrival earlier?
2. Kabir, a famous poet, was a weaver.
3. I bought a quite large house last year.
4. We came across a soldier in trouble.
5. (a) He invented a stitching machine.
   (b) He invented a machine used for stitching.
6. (a) Mr. Verma, our teacher, is loved by everybody.
   (b) Everybody loves Mr. Verma, our teacher.
7. The class room is not a place to play.
8. We committed a quite serious mistake.
9. Do you know the time of your father's departure in the morning?
10. The boys, living near my house, are honest.
11. The tired man could not do work well.
12. We undertook a tiring journey.
13. I was the first man to hear his name on the radio.
14. He has a large family to educate.
15. He has some bills to pay.
16. They admitted the offence committed by them last night.
17. You cannot believe a dishonest person.
18. We undertook a tiring journey to Gwalior.
19. In the street we saw a beggar begging from door to door.
20. The man wounded in an accident died last night.
21. The police discovered the weapon used to kill the victim.

22. Air, the cheapest thing in the world, is the first thing in life.
23. Childhood is the time to learn good habits.
24. I know the reason of his failure.
25. The time of his arrival has been announced.
26. I remember very well the year of his retirement.
27. These students hailing from Bihar are very hard working.
28. The offence she committed intentionally is unpardonable.
29. The good deeds done by men in life live after them.
30. Malini repaid the debt incurred by her father.

Practice Exercise-4

1. After having passed high school examination, I got a job.
2. (a) He takes dinner early to avoid sickness.
   (b) He takes dinner early so as not to get sick.
3. Seeing the police, the thief fled immediately.
4. While sitting on the grass, he was bitten by a snake.
5. Being late, he was punished.
6. The weather being unpleasant, we did not go out.
7. Being insulted, she left the room.
8. Being over powered by the enemy, he was stabbed.
9. Inspite of possessing huge wealth, he is not happy.
10. By going out, you will catch cold.
11. Without working hard you will fail.
12. Without examining the paper carefully, you can not give your opinion.
13. He is too lazy to be a player.
14. Depending on the weather, we may go tomorrow.
15. Every sunday he goes to Delhi to see his sick brother.
16. He is too weak to walk.
17. He did the work in accordance with my advice.
18. He is working hard to join the army.
19. He is kind enough to help everybody.
20. I shall leave the room with your permission.
21. The work was done in my presence.
22. He is honest enough not to deceive you.
23. Turning to right you will see a tall building.
24. While going to school, he was caught in the rain.
25. Since retirement, his father has been idle.
26. He drove fast enough to overtake us.
27. Inspite of success in life he is humble.
28. He is too clever not to see through your tricks.
29. Your sorrow is too deep for tears.
30. This house is so small for me.

Practice Exercise-5

1. Entering the Hall, she went straight to the manager.
2. Archna lost her very costly purse containing a lot of cash.
3. He was punished for coming late.
4. Small families are certainly not an advantage now.
5. Drinking is injurious to health.
6. He has some new clothes in the box.
7. He was not afraid of telling a lie.
8. Reaching Shimla, we went to our hotel.
9. Yesterday my brother and Rohan went to Chandigarh.
10. I could notice her cleverness.
11. It being very hot, I did not go out.
12. The train being late, I reached home late.
13. My father did not wisely sell the house.
14. While walking in the garden, they enjoyed themselves.
15. Inspite of having no money, Rohit succeeded in his aim.
16. You will pass by working hard.
17. The speech having ended, we went for dinner.
18. He had no house to sell.
19. He was arrested for firing at his friend.
20. She earns a lot of money by running a beauty parlour.
21. Ashoka a great emperor became compassionate after the battle of Kalinga.
22. Walking in the garden, he saw a beggar unable to walk.
23. Arriving at the party, he was pleased to meet all of his friends.
24. We come to the institute to study English.
25. Driving Deepa heard Reena humming a song.
26. Inspite of being threatened, I am not afraid of speaking the truth.
27. He fired at his enemy in dark to kill him.
28. I was glad to be told that he was successful.
29. The child was punished for breaking the tinted pane while playing cricket.
30. We were delighted to see him buying mangoes.

Part-III

Practice Exercise-1

1. He is intelligent but careless.
2. He can succeed but he will not work hard.
3. Morning walk is a good exercise, therefore, everybody should walk.
4. He came late otherwise, he would have enjoyed music.

5. Walk fast and you will catch bus.
6. Wait here otherwise, he will not meet you.
7. The bus was slow, so he reached late.
8. You are a liar and so is your brother.
9. She is both smart and honest.
10. Neither be a borrower nor be a lender.
11. You may be either correct or wrong.
12. She comes on foot so she is often late.
13. Stand outside or come in.
14. Weather was not fair yet we went on picnic.
15. She came and consoled me.

Practice Exercise-2

1. She came late, so she was punished.
2. It is very cold out side, therefore I can not go.
3. She is intelligent but dishonest.
4. She was ill yet she come.
5. Work hard or you will fail.
6. Be neither angry nor rash.
7. Besides being dishonest he is a fool.
8. (a) He is handsome as well as smart.
   (b) He is handsome and smart too.
9. He is intelligent but careless.
10. He can succeed but he will not work hard.
11. Morning walk is good exercise, therefore everybody should walk.
12. He came late otherwis. he would have got the bus.
13. Walk fast and you will catch bus.
14. Wait here otherwise, he will not meet you.
15. The bus was slow, so he reached late.
16. You play piano and so does your brother.
17. She is not only obedient but also polite.
18. Be neither a borrower not a lender
19. Richa cannot sing not can Esha.
20. Everything decays but truth survives.
21. He will pass and I doubt it.
22. I went to Indore and there I spent a few days.
23. I requested her to lend me some money but she refused.
24. Come by car and we shall take you to temple.
25. He took bath and he put on new clothes.
26. He fell off the stairs and so he died from injuries.
27. One word more and I shall kill you.

28. Either you write or I must write to father.
29. He wants to pass and so he is working hard.
30. (a) Neither Sona nor her husband can sing.
(b) Sona cannot sing and her husband can not sing either.
(c) Sona cannot sing and neither can her husband.

3. Transformation

Part-I

Practice Exercise-1 (a)

1. He confessed that he was guilty.
2. All depends on what his future is.
3. How old he is, is not known.
4. Speak what the truth is.
5. The fact that he was silent proved his complicity in the crime.
6. It appears that he is running temperature.
7. He denied that he had murdered.
8. It is believed that he is honest.
9. She informed me that she had arrived.
10. The news that he died is wrong.
11. It is belived that subhash Chandra Bose died in Japan.
12. I have already heard what he has said.
13. It is sure that he has been punished.
14. It is expected that he will give me money.
15. Mohit may do what he likes.
16. I wish that you may be successful in life.
17. He wishes that he should be a very rich person.
18. There is no truth in what he says.
19. (a) Where he is hiding is likely to be discovered very soon.
(b) It is likely that his place of hiding will be discovered very soon.
20. We believe that the news is true.
21. That you are innocent is beyond any doubt.
22. I have long doubted if he is honest.
23. I have long suspected that he is guilty.
24. It is likely that his father will give him punishment.
25. (a) It is high time that I should leave India.
(b) It is high time I left India.
26. That he will resign is out of the question.

Practice Exercise-1 (b)

1. I have long suspected that he is a thief.
2. The news that he has arrived has not been intimated.
3. Her remarks that I had failed were disgusting.
4. What is true is eternal.
5. It is expected that she will learn good manners.
6. Pay heed to what I have instructed.
7. She has a desire that she should learn swimming.
8. Her wish is that she should do social work in future.
9. It is reported that he has lost his reputation.
10. I kept on wondering if she would succeed.
11. Everybody is responsible for what he does.
12. That he will fall is certain.
13. She did not inform me what she was.
14. Nobody knows where he is.
15. She jumped at what I offered her.

Practice Exercise-2 (a)

1. Yesterday I bought a pen which is very cheap.
2. I saw a beggar who was begging from door to door.
3. This is the village where I was born.
4. Do you know the reason why he has failed?
5. The Value of exercise that we take is great.
6. The offence which he committed is not pardonabel.
7. They come across the students who were smoking by the road side.
8. A man who is tired, cannot work well.
9. (a) It is not the manner which you use to please your boss.
   (b) It is not the manner how you please your boss.
10. He gave me money which I could spend.
11. The pen which is given by him is very cheap.
12. I have no friend whom I can talk to.
13. He was the last man who arrived at the party.
14. He gave me a news that was fake.
15. How can you believe a person who is dishonest.

Practice Exercise-2 (b)

1. We committed a mistake which was quite serious.
2. They found a piece of diamond which is rare.
3. We undertook a journey which was quite tiring.
4. The man who was tired could not do work well.

5. The dog felled the candle which was burning.
6. The murder which he committed ruined his life.
7. He invented a machine which is used for stitching.
8. He saw a candle which was burning brightly.
9. This is a class room which is not the place to play.
10. He has a large family whom he has to educate.
11. He was the last man who attended the funeral.
12. Do you know the time when your father went.
13. Do you knlow the reason why she arrived earlier.
14. No body appreciated the way in which she behaved at the party.
15. I was informed of the place where he was living.
16. Kabir, who was a weaver, was a famous poet.
17. Everybody loves Mr. Verma who is our teacher.
18. The boys who live near my house are honest.
19. The place where the leader was cremated was thronged with people.
20. She told me the reason why she was late.
21. Shakespear, who was a great dramatist, wrote a number of plays.
22. The girl who has long hair is a cousin of my wife.
23. They live just near the by pass which is on the outskirts of the city.
24. The players whom the President awardeed cash prize were present at the function.
25. The offence which they committed intentionally is unpardonable.
26. I paid the debt which my father incurred.

Practice Exercise-3

1. Although he is experienced, he is not efficient.
2. Unless he works hard he cannot succeed.
3. When he was scolded, he left the room.
4. When the signal was given, the train started.
5. I shall be very glad if I help him.
6. He is so simple that he cannot win the game.
7. As he did mischief, he was punished.
8. The work was done, When I was present.
9. Though he is wealthy, he is not respected.
10. You must wait here till your father arrives.
11. Although he is poor yet he is honest.
12. Do it as best as you can.
13. Nobody must expect to become rich unless he works hard.
14. My heart is so full that I cannot utter a word.
15. He borrowed money from the bank so that he might continue his higher study.
16. She is undergoing slimming treatment because she is very fat.

17. The cat is swifter than the tiger.
18. I am thankful to you because you helped my brother.
19. If he had not got timely help, he would have died from burns.
20. She is so kind that she helps everybody.
21. He did not stop working until he got success.
22. They were afraid lest they should be caught in the shower.
23. You must act as the rules say.
24. He was promoted because he was very capable.
25. We shall leave for Shimla if weather permits.
26. Water is so hot that no one can drink it.
27. If all is well, I shall meet her parents today.
28. I shall be glad if I am invited.
29. I would be glad if I were there.
30. I would have been glad if I had been there.
31. Your behaviour was so bad that the guests could not bear it.
32. She is so good that I am no match for her.
33. He was so quick that he could overtake me.
34. As it was a junk food, we did not take it.
35. If we had not been poor, we would have been a happy family.

Part-II

Practice Exercise-1 (a)

1. Her dishonesty is much regretted.
2. He admitted his enemy's generosity.
3. I know the residence of your brother.
4. You must pay heed to the words of your officers.
5. Never say anything wrong.
6. We believe in God's existence.
7. I expect him to pass.
8. Unfortunately he died young.
9. He asked me the reason for giving money to his brother.
10. He confessed meeting her last night.
    He confussed to have met her last night.
    He confessed having met her last night.
11. I agreed to teach him.
12. I informed him of her departure.
13. He appears to have been scolded by his father.
14. I ordered him to leave the room at once.
15. People are certain of his honesty.

Practice Exercise-1 (b)

1. He confessed his guilt.
2. I do not care for his remarks.
3. Mohit may do any thing.
4. I have long doubted his honesty.
5. The rumour of his death is baseless.
6. His age is not known.
7. Her statement is disgusting.
8. His silecne proved his complicity in the crime.
9. He denied to have murdered.
10. She appears to be absent today.
11. She was alleged to have abused him.
12. She wanted to know his name.
13. My hope is to earn a lot of money.
14. He is sure to have been punished.
15. He is expected to give me money.
16. All depends on his future.
17. I don't believe in his statement.
18. I agreed to his proposal.

Practice Exercise-2 (a)

1. (a) He is not a trust worthy man.
   (b) He is not a man to be trusted.
2. A careless student cannot succeed.
3. He is not a man to cheat anyone.
4. He has a large house to live in.
5. They made a false statement.
6. You can have anything of your choice.
7. Barking dogs seldom bite.
8. I know the reason of his failure.
9. Milton, a famous poet, wrote 'Paradise Lost'.
10. The train connecting New Delhi is late.
11. Childhood is a time to learn good habits.
12. The wounded man died last night.
13. Healthy people do not need a doctor.
14. Good deeds done by a man live after him.
15. The place of cremation of the leader was thronged with people.

Practice Exercise-2 (b)

1. Yesterday I bought a very cheap book.
2. You cannot believe a dishonest person.

3. The hard working persons succeed in life.
4. A wounded soldier was lying in the field.
5. The tired players could not perform well.
6. The monster proud of his power was defeated by Hercules.
7. In the street we saw a beggar begging from door to door.
8. The man wounded in the accident died last night.
9. The police discovered the weapon used to kill the victim.
10. The magic ball meant for the king was eaten by the jester.
11. Seema was the last person to leave for home.
12. My uncle was the first man to hear her name on the radio.
13. He has some bills to pay in cash.
14. I have no friend to talk to.
15. Childhood is a time to teach good habits to children.
16. The time of his arrival tomorrow is not certain.
17. All of us were told the reason of his becoming rich suddenly.
18. I remember very well the year of his retirement.
19. The residents of our colony were shouting for justice.
20. Rathore our captain, scored fifty runs.
21. Edison, a great scientist, invented electricity.
22. We visited the Taj, a unique building.
23. I shall travel by the Taj Express going to Agra direct.
24. The students hailing from Bihar are very hard working.
25. Tomorrow I will board a train connecting Udaipur.
26. The news broadcast by the Voice of America is true.
27. I met a poet already known to me.
28. Mr. Gupta will buy the house built by me only last year.
29. The book lost by me yesterday has been found out.
30. Those living in glass houses should not throw stones at others.

Practice Exercise-3

1. He did in accordance with my wish.
2. We get up in the morning.
3. After having finished our work, we went home.
4. Seeing me, he ran away.
5. Walking in the garden she was addressed by a stranger.
6. He is kind enough to help everybody.
7. We went home after the arrival of the teacher.
8. He wrote fast to the best of his ability.
9. Without being threatened, he will not return money.
10. I succeeded beyond my expectations.

11. On being found out, the thief was arrested.
12. Despite being punished, she was not ashamed.
13. You can talk to your liking.
14. Inspite of being poor, he is honest.
15. Despite being honest, he is not hard working.
16. But for their help, I would not have gained success.
17. He ran fast to catch taxi.
18. On account of running fast, she was declared first by the teacher.
19. He being poor, we will help him.
20. God willing, you will succeed.
21. I make a promise to stick to it.
22. He was complimented because of his success.
23. He has come to Chandigarh to be treated by capable doctors.
24. It being fine we left for picnic.
25. While watching TV they were visited by their friends.
26. Crossing the road she was knocked down by a scooter.
27. Sonia is too slow for a good tennis player.
28. She is so clever that she can see through your tricks.
29. Her sorrow is too deep for tears.
30. He will stick to his job so as to escape starvation.
31. The signal having been given the train started.
32. I have not had any rest since my arrival in Chennai.
33. No money having been given to me the project was not launched.
34. The house is too small for me.
35. The weather being very pleasant we went on a long drive.

Part-III

Practice Exercise-1

1. You permit me and I shall leave the room.
2. He is a man of knowledge but he is a fool.
3. He committed a fault so he was punished.
4. He is wealthy but he is not respected.
5. He worked hard and secured high percentage of marks.
6. He returned and we asked him many questions.
7. He teaches Mathematics and Hindi also.
8. You sent me money so I am thankful to you.
9. He is not only rich but also learned.
10. He did not accept my request but left Jhansi.
11. He was sitting in the drawing room and watching T.V.

12. He had many contacts but never used unfair means.
13. He must admit his fault otherwise he will be punished.
14. He must work hard and will secure high percentage of marks.
15. He was dismissed for he embezzled money.
16. The weather was very fine so we left for swimming.
17. He will die and his son will inherit the property.
18. He was ignorant so he did not follow the rules.
19. He could not qualify examination and I was much surprised.
20. (a) This treatment is very costly so only the rich can afford it.
    (b) None but the rich can afford this treatment.
21. Do this or suffer.
22. He feared rain and went by car.
23. I am not invited and so I shall not go.
24. Neither this statement nor that statement is correct.
25. First desire and then deserve.

Practice Exercise-2

1. She is sick but she will come.
2. Come by car and we will take you to temple.
3. It was cold so we did not go out.
4. The thief was found out and he was arrested.
5. She arrived and everybody welcomed her.
6. You must stop smoking otherwise you will suffer from lung disease.
7. I am not invited so I shall not go.
8. Listen seriously and I will tell you all.
9. He has recovered from illness so I am glad.
10. I had lost the pen but I have found it.
11. He had a dog and that was very faithful.
12. He is unlucky but he is never disappointed.
13. Do this otherwise you will suffer.
14. He is very intelligent but he cannot succeed.
15. He gave me money and I started business.
16. He is not at home otherwise I would meet him.
17. He may be at home and in that case I will give him money.
18. He will die and his son will inherit his property.
19. He must work hard and he will pass.
20. He spent more than he could afford.

Part-IV

Practice Exercise

(a) Nouns into verbs :

1. She succeeded in the examination.
2. She intended to harm me.
3. He advised me.
4. They cannot be admitted without documents.
5. I am disinclined to work in office.
6. These oranges taste sour.
7. They have agreed to complete this work in time.
8. I am not inclined to go to the movie.
9. He has disgraced him family.
10. This refrigerator costs a lot.

(b) Noun into Adjective :

1. She admitted that she was guilty.
2. The room was dusty.
3. He is a courageous man.
4. They are skilful workers.
5. His life is peaceful these days.
6. He was punished for he was negligent.

(c) Nouns into Adverbs :

1. She left room angrily.
2. Please carry it carefully.
3. She survived luckily.
4. She is living with her only son peacfully.
5. She listened to me patiently.
6. She listened to me attentively.
7. She left the room hurriedly.
8. He goes to Chandigarh weekly.

Verbs

(a) Verb into Noun :

1. My brother made a promise to help me.
2. This computer is of Indian make.
3. She accepted all my proposals.

4. She was taking bath.
5. She put signature on the documents.
6. I am in need of money.
7. Please give me help.
8. Her intelligence won our admiration.

(b) Verb into Adjective :

1. Her views are different from mine.
2. She is obedient to her brother.
3. He has been successful in her work.
4. He was hopeful of success.
5. I am doubtful of your honesty.
6. His success is astonishing to me.

(c) Verb into Adverb :

1. She left for bus stop hurriedly.
2. I turned him out forcibly.
3. She did her task successfully.
4. She listened to my advice attentively.
5. They served me in difficulties helpfully.
6. She does her duty carefully.

Adjectives

(a) Adjective into Noun :

1. Exercise gives strength to our body.
2. She acts with care.
3. She spends money with wisdom.
4. They achieved success in their expedition.
5. He is a man of courage.
6. We take pride in our country.
7. The room is full of dust.

(b) Adjective into verbs :

1. Your news has pleased me.
2. She intended to favour me.
3. She succeeded in her job.
4. He cares about his health.
5. Your wife was annoyed with your behaviour.
6. We pride ourselves in your success.

(c) Adjective into Adverbs :

1. She is living with her daughter peacefully.
2. Do your work carefully.
3. She is learning computers attentively.
4. She writes neatly.
5. I am sitting comfortably.
6. He drives slowly.
7. she did it intentionally.
8. I will certainly pass.

Adverbs

(a) Adverbs into Nouns :

1. Do not talk with children in anger.
2. Do your work with attention.
3. Enter the room with care.
4. They got success in doing this.
5. Stock-taking is done every year.

(b) Adverbs into verbs :

1. She hurried to the airport in a taxi.
2. They always obey.
3. She cares for her duty.
4. They helped me in difficulty.
5. She attended to my advice.

(c) Adverbs into Adjectives :

1. It is fortunate that they succeeded in the difficult task.
2. Her gait was graceful.
3. Her behaviour was disgraceful.
4. She was successful in solving the problem.
5. It is probable she may succeed.
6. Her dress was elegant.

Miscellaneous Exercise

1. His familiarity with the strangers astonished everybody.
2. Very few countries are as rich in heritage as India.
3. A student of our school is a famous leader.
4. The cancellation of our tour disappointed us.
5. He left the house happily.

6. Starving is better than begging.
7. He may be late.
8. She looks smart whether she wears saari or Jeans.
9. None but in their correct senses will ever do it.
10. Our principal is more honest than anybody else.
11. New plan was thought of by Suresh.
12. His injured foot prevented him from completing the race.
13. Shivaji was greater than most of the warriors in India.
14. It is a month since Sheena returned.
15. Should you require more information, contact the Secretary of the club.
16. You did not forget to buy a pen for me. did you?
17. There is nothing to complain of.
18. Please go through this letter.
19. He said that he would not help me.
20. Borrowing is not as good as lending.
21. There is a steady rise in the price of milk.
22. The judge did not fail to punish the guilty.
23. Unless you come, I will not go to the movie.
24. a) His victory took me by surprise
    b) I was taken by surprise at his victory.
25. Had the driver not driven rashly, he would not have lost the job.
26. He loves me no less than he loves her.
27. Her failure in life caused disappointed to her parents.
28. If it had not been cold, we would have had good time.
29. This book is of no use to you.
30. She is not wiser lady than she is known to be.
31. Put your tools away lest people should fall over them.
32. I would prefer to die rather than flatter.
33. Everybody will admit that she is honest.
34. Face the music or I will have to.
35. Despite being young she was appointed by the Commission.
36. She is more wise than beautiful.
37. Nothing else is of as great value to mankind as this is.
38. The storm which had threatened since Monday at last broke out with great fury.
39. If you do not waste, you will not want.
40. Your offer is acceptable to me.
41. Reena has not as much brain as she has money.
42. Normally a child should eat four times a day.
43. Having caught a train I went to Amravati.
44. I was doubtful if it was you.

45. You know her nature as well as I.
46. She complained of the room being hot.
47. Tanya is more punctual than any boy in the class.
48. How long your hair is!
49. However hard you may try you cannot earn much.
50. Do they believe that God exists?
51. Who was substituted for the injured player?
52. She met me years ago.
53. None but my friends are responsible for my adversity.
54. All the athelets complained of unsatisfactory amenities.
55. It is not likely that he will help you.
56. No one raised any objection to his attending the function.
57. The girls were not let go on Picnic.
58. If I had a map, I could guide you.
59. They found little sugar in the kitchen.
60. Although Sunil had visited Mohan only once before, he remembered the route.
61. Have you ever visited Mumbai?
62. Would that I could meet her again.
63. The situation was highly dramatic.
64. The sun having risen the fog disappeared.
65. a) I wish to have a small place in the hills to live in.
    b) I wish I had a small place in the hills to live in.
66. His attitude to the poor worried us.
67. Alas! a friend should be false.
68. Never will you sit in this room again.
69. This sum is so difficult that I cannot solve.
70. How bold such a child is!
71. His refusal to allow the late comers annoyed them.
72. It is contemptible that you are a cheat.
73. Existence of fairies is out of the question.
74. The flight of the plane from Srinagar to Delhi is direct.
75. It does not matter to you.
76. Never has the world known such a great descovery.
77. If you eat few rich dinners, you will need few medicines.
78. He will be angry at your coming late.
79. The brilliance of the student surprised everyone.
80. There is no use of blaming him.
81. I was sure of my dependence on him.
82. You will not have to write illegibly.
83. We shall never forget these happy days.

84. This is not the manner how you should do this work.
85. His prompt reply will enable us to take timely action.
86. It was a recess time and the students were playing.
87. Everybody likes to be praised.
88. I did not mean it at all.
89. In the event of your listening seriously I will tell you all.
90. His recovery from illness has made me glad.
91. Do this lest you should suffer.
92. He is likely to help you.
93. Mr. Rahul is on leave. Mrs Deepa is teaching English these days.
94. You are requested to sit down.
95. We buy and sell gold jewellery.
96. It is said that he is a spy.
97. She denied that she had visited the multiplex yesterday.
98. This computer is of India make.
99. There was none but wept when he departed.
100. But for hard work you would have wasted this year.
101. Glamorous as she is, she is modest.

4. Punctuation

Practice Exercise-1

1. Reena said to the servant 'What have you been doing since morning?" The servant said, "Madam, I have been walking the dog." Reena said, "Go at once to the kitchen." "What have I to do there"? the servant asked.
2. "Alas! Child", said her mother, "You have eaten all that I had." "Mother, do not worry. I can manage without food. But what about you?" said Shaurya. "You have not eaten too."
3. "Great God! I would rather be a Pagan than such a Christian," wrote Wordsworth.
4. By God! I have not done it.
5. Good Heavens! I have lost my purse.
6. "Good morning, Suhani. Have you slept well?" said her Mom. "You do not appear to have slept well," asked Suhani in turn. "You were awake when I got up to turn off the air conditioner."
7. "I can not go," she said, "because rain has not stopped so far."
8. "They are well now", Arnav said. "They can go." "But it is drizzling. How can they go?" said my daughter, Pearl.

9. "Do not desire, O my young friend, to get what you cannot get", said the fisherman.
10. The King said to the Jester, "How dare you touch the magic thing meant for me? Be ready to face the consequences." Shedding tears the Jester said, "I am sorry. No use crying," said the King. "I am crying for you, my lord", said the Jester "Why?" asked the King.
11. "You expect everybody," the slave said to the master, "to flatter you all the time. Why is it so?"
12. The queen cried, "Help! Help!"
13. "Advise me," Deep said, "How can I solve this problem."
14. "No," said Malini, "I have not heard this news."
15. Young and old, good and bad—All must die.
16. The names of the students are—Rohit, Meenakshi, Rahul, Sona and Ankur.
17. Oh dear! I am tired today.
18. 'O yes, I like singing; you like dancing.
19. Some are born great; some achieve greatness.
20. You fools! How dare you enter my room without permission.
21. She wouldn't go there, my son.
22. For God's sake, Please help me.
23. Ah! I am undone. My friends have ruined me.
24. Alas! what a fool I am. He has, after all, cheated me.
25. The words, "The Prohibited Area", were written on the wall.